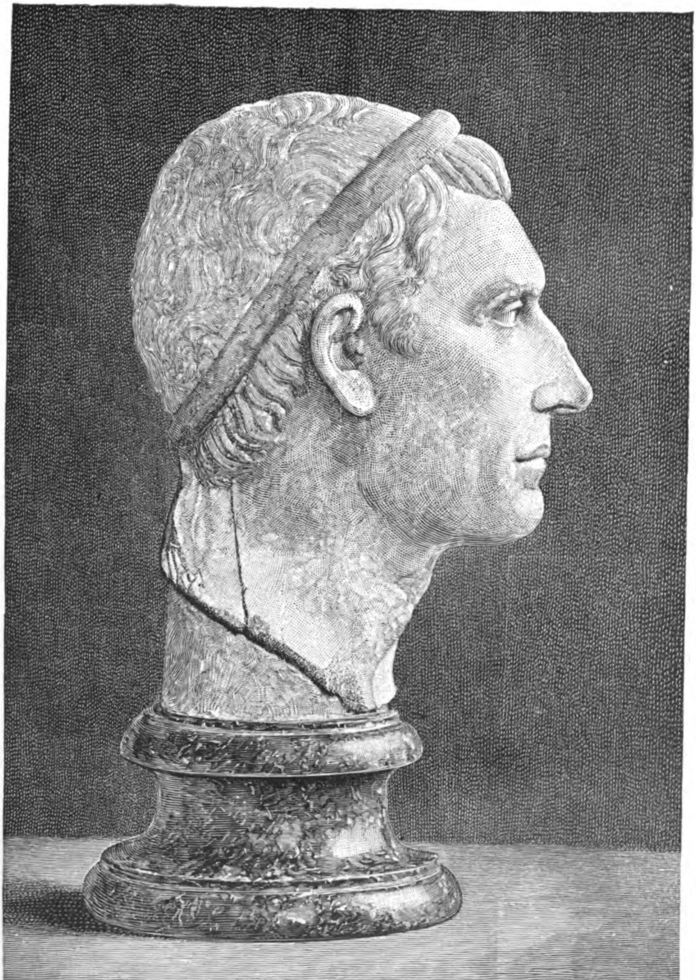


Caesar's Gallic war

Julius Caesar, James Bradstreet Greenough, Benjamin Leonard D'Ooge, Moses Grant Daniell



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.)

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR

(ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S EDITION)

REËDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE AND M. GRANT DANIELL

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

66.3

The Athenæum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE.

The editors have undertaken the task of reëditing entirely the well-known Allen & Greenough's *Cæsar*, to satisfy the ever-increasing demands of modern secondary education. In view of the improvements lately made in the text of *Cæsar* by Meusel and others, they have changed the readings in many places, following chiefly Meusel's as almost a new *textus receptus*. Most of the changes will at once commend themselves. The editors have in general been conservative in regard to spelling, especially the new spelling of old Gallic names, feeling that much that is proposed of that kind as yet lacks certainty. But they have adopted the spelling **-īs** for the accusative plural of **i**-stems in accordance with the prevailing usage. They have allowed themselves full liberty in enriching the notes as to grammar, exegesis, and subject-matter. They have added very full suggestions for parallel reading, and have spared no pains to enrich the study of this famous piece of literature. The treatises on military affairs and other introductory matters have been rewritten and brought out of the notes under one head, so that a pupil may have a chance to gain some general information before he begins to read. Special attention has been given to indirect discourse, the bugbear of Latin education, and throughout the earlier books the direct form has been printed in full in the notes, that any teacher who desires may

begin either the first or second book and avoid at the start the enormous difficulties of the indirect form. They have endeavored to put in every kind of illustration that might tend to make the story more real to the pupil's imagination.

In order to encourage pupils to associate words together for acquiring a vocabulary they have made a large number of groups of words containing the same elements without introducing the vague notion of roots. It is hoped that these may be found convenient to learn by heart, at least in some measure. Attention is also called to the foot-notes which have been added to the text. In the first four books these refer backward to some previous use of the same word. In the last three books reference is made to words of similar or opposite meaning, whereby it is thought that sight-reading may be facilitated. The editors have not thought it desirable to give any pronouncing vocabulary of proper names, as generally these may be pronounced in the Latin manner, except those few that are familiar enough to have become English words, like *Caesar* and *Cicero*, which of course must be pronounced like English. The vocabulary has been enriched by a fuller insertion of idioms, and the etymological matter has been made clearer without sacrificing its peculiar character.

J. B. G.
APRIL, 1898. B. L. D.
M. G. D.


GALLIA
ANTIQUA
ROMAN MILES
ENGLISH MILES
BRITANNIA
MONA I.
Trinobantes
LONDINIUM
(London)
Atrebatii
Belgæ
Tamesis Fl.
(Thames)
Cantii
Regni
Damnoni
Durotriges
Dover
Wissant
ITIUS PORTUS
(Boulogne)
Calais
Flevo L.
Batavi
Rhine
(Meuse)
(Scheldt)
Grudii
Levaci
Menapii
Morini
Atrebates
Ambiani
ADUATUCA
(Tongres)
Mosa Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Usipetes et Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Suevi
GERMANIA
Bacenis Silva
Coblenz
Eburones
Segni
Silva
Condrusi
Aduatuci
Paemani
Caerosi
Ambivariti
Sabis
(Sambre)
Namur
Scaldis
Arduenna
Treveri
BELGAE
Civitates
SAMAROBRIVA
(Amiens)
Caleti
Viromandui
Remi
Rouen
Sequana Fl.
Veliocasses
(Seine)
Bellovaci
NOVIODUNUM
(Soissons)
Suessiones
BIBRAX
Axona Fl.
Matrona Fl.
LUTETIA
(Paris)
Meldi
Parisii
MELODUNUM
Sequana
Tricasses
Lexovii
Aulerci
Eburovices
Esuvii
Ambibarii
Venelli
Coriosolites
Osismi
Vangiones
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Triboci
MONS



CELTAE
AQUITANI
HISPANIA
PYRENAEI MONTES
MARE INTERNUM
PROVINCIA
ULTERIOR
CITERIOR
HELVETII
JURA MONS
CEVENNA MONS
ALPES
Aremorici
Veneti
Namnetes
Redones
Aulerci
Diablintes
Cenomani
Andes
Turones
Pictones
Santones
Lemovices
Bituriges
Petrocorii
Nitiobriges
Vocates
Sotiates
Ausci
Garumni
Cadurci
Ruteni
Gabali
Arverni
Eleuteti
Helvii
Volcae Arecomici
Tolosa (Toulouse)
Carcaso
Narbo
Aquae Sextiae (Aix)
Massilia (Marseilles)
Vienna
Lyons
Segusiavi
Ambarri
Allobroges
Aulerci Brannovices
Boii
Haedui
Bibracte
Cabillonum (Chalon)
Mandubii
Alesia
Lingones
Senones
Carnutes
Genabum (Orleans)
Noviodunum
Avaricum (Bourges)
Limonum (Poitiers)
Gergovia
Uxellodunum
Vellaunodunum
Agedincum (Sens)
Melodunum
Sequana (Seine)
Tricasses
Leuci
Sequani
Vesontio (Besançon)
Dubis (Doubs)
Arar
Belfort
Rauraci
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Hercynia Silva
Tigurinus Pagus
Verbigenus Pagus
Lemanus L.
Genava
Nantuates
Seduni
Veragri
Octodurus
Lepontii
Verbanus L.
Rhodanus Fl.
Rhone
Saone
Isara Fl.
Padus Fl.
Ocelum
Ceutrones
Graioceli
Caturiges
Vocontii
Albici
Liger Fl. (Loire)
Garumna Fl. (Garonne)
Tarbelli
Sibuzates
Cocosates
Tarusates
Elusates
Bigerriones
Tectosages
2 Longitude West 0 Longitude East from 4 Greenwich 6 8

CONTENTS.

	Page
List of Maps and Illustrations	vii
Introduction.	
I. Life of Cæsar	xiii
II. Roman Military Affairs	xxix
III. Gaul and the Gauls	xlv
IV. The Britons	lii
V. The Germans	liii
VI. The Campaigns in Gaul	liv
VII. Reading Courses	lv
VIII. Directions for Reading	lvii
Book I	1
Book II	49
Book III	74
Book IV	94
Book V	117
Book VI	157
Book VII	186
Notes	247
Groups of Related Words	443
Vocabulary.	

LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Babelon. — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.
Baumeister. — Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1885–88.
Bertrand and Perrot. — Revue archeologique, 3e Série, Tome X.
Cohen. — Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.
Fleury. — Antiquités et Monuments du département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877–78.
Froehner. — La Colonne trajane d'après le surmoulage exécuté à Rome en 1861–62, reproduite en phototypographie par Gustave Arosa. 1872.
von Göler. — Caesar's Gallischer Krieg, etc. 1880.
Grasset. — Costumes de Guerre de l'age du bronze et de l'ère gauloise. 1886.
Guhl and Kohner. — The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.
Head. — A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.
Jeuffrain. — Essai d'Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.
von Kampen. — XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.
Lindenschmidt. — Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres wahrend der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.
Oehler. — Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.
Rheinhard. — C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.
Schreiber. — Atlas of Classical Antiquities.
Stoffel. — Guerre de César et d'Arioviste. 1890.
Visconti. — Iconographie romaine. 1817–24.

Fig.		Page
1.	Cæsar. Bust in the Museum of the Louvre . . .	*Frontispiece.*
2.	Map of Gaul.	
3.	Campaign map of B.C. 58	1
4.	Two coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: Æneas with Anchises and the palladium. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR. *Head*	1
5.	Pas de l'Ecluse (looking down stream). *Photograph* . . .	5
6.	Map of Helvetia. *Oehler*	5

FIG.		PAGE
7.	Junction of the Rhône and Saône (looking south). *Photograph*	9
8.	Coin of Piso. Obverse: head of a youth with winged diadem; behind, a star and crown; before, a *simpulum*. Reverse: M. PISO. M[arci] F[ilius] FRUGI; a *patera* and a *secespita*, inclosed within a laurel wreath. *Cohen*	10
9.	Coin of Cassius. Obverse: head of Apollo with sceptre behind. Reverse: Q. CASSIUS. Eagle resting on a thunderbolt, between a *lituus* and a *praefericulum*. *Cohen*	10
10.	Loading boats with supplies. *Froehner*	14
11.	Gallic remains. *Grasset*	16
12.	Cavalryman charging. Gravestone in Mainz. *Oehler*	19
13.	Cavalryman with *vexillum*. Col. of M. Aurelius. *Oehler*	19
14.	Soldiers marching with packs (*sarcinae*). *Froehner*	21
15.	Roman javelins (*pila*). *Oehler*	22
16.	Plan of battle with the Helvetii. *von Kampen*	23
17.	Roman swords. *Oehler*	25
18.	View of Besançon (Vesontio). From a drawing	33
19.	C. Marius. Impression of a coin. *Visconti*	35
20.	View of the fortress of Belfort. *Photograph*	38
21.	Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. *Cohen*	41
22.	Map of the campaign with Ariovistus. *Stoffel*	43
23.	Soldiers attacked while encamping. *Froehner*	44
24.	Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg. *Photograph*	47
25.	Plan of battle with Ariovistus. *Stoffel*	47
26.	Campaign map of B.C. 57	48
27.	Writing materials: *atramentarium* (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); *diptycha* (folding tablet), *stilus*, and erasing knife. Wall painting. *Overbeck's Pompeii*	49
28.	Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the *Arc de Triomphe* at Orange. *Grasset*	50
29.	Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. *Fleury*	51
30.	Slinger (*funditor*). *Dict. des Antiquités*	53
31.	Berry au Bac. *Photograph*	54
32.	Battle on the Aisne. *Oehler*	55

FIG. PAGE

33. Vinea or Testudo. *Oehler* 58
34. Hautmont. *Photograph* 61
35. Defeat of the Nervii. *Oehler* 61
36. Lituus 63
37. Tuba 63
38. Cornu 63
39. Aquilifer. *Lindenschmidt* 66
40. Centurio. *Lindenschmidt* 66
41. Citadel of Namur. *Photograph* 69
42. Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci. From first ed. . 69
43. Siege works. *von Göler* 70
44. Gallic coins. (1) Obverse: a Gaul running, with torch in one hand and *torque* (?) in the other. Reverse: bear (?). (2) Obverse: ox-head. Reverse: bear of the Helvetii. *Fleury* 73
(3) (4) Of uncertain interpretation. Some modification of the human head is seen, also the form of a horse or boar, with ornaments. *Jeuffrain* 73
45. Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). *Schreiber* 74
46. Map of Octodurus. *von Kampen* 75
47. Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum 76
48. Galley. From the Præneste relief. *Baumeister* 79
49. Map of the Veneti neighborhood. Altered from modern map 81
50. View at mouth of the Loire. *Photograph* 82
51. Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. *Oehler* . . 83
52. Trading vessel. Ancient relief. *Baumeister* 85
53. Gallic sword-blade. Museum at Namur. *Photograph* . . 87
54. Soldiers making camp. *Froehner* 91
55. Pack-wagons and carts. Col. of M. Aurelius. *Oehler* . . 94
56. Campaign map of B.C. 55–53 94
57. Coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy of Gallic arms. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: veiled head of *Pietas*. CAESAR CO[n]S[ul]TER. Reverse: *lituus*, *praefericulum*, and axe. A[ulus] HIRTIUS PR[aefectus]. *Head* 96
58. Scenery on the Meuse. *Photograph* 99
59. Bridge. From first ed. 103
60. Cliffs of Dover. "Shakespeare's Cliff." *Photograph* . . 107
61. Catapulta. Modern restoration 109

FIG. PAGE

62. Anchor and tackle. *Arc de Triomphe* at Orange. *Schreiber* 111
63. Soldiers foraging. *Froehner* 113
64. Gallic coin. *Jeuffrain* 116
65. Map of campaigns in Britain 116
66. British coins. (1) Obverse: ear of grain, CAMV[lodunum]. Reverse: prancing horse, CVNO[belinus] (the Cymbeline of Shakespeare). (2) Obverse: unexplained devices. Reverse: horse, TASCOVIANUS. *Head* 117
67. Boulogne. *Photograph* 118
68. Testudo. *Froehner* 123
69. Soldiers building camp, with guards. *Froehner* 125
70. Signa Militaria. *Guhl and Koner* 129
71. Roman Transports. *Froehner* 132
72. Coin of L. Plancus. Obverse: bust of Victory. CAES[ar]. DIC[tator]TER. Reverse: a *praefericulum*. L. PLANC[us]. PRAEF(ectus). *Head* 134
73. Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius. *Oehler* 139
74. Roman camp assaulted. *Froehner* 143
75. Ballista. Modern restoration 146
76. Gallic coin. Obverse: human figure seated. Reverse: bear, serpent, and stars. *Jeuffrain* 152
77. Gallic *torques*. Museum at Namur. *Photograph* 156
78. Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum 157
79. Gallic chief. Museum at Avignon. *Photograph* 160
80. Bridge. Model in the Museum of St. Germain. *Oehler* . 162
81. Gallic coin. *Jeuffrain* 166
82. Gallic coins. LVCOTI (Paris?); human eye in profile, supposed to symbolize the sun. *Fleury* 168
83. Statue of Ambiorix at Tongres. *Photograph* 174
84. Sacrifice in camp. Military band (*Cornicines*). *Froehner* . 178
85. Soldiers marching in presence of the Imperator. *Froehner* 182
86. Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz. *Oehler* 185
87. Helmets. *Schreiber* 186
88. Campaign map of B.C. 52 186
89. Coin of Brutus and Albinus. Obverse: head of Mars. Reverse: ALBINVS BRVTI F[ilius]. Two Gallic trumpets crossed, oval and round shields. *Head* . . . 191
90. Siege of Avaricum. *von Kampen* 194
91. Bourges. *Photograph* 196
92. View of siege works. *von Kampen* 198

FIG. PAGE

93. Plan of siege works. *von Kampen* 199
94. Gallic wall. Model in the Museum of St. Germain, slightly restored from existing remains at Murcens. *Oehler* . . . 202
95. Scorpio. Modern restoration 204
96. Coin of the Bituriges. Obverse: beardless male head. Reverse: galloping horse, flying eagle above; below three circles. ABVDOS (name of chief?). *Head* 207
97. Siege of Gergovia. *Oehler* 209
98. Care of the wounded. *Froehner* 216
99. Expeditio Labieni. *von Kampen* 225
100. Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne. *von Kampen* . 231
101. Alise Ste. Reine (Alesia). *Photograph* 232
102. Siege of Alesia. *Oehler* 234
103. View of Cæsar's line of works before Alesia. Model in the Museum of St. Germain. *Oehler* 236
104. Light-armed soldier. *Lindenschmidt* 241
105. Archer. *Lindenschmidt* 241
106. Statue of Vercingetorix. Erected at Alesia by order of Napoleon III. Designed by Bartholdi. *Photograph* 244
107. The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's Model in the Museum of St. Germain. 248
108. Coin of Cæsar. Obverse: head of Augustus. IMP·[erator] CAESAR·DIVI·F·[ilius]III(trium)·VIR·ITER[um] R[ei] P[ublicae] C[onstituendae]. Reverse: Julius Cæsar standing in a temple. DIVO IVL[io]. Star and altar. CO[n]-S[ul] ITER[um]·ET·TER·DESIG[natus]. *Cohen* . . 249
109. Gallic coin. *Fleury* 252
110. Gallic coin. Obverse: horse. VIRO (perhaps name of a chief), or VIRO[mandui]. Reverse: various devices. *Fleury* 255
111. Gallic coin. Rude representation of a human head. *Fleury* 258
112. Gallic coin. Horse, stars, circles. *Fleury* 261
113. Gallic coin. Cock. *Fleury* 263
114. Signifer. *Lindenschmidt* 267
115. Soldiers. From first ed. 273
116. Scutum. *Rheinhard* 283
117. Scutum. *Rheinhard* 283
118. Wall and ditch. *Oehler* 307
119. Castra Romana. *Rheinhard* 310
120. General view of siege operations. *Rheinhard* 332

FIG. PAGE

121. Vexillum 335
122. Aquila 374
123. Gallic coin. Reverse: L. Hostilius Sasern[a]. Warrior fighting, armed with spear and shield, in a Gallic chariot (*essedum*) driven by a charioteer holding a whip. *Babelon.* 376
124. Gallic coin. Reverse: Warrior armed with spear and shield, and holding a Gallic trumpet (*carnyx*), standing in a two-wheeled chariot, drawn by two galloping horses. L[ucius] LIC[inius] CN[aeus] DOM[itius]. *Bertrand & Perrot* . 377
125. Caliga. *Oehler* 379
126. Oppugnatio. From first ed. 390
127. Signum 393
128. Tabernaculum. *Rheinhard* 415
129. Pluteus. Modern restoration 427
130. Pluteus. Modern restoration 427
131. Lilium. *Oehler* 442
132. Stimulus. *Oehler* 442

INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

> "Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
> Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
> Be theme and hearing ever." — *Shakespeare.*

> "The greatest name in history." — *Merivale.*

I. The Political Condition of Italy in the First Century B.C.

The Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and

steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.

Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as *Optimates;* those opposed to them as *Pópulares.* Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar's uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established *régime* there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. Cæsar's Earlier Career.

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village,
Than be second in Rome." —*Longfellow.*

Caius Julius Cæsar (*Gaius Iulius Caesar*) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother's side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father's to Æneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the *Populares* under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius's dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and

proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the *Populares;* for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the *Optimates*, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. In this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla's command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, "Take him, since you will have it so; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses."

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course

of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by serving as quæstor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it — as he remarked with grim humor — worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.

In B.C. 63 he was elected *pontifex maximus* against the strong opposition of the *Optimates*. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome, — Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate, — what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to

restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the *Leges Juliae*, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the *Optimates* thought that they were well rid of him.

III. Cæsar in Gaul.

"What security men derive from a resolute spirit." — *Cæsar.*

By the 'deal' of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon had been trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war — hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity — are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the

right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar, — namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time

— an interval of ten years having elapsed — he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. Cæsar's Later Career.

"The foremost man of all this world." — *Shakespeare.*

"Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal." — *Lucan.*

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate

resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the *Optimates*, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the *Optimates* there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in

a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent *Optimates* had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar's eternal praise. In a letter he says: "I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy."

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar's part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey's officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar's 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: "They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army."

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar's favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey's head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: "*Veni, vidi, vici.*" By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made *imperator*—possessing the entire *imperium*, or military dominion of Rome, not

of a single colony or province merely — and perpetual dictator (*dictator perpetuo*), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar's rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all

died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.[1]

V. Person and Character of Cæsar.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."— *Shakespeare.*

"Great Julius, whom all the world admires." — *Milton.*

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, we have good reason to believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 47) and that in the Louvre (Fig. 1). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 78) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought to be true to life. The one in the British Museum shows us Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace ; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.[2]

[1] For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar."

[2] On the portraits of Cæsar, see an illustrated article by Mr. John S. Ropes in *Scribner's Magazine* for February, 1887, and S. Baring-Gould's "Tragedy of the Cæsars," Vol. I.

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts: as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care

and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar's dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their forefathers. What Cæsar's real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

VI. Cæsar's Literary Work.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, "I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment." While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and

impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity. They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes, as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their present political and social peculiarities.

VII. Important Events in Cæsar's Life.

B.C.	100	Born, July 12th.
"	83	Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.
"	80–78	Serves with the Army in Asia.
"	76–75	Studies Oratory at Rhodes.
"	68	Quæstor.
"	65	Ædile.
"	63	Pontifex Maximus.
"	62	Prætor.
"	61	Proprætor in Spain.
"	60	Forms the First Triumvirate.
"	59	Consul.
"	58–49	Proconsul in Gaul.
"	56	Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.
"	50	The Trouble with Pompey begins.
"	49	Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.
"	48	The Battle of Pharsalia.
"	46	The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.
"	45	The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.
"	44	The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on the Ides of March.

II.

ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

I. The Army and its Divisions.

1. The Legions.
2. The Cavalry.
3. The Auxiliaries.
4. The Engineers and Artisans.
5. The Artillery.
6. The Baggage Train.
7. The Officers and their Staff.

II. The Standards. III. The Music.

IV. The Legionary.

a. Enlistment. *b.* Clothing. *c.* Armor. *d.* Weapons. *e.* Baggage. *f.* Food. *g.* Work. *h.* Pay. *i.* Discipline.

V. The Camp. VI. The March. VII. The Battle.
VIII. The Siege. IX. The Fleet.

I. The Army and its Divisions.

1. The Legions.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar's time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar's own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows:

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.
1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.
1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (*equitatus*), originally of Roman citizens, was in Cæsar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Cæsar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Cæsar had 4000 *equites*, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (*alae*) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. See Figs. 12, 13.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (*auxilia peditum*) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Cæsar nowhere gives the number of his *auxilia*, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (*milites levis armaturae*), the archers (*sagittarii*), and the slingers (*funditores*). See Figs. 30, 104, 105, 115. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (*parma*). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.

Cæsar placed little reliance on his *auxilia* for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), and from this were called *alarii*.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (*fabri*) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Cæsar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Cæsar almost always calls them *tormenta* (cf. *torquere*, *to twist*), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: *catapultae*, *ballistae*, and *scorpiones* (see Figs. 61, 75, 95). The *catapultae* shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the *ballistae* hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A *scorpio* was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Cæsar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The *tormenta* were usually served and kept in repair by the *fabri*, but as Cæsar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.

6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (*sarcinae*), was borne by horses and mules (*iumenta*), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (*mercatores*) and sutlers (*lixae*) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the *tormenta*, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it *impedimenta* (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called *legio impedita;* when without, *legio expedita.* Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers' servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term *calones.* Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 14, 55.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (*imperator* or *dux belli*). He possessed the *imperium* or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name *imperator* from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar's case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The *legati.* These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the *imperium* in his absence (*legatus pro praetore*). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a *legatus* at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The *quaestores* were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each *imperator.*

They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a *legatus* (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six *tribuni militum*, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar's time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the *legati*, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20; v. 1, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the *quaestor;* and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers "of the line" were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior ("non-commissioned") officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,

the first centurion of the whole cohort (*primus* or *primi-pilus*) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25 ; iii. 5 ; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (*vir fortis et magnae virtutis*, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (*vitis*), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 40).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red *tunica militaris* worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (*paludamentum*) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 86).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the *speculatores*, *evocati*, *beneficiarii*, *aquiliferi* or *signiferi*, and *bucinatores*, *tubicines*, or *cornicines*. The *speculatores* or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The *evocati* were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The *beneficiarii* were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The *signiferi* or *aquiliferi* were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The *bucinatores* and *tubicines* were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 39, 84, 114.

II. The Standards.

The term *signa* is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (*aquila*), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (*primipilus*) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (*vexillum*), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 13, 121, 123.

In a narrower sense, *signum* was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own *signum* (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Cæsar's day.

The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called *vexillum*. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 70.

III. The Music.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (*bucina*), the trumpet (*tuba*), the cavalry trumpet (*lituus*), and the horn (*cornu*). See Figs. 36, 37, 38, 84.

The *bucina*, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The *tuba*, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the *cornu*. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The *tuba* had a deep tone; the *cornu* a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (*contio*) was the *classicum*, sounded by all the instruments at once.

IV. The Legionary.

a. Enlistment. — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization, — that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost

powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (*evocatus*).

b. Clothing. — All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (*lorica*). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (*sagum*), which was fastened by a clasp (*fibula*) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the *sagum* served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (*cingulum militiae*), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (*caligae*). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 107, 115, 126, etc.

c. Armor. — The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (*lorica*, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (*galea* or *cassis*), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the *insignia* put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 87, etc. The shield (*scutum*) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (*umbo*) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 116, 117, etc.

d. Weapons. — The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (*gladius Hispanus*) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (*balteus*). See Figs. 17, 115, etc.

The spear (*pilum*) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the

hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 107.

e. Baggage (Packs). — Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (*vasa*), food for at least two weeks (*cibaria*), his cloak or blanket (*sagum*), and usually one or two stakes (*valli*) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the *vasa*, *cibaria*, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (*expeditus*) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius's mules (*muli Mariani*), after the great Marius who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his *sarcina* (see Figs. 14, 115).

f. Food. — The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two *modii*, — about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (*mercatores*), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work. — It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (*castra munire*). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay. — Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about $45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active

service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline.— The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the. presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. The Camp.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (*castra aestiva*) and the winter camp (*castra hiberna*) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 119). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught *e superiore loco* (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 119): the *porta praetoria*, facing the enemy; the *porta decumana*,

in the rear; the *porta principalis dextra*, on the right side; the *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the *via principalis*. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (*praetorium*), in which stood the general's tent (*tabernaculum ducis*). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (*tribunal* or *suggestus;* cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar's camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (*fossa*), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (*vallum*). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (fascines). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night's sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (*castra stativa*), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (*valli* or *sudes;* cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 118). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (*pontes*). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (*castella*) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (*tentoria, pelles*) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.

VI. The March.

When the trumpet gave the signal (*signum profectionis*) to break up camp (*castra movere*), the soldiers struck their tents and packed their baggage (*vasa conligere*) ; at the second signal the baggage (*impedimenta*) was put on the pack-animals and in the wagons ; at the third signal the army (*agmen*) began its march. The start was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on special occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours, and covered about 15 miles ; a forced march (*magnum iter*) about 25. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of troops (*agmen*) protected itself by a vanguard (*agmen primum*) of cavalry, light-armed infantry, and scouts (*exploratores*), and by a rear guard (*agmen novissimum*). Sometimes individual spies (*speculatores*) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (*expediti*), i.e. without packs (*sarcinae*), followed directly after the vanguard ; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (*agmen quadratum ;* see Fig. 73). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (*orbis*) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (*acies triplex*), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry

(cf. Bk. v. 18). Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17; Bk. vi. 9; see Figs. 59, 80).

VII. The Battle.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was *triplex acies*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (*media acies*), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (*cornua*), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two

lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the *cuneus*, or wedge, the *testudo*, or tortoise, and the *orbis*, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 68). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre — except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

VIII. The Siege.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (*oppugnatio repentina*); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (*expugnatio*); third, by investment and blockade (*obsidio*).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (*ex itinere*). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a *testudo* attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or *agger*, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.

It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23–28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 120). The men engaged in constructing the *agger* had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of *plutei* (see Figs. 130, 131), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the *agger* progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called *vineae* (see Figs. 33, 120), extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (*tormenta*) standing behind lines of *plutei* or upon movable towers (*turres*). The latter stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the *plutei* will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called *testudines* or *musculi*, placed at the ends of lines of *vineae*.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (*expugnatio*). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (*falces murales*). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (*aries*), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a *testudo*, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories drawbridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against

the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 92, 93, 127.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (*obsidio*) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44–53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72–80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times; see Figs. 97, 102.

IX. The Fleet.

Cæsar mentions two principal classes of ships: *naves longae*, or war galleys, and *naves onerariae*, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The *naves actuariae* of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Cæsar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 48, 51, 52.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (*rostrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (*nautae*) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (*remiges*) were usually slaves. Galleys in Cæsar's time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action *tormenta* were placed on the deck, and also a *turris*; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 62.

III.

GAUL AND THE GAULS.

I. The Gallic Province.

The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and

of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Cæsar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

2. The Gallic People.

a. Origin and Early History. — The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Cæsar's time, between German and Gaul.

The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many

flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar's expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs. — The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door

alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 29, 64, 66, 81, etc., etc.). Cæsar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress. — The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry — both men and women — of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (*torquis*, see Fig. 77), worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (*bracae*). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (*sagum*) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 28.

d. Arms and Military Tactics. — As has been said, a Gaul's chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 86), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 11). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the *testudo* formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government. — The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-

taining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (*vergobrets*) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

f. Religion. — *The Druids.* — Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were 'baptized' into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.

The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Cæsar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13–16).

3. Subsequent History of Gaul.

Cæsar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Cæsar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day, — France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

THE BRITONS.

With Cæsar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Cæsar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Cæsar

gained but little detailed and accurate knowledge of the country, and after him the Romans did not go there for nearly one hundred years. Subsequently it was subdued and brought under Roman dominion. England still shows many traces of the Roman occupation. Many of her cities were founded by the Romans and bear Roman names. After the Romans came the northern invaders, who drove out or destroyed most of the original Celtic population. Those that survived are represented to-day by the Irish, the Welsh, and the Highland Scotch, among whom a branch of the Celtic language is still spoken to a considerable extent.

V.

THE GERMANS.

THE Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113–101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was *terra incognita* to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1–3; Bk. vi. 21–28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his "Germania," who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar's fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31–54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.

VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

THE campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books, — the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar, — each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the *Nervii*, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (*Veneti*, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (*Aquitani*), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.

Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Cæsar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

VII.

READING COURSES.

In order to make a wider acquaintance with the Gallic War easy and practicable, and, further, to bring greater variety and interest to the narrative for teachers and students alike, the following reading courses are suggested, any one of which covers an amount equivalent to the first four books.

Course I.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.

The War against the Belgian Confederacy, Bk. ii.

The Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and the First Invasion of Germany, Bk. iv. chs. 1–19.

The Second Invasion of Germany, and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 9–29.

The General Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii.

Course II.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.

The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.

The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.

The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.

The General Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii.

Course III.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.

The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.

The Campaign against Ariovistus, Bk. i. chs. 30–54.

The Campaign against the Veneti, Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

Crassus in Aquitania, Bk. iii. chs. 23–27.

The Expedition against the Morini and Menapii, Bk. iii. chs. 28, 29.

The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.

The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.

The Revolt of Ambiorix, Bk. v. chs. 24–53.

Pursuit of Ambiorix and the Punishment of the Eburones, Bk. vi. chs. 29–44.

Course IV.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.

The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.

The Campaign against Ariovistus, Bk. i. chs. 30–54.

The Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 11–29.

The Campaign against the Veneti, Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

The Revolt of Ambiorix, Bk. v. chs. 24–53.

The Pursuit of Ambiorix, and the Punishment of the Eburones, Bk. vi. chs. 29–44.

The Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii. chs. 1–11.

The Siege of Alesia, Bk. vii. chs. 68–90.

Course V.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.

The War against the Belgian Confederacy, Bk. ii.

The Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and the First Invasion of Germany, Bk. iv. chs. 1–19.

The Second Invasion of Germany, and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 9–29.

The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.

The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.

The General Rising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii. chs. 1–15.
The Siege and Sack of Avaricum, Bk. vii. chs. 16–30.
Operations against Gergovia, and Plots among the Hædui, Bk. vii. chs. 31–56.

VIII.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

As "Cæsar," though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods, the use of Tenses, and the Definitions of common grammatical terms such as Sentence, Subject, Predicate, Object, Transitive and Intransitive, Phrase, Clause, and the like.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words *must* mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don't try to *translate formally* until you have got a complete *idea* of some *integral part* of the sentence. It makes nonsense

to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. (See § 595–601 (343–346), and compare B. 348–351; G. 671–687; H. 663–685 (559–573); H–B. 620–630.)

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING [1] thus in *Hither* [2] Gaul, as I have shown above, CÆSAR [3] had FREQUENT [4] *rumors* brought to him,[5] and DESPATCHES [6] also from LABIENUS [7] continued to inform him that ALL [8] the BELGÆ,[9] who constituted a *third part* [10] of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the *Roman gov-*

Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsi-

[1] The emphasis on *being* binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Cæsar went to Hither Gaul, — and while he was engaged there."

[2] Opposed to *Farther* Gaul, where the troops were.

[3] The main subject of discourse.

[4] The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he *kept* hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.

[5] An emphasis continued in Latin from *Cæsar*, the main person, but lost in English. See § 598. *l* (344. *l*); H–B. 627. 2.

[6], [7] Opposed to the rumors.

[8], [9] Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "*the entire body of the Belgæ.*"

[10] Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "*a full third* of the whole."

ernment[11] and exchanging hostages. That for THIS CONSPIRACY[12] the reasons were *these*,[13] namely: in the first place, because THEY WERE AFRAID[14] (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was ALL[15] *subdued*,[16] our army would be brought against *them*[17]; and in the second place, because *some*[18] of the *Gauls*[18] (i.e. from outside) were tampering[18] with them. These Gauls were PARTLY those who were disturbed that the ROMAN[19] army should pass the *winter*[20] and *get a*[20] *footing* in Gaul, *just as*[21] they had been unwilling that the GERMANS[22] should *stay any longer*[23] there, and PARTLY those who from [mere] *fickleness*[24]

dēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte

[11] Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it is the most important part of the idea.

[12] The main subject of discourse, "now *this conspiracy*, the reports said," etc.

[13] The difference between "the reasons why were *these*" and "these were *the reasons why*" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.

[14] A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "*fear*" to "*being tampered with*." But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said **ipsi** in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgæ *themselves*, the Gauls by whom *outside* influence was brought to bear.

[15], [16] The *completion* of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.

[17] Cæsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "*them*" to "Gaul," which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians; cf. Chiasmus, § 598. *f* (344. *f*); B. 350. 11, *c*; G. 682 and R.; H. 666. 2 (562); H–B. 628.

[18] See note 14.

[19] Opposed to the "Germans."

[20] Opposed to "stay any longer."

[21] The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.

[22] Opposed to the "Romans."

[23] See note 20.

[24] Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the *inconstancy* of the second party is opposed.

and ***unsteadiness***[24] were [always] eager for ***new***[25] forms of government; [they were stimulated] by SOME also besides, who, inasmuch as in *Gaul*[26] regal power was regularly usurped by the ***more powerful***[27] and by those who had means to ***employ soldiers***,[28] could not SO EASILY[29] succeed in ***such usurpations***[30] under our ***imperial control***.[31]

animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, —ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātīs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

[25] A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted *a change*.

[26] Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.

[27], [28] The two means of attaining regal power.

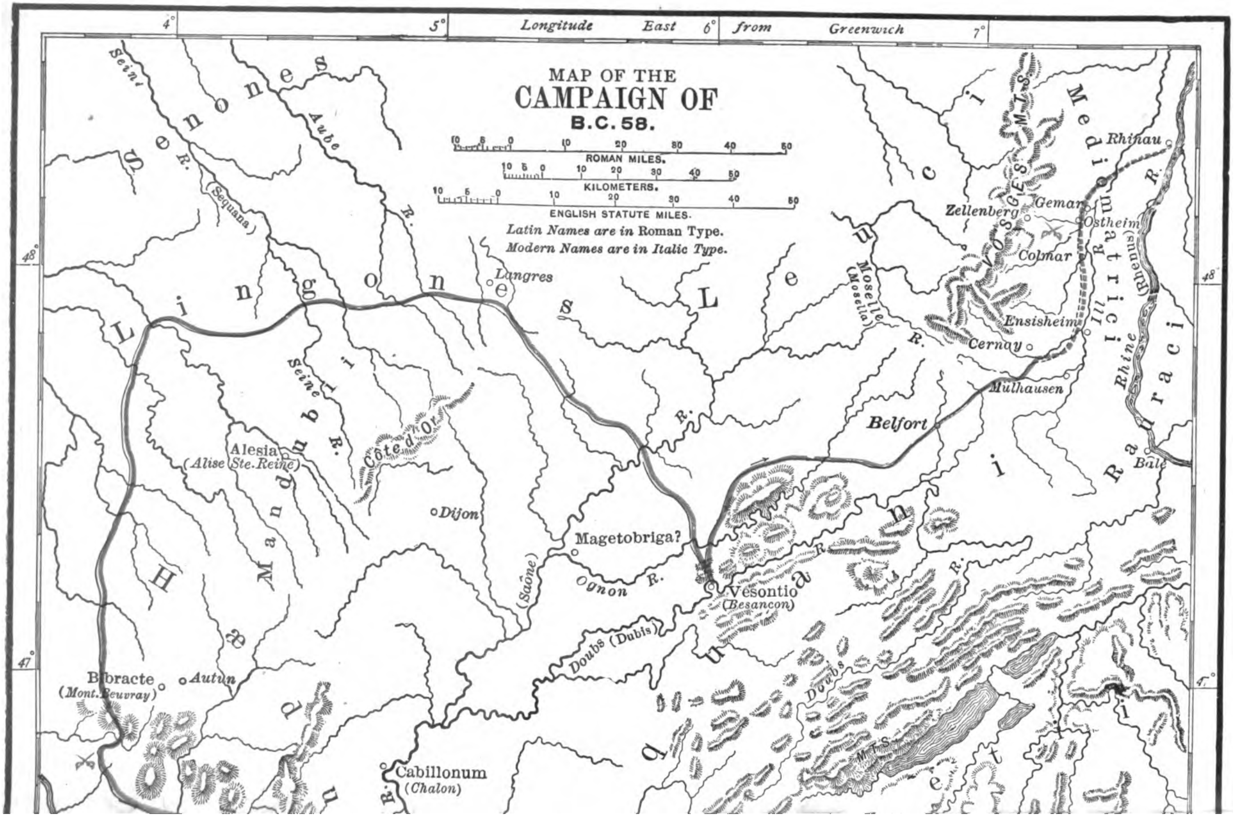
[29] And consequently wanted to rebel.

[30] The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as **rem** here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.

[31] This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. AFTER TAKING HOSTAGES he led his *army* back to the sea [where he] found the *ships* repaired. HAVING LAUNCHED THEM, inasmuch as he had a great number of *captives*, and *some* of the ships had been lost in the *storm*, he proceeded to transport his army in *two voyages*. And [fortunately] it so HAPPENED that out of so *many* ships in so *many* voyages not a *single* one was lost that carried soldiers either *that* year or the year *before*, while of THE SHIPS which were sent back to him *empty* from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the seventy others that Labienus had built *later*, very few reached their destination. Almost all the *rest* were driven back.

Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvīs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Āc sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur.


MAP OF THE
CAMPAIGN OF
B.C. 58.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type.
Modern Names are in Italic Type.
Longitude East from Greenwich
Senones
Lingones
Sequani
Haedui
Mandubii
Leuci
Mediomatrici
Rauraci
Helvetii
Seine R. (Sequana)
Aube
Langres
Moselle (Mosella) R.
Alesia (Alise Ste. Reine)
Côte d'Or
Dijon
Magetobriga?
Ognon R.
(Saône)
Vesontio (Besancon)
Doubs (Dubis)
Bibracte (Mont. Beuvray)
Autun
Cabillonum (Chalon)
Belfort
Mulhausen
Cernay
Ensisheim
Colmar
Zellenberg
Gemar
Ostheim
Rhinau
Ill
Rhine (Rhenus) R.
Bâle
Vosges Mts.
Mts.



Loire
(Liger)
Brannovi
Aulerci Brannovices
Matisco
(Macon)
Saône (Arar)
Ambarri
Segusiavi
Lugdunum
(Lyons)
Vienna
(Vienne)
Rhodanus
Rhône
Allobroges
Vellavii
Cevennes
Helvii
Vocontii
Isère
Isara
Graioceli
Caturiges
Ceutrones
Nantuates
Veragri
Seduni
Helvetii
Lacus Lemannus
Genava
(Geneva)
Pas de l' Ecluse
Arve
Octodurus
(Martigny)
Great St. Bernard
Mt. Blanc
Little St. Bernard
Mt. Cenis
Segusio
Ocelum
Turin
Po R.
46°
45°
4°
5°
6°
7°
Longitude East from Greenwich



FIG. 4.—COINS OF CÆSAR.

THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS. B.C. 58.

The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis dīvīsa in partīs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit.[1] 5

Their Characters Compared.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,[2] quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. 10

Cf. [1] **dīvīsa,** l. 1.—[2] **incolunt,** l. 2.

The Territories of Each.

Eōrum ūna pars,[1] quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Bel-
5 gae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montīs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet;[2] spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septen-
10 triōnēs.

Orgetorix with his Fellow Nobles Forms a Plan to Invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē[3] nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent:
15 perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

He Persuades his People, the Helvetii.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur:[4] ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit;
20 alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

They Assent, being Warlike and feeling Cramped by their Narrow Limits.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte homi-

Cf. [1] **partīs**, p. 1, l. 1. — [2] **pertineant**, l. 5. — [3] **longissimē**, 1, 7. — [4] **continētur**, l. 2.

nēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē fīnīs[1] habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant. 5

They Employ Two Years in Preparations.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent[2] comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentīs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs[3] cīvitātibus pācem et 10 amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Orgetorix Conspires with Other Gallic Chiefs.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātīs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet[4] Cas- 15 ticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat[5] et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvi- 20 tāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

His Arguments.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; 25 sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōn-

Cf. [1] **fīnibus,** p. 2, l. 3. — [2] **pertinent,** 2, 5. — [3] **proximī,** 1, 9. — [4] **persuāsit,** 2, 14. — [5] **obtinēre,** 2, 1.

fīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō[1] per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī[2] posse spērant.

Orgetorix is Brought to Trial.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus
5 suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur.

He Escapes.

Diē cōnstitūtā[3] causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnīs clientīs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum
10 numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.

His Death.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent,[4] Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut
15 Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Still the Helvetii Persist in the Attempt.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur,[5] ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.[6] Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua
20 prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum[7] omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut — domum reditiōnis spē sublātā — parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

Cf. [1] **occupāret,** p. 3, l. 19. — [2] **potīrī,** 2, 16. — [3] **cōnstituērunt,** 3, 7. — [4] **coēgit,** l. 9. — [5] **cōnarētur,** l. 13. — [6] **exīrent,** 2, 14. — [7] **frūmentī,** 3, 10.



FIG. 5. — PAS DE L'ECLUSE.

Other Tribes are Persuaded to Join them.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur[1]; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt. 5

Two Routes for Invasion Described.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,

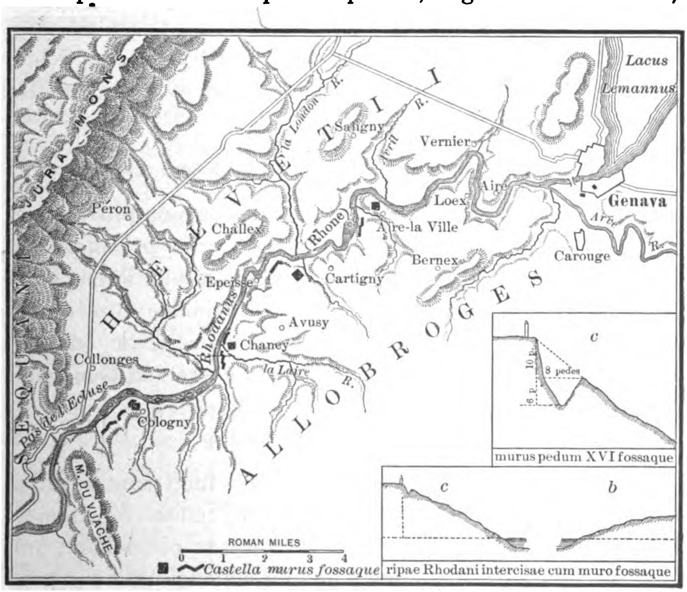


Fig. 6. — Map of Helvetia.

inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī[2] dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut

Cf. [1] **proficīscendum,** p. 3, l. 7. — [2] **carrōrum,** 3, 8.

facile perpaucī prohibēre[1] possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.[2]
5 Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque[3] Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva.

They Decide to March through the Province.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs[4] ut
10 per suōs fīnīs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Cæsar Resolves to Stop them, and Destroys the Bridge near Geneva.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam
15 nostram iter facere cōnārī,[5] mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī,[6] et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam
20 iubet rescindī.

They Ask Cæsar's Permission.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis[7] Namměius et Verudoctius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prō-
25 vinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter[8] habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Cf. [1] **prohibent,** p. 1, l. 14. — [2] **trānsierant,** 5, 4. — [3] **proximīs,** 3, 10. — [4] **coēgit,** 4, 9. — [5] **cōnantur,** 4, 17. — [6] **proficīscantur,** 5, 3. — [7] **lēgātiōnem,** 3, 14. — [8] **itinera,** 5, 6.

Cæsar Unwilling, but Puts them off to Gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī,[1] temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat.[2] 5
Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent,[3] lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

Cæsar Constructs Fortifications to Stop the Helvetii.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque 10
quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnīs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō[4] praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō 15
facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii Attempt to Pass, but are Repulsed.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt,[5] negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, 20
nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs[6] Rhodanī, quā[7] minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius[8] noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. 25

Cf. [1] **facere,** p. 6, l. 25. — [2] **exīstimābant,** 6, 9. — [3] **conveniant,** 6, 12. — [4] **perficere,** 3, 23. — [5] **reverterentur,** l. 9. — [6] **vadō,** 6, 4. — [7] **quā,** 5, 8. — [8] **saepe,** 1, 8.

Through the Influence of Dumnorix, a Hæduan, they are Allowed to Pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs[1] propter angustiās[2] īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrā-
5 rent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum[3] poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātīs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem
10 suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnīs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur,[4] obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cæsar Opposes this Movement also.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō[5] per
15 agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnīs facere, quī nōn longē[6] ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret,[7] intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō[8] prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus[9] maximēque frū-
20 mentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

He Takes Active Measures.

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī[10] quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs quae circum

Cf. [1] **invītō,** p. 7, l. 16. — [2] **angustum,** 5, 7. — [3] **plūrimum,** 3, 25. — [4] **paterentur,** 6, 10. — [5] **esse in animō,** 6, 24. — [6] **longissimē,** 1, 7. — [7] **fiēbat,** 2, 23. — [8] **perīcula,** 4, 22. — [9] **patēbant,** 3, 5. — [10] **mūnītiōne,** 7, 24.



FIG. 7.—JUNCTION OF THE RHONE AND SAÔNE.

Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem[1] Galliam per Alpīs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Some Tribes Resist his March, but he Crosses the Rhone with his Army.

Ibi Ceutrones et Grāiocelī et Caturīges locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs,[2] ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnīs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit;[3] inde in Allobrogum fīnīs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetii Commit Depredations on their March, and Several Tribes Ask for Cæsar's Help against them.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnīs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum[4] auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vastārī, līberī [eōrum] in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.' Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem[5] faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobroges, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs[6] possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī.[7] Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum[8] cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Cf. [1] **ulteriōrem,** p. 6, l. 16. — [2] **pulsum,** 7, 2. — [3] **pervenit,** 6, 17. — [4] **rogāre,** 6, 26. — [5] **certiōrēs,** 6, 21. — [6] **vīcōs,** 4, 19. — [7] **reliqua,** 4, 19. — [8] **sociōs,** 5, 5.

The Helvetii Attempt to Cross the Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnīs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per
5 explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,[1] quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus,[2] ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Cæsar Cuts to Pieces a Part (the Tigurini), Who had not yet Crossed.

10 Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantīs adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās[3] silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset,[4] patrum nostrōrum
15 memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

Thus he Wipes out a Long-standing Disgrace.

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars



FIG. 8. — COIN OF PISO.



FIG. 9. — COIN OF CASSIUS.

cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat,[5] ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar

Cf. [1] **trādūxerant**, p. 9, l. 12. — [2] **proficīscī**, 6, 15. — [3] **proximum**, 9, 1. [4] **exīre**, 5, 7. — [5] **īnferre**, 2, 24.

nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est; quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Cæsar Crosses the Saône.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. 5

The Helvetii Send an Embassy.

Helvētii repentīnō ēius adventū[1] commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant,[2] ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum unō diē fēcisse intellegerent,[3] lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 10

Divico's Speech.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: 'Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset[4] atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium[5] ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.' 15 20

Cf. [1] **adventū**, p. 6, l. 21. — [2] **cōnficiendās**, 3, 11. — [3] **intellegēbat**, 8, 17. — [4] **cōnstitūtā**, 4, 7. — [5] **auxilium**, 9, 15.

Caesar's Reply.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret,[1] atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōn-
5 scius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret[2] quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.[3] Quod sī veteris[4] contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō[5] iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent,
10 quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse[6] admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre.[7] Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālīs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne
15 rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī[8] velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.[9]

He Proposes Terms, Which are not Accepted.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē
20 iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.' Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus[10] suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint;[11] ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō
25 discessit.

Cf. [1] **tenēbat,** p. 7, l. 1. — [2] **intellegēbat,** 8, 17. — [3] **putābat,** 7, 3. — [4] **veteris,** 11, 16. — [5] **invītō,** 7, 16. — [6] **ferre,** l. 3. — [7] **pertinent,** 1, 9. — [8] **ultus,** 11, 1. — [9] **concēdendum,** 7, 3. — [10] **māiōribus,** 11, 20. — [11] **cōnsuēsse,** l. 13.

Slight Reverse of Cæsar's Cavalry.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum[1] habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius[2] novissimum agmen īnse- 5 cūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii Move on; Cæsar Follows.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam[3] et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs 10 lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum 15 interesset.

The Hædui Neglect to Furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus[4] (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē 20 pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat;[5] eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere[6] nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. 25

Cf. [1] **coēgit,** p. 4, l. 9. — [2] **cupidī,** 3, 1. — [3] **nōn numquam,** 7, 22. — [4] **septentriōnēs,** 2, 4. — [5] **suppeteret,** 3, 10. — [6] **discessit,** 12, 25.

Cæsar Summons their Chiefs and Upbraids them.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit[1] et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in



FIG. 10. — LOADING BOATS WITH SUPPLIES.

his Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat quem
5 vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter[2] eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī[3] posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn

Cf. [1] intellegēbat, p. 8, l. 17. — [2] gravius, 12, 14. — [3] sūmptūrum, 7, 8.

sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit,[1] multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus Explains the Situation: a Party Opposed to the Romans Prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nūllōs[2] quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem[3] plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant[4] quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum[5] Galliae obtinēre[6] nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī.[7] Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī;[8] hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.'

Liscus Privately Discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who Favors the Helvetii.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat,[9] celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius.[10] Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra. Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā,[11] cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrīs annōs portōria

Cf. [1] **suscipit,** p. 8, l. 10. — [2] **nōn nūllīs,** 6, 4. — [3] **plēbī,** 3, 21. — [4] **cōnferrī,** 13, 25. — [5] **prīncipātum,** 3, 20. — [6] **obtinēbant,** 6, 23. — [7] **ēripuit,** 4, 11. — [8] **ēnūntiātā,** 4, 4. — [9] **nōlēbat,** 13, 24. — [10] **audācius,** 13, 9. [11] **grātiā,** 8, 5.

reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātīs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum
5 numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās[1] cīvitātīs largiter posse; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre
10 et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātīs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat
15 Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī[2] venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat[3] etiam in quaerendō[4] Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs[5] ante diēbus esset factum, initium[6] [ēius] fugae
20 factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus, — nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat;[7] eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Cæsar Thinks that Dumnorix should be Punished.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per fīnīs Sēquanōrum Helvē-
25 tiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset,[8] quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur[9] quā rē in

Cf. [1] **fīnitimōs**, p. 8, l. 20. — [2] **obtinēre**, 15, 9. — [3] **reperit**, 15, 23. — [4] **quaerit**, 15, 23. — [5] **paucī**, 13, 7. — [6] **initium**, 2, 1. — [7] **praeerat**, 14, 4. — [8] **cūrat**, 11, 5. — [9] **arbitrantur**, 4, 15.

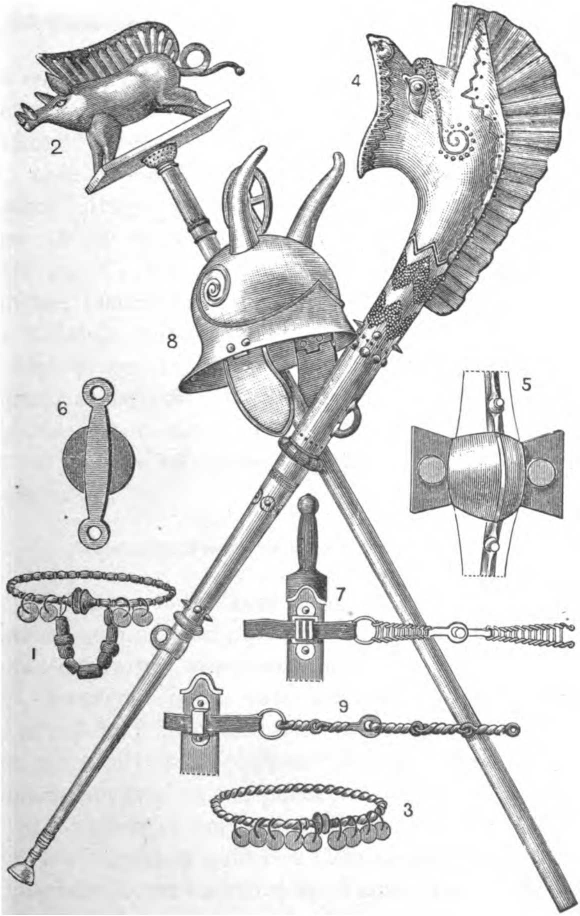


FIG. 11. — GALLIC REMAINS.

1 and 3. Necklaces with amber and coral pendants. 2. Military standard. 4. Bronze trumpet (carnyx). 5. Iron boss of shield. 6. Iron holder. 7. Sword-hilt and girdle. 8. Iron helmet. 9. Iron belt-chain.

eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

But Summons Diviciacus, Whom he does not Wish to Offend.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem,[1] ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnō- 5 verat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur,[2] Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotīdiānīs[3] interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Procillum, prīncipem[4] Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum 10 fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; et ostendit[5] quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat[6] vel cīvitātem 15 statuere iubeat.

Diviciacus Pleads for his Brother's Pardon.

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: 'Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris[7] capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī 20 atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur;[8] sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne volgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset,[9] 25 cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem[10]

Cf. [1] **voluntāte,** p. 6, l. 26.—[2] **cōnārī,** 6, 15.—[3] **cotīdiānīs,** 1, 12. —[4] **prīncipibus,** 14, 2.—[5] **ostendit,** 7, 20.—[6] **statuit,** 9, 25.—[7] **dolōre,** 3, 1.—[8] **ūtī,** 13, 23.—[9] **accidat,** 16, 14.—[10] **nēmō,** 16, 3.

existimātūrum[1] nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.'[2]

And for his Sake Dumnorix is Spared.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat;
5 tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus[3] condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur,[4] prōpōnit;[5] monet ut in reliquum tempus omnīs
10 suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Cæsar Prepares for a Battle.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus[6] certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō,
15 quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum[7] est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā[8] T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī[9] sit
20 ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.[10]

Cf. [1] **exīstimābat,** p. 7, l. 5. — [2] **āverterant,** 13, 23. — [3] **precibus,** 15, 1. — [4] **queritur,** 15, 3. — [5] **prōpōnit,** 15, 5. — [6] **explōrātōrēs,** 10, 5. — [7] **renūntiātur,** 8, 14. — [8] **vigiliā,** 10, 7. — [9] **cōnsilia,** 15, 13. — [10] **praemittit,** 13, 4.

Considius, being Panic-stricken, Delays the Plan.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius[1] mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset,[2] neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut



FIG. 12. — CAVALRYMAN CHARGING.



FIG. 13. — CAVALRYMAN WITH *Vexillum.*

ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus[3] esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī[4] voluerit[5] ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum[6] collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostīs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et

Cf. [1] **longē,** p. 8, l. 16. — [2] **absunt,** 1, 7. — [3] **cōgnōverat,** 17, 5. — [4] **occupātīs,** 9, 5. — [5] **velint,** 12, 15. — [6] **proximās,** 10, 12.

Helvētiōs castra mōvisse[1] et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostīs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Cæsar Turns towards Bibracte to Get Supplies. The Helvetii, Emboldened, Follow him.

5 **23**. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō[2] bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum metīrī[3] oportēret,[4] et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius[5] mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; *itaque* iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit 10 ac Bibracte īre contendit.[6] Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent,[7] sīve eō quod rē frūmentāriā[8] 15 interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō[9] agmine īnsequī[10] ac lacessere[11] coepērunt.

Both Sides Prepare for Battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret 20 hostium impetum[12] mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit[13] legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre[14] proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā] sarcinās in ūnum locum

Cf. [1] **movent,** p. 13, l. 1. — [2] **omnīnō,** 6, 18. — [3] **metīrī,** 14, 2. — [4] **oportēret,** 14, 2. — [5] **amplius,** 13, 15. — [6] **contendit,** 18, 21. — [7] **committeret,** 19, 9. — [8] **frūmentāriīs,** 8, 19. — [9] **novissimum,** 13, 5. — [10] **īnsecūtī,** 13, 5. — [11] **lacessere,** 13, 11. — [12] **impetus,** 19, 11. — [13] **īnstruit,** 19, 8. — [14] **citeriōris,** 9, 6.

cōnferrī, et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant[1] mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī,



FIG. 14.—SOLDIERS MARCHING WITH PACKS (*sarcinae*).

impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. 5

Cf. [1] **cōnstitissent**, p. 11, l. 23.

The Battle.

25. Caesar prīmum suō deinde omnium ex cōnspectū[1] remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgē-
5 runt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā

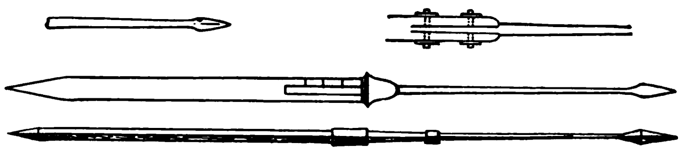


FIG. 15.—ROMAN JAVELINS (*pīla*).

impedītā[2] satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū
10 iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem volneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus[3] nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen
15 hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs *ab* latere apertō adgressī[4] circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac
20 submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientīs sustinēret.

Cf. [1] **cōnspectū**, p. 9, l. 16. — [2] **impedītōs**, 10, 10. — [3] **successērunt**, 21, 5. — [4] **adgressus**, 10, 10.

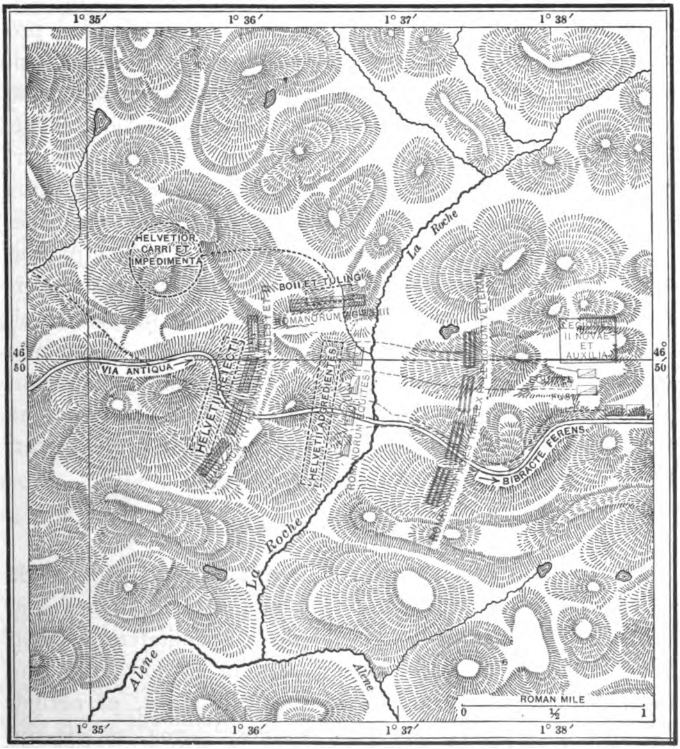


FIG. 16. — DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII.

The Helvetii are Defeated with Great Loss. They Retreat.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre[1] nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta[2] et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum 5

Cf. [1] **sustinēret**, p. 20, l. 19. — [2] **impedīmenta**, 21, 3.

sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem
etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō
vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni-
entīs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī[1] inter carrōs rēdāsque
5 matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant.
Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī
potītī[2] sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus
est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuē-
runt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter[3] iērunt: [nūllam partem
10 noctis itinere intermissō] in fīnīs Lingonum diē quartō per-
vēnērunt,[4] cum et propter volnera mīlitum et propter sepul-
tūram occīsōrum[5] nostrī [trīduum morātī] eōs sequī nōn
potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit
nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē
15 eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō inter-
missō cum omnibus cōpiīs[6] eōs sequī coepit.

Negotiations for Surrender.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē
dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-
vēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī
20 flentēs[7] pācem petīssent,[8] atque eōs in eō locō quō tum
essent suum adventum[9] exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt.
Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs,[10] arma, servōs quī
ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.

Six Thousand Helvetii Flee, but Later are Captured.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur,[11] [nocte intermissā]
25 circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī[12] quī Verbigenus appel-
lātur, sīve timōre perterritī,[13] nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō[14]

Cf. [1] **nōn nūllōs**, p. 15, l. 5. — [2] **potīrī**, 2, 16. — [3] **continenter**, 1, 10. — [4] **pervēnit**, 10, 8. — [5] **occīsum**, 7, 2. — [6] **cōpiās**, 19, 7. — [7] **flēns**, 18, 3. — [8] **peteret**, 18, 3. — [9] **adventū**, 16, 12. — [10] **obsidēs**, 12, 18. — [11] **cōnferrī**, 21, 1. — [12] **pāgus**, 10, 12. — [13] **perterritōs**, 20, 12. — [14] **suppliciō**, 17, 6.

adficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō

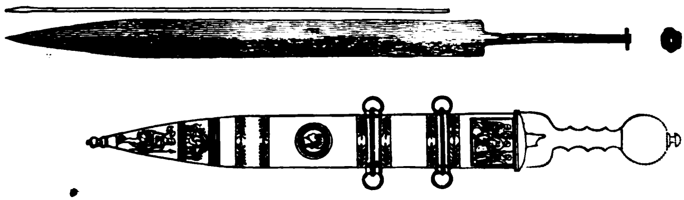


FIG. 17.—ROMAN SWORDS (*gladii*).

īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent,[1] prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnīsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnīs ierant, hīs uti conquīrerent[2] et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;[3] reliquōs omnīs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem[4] accēpit. 5

The Helvetii Forced to Return.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnīs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam[5] facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant,[6] restituere[7] iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant[8] vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnīs trānsīrent, et fīnitimī[9] Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā[10] virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit;[11] 10 15 20

Cf. [1] **exīstimātūrum,** p. 18, l. 1. — [2] **conquīruntur,** 24, 24. — [3] **habitūrum,** 24, 15. — [4] **dēditiōne,** 24, 18. — [5] **cōpiam,** 14, 3. — [6] **incendunt,** 4, 20. — [7] **restitūtus,** 16, 14. — [8] **discēdere,** 20, 12. — [9] **fīnitimās,** 16, 6. — [10] **ēgregiam,** 17, 5. — [11] **concēdere,** 12, 17.

quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Census of the Tribes Before and After their March.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae[1] sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs
5 nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim *quot* puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs
10 quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

Gallic Chiefs Congratulate Cæsar.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī,
15 prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus[2] Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse;[3] proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus
20 domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent,[4] utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur[5] locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent,[6] quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātīs stīpendiāriās habērent.'

They Request a Council.

25 Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret:[7] sēsē habēre

Cf. [1] **reperiēbat,** p. 16, l. 17. — [2] **veteris,** 12, 7. — [3] **accidisset,** 17, 25. — [4] **relinquēbātur,** 8, 1. — [5] **potītī,** 24, 7. — [6] **dēligitur,** 3, 14. — [7] **liceat,** 6, 26.

quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret,[1] nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Private Interview with Cæsar.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt[2] petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte[3] cum eō agere[4] licēret. Eā rē impetrātā[5] sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt:[6] 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent; propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

Speech of Diviciacus the Hæduan. He Complains of the Encroachments of the Germans.

Locūtus[7] est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrīs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientīs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs[8] accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse.[9] Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā

Cf. [1] **ēnūntiārī**, p. 15, l. 14. — [2] **revertī**, 25, 11. — [3] **salūtis**, 25, 1. — — [4] **ēgit**, 11, 12. — [5] **impetrat**, 8, 10. — [6] **prōiēcissent**, 24, 19. — [7] **locūtī**, 24, 19. — [8] **pulsīs**, 9, 6. — [9] **āmissīs**, 25, 11.

potuissent, coāctōs[1] esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere[2] sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs[3] neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum
5 diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus
10 tenērētur.[4]

The Hard Lot of the Sequani.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset[5] tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā
15 parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus[6] ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferen-
20 dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque[7] līberōs
25 poscere,[8] et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque[9] ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius[10] sustinērī.

Cf. [1] **coāctus**, p. 15, l. 15.—[2] **obstrictās**, 8, 9. — [3] **repetīsset**, 26, 17. — [4] **tenērī**, 19, 6. — [5] **cōnsēdisse**, 18, 14. — [6] **mēnsium**, 4, 23. — [7] **quisque**, 17, 13.— [8] **poposcit**, 24, 23. — [9] **cruciātum**, 27, 12. — [10] **diū**, 23, 1.

The Gauls have no Hope but in Cæsar.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium aliās sēdīs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn 5 dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,[1] Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.' 10

The Sequani Remain Silent. Diviciacus Shows their Desperate Condition.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs quī aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt.[2] Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs[3] ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstīs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit.[4] Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit : 'Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,[5] quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī[6] neque auxilium implōrāre audērent; absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās[7] darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnīs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.' 15 20 25

Cf. [1] **trāductōs,** p. 27, l. 20. — [2] **coepit,** 24, 16. — [3] **ūnum,** 28, 5. — [4] **quaerendō,** 16, 18. — [5] **reliquās,** 26, 23. — [6] **querātur,** 18, 9. — [7] **facultāte,** 7, 4.

Cæsar's Reasons for Checking Ariovistus.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs[1] Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque[2] est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrāti-
5 ōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur[3] quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: imprīmīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque[4] saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne[5] vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque
10 obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.[6] Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere[7] Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat;
15 neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs[8] exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent; [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret]; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē
20 occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn viderētur.

He Requests an Interview with Ariovistus, Who Declines.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium
25 utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere.[9] Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē

Cf. [1] **cōgnitus**, p. 19, l. 4. — [2] **pollicitī**, 13, 18. — [3] **hortātur**, 17, 14. — [4] **cōnsanguineī**, 9, 19. — [5] **diciōne**, 28, 5. — [6] **arbitrābātur**, 16, 28. — [7] **cōnsuērat**, 20, 3. — [8] **temperātūrōs**, 7, 5. — [9] **agere**, 27, 8.

ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre.[1] Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partīs Galliae venīre audēre[2] quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī[3] quid in 5 suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.'

Cæsar Sends a Second Message Stating his Demands.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū 10 suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī[4] rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius[5] trāns 15 Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret,[6] nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpe- 20 tuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret,[7] sēsē, — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, — sē Haeduō- 25 rum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

Ariovistus's Haughty Reply.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs[8] esse bellī ut

Cf. [1] **oportēbat**, p. 4, l. 6. — [2] **audērent**, 29, 21. — [3] **vidērentur**, 6, 9. — [4] **commūnī**, 27, 1. — [5] **amplius**, 20, 8. — [6] **lacessere**, 13, 11. — [7] **impetrātā**, 27, 8. — [8] **iūris**, 26, 1.

quī vīcissent eīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse.[1] Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum
5 suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs[2] esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectīgālia[3] sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē
10 obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum,[4] sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn
15 neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē[5] contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.'

Complaints of the Hædui and Treveri. Cæsar Hastens against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,[6]
20 et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum[7] quod Harūdes, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnīs eōrum populārentur;[8] sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēvōrum ad rīpam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse,[9]
25 quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum[10] sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēvōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam

Cf. [1] cōnsuēscere, p. 30, l. 13. — [2] **stīpendiāriās,** 26, 24. — [3] **vectīgālia,** 16, 1. — [4] **īnferret,** 31, 20. — [5] **perniciem,** 17, 23. — [6] **relātīs,** 31, 8. — [7] **querī,** 29, 21. — [8] **populābantur,** 9, 13. — [9] **cōnsēdisset,** 28, 13. — [10] **mātūrat,** 6, 15.

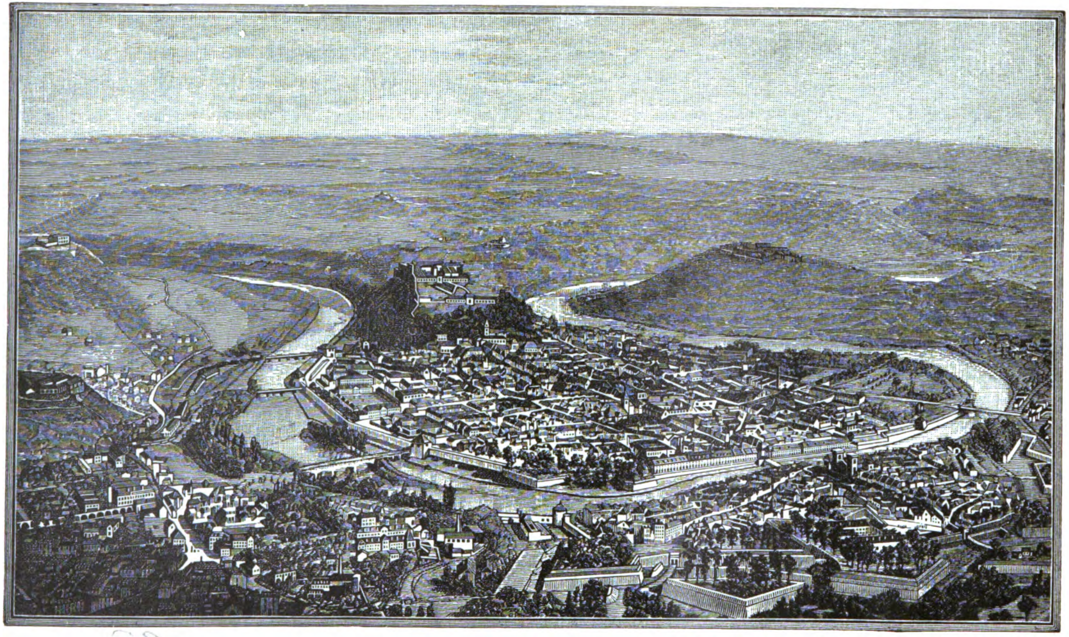


FIG. 18. — BESANÇON (*Vesontio*).

celerrimē[1] potuit comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both Strive to Reach Vesontio.

38. Cum trīduī[2] viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, 5 [trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret[3] māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem,[4] propthereā 10 quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem 15 efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit,[5] occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

The Roman Soldiers are Panic-stricken.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque[6] causā morātur,[7] ex percontātiōne nostrōrum 20 vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant, — saepenumerō[8] sēsē cum hīs congressōs[9] nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exer- 25 citum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentīs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus[10] est ā tribūnīs mīlitum,

Cf. [1] **celeriter,** p. 15, l. 20. — [2] **trīduum,** 24, 12. — [3] **accidat,** 29, 4. — [4] **facultās,** 29, 23. — [5] **contenderent,** 30, 18. — [6] **commeātū,** 31, 4. — [7] **morātī,** 24, 12. — [8] **saepenumerō,** 30, 8. — [9] **congrederētur,** 32, 16. — [10] **oriuntur,** 2, 5.

praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte[1] discēdere
5 licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent,[2] remanēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī[3] in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus[4] suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs tes-
10 tāmenta obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae
15 intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē[5] supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientīs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Cæsar Makes Light of their Fears, and Proposes to Advance at Once.

20 **40.** Haec cum animadvertisset,[6] convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs[7] centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum[8] putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī
25 Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam[9] ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?[10] Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī

Cf. [1] **voluntāte,** p. 31, l. 18. — [2] **vītet,** 18, 10. — [3] **abdidērunt,** 10, 12. — [4] **familiārem,** 17, 10. — [5] **commodē,** 22, 9. — [6] **animadvertit,** 29, 12. — [7] **adhibet,** 18, 7. — [8] **cōgitandam,** 30, 6. — [9] **quemquam,** 17, 19. — [10] **iūdicāssent,** 26, 23.

grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent?[1] Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Gāiō Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem 5 exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus[2] vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid



FIG. 19. — MARIUS.

ūsus[3] ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent.[4] Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā 10 timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.[5]

Dēnique[6] hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs[7] esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et 15 fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsīs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestā-

Cf. [1] **dēspērāre**, p. 16, l. 17. — [2] **meritōs**, 9, 16. — [3] **ūsum**, 34, 2. — [4] **sublevētur**, 15, 1. — [5] **superāverint**, 15, 11. — [6] **dēnique**, 19, 12. — [7] **parem**, 26, 1.

tem fēcisset, dēspērantīs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum,[1] magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī
5 posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō[2] imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere[3] vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs,
10 Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra;[4] dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī[5] dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque[6] exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam
15 dēfuisse, aut aliquō[7] facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.[8]

Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra
20 mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor[9] atque officium an timor plūs valēret.[10] Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur,[11] tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.' Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē
25 et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

Effect of Cæsar's Speech. He Advances.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās[12] bellī gerendī innāta est; prīncepsque[13] decima legiō per tribūnōs

Cf. [1] **adortus,** p. 11, l. 17. — [2] **officiō,** 34, 26. — [3] **praescrīberet,** 32, 4. — [4] **mātūra,** 13, 20. — [5] **lātūrōs,** 34, 19. — [6] **quaecumque,** 29, 4. — [7] **aliquem,** 30, 24. — [8] **perspectā,** 34, 28. — [9] **pudōre,** 34, 5. — [10] **valeat,** 15, 5. — [11] **secūtī,** 34, 2. — [12] **cupiditāte,** 8, 7. — [13] **prīnceps,** 10, 19.

mīlitum eī grātiās[1] ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent:[2] 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse 5 neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex aliīs eī maximam fidem[3] habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus 10 est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Ariovistus Requests an Interview. Cæsar's Precautions.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō[4] postulāsset, id per sē 15 fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret.' Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī[5] dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī 20 in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs,[6] fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret.

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar 25 addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī[7] volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-

Cf. [1] **grātiam,** p. 31, l. 12. — [2] **satisfaciant,** 12, 21. — [3] **fidem,** 17, 11. — [4] **conloquiō,** 30, 25. — [5] **petēbat,** 34, 4. — [6] **postulārent,** 30, 24. — [7] **tolleret,** 22, 2.

tātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētractīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat,[1] impōnere, ut praesidium[2] quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus[3]
5 factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum;[4] ad equum rescrībere.

Caesar Pleads with Ariovistus, but Renews his Demands.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis
10 grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē[5] spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvēxerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt.[6] Ariovistus ex equīs ut conlo-
15 querentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,[7] quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō
20 māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs
25 cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam adpetīssent. 'Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem[8] ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dīgnitāte,

Cf. [1] **cōnfīdēbat**, p. 36, l. 25. — [2] **praesidiō**, 22, 15. — [3] **opus**, 30, 27. — [4] **habuit**, 25, 7. — [5] **ferē**, 26, 14. — [6] **cōnstiterant**, 21, 1. — [7] **commemorāssent**, 12, 2. — [8] **cōnsuētūdinem**, 28, 21.

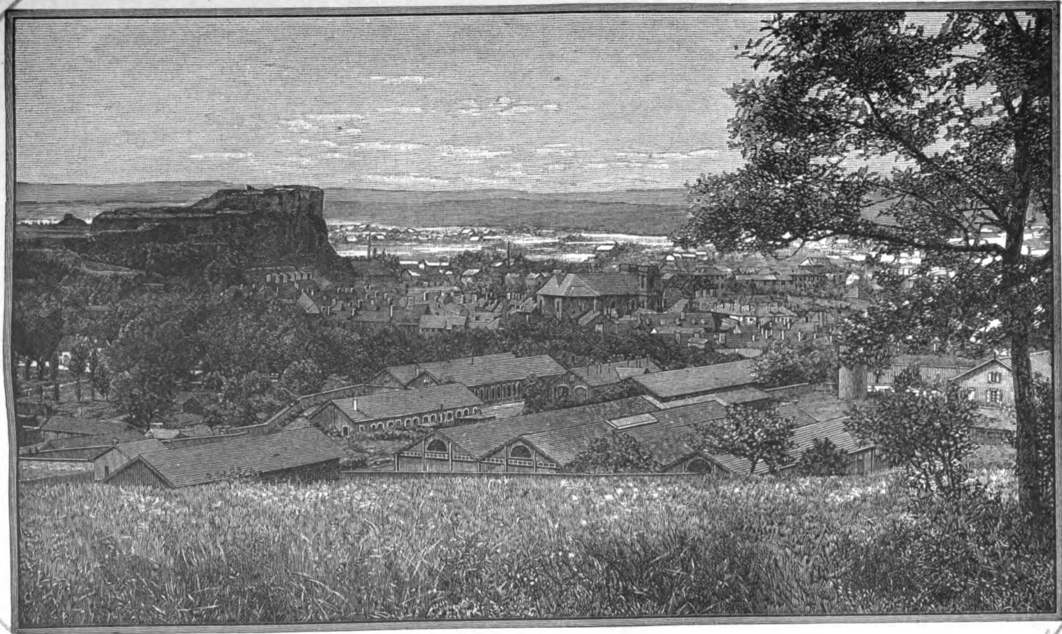


FIG. 20. — BELFORT.

honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī adtulissent, id eīs ēripī[1] quis patī posset?' Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet;[2] sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere 5 posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus Arrogantly Repeats his Claims.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit:[3] 'Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque[4] 10 relīquisse; sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre[5] bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnīs Galliae cīvitātīs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās 15 omnīs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum[6] experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.[7]

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō,[8] 20 nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, idque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī[9] subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam adpetierit.[10]

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id 25 sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in

Cf. [1] **ēreptūrī**, p. 15, l. 12. — [2] **redditūrum**, 32, 10. — [3] **praedicābant**, 33, 23. — [4] **propinquās**, 16, 10. — [5] **iūs**, 31, 27. — [6] **iterum**, 31, 8. — [7] **penderent**, 32, 12. — [8] **praesidium**, 38, 4. — [9] **dēditiciōrum**, 25, 2. — [10] **adpetīssent**, 38, 27.

Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum.[1] Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut
5 illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī[2] nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnīs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum[3] esse rērum ut nōn
10 scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre[4] sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā quem
15 exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat[5] atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit,[6] multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsīs per
20 eōrum nūntiōs compertum[7] habēre quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere[8] posset. Quod sī discessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset,[9] māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.'[10]

Cæsar Does not Yield.

25 **45.** Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō[11] dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī[12] utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse

Cf. [1] **ēgressī,** p. 25, l. 4. — [2] **concessit,** 25, 20. — [3] **imperītōs,** 36, 3. — [4] **dēbeant,** 15, 9. — [5] **dēcēdere,** 28, 15. — [6] **interfēcerat,** 10, 15. — [7] **compertō,** 36, 15. — [8] **redimere,** 32, 23. — [9] **trāditīs,** 25, 8. — [10] **cōnfectō,** 26, 14. — [11] **negōtī,** 31, 7. — [12] **patī,** 39, 2.

Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus īgnōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse 5



FIG. 21. — COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY.

in Galliā imperium;[1] sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

The Germans Make a Treacherous Attack, and Cæsar Withdraws.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur,[2] Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius[3] tumulum accēdere,[4] et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere.[5] Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs.[6] Posteāquam in volgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque[7] in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut dīrēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum est. 10 15 20

Cf. [1] **imperiō,** p. 28, l. 5. — [2] **gerantur,** 15, 13. — [3] **propius,** 37, 16. — [4] **accessisset,** 37, 16. — [5] **coniciēbant,** 24, 4. — [6] **circumvenīrētur,** 37, 26. — [7] **impetum,** 40, 6.

Seizure of Two of Caesar's Envoys by Ariovistus.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: 'Velle sē dē hīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret,[1] aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs
5 aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis quod prīdiē[2] ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum [ē suīs] sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum[3]
10 vīsum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, — cūius pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō
15 peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et M. Mētium, quī hospitiō[4] Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent.[5] Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspēxisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: 'Quid ad sē
20 venīrent? an speculandī causā?' Cōnantīs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Manœuvering and Skirmishing.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē[6] ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus pas-
25 suum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet.[7] Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam[8]

Cf. [1] **cōnstituērunt,** p. 27, l. 2. — [2] **prīdiē,** 20, 13. — [3] **commodissimum,** 38, 1. — [4] **hospitiō,** 27,26. — [5] **referēbantur,** 32, 19. — [6] **postrīdiē,** 20, 5. — [7] **interclūdī,** 20, 15. — [8] **īnstrūxit,** 20, 21.

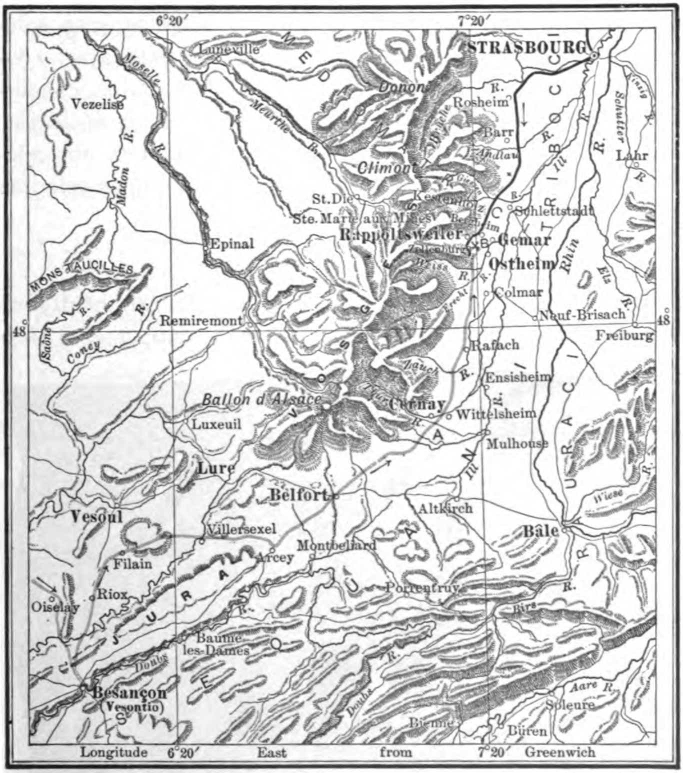


Fig. 22. — Map of the Campaign with Ariovistus.

habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās[1] nōn deësset.[2] Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē[3] contendit.

German Method of Fighting.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī 5

Cf. [1] **potestātem,** p. 35, l. 18. — [2] **dēfuisse,** 36, 15. — [3] **cotīdiē,** 13, 17.

ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant;[1] hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre[2] volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, 5 circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius[3] recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Cæsar Fortifies another Camp.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Ger-



FIG. 23. — SOLDIERS ATTACKED WHILE ENCAMPING.

10 mānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre[4] iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter

Cf. [1] recēpit, p. 41, l. 12. — [2] graviōrem, 29, 19. — [3] celerrimē, 33, 1. — [4] mūniēbātur, 33, 9.

passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent[1] et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum,[2] quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit. 5

More Skirmishing, but No General Engagement.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque[3] cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre[4] intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra[5] oppūgnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū[6] suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs[7] et acceptīs volneribus in castra redūxit. 10 15

Reason for the Germans' Delay.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret,[8] hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū[9] esset necne; eās ita dīcere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.' 20

Cæsar Forces a Battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālāriōs omnīs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit,[10] quod minus multi- 25

Cf. [1] **perterritī**, p. 24, l. 26. — [2] **auxilia**, 20, 23. — [3] **uterque**, 37, 27. — [4] **prōdeundum**, 44, 5. — [5] **minōrem**, 35, 5. — [6] **occāsum**, 2, 9. — [7] **intulerat**, 10, 19. — [8] **dēcertāre**, 39, 17. — [9] **ūsū**, 26, 18. — [10] **cōnstituit**, 38, 13.

tūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat,[1] ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.[2] Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōn-
5 stituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēvōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs[3] imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentīs, passīs manibus flentēs, implōrābant
10 nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Description of the Battle.

52. Caesar singulīs[4] legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit,[5] utī eōs testīs[6] suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī
15 ācriter in hostīs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, ita-que hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium[7] pīla in hostīs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs cōminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī
20 sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga[8] īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō[9] cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
25 adulēscēns,[10] quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior[11] erat quam eī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

Cf. [1] **valēret**, p. 36, l. 21. — [2] **accēdere**, 41, 10. — [3] **mulierēs**, 26, 7. — [4] **singulī**, 44, 1. — [5] **praeficit**, 8, 22. — [6] **testem**, 12, 24. — [7] **spatium**, 7, 6. — [8] **phalange**, 21, 4. — [9] **sinistrā**, 22, 8. — [10] **adulēscentem**, 42, 11. — [11] **expedīta**, 45, 2.

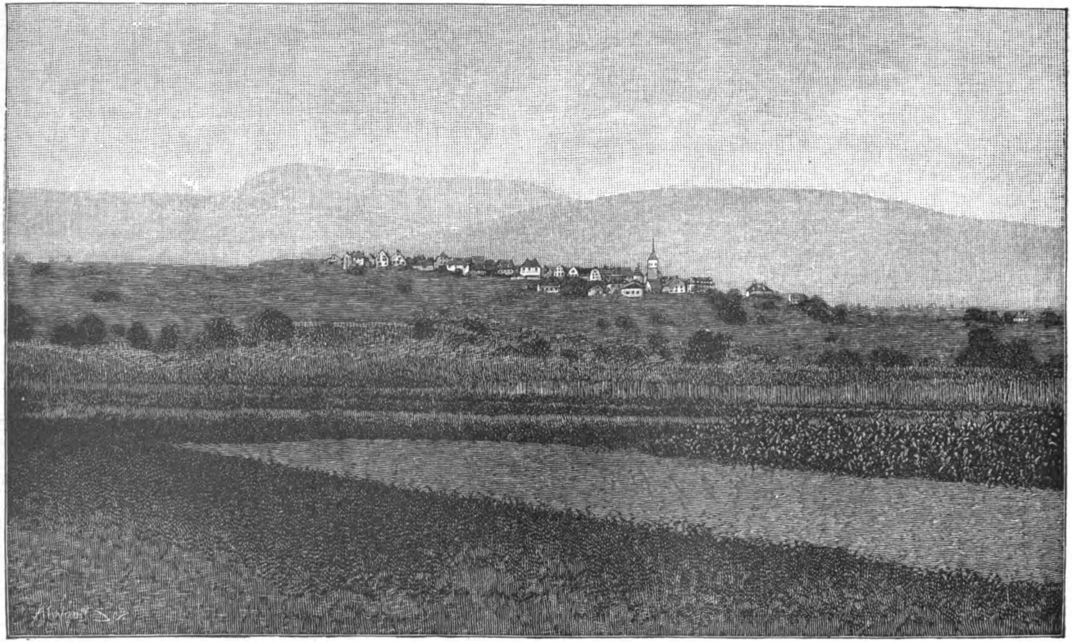


FIG. 24. — VIEW FROM OSTHEIM, LOOKING TOWARDS ZELLENBERG.

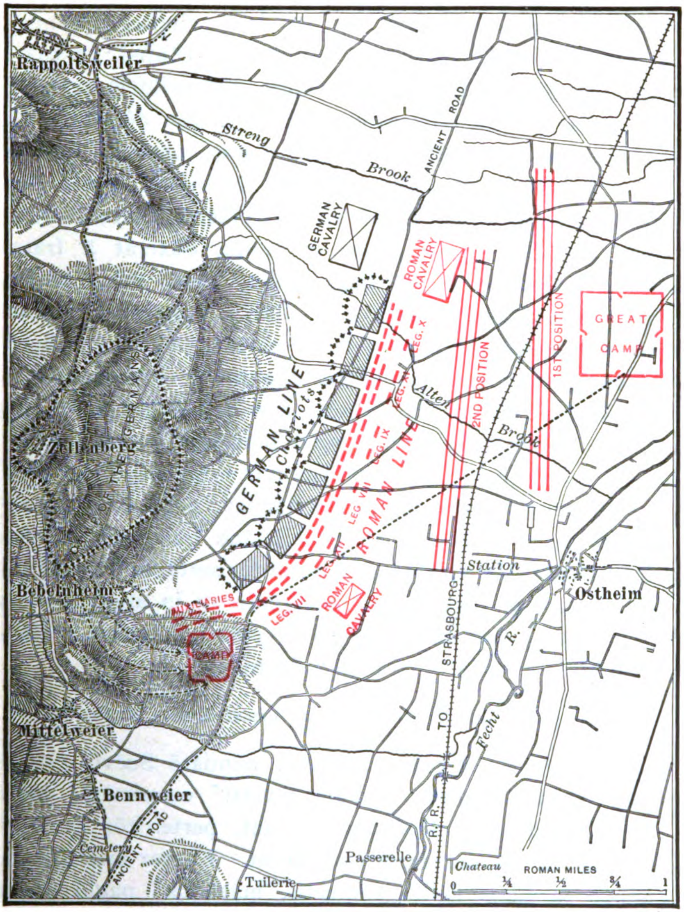


FIG. 25.—PLAN OF BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

Complete Defeat of the Germans. Recovery of the Two Envoys.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt[1] quam ad flūmen

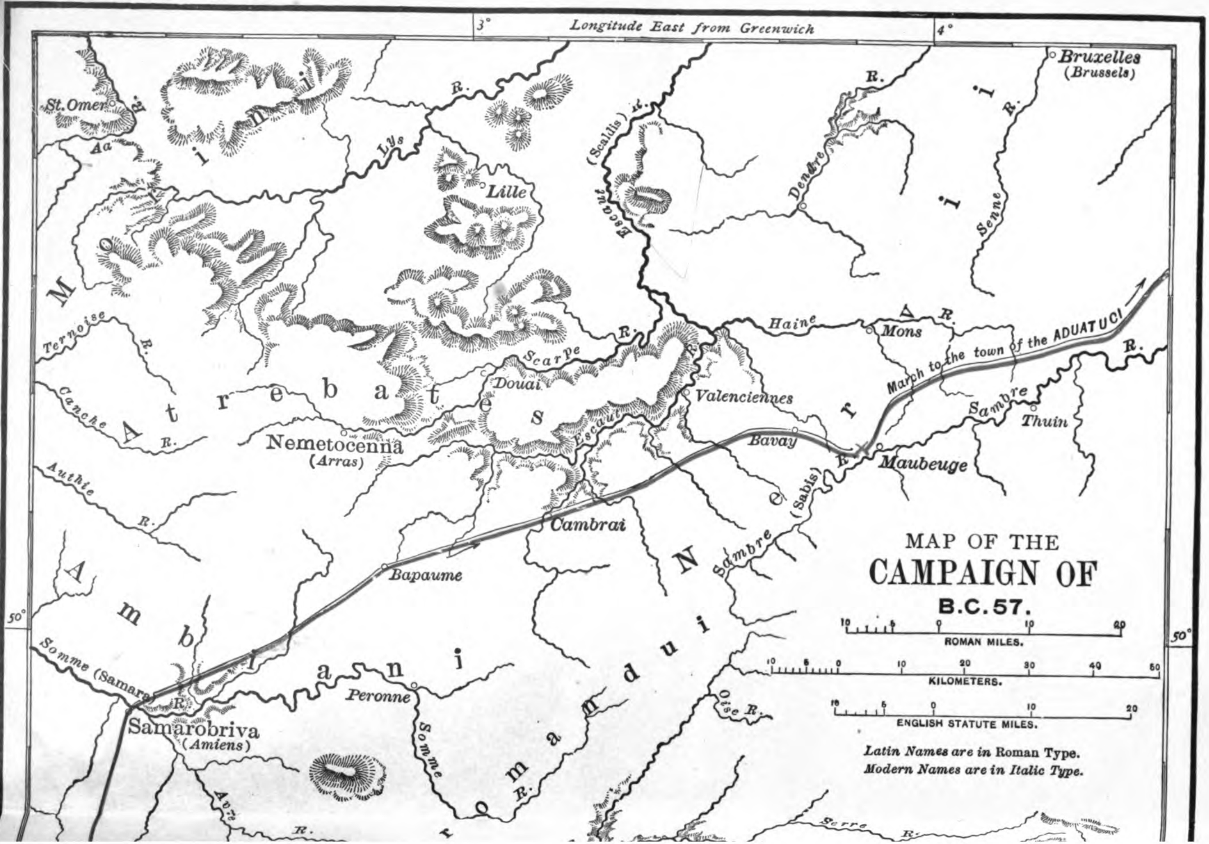
Cf. [1] **dēsistere,** p. 40, l. 26.

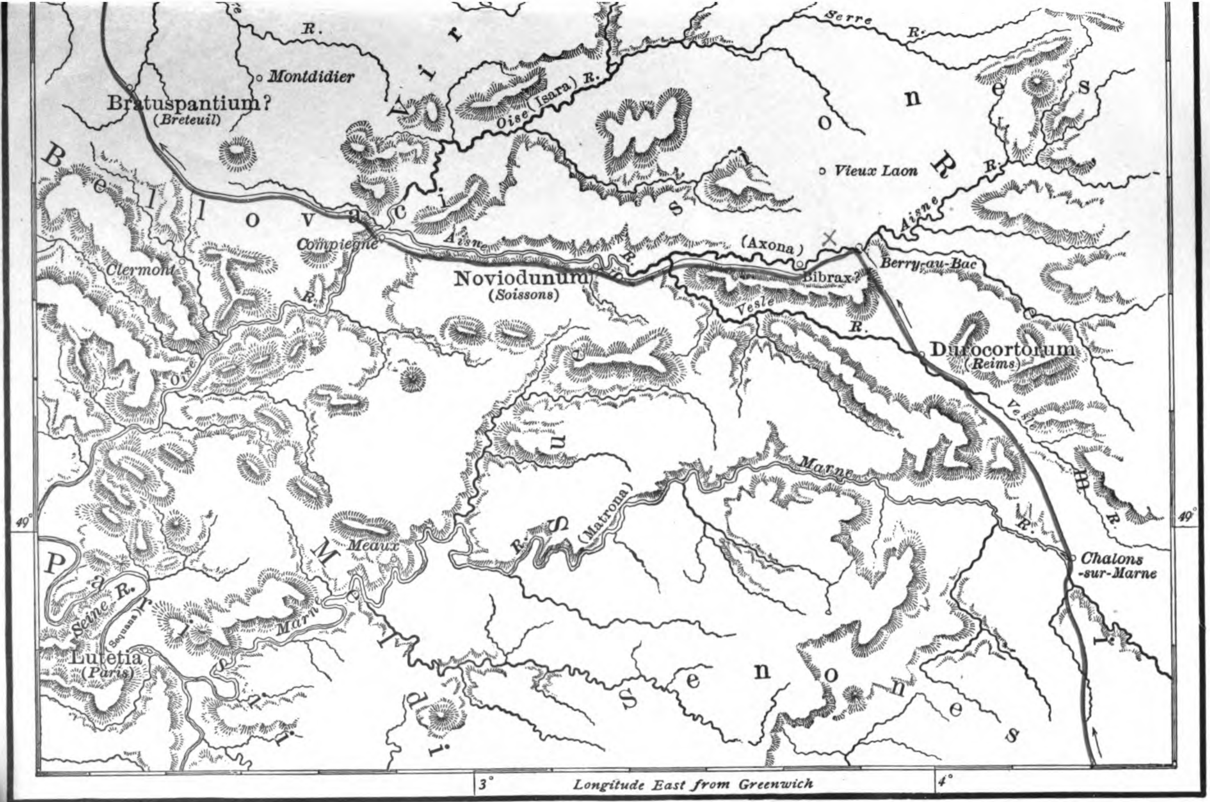
Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī[1] trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus[2] inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad
5 rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnīs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae fīliae hārum
10 altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus[3] in fugā trīnīs catēnīs[4] vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum
15 prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat.[5] Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus[6] cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus
20 reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. Cæsar Goes to Hither Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī[7] coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī
25 māgnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius[8] paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

Cf. [1] **cōnfīdēbat,** p. 36, l. 25. — [2] **lintribus,** 10, 4. — [3] **custōdēs,** 18, 11. — [4] **catēnās,** 42, 21. — [5] **dēminūta,** 16, 13. — [6] **sortibus,** 45, 20. — [7] **revertī,** 37, 18. — [8] **mātūrrimē,** 30, 19.


MAP OF THE
CAMPAIGN OF
B.C. 57.
Longitude East from Greenwich
3°
4°
50°
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type.
Modern Names are in Italic Type.
March to the town of the ADUATUCI
Bruxelles
(Brussels)
St. Omer
Aa
Lys R.
Lille
Escaut (Scaldis) R.
Dendre
Senne R.
Haine
Mons
Scarpe R.
Douai
Valenciennes
Sambre
Thuin
Bavay
Maubeuge
Sambre (Sabis) R.
Ternoise R.
Canche R.
Authie R.
Nemetocenna
(Arras)
Cambrai
Bapaume
Somme (Samara) R.
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Peronne
Somme R.
Oise R.
Avre
Serre
Morini
Atrebates
Nervii
Ambiani
Viromandui



Bratuspantium?
(Breteuil)
Montdidier
Viri
Bellovaci
Suessiones
Remi
Oise (Isara) R.
Serre R.
Vieux Laon
Aisne R.
(Axona)
Berry-au-Bac
Bibrax?
Compiegne
Noviodunum
(Soissons)
Clermont
Oise
Vesle R.
Durocortorum
(Reims)
Marne
(Matrona)
Meaux
Meldi
Chalons
-sur-Marne
Parisii
Seine R.
(Sequana)
Lutetia
(Paris)
Senones
49°
3°
4°
Longitude East from Greenwich

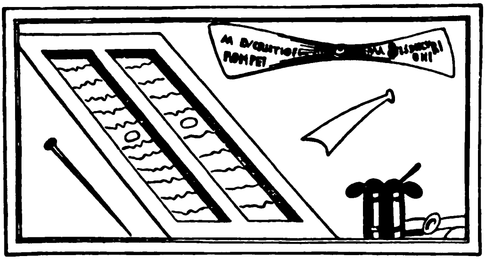


Fig. 27. — Writing Materials.

BOOK II.

The Belgian Confederacy. B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur,[1] litterīsque item Labiēnī certior[2] fīēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī 5 hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur[3] nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī[4] nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferē- 10 bant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātīs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī[5] poterant. 15

Cf. [1] **adtulit,** p. 48, l. 14. — [2] **certior,** 37, 12. — [3] **verērī,** 34, 14. — [4] **versābantur,** 44, 2. — [5] **cōnsecūtum,** 38, 22.

Cæsar promptly Moves against them.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte[1] in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum 5 vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs[2] cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs 10 proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnīs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque[3] omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsē-15 runt, quī dīcerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,[4] parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque[5] rēbus iuvāre;[6] 20 reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,[7] sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque[8] suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs 25 habeant, dēterrēre[9] potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.'

Origin and Strength of the Belgæ as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret[10] quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: plē-

Cf. [1] **aestāte,** p. 48, l. 25. — [2] **manūs,** 32, 27. — [3] **celerius,** 44, 5. — [4] **coniūrāre,** 49, 5. — [5] **cēterī,** 29, 14. — [6] **iuvārent,** 24, 14. — [7] **incolunt,** 48, 24. — [8] **cōnsanguineōs,** 30, 7. — [9] **dēterrēre,** 29, 8. — [10] **quaereret,** 45, 17.

rōsque Belgās esse ortōs[1] ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque[2] esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā,[3] Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnīs ingredī prohibuerint; quā 5 ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs[4] in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.[5] Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum con- 10



FIG. 29. — COIN OF DIVICIACUS, KING OF THE SUESSIONES.

ciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs[6] ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.[7] Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs;[8] fīnīs lātissi- 15 mōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum,[9] quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam[10] tōtīus 20 bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī

Cf. [1] **ortus**, p. 33, l. 27. — [2] **sōlā**, 36, 22. — [3] **vexāssent**, 12, 10. — [4] **spīritūs**, 30, 21. — [5] **sūmpserat**, 30, 21. — [6] **pollicitum**, 38, 7. — [7] **postulandī**, 38, 21. — [8] **fīnitimī**, 50, 5. — [9] **potentiōribus**, 49, 12. — [10] **summā**, 37, 6.

maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint;[1] quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia;
5 Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur,[2] arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Cæsar Marches to the Aisne, and Encamps beyond it.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter
10 ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum māgnopere[3] cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis[4] intersit manūs[5] hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnīs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint
15 et eōrum agrōs populārī[6] coeperint. Hīs *datīs* mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās[7] ad sē venīre [vīdit] neque iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus,
20 exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit[8] atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs[9] ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat.
25 Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

Cf. [1] **aberat,** p. 45, l. 1. — [2] **appellātōs,** 40, 8. — [3] **māgnopere,** 33, 7. — [4] **salūtem,** 48, 3. — [5] **manūs,** 50, 8. — [6] **populārentur,** 32, 22. — [7] **cōgī,** 50, 8. — [8] **mātūrandum,** 32, 27. — [9] **commeātū,** 42, 26.

The Belgae Attack Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles Away.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē[1] eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in 5 mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt[2], mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque



FIG. 30. — SLINGER (*funditor*).

subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius 10 Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius[3] sustinēre nōn posse.

Cf. [1] **aegerrimē,** p. 11, l. 8. — [2] **coeptae,** 42, 2. — [3] **diūtius,** 49, 9.

Cæsar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Adva

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem d
tiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crēta
tōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō[1] oppidānīs mitt
et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium[2]
5 sit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs poti
Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī
dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs[3] aedificiīsque
incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus c
ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus cast
10 castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificāb
passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Cæsar Strengthens his Posit

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdir
ter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō s
cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid
15 et quid nostrī audērent[5] perīclitābātur
esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrī
dam nātūrā opportūnō[6] atque idōneō, -
castra posita erant paululum ex plāniti
versus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum
20 occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque p
habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus pa
redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis
obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās
fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
25 aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant,
ab lateribus pūgnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō
duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat[10] in castrīs

Cf. [1] **subsidiō,** p. 46, l. 27. — [2] **studium,** 41, 21. — [3] **vīcōs,** 25, 13. — [4] **statuit,** 38, 1. — [5] **audēbat,** 38, 1. — [6] **opportūnissimum,** 26, 22. — [7] **plānitiēs,** 38, 9. — [8] **latus,** 52, 21. — [9] **paulātim,** 34, 10. — [10] **cōnscrīpsit,** 50, 2.

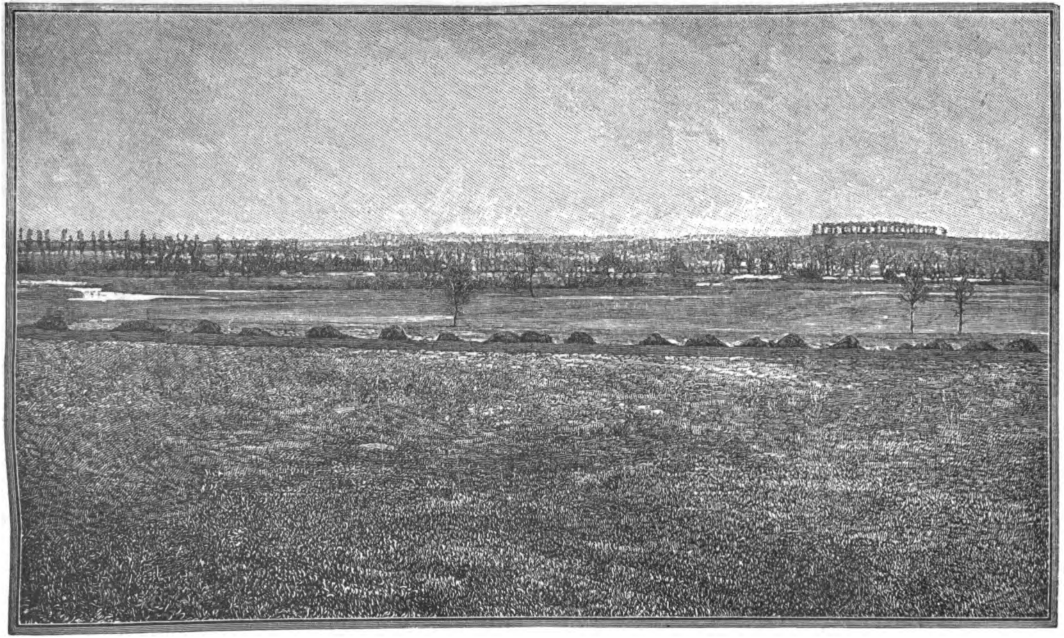


FIG. 31. — BERRY AU BAC.

Caesar Sends Relief and the Belgae Advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō[1] oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium[2] prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs[3] aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar Strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit;[4] cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent[5] perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō[6] atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē[7] ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris[8] dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim[9] ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat[10] in castrīs

Cf. [1] **subsidiō**, p. 46, l. 27. — [2] **studium**, 41, 21. — [3] **vīcōs**, 25, 13. — [4] **statuit**, 38, 1. — [5] **audēbat**, 38, 1. — [6] **opportūnissimum**, 26, 22. — [7] **plānitiēs**, 38, 9. — [8] **latus**, 52, 21. — [9] **paulātim**, 34, 10. — [10] **cōnscrīpsit**, 50, 2.

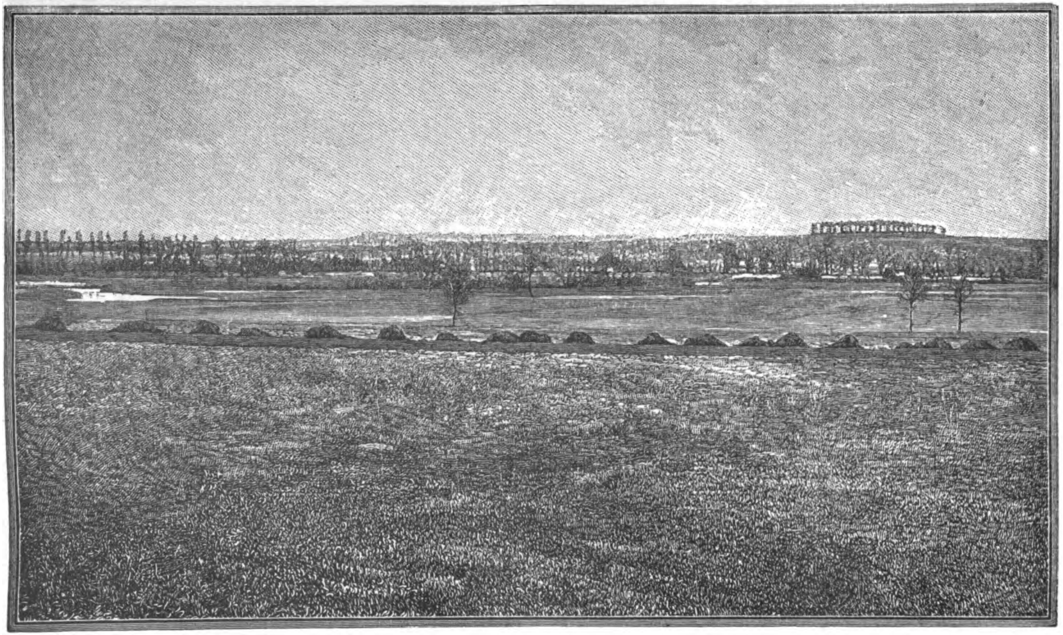


Fig. 31.—Berry au Bac.

relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

The Belgae Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur[1] parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trāns-

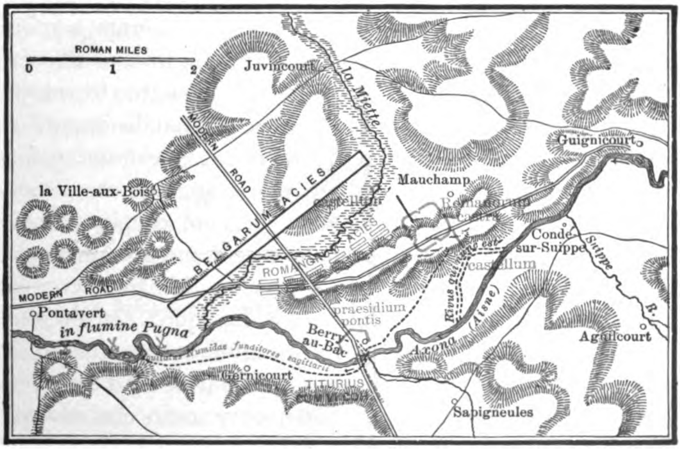


FIG. 32 — BATTLE ON THE AISNE (Axona).

eundī initium faciunt, secundiōre[2] equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum[3] est. Ibi vadīs repertīs[4] partem suā-

Cf. [1] **adgressī**, p. 22, l. 16. — [2] **secundiōrēs**, 12, 16. — [3] **dēmōnstrāvimus**, 49, 1. — [4] **reperiēbat**, 50, 27.

rum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat[1] Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus[2] potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,[3] quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad
5 bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque[4] nostrōs prohibērent.

Caesar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. *Caesar* certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs[5] sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostīs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī
10 māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantīs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque
15 nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria[6] dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque[7] revertī, et, quōrum in fīnīs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique[8] convenīrent,
20 ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius
25 morārentur[9] neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō,

Cf. [1] **praeerat**, p. 53, l. 12.—[2] **minus**, 42, 4.—[3] **populārī**, 52, 15.—[4] **commeātus**, 52, 22.—[5] **funditōrēs**, 54, 2.—[6] **frūmentāriae**, 36, 6.—[7] **quisque**, 51, 10.—[8] **undique**, 53, 5.—[9] **morātī**, 54, 6.

cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō[1] vidērētur. Hāc rē statim[2] Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā,[3] īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent[4] nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā 5 lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī[5] et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī[6] māgnam 10 multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur,[7] exauditō clamōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs 15 in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Cæsar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex 20 terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnīs Suessiōnum, quī proximī[8] Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre[9] cōnātus,[10] quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus 25 expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā

Cf. [1] **profectiōnem,** p. 6, l. 10.—[2] **statim,** 48, 19.—[3] **cōgnōscant,** 50, 6.—[4] **discessisset,** 40, 21.—[5] **adortum,** 36, 2.—[6] **prōsecūtus,** 52, 7.—[7] **continēbat,** 13, 11.—[8] **proximī,** 50, 13.—[9] **oppūgnāre,** 53, 3.—[10] **cōnantīs,** 56, 11.

nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs,[1] māgnitūdine operum, quae

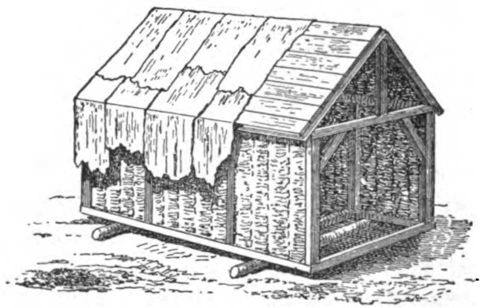


FIG. 33. — VINEA OR TESTUDO.

neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne[2]
5 mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.[3]

In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum
10 Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in ēius fidem[4] ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs conten-
15 dere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs[5] manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Cf. [1] **cōnstituit,** p. 54, l. 24. — [2] **dēditiōnem,** 25, 8. — [3] **impetrāret,** 31. 22. — [4] **fidem,** 50, 15. — [5] **passīs,** 46, 9.

Diviciacus, Leader of the Hædui, Pleads for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs [1] Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs [2] ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs [3] omnīs indīgnitātīs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem [4] apud omnīs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, [5] sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre [6] cōnsuērint.'

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, Who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque [7] rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre [8] reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent

Cf. [1] **dīmissō,** p. 27, l. 5. — [2] **impulsus,** 35, 1. — [3] **redēgisset,** 41, 3. [4] **auctōritātem,** 51, 6. — [5] **opibus,** 17, 22. — [6] **sustentātum,** 53, 3. — [7] **reliquīs,** 50, 5. — [8] **incūsāvit,** 34, 22.

patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre[1] sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnīs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs non amplius mīlia
5 passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse[2] adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque[3] persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur[4]); exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in
10 itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcissē, quō propter palūdēs[5] exercituī aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Cæsar while Pitching Camp.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum[6] dēligant.[7] Cum ex
15 dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā,[8] nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum
20 māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent,[9] hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium
25 quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus,[10] cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student,[11] sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent[12] cōpiīs), quō facilius

Cf. [1] **cōnfīrmāvit,** p. 37, l. 2.—[2] **cōnsēdisse,** 51, 2.—[3] **utrāque,** 54, 20.—[4] **experiantur,** 29, 4.—[5] **palūs,** 55, 4.—[6] **idōneum,** 44, 11.—[7] **dēlēgerant,** 44, 2.—[8] **perspectam,** 36, 17.—[9] **absint,** 52, 1.—[10] **antīquitus,** 51, 1.—[11] **studēbant,** 49, 12.—[12] **valēre,** 51, 13.

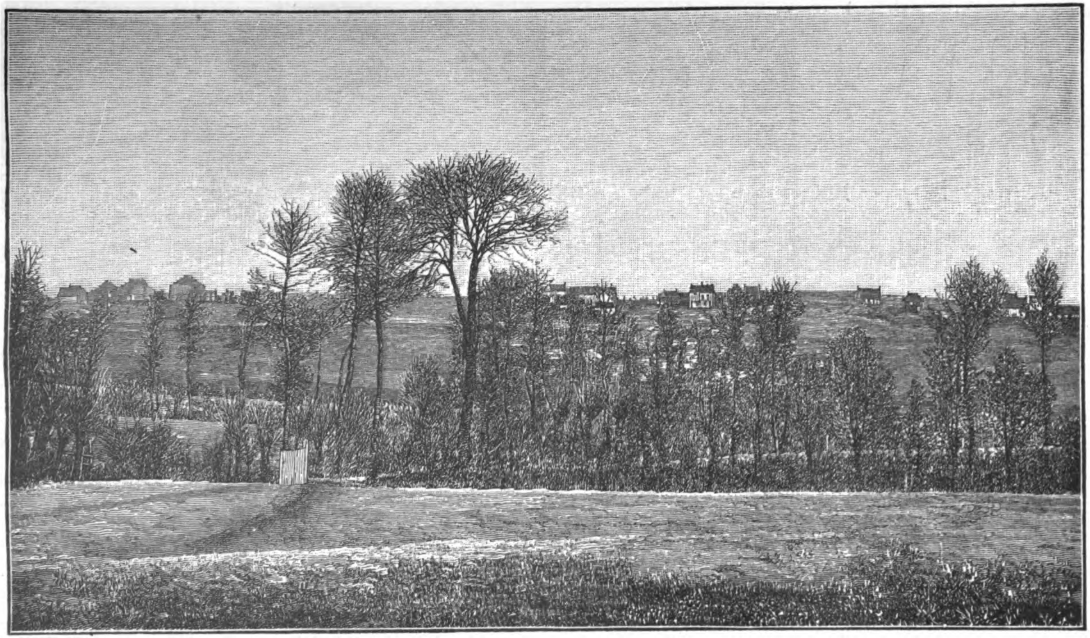


FIG. 34. — HAUTMONT.

fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant[1] ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem 5 posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

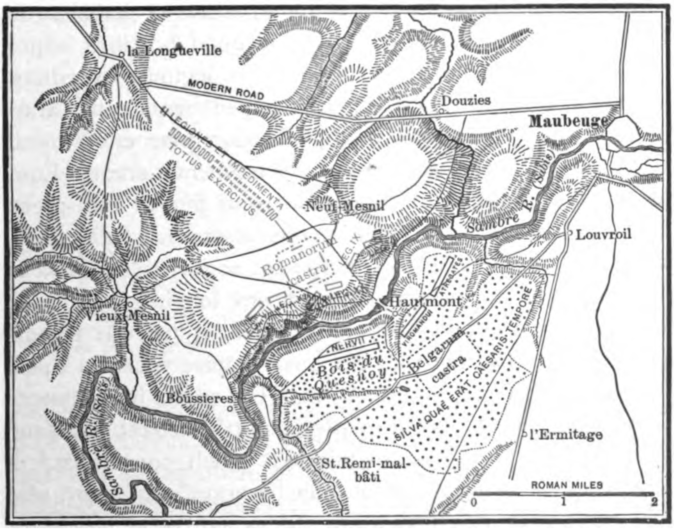


FIG. 35.—DEFEAT OF THE NERVII.

Nature of the Ground.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine 10 parī[2] acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus[3] huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus,[4] ab superiōre

Cf. [1] **efficiēbat,** p. 52, l. 24.—[2] **paribus,** 46, 5.—[3] **adversus,** 54, 18. —[4] **apertīs,** 37, 9.

parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

5 **19.** Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur[1] omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās[2] dūcēbat; post eās totīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; 10 inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē[3] cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque[4] impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus[5] ex silvā in 15 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentīs īnsequī audērent,[6] interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditī[7] latēbant vīsa sunt, 20 quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat,[8] ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant[9] atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut 25 paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

Cf. [1] **subsequī**, p. 57, l. 9. — [2] **expedīta**, 45, 2. — [3] **proximī**, 50, 13. — [4] **praesidium**, 52, 25. — [5] **rūrsus**, 22, 17. — [6] **audērent**, 54, 15. — [7] **abditī**, 34, 7. — [8] **convēnisset**, 32, 11. — [9] **cōnstituit**, 54, 24.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsīgne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda,[1] mīlitēs cohortandī,[2] sīgnum dandum. 5 Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat.[3] Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant



Fig. 36. — Lituus.



Fig. 37. — Tuba.

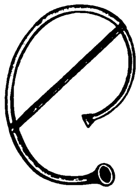


Fig. 38. — Cornu.

subsidiō,[4] — scientia[5] atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī[6] poterant; et 10 quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. 15

Caesar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are Already Engaged.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad

Cf. [1] **īnstruendam,** p. 54, l. 16. — [2] **cohortātus,** 52, 7. — [3] **impedīrent,** 61, 2. — [4] **subsidium,** 53, 13. — [5] **scientiam,** 42, 13. — [6] **docet,** 52, 11.

legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur[1] animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam
5 quō tēlum adicī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus[2] ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās
10 scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspēxit ad haec cōnstitit,[3] nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque[4]
15 collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque[5] dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectīs[6] prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte
20 opus[7] esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebates into the River; Two Pursue the Viromandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine ex-
25 animātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantīs[8] īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam

Cf. [1] **perturbātīs**, p. 57, l. 15. — [2] **parātissimam**, 37, 2. — [3] **cōnsistendī**, 53, 9. — [4] **dēiectūs**, 54, 20. — [5] **saepēs**, 61, 4. — [6] **interiectīs**, 61, 4. — [7] **opus**, 55, 1. — [8] **cōnātus**, 57, 23.

partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum[1] prōgressī rūrsus resistentīs hostīs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant 5 congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs,[2] cum in dextrō cornū[3] legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam[4] im- 10 perī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The Enemy have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae[5] peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium 15 impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī[6] causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostīs in nostrīs 20 castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.[7] Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Treverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō[8] est singulāris, quī 25 auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī[9] et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs,

Cf. [1] **inīquiōrem,** p. 56, l. 15.—[2] **nūdātus,** 53, 7.—[3] **cornū,** 46, 22.—[4] **summam,** 51, 20.—[5] **armātūrae,** 56, 7.—[6] **praedandī,** 61, 1.—[7] **mandārunt,** 10, 11.—[8] **opīniōnem,** 54, 13.—[9] **premēbant,** 46, 24.

Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnīs partīs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs[1] nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostīs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

5 **25.** Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs[2] mīlitēs sibi ipsōs



FIG. 39. — AQUILIFER.



FIG. 40. — CENTURIO.

ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō[3] vīdit, — quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs,[4] sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō[5] 10 āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus

Cf. [1] **dēspērantīs**, p. 36, l. 1. — [2] **cōnfertissimo**, 65, 10. — [3] **impedīmentō**, 22, 6. — [4] **occīdērunt**, 56, 10. — [5] **sīgnum**, 63, 5.

aut volnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque volneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs[1] ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntīs 5 intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī[2] posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs [ūnī] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō[3] vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus 10 mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō[4] animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum[5] hostium impetus tardātus est. 15

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostīs īnferrent.[6] Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs 20 legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū[7] incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus[8] et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in 25 nostrīs castrīs gererentur[9] cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et

Cf. [1] **nōn nūllīs,** p. 49, l. 8. — [2] **submittātur,** 53, 13. — [3] **scūtīs,** 64, 10. — [4] **redintegrātō,** 65, 3. — [5] **paulum,** 45, 9. — [6] **intulērunt,** 22, 19. — [7] **cursū,** 64, 24. — [8] **potiundī,** 54, 5. — [9] **gerantur,** 50, 6.

legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī volneribus cōnfectī[1] prōcubuissent, scūtīs
5 innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostīs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent;[2] equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt
10 ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent[3] et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs
15 esse trānsīre lātissimum[4] flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum[5] locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii Utterly Routed, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum
20 puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs[6] coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum[7] arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt;[8] et, in commemorandā[9] cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad
25 trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērē-

Cf. [1] **cōnfectōs**, p. 64, l. 25.—[2] **occurrēbant**, 65, 17.—[3] **cōnicerent**, 53, 9.—[4] **lātissimōs**, 51, 15.—[5] **inīquum**, 65, 2.—[6] **palūs**, 55, 4.—[7] **tūta**, 52, 22.—[8] **dēdidērunt**, 59, 20.—[9] **commemorāvit**, 38, 17.

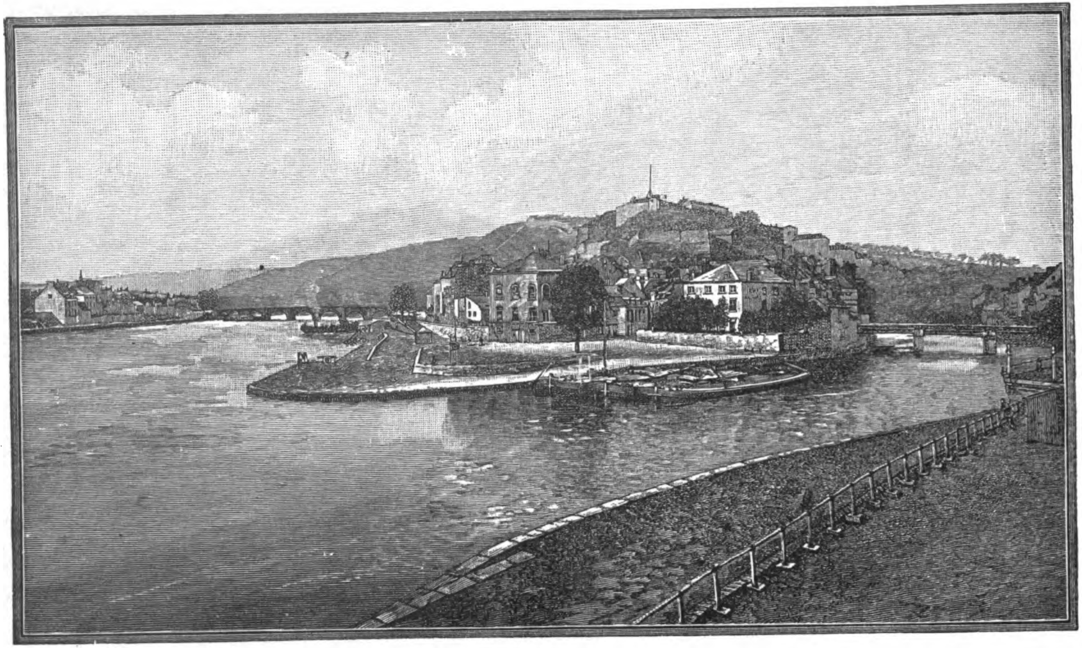


FIG. 41.—CITADEL OF NAMUR.

tur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.[1]

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Stronghold. Their Origin.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque[2] dēsertīs 5

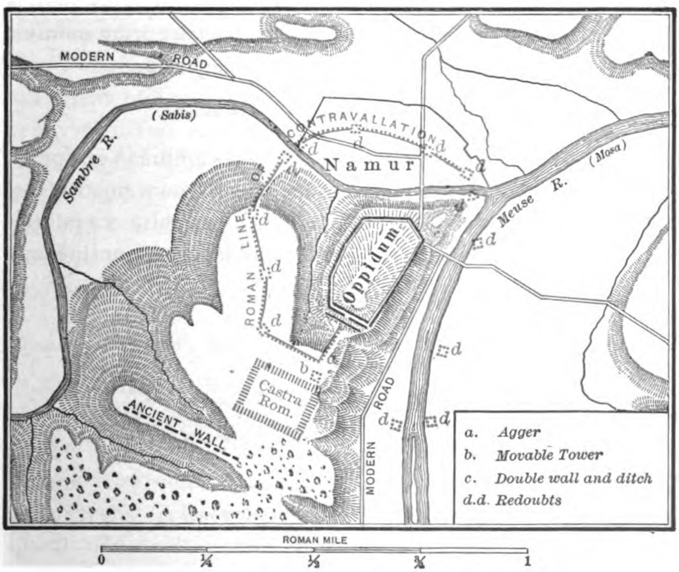


Fig. 42. — Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci.

sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt.[3] Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rupīs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter[4]

Cf. [1] **prohibuerint,** p. 51, l. 5. — [2] **castellum,** 56, 2. — [3] **contulissent,** 58, 10. — [4] **lēniter,** 54, 21.

acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī,
5 cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum
10 īnferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They Scoff at the Roman Siege Works.

30. Ac prīmō adventū[1] exercitūs nostrī crēbrās[2] ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium,
15 crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant.

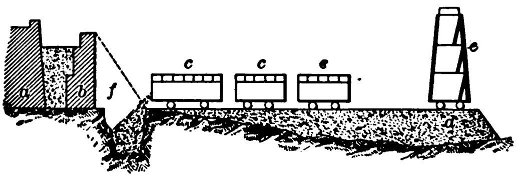


FIG. 43.—SIEGE WORKS.

a, b, Double wall. *e*, Movable tower.
c, c, c, Vineæ. *f*, Ditch.
d, Agger.

Ubi vīneīs[3] āctīs aggere[4] exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum īnrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: 'Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus[5] praesertim hominēs
20 tantulae statūrae'—nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae

Cf. [1] **adventum,** p. 60, l. 6.—[2] **crēbrī,** 49, 2.—[3] **vīneās,** 57, 26.—[4] **aggere,** 58, 1.—[5] **vīribus,** 48, 2.

māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est —'tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre cōnfīderent?'

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre[1] moenibus[2] vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī[3] lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 5 'Nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte[4] prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere'[5] dīxērunt. 'Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine,[6] quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs 10 dēspoliāret. Sibi omnīs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per 15 cruciātum[7] interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.'

They Accept Cæsar's Terms, but Treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam[8] mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod 20 in[9] Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.' Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent,[10] et tamen circiter 25

Cf. [1] **adpropinquāre,** p. 56, l. 24. — [2] **moenibus,** 53, 5. — [3] **commōtus,** 50, 1. — [4] **celeritās,** 44, 6. — [5] **permittere,** 50, 16. — [6] **mānsuētūdine,** 59, 11. — [7] **cruciātūs,** 28, 25. — [8] **priusquam,** 57, 20. — [9] **in,** 42, 14. — [10] **adaequārent,** 44, 7.

parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patēfactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī[1] ā mīlitibus
5 iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis
10 exiguitās[2] postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum[3] est, pūgnātumque
15 ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō[4] turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit,[5] cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs,
20 cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

Crassus Subdues many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne
25 ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās cīvi-

Cf. [1] **oppidānīs,** p. 54, l. 3. — [2] **exiguitās,** 64, 7. — [3] **concurrī,** 63, 2. — [4] **vāllō,** 52, 27. — [5] **dēbēret,** 68, 14.

tātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.[1]

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Cæsar's Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā,[2] tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta[3] factūrās pollicērentur.[4] Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

Cf. [1] **redāctō,** p. 68, l. 19. — [2] **pācātā,** 49, 6. — [3] **imperāta,** 50, 18. — [4] **pollicitōs,** 51, 13.



FIG. 44. — GALLIC COINS.

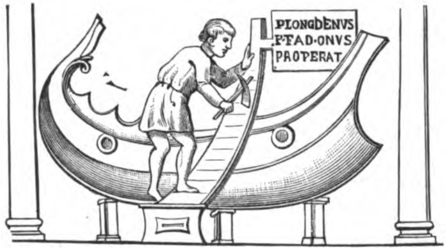


FIG. 45. — SHIPBUILDER.

BOOK III.

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN. B.C. 56.

Galba is Sent to Guard the Passes of the Alps about the Upper Rhone.

CUM in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātīs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent. Causa
5 mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpīs, quō māgnō cum perīculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs[1] mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patēfierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus
10 eōrum expūgnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortīs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs
15 montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam[2] ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

Cf. [1] **portōria**, p. 15, l. 25. — [2] **vacuum**, 57, 24.

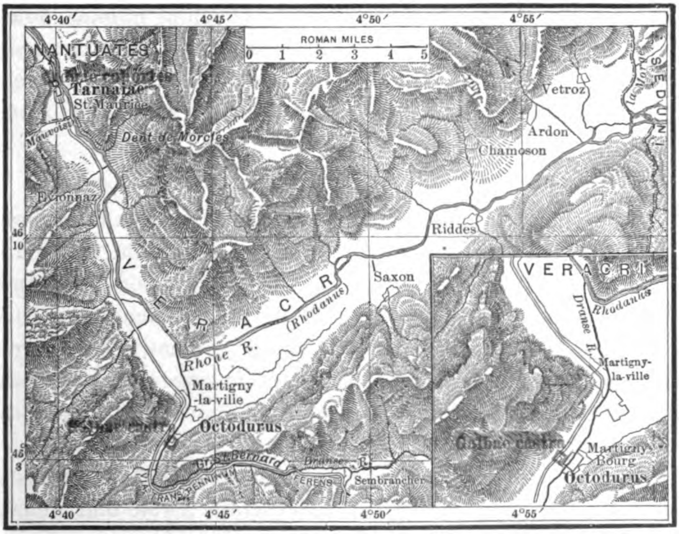


Fig. 46. — Map of Octodurus.

Having Gone into Winter Quarters, He is Threatened by Large Numbers of the Native Tribes, Who Occupy the Neighboring Heights.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnīs noctū discessisse, montīsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant;[1] tum etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat

Cf. [1] **dēspiceret,** p. 11, l. 20.

quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant,[1] et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habē-
5 bant.

Galba Calls a Council. He will Defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīsti-
10 māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī[2] perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs
15 itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae[3] dīcēbantur ut, impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī
20 et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls Attack Vigorously.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus
25 fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī[4] vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī[5] proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant: quārum

Cf. [1] **doleant,** p. 12, l. 15. — [2] **repentīnō,** 11, 7. — [3] **sententiam,** 56, 21. — [4] **premī,** 65, 27. — [5] **dēfessī,** 22, 11.

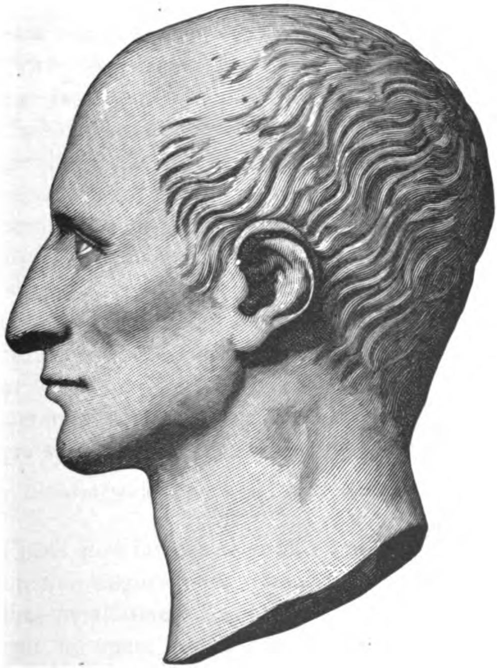


FIG. 47. — GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Battle Rages for Six Hours. The Only Hope is in Making a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent,[1] atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum volneribus dīximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper[2] intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are Defeated with Great Loss; but Galba Withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā[3] fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum mīlibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō

Cf. [1] **dēficere,** p. 56, l. 16. — [2] **paulisper,** 54, 6. — [3] **commūtātō,** 20, 15.

sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā[1] permōtus, posterō diē omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut
5 iter dēmorante incolumem[2] legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Operations in Northwestern Gaul on the Seacoast. Crassus Sends Messengers to Collect Supplies.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret [superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs], atque ita initā hieme in
10 Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne VII proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs
15 tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrīs in fīnitimās cīvitātīs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis
20 ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvīs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in māgnō impetū maris *vāstī* atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnīs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōn-
25 suērunt habent vectīgālīs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōn-

Cf. [1] inopiā, p. 24, l. 17.—[2] incolumem, 48, 20.

silia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant[1] ut in eā lībertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'[2] 5



FIG. 48. — GALLEY.

Caesar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvīs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstitui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus 10

Cf. [1] sollicitārentur, p. 49, l. 8. — [2] remittere, 39, 5.

celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs factī], simul quod quantum in sē facinus[1] admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgā-

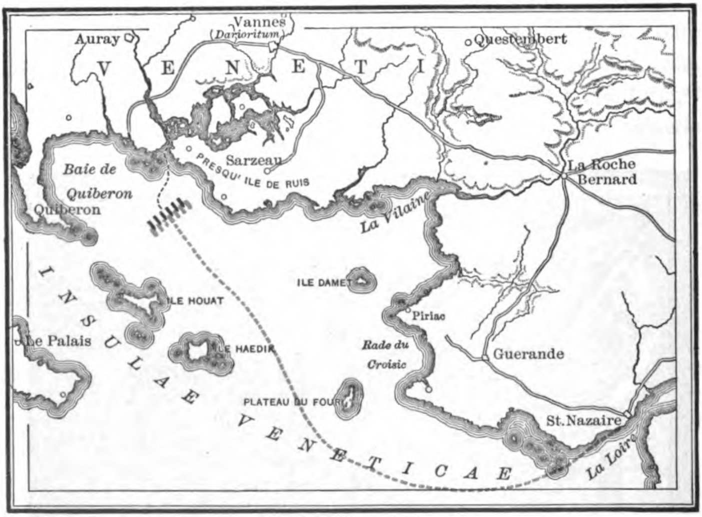


FIG. 49. — MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.

5 tōs — quod nōmen ad omnīs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse 10 itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem

Cf. [1] facinore, p. 36, l. 15.

accidcrent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs 5 initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvīs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat,[1] quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia 10 ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.[2]

Cæsar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum 15 coniūrātiō, imprīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnīs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnīs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse,[3] priusquam plūrēs 20 cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Labienus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō 25 contineat; Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcē-

Cf. [1] **cōnstābat**, p. 77, l. 25. — [2] **arcessendī**, 63, 4. — [3] **ōdisse**, 16, 11.

bantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae
5 nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam[1] cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat,
10 praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmuntūriīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod [bis]
15 accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente[2] aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō — māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs —
20 dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae
25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum

Cf. [1] **distinērī**, p. 52, l. 12. — [2] **minuendam**, 17, 23.

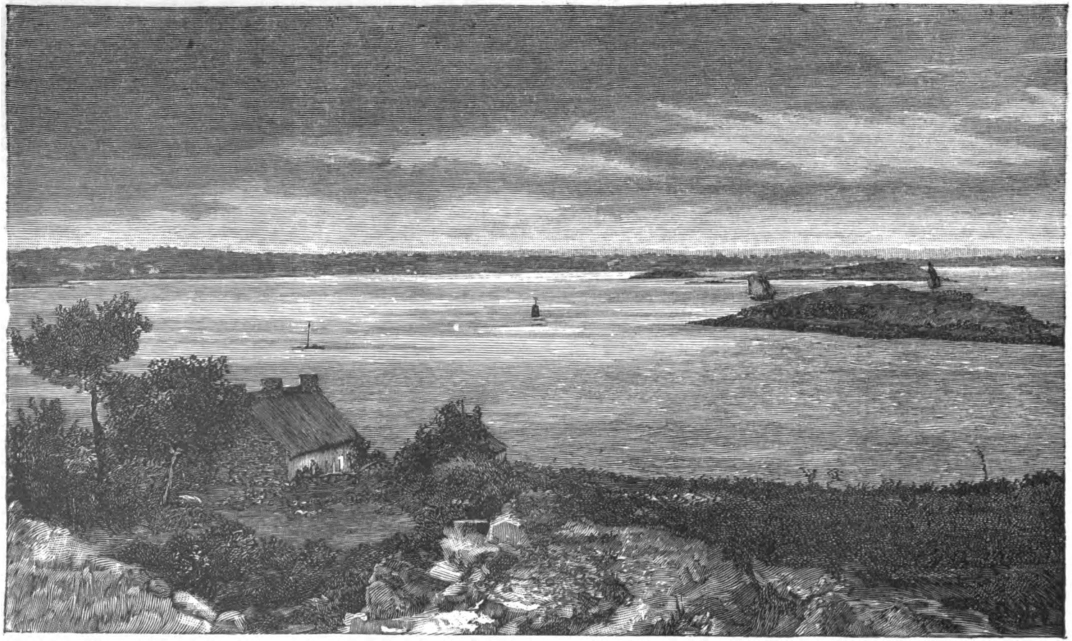


FIG. 50. — MOUTH OF THE LOIRE.

nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs[1] revinctae; pellēs[2] prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs 5

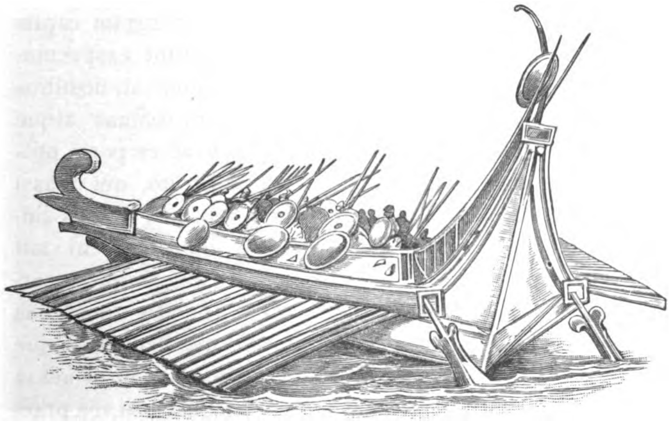


FIG. 51. — ROMAN BATTLE SHIP.

īnscientiam sīve eō (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātīs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac 10 tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī ēius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae 15 rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō — neque

Cf. [1] **catēnīs**, p. 48, l. 11. — [2] **pellibus**, 72, 10.

propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius 5 et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtīs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectan- 10 dam classem.[1] Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus sin- 15 gulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa 20 ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, — falcēs praeacūtae[2] īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs nōn absimilī formā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. 25 Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs[3] omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū 30 Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

Cf. [1] **classī**, p. 82, l. 8. — [2] **praeacūtās**, 70, 3. — [3] **ēripī**, 39, 2.

paulō fortius factum latēre[1] posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

15. Disiectīs (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere 5



FIG. 52. — TRADING VESSEL.

contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit 10 ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur. 15

Cf. [1] **latēbant,** p. 62, l. 19.

The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in
5 ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnser-
10 vārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Meanwhile Sabinus Goes among the Venelli, and is Challenged by them. He Avoids an Engagement.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnīs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenē-
15 bat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant,[1] ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī, Eburovīcēs, Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praetereā
20 multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, *et* quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō[2] labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset
25 cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat

Cf. [1] **dēfēcisse,** p. 59, l. 6. — [2] **cotīdiānīs,** 17, 8.

quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

By a Stratagem he Induces Viridovix to Attack him.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostīs trānseat et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā[1] ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte



FIG. 53. — GALLIC SWORD-BLADE.

Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter[2] hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque conlēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,[3] ad castra pergunt.

Complete Victory of Sabinus.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus[4] et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt,

Cf. [1] **perfugīs,** p. 25, l. 8. — [2] **libenter,** 39, 23. — [3] **complēta,** 76, 13. — [4] **ēditus,** 54, 18.

ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem
5 fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac (dēfatīgātiōne,) virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs[1] vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdē-
10 runt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus; cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est
15 animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātīs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

In Aquitania Crassus is Attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum] est tertia pars Galliae [est
20 aestimanda], — cum intellegeret in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē
25 frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae [ex] hīs regiōnibus) nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnīs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs
30 coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsē-

Cf. [1] **integrīs**, p. 76, l. 29.

runt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrīs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.[1]

He Defeats them in Battle and Besieges their Stronghold. They Surrender.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātes superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī[2] cuperent; tandem cōnfectī volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrīsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī[3] Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iūssi, faciunt.

The Soldurii, or Brothers in Arms.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō utī omnibus in vītā commodīs[4] ūnā cum eīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant;[5] neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad

Cf. [1] **renovandī,** p. 75, l. 6. — [2] **perspiciēbant,** 81, 5. — [3] **perītissimus,** 18, 22. — [4] **commodō,** 31, 24. — [5] **cōnscīverit,** 4, 15.

arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus Proceeds against Other Aquitanian Tribes Who are Conspiring, and Decides to Give Battle.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnīs Vocā-
5 tium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās
10 cīvitātīs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnīs annōs fuerant summamque sci-
15 entiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt.[1] Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī
20 relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī,—nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

The Enemy Keep to their Camp, Which Crassus Attacks.

25 **24.** Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius[2] esse arbitrā-

Cf. [1] **īnstituunt,** p. 80, l. 8.—[2] **tūtius,** 84, 4.

bantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs 5



Fig. 54. — Soldiers Making Camp.

tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit. 10

They Hold their Own for a Time.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat) lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium prae- 15

bērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra
5 mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

But are Forced to Abandon their Camp and Flee.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque[1] suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant
10 et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī, aut quid reī gererētur cōgnōscī
15 posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs[2] vīribus, quod plērumque[3] in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.
20 Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes Surrender to Crassus.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā māxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē
25 Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnes, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātes, Cocosātes; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Cf. [1] **pollicitātiōnibus**, p. 87, l. 6. — [2] **redintegrātō**, 67, 13. — [3] **plērumque**, 70, 20.

In the North Cæsar Advances against the Morini and Menapii, Who Take Refuge in Forests and Marshes.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentīsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

He Ravages their Territory, and then Goes into Winter Quarters.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus[1] imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat.[2] Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.

Cf. [1] **inermēs**, p. 68, l. 6. — [2] **exstrūctō**, 70, 16.

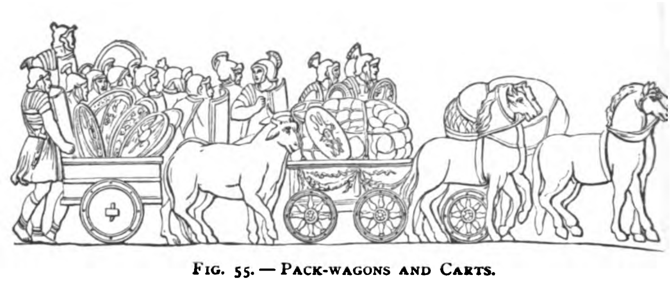


Fig. 55. — Pack-wagons and Carts.

BOOK IV.

Campaign against the Germans. — First Invasion of Britain. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

EĀ quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetes Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa 5 trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēvīs complūrīs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Customs of the Suevi.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā 10 ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt.[1] Hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō co- 15 lendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne

Cf. [1] alere, p. 16, l. 5.



ION OF

ompēiō
Tenc
hēnum
Causa
agitāti

Ger-
ur, ex
causā
atque
sunt,
atque
apud
ō co-
mam
ēnā-
iōne



FIG. 55. — PACK-WAGONS AND CARTS.

BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS. — FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. B.C. 55.

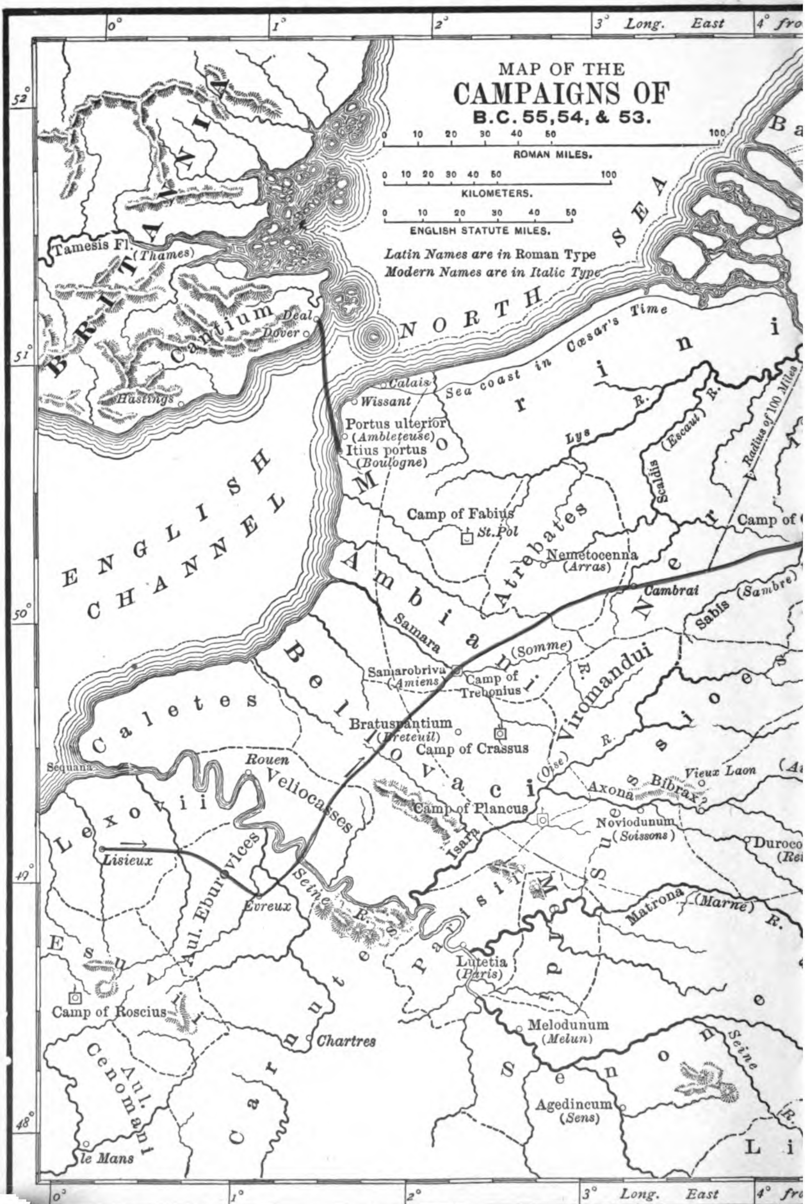
German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

EĀ quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetes Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa
5 trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēvīs complūrīs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

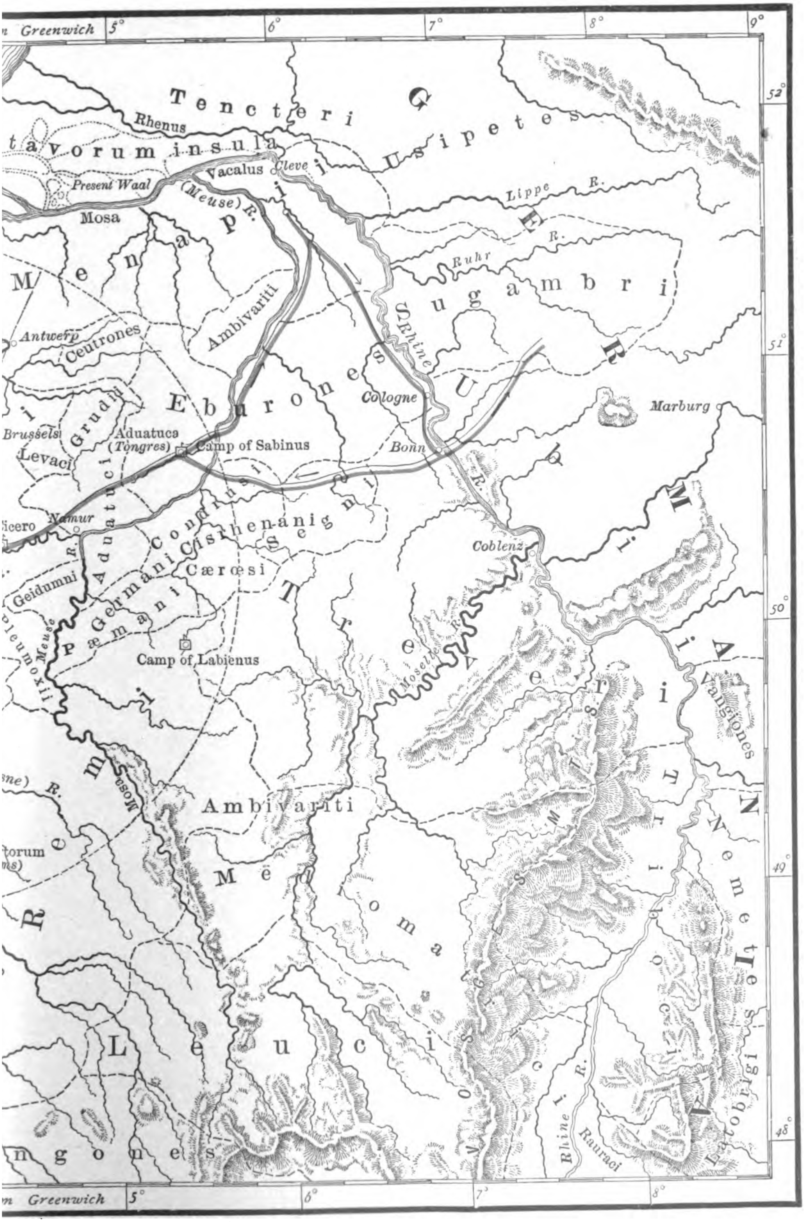
Customs of the Suevi.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā
10 ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt.[1] Hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō co-
15 lendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne

Cf. [1] alere, p. 16, l. 5.



MAP OF THE
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55, 54, & 53.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in Italic Type
Long. East
BRITANNIA
Tamesis Fl. (Thames)
Cantium
Deal
Dover
Hastings
NORTH SEA
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Sea coast in Cæsar's Time
Calais
Wissant
Portus ulterior (Ambleteuse)
Itius portus (Boulogne)
Morini
Lys R.
Scaldis (Escaut) R.
Radius of 100 Miles
Camp of Fabius
St. Pol
Atrebates
Nemetocenna (Arras)
Cambrai
Sabis (Sambre)
Ambiani
Samara
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Camp of Trebonius
(Somme) R.
Viromandui
Nervii
Caletes
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium (Breteuil)
Camp of Crassus
Sequana
Rouen
Veliocasses
Lexovii
Lisieux
Aul. Eburovices
Evreux
Seine R.
Camp of Plancus
Isara
(Oise) R.
Axona
Bibrax
Vieux Laon
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Suessiones
Durocortorum
Matrona (Marne) R.
Parisii
Lutetia (Paris)
Melodunum (Melun)
Meldi
Esuvii
Camp of Roscius
Carnutes
Chartres
Aul. Cenomani
le Mans
Senones
Agedincum (Sens)
Seine R.


Greenwich
5°
6°
7°
8°
9°
52°
51°
50°
49°
48°
Tencteri
Usipetes
Rhenus
Batavorum insula
Vacalus
Cleve
Present Waal
(Meuse) R.
Mosa
Lippe R.
Ruhr R.
Sugambri
Menapii
Antwerp
Ceutrones
Ambivariti
Eburones
Rhine
Cologne
Marburg
Brussels
Grudii
Aduatuca
(Tongres)
Camp of Sabinus
Levaci
Bonn
Aduatuci
Namur
Cicero
Condrusi
Segni
Cisrhenani
Coblenz
Germani
Cæroesi
Geidumni
Pæmani
Treveri
Meuse
Camp of Labienus
Moselle R.
Vangiones
Mosa
Ambivariti
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Remi
Leuci
Triboci
Vosegus
Rhine R.
Rauraci
Latobrigi
Lingones

et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō[1] aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omninō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrīs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum 5 propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant[2] habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī 10 dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.

Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus 15 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius[3] quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omninō ad sē 20 importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque 25 ūnā ex parte ā Suēvīs circiter mīlia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. [1] **officiō**, p. 81, l. 25.—[2] **vēndidit**, 86, 11.—[3] **turpissimum**, 30, 11.

rum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem [quod] Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēvī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālīs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque[1] redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetes et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrīs annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī[2] ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūmi-



1 2

FIG. 57. — COINS OF CÆSAR.

nis agrōs aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis aditū perterritī ex eīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdīs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt[3] et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantīsque[4] Menapiōs oppressērunt; quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs

Cf. [1] **īnfīrmiōrēs**, p. 91, l. 4. — [2] **vagārī**, 90, 19. — [3] **simulātā**, 40, 14. — [4] **inopīnantīs**, 10, 10.

certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt. 5

Cæsar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He Fears their Alliance with Germans.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs[1] cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque 10 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre 15 necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta 20 cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae [que] postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnīs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 25 Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs[2] Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

Cf. [1] **invītō, p. 12, l. 9.** — [2] **ēvocātīs, 88, 28.**

They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque
5 priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur,[1] quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī ve-
10 lint, posse eīs ūtilīs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēvīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

15 **8.** Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum[2] est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs fīnīs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine
20 iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

They Delay.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlībe-
25 rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmen-

Cf. [1] **lacesseret, p. 31, l. 19.** — [2] **vidēbantur, 63, 14.**

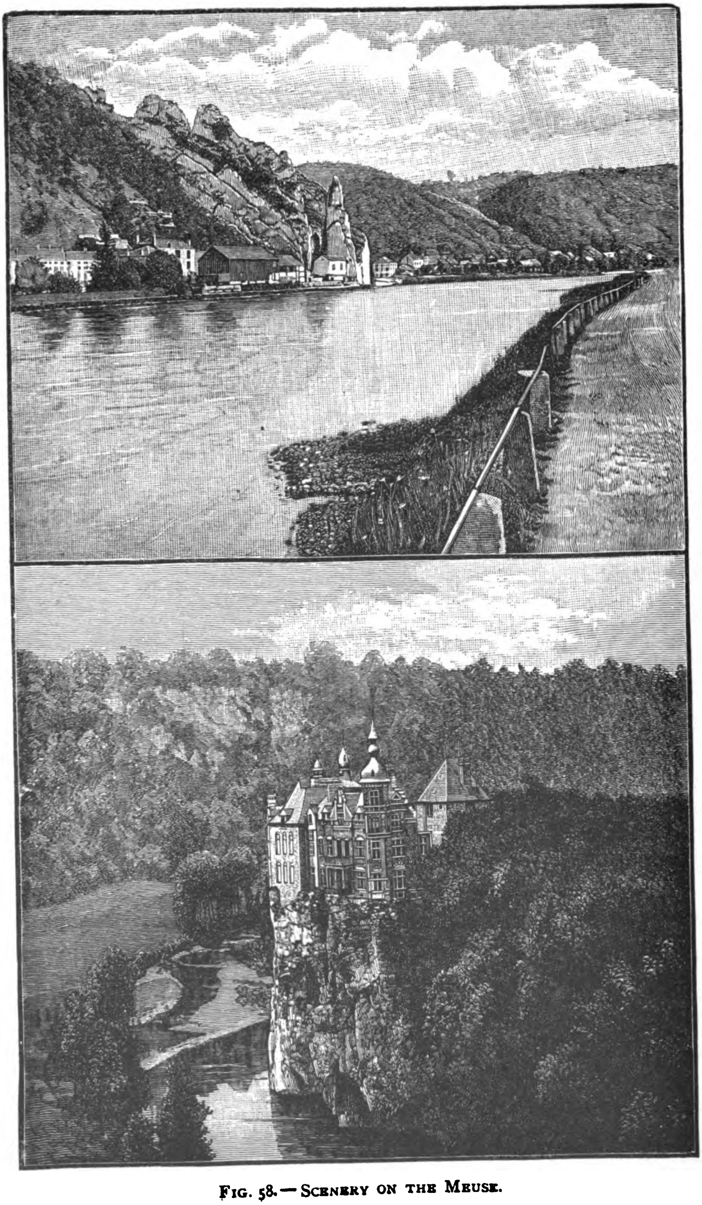


FIG. 58. — SCENERY ON THE MEUSE.

tandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel- 5 lātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum [in Ōceanum īnfluit] neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citā- 10 tus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrīs dēfluit partīs multīs ingentibusque[1] īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, — multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit. 15

Cæsar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent[2] praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā 20 prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābā- 25 tur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs[3] quī cum omnī equitātū 30

Cf. [1] **ingentī**, p. 33, l. 21. — [2] **antecēdunt**, 78, 22. — [3] **praefectōs**, 92, 6.

antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostīs proeliō lacesserent; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The German Cavalry Treacherously Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexē-
5 runt, quōrum erat v mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō
10 celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,[1] subfossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piso.

15 In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit,
20 ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs volneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Envoys Come to Cæsar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

25 **13.** Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum

Cf. [1] **dēsiliunt,** p. 95, l. 15.

intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur[1] equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum 5 exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ēius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibi- 10 tīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī[2] suī causā, quod (contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent) proelium prīdiē commīsissent; simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō[3] impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnīs 15 cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

Cæsar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus 20 subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret.[4] Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs 25 nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant 30

Cf. [1] **augērī**, p. 90, l. 22. — [2] **pūrgātī**, 25, 6. — [3] **fefellisse**, 56, 14. — [4] **praestāre**, 71, 14.

Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.

15. Germānī post tergum[1] clāmōre audītō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē
5 ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine,[2] vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs volnerātīs ex tantī
10 bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem
15 concessit.

Cæsar's Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī[3] ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,
20 cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse, neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in
25 fīnīs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē

Cf. [1] **terga**, p. 89, l. 10. — [2] **lassitūdine**, 64, 24. — [3] **impulsōs**, 59, 4.

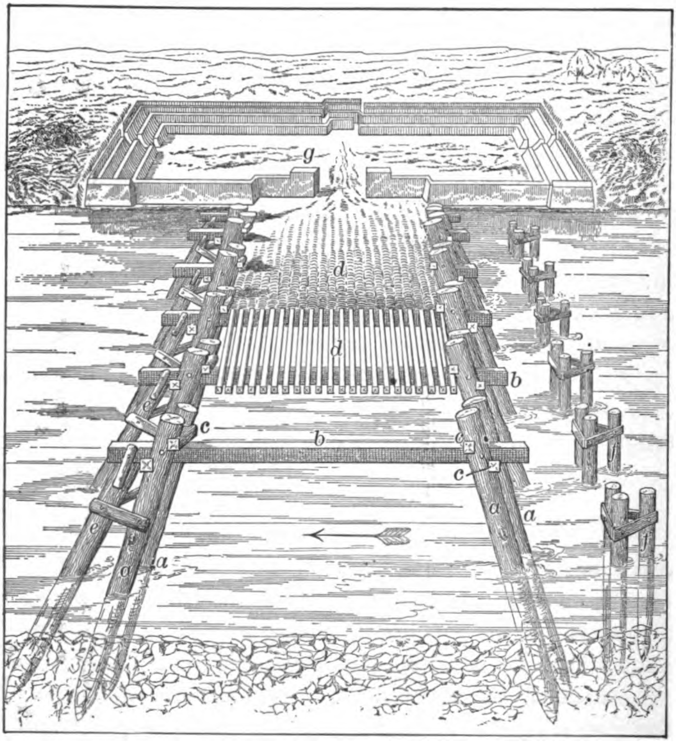


FIG. 59 — PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; *bb*, trabes bipedales; *cc*, fibulae;
dd, derecta materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;
ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?' Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi *ad* auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās [1] Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tīgna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa [2] ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus [3] immissīs, quantum eōrum

Cf. [1] **ultimae,** p. 92, l. 28. — [2] **dīmēnsō,** 62, 18. — [3] **trabibus,** 83, 5.

tīgnōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur;[1] quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, 5 hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā[2] iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sēcius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et 10 aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī[3] spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.[4]

Cæsar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī 15 omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnīs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. 20 At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

25 **19.** Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnīs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēvīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cōgnōvit: 'Suēvōs,

Cf. [1] **distinendam**, p. 82, l. 7. — [2] **māteriam**, 93, 19. — [3] **mediocrem**, 88, 23. — [4] **nocēre**, 83, 16.

posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsisse,[1] utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium 5 ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēvī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.'

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret,[2] ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut 10 Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.[3]

Cæsar Determines to Invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs 15 (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta[4] auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus [annī] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrā- 20 bātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gal- 25 liās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat. 30

Cf. [1] **dīmittere**, p. 90, l. 8. — [2] **iniectum**, 41, 21. — [3] **rescindī**, 6, 20. — [4] **subministrandīs**, 91, 14.

He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnoissance, then Commius.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in
5 Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvīs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō[1] ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īn-
10 sulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōn-
15 stituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātīs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-
20 sēnus perspectīs regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
25 morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī[2] bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē acci-

Cf. [1] **perlāta,** p. 73, l. 4. — [2] **imperītum,** 40, 9.

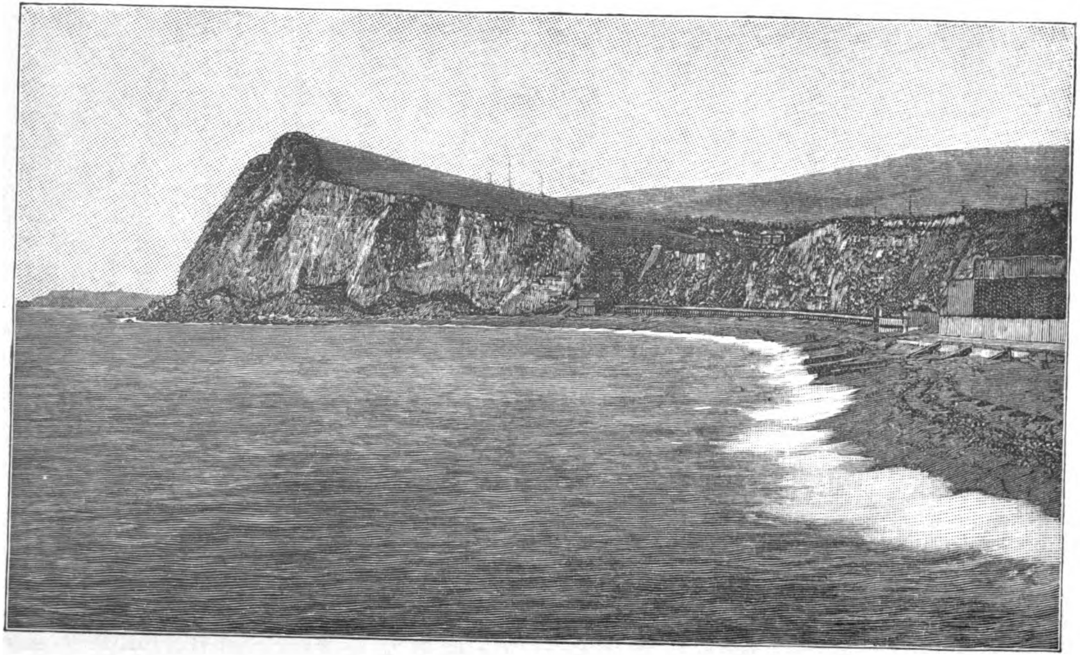


FIG. 60. — CLIFFS OF DOVER.

disse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs[1] Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. 5 Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs [contrāctīsque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenē- 10 bantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō prae- 15 sidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus[2] idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvīs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini- 20 strātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī[3] posset. Hunc ad 25 ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī vellet

Cf. [1] **occupātiōnibus**, p. 103, l. 7. — [2] **nactus**, 48, 5. — [3] **adigēbātur**, 84, 1.

ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque īnstābilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum[1] et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum
5 ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvīs cōnstituit.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī
10 cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvi-
15 bus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō
20 generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant nītēbantur.

Cæsar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs[2] erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs[3]
25 incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostīs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem ret-

Cf. [1] **ad nūtum,** p. 28, l. 26. — [2] **speciē,** 71, 4. — [3] **rēmōrum,** 83, 13.

tulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus,[1] maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere;

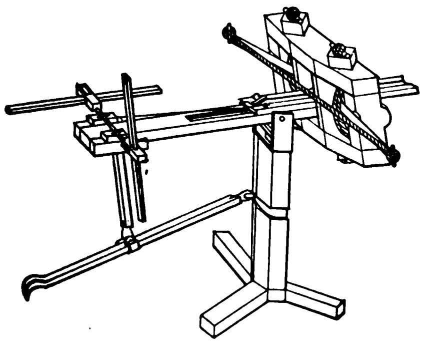


FIG. 61. — CATAPULTA.

ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [prīmīs] nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt. 10

The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circum- 15

Cf. [1] cunctandum, p. 90, l. 22.

sistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantīs[1] cōnspexerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī
5 simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

10 **27**. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.
15 Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant: tum proeliō factō remīsērunt; et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur[2] petīvērunt. Caesar que-
20 stus[3] quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs re-
25 migrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātīsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII dē quibus suprā

Cf. [1] **labōrantibus**, p. 46, l. 26. — [2] **īgnōvisset**, 41, 3. — [3] **questum**, 32, 20.

dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt.[1] Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae

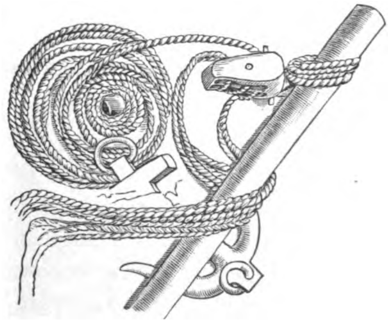


FIG. 62.—ANCHOR AND TACKLE.

eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem 5 partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs 10 maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvīs, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīc- 15 tābat,[2] neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs[3] reliquae

Cf. [1] **solvit,** p. 107, l. 18.—[2] **adflīctārentur,** 82, 16.—[3] **frāctōs,** 27, 25.

cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent; et omnia 5 deërant quae ad reficiendās nāvīs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum 10 et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte[1] cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque 15 nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Cæsar Suspects their Design.

20 **31.** At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur.[2] Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gra- 25 vissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī *satis* commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. [1] **exiguitātem**, p. 90, l. 18. — [2] **suspicātus**, 97, 20.

He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvē- 5 runt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod



Fig. 63. — Soldiers Foraging.

erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortīs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās 10 armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā[1] legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī 15

Cf. [1] **cōnfertōs**, p. 66, l. 7.

hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

5 **33.** Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū[1] rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim 10 ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī[2] ac praecipitī locō 15 incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius 20 adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum[3] esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs 25 reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs[4] complūrīs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum

Cf. [1] **strepitū,** p. 56, l. 26. — [2] **dēclīvis,** 61, 9. — [3] **aliēnō,** 13, 6. — [4] **continuōs,** 42, 27.

suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt. 5

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. 10 Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrīs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt. 15

Cæsar Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam 20 tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvīs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Attack of the Morini on Cæsar's Troops.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter 25 ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt.

Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōren hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiāt Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atqu 5 amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucīs vol neribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vēr quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectī armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus es occīsus.

The Rebellious Morini Subdued. Thanksgiving at Rome.

10 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eī legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī re belliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātīs palū dum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōr annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnē 15 runt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrun fīnīs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frū mentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnē in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpē runt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit 20 Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesari diērum XX supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

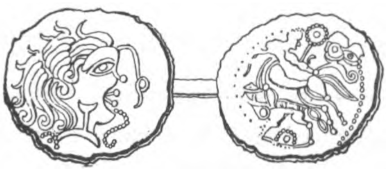


FIG. 64. — GALLIC COIN.

mōrem
ūntiātā
misit.
t atque
īs vol-
eā vērō
biectis
us est

m eis
quī re-
s palū-
periōre
rvēnē-
piōrum
īs, frū-
omnēs
ecēpē-
stituit.
ērunt,
esaris

Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque
5 amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

The Rebellious Morini Subdued. Thanksgiving at Rome.

10 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātīs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnē-
15 runt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnīs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit.
20 Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum XX supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

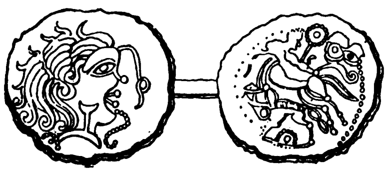
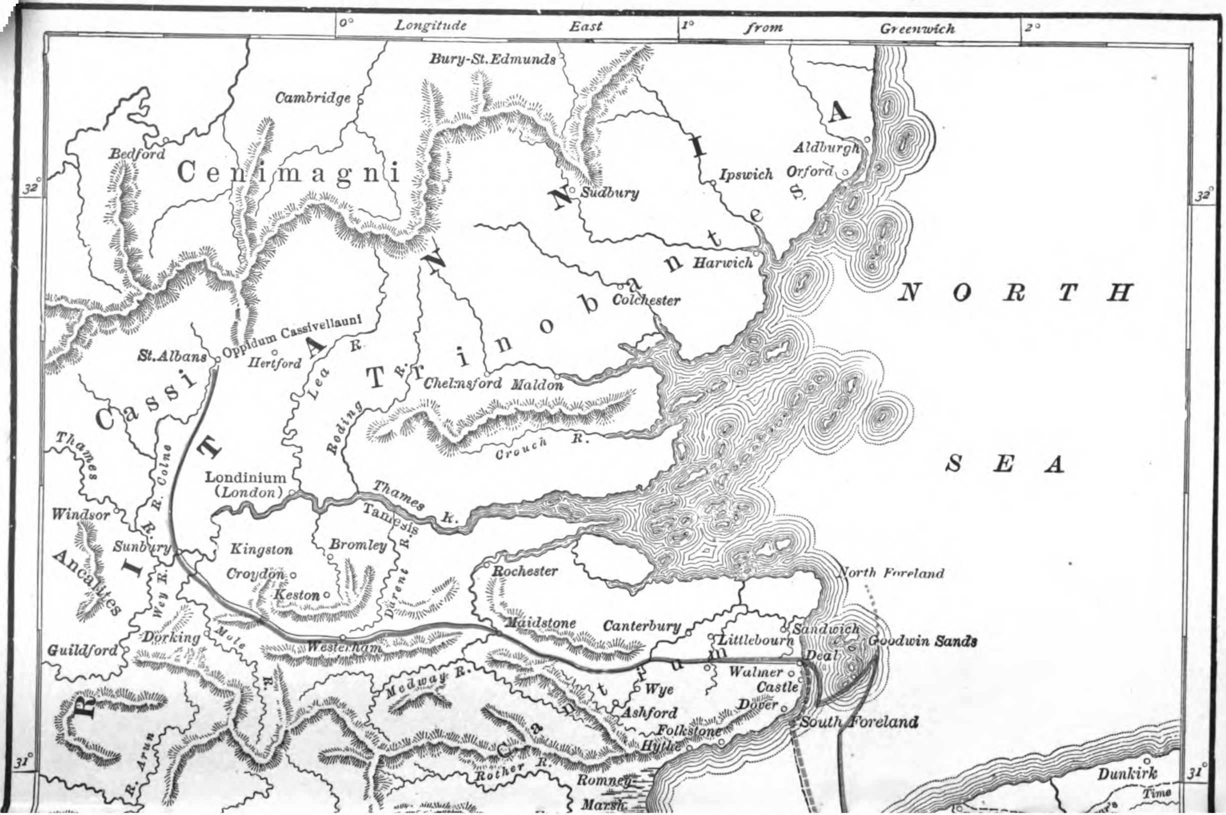


FIG. 64. — GALLIC COIN.



0° Longitude East 1° from Greenwich 2°
32°
31°
NORTH SEA
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Ancalites
Cantium
Bury-St.Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Sudbury
Ipswich
Aldburgh
Orford
Harwich
Colchester
St.Albans
Oppidum Cassivellauni
Hertford
Lea R.
Roding R.
Chelmsford
Maldon
Crouch R.
Londinium
(London)
Thames R.
Tamesis
Thames
Windsor
Sunbury
R. Colne
Wey R.
Kingston
Croydon
Keston
Bromley
Darent R.
Rochester
Maidstone
Canterbury
Sandwich
Goodwin Sands
North Foreland
Littlebourn
Deal
Walmer Castle
Dover
South Foreland
Wye
Ashford
Folkstone
Hythe
Romney Marsh
Rother R.
Medway R.
Westerham
Dorking
Mole R.
Guildford
R. Arun
Dunkirk

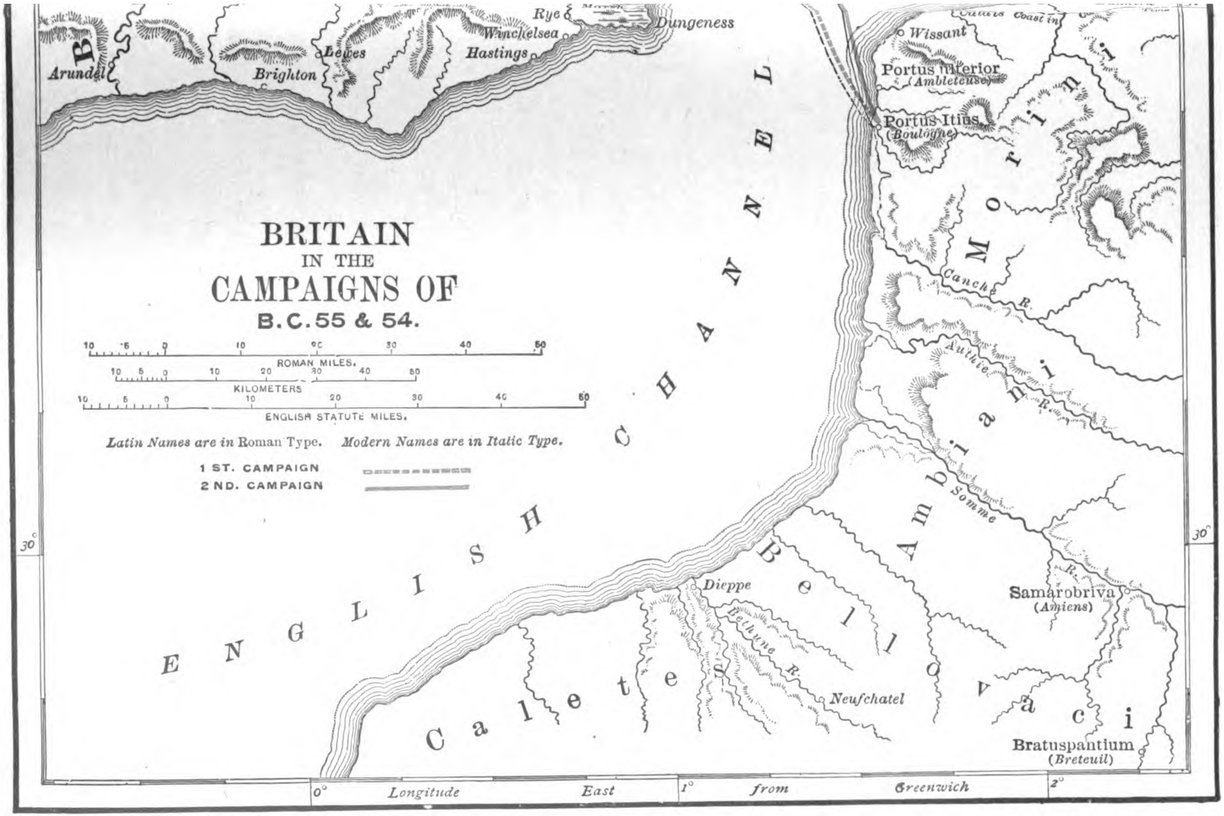

BRITAIN
IN THE
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55 & 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.
1 ST. CAMPAIGN
2 ND. CAMPAIGN
Arundel
Brighton
Lewes
Hastings
Winchelsea
Rye
Dungeness
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Wissant
Portus Ulterior
(Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Morini
Canche R.
Authie R.
Ambiani
Somme
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Dieppe
Bethune R.
Neufchatel
Caletes
30°
0° Longitude East 1° from Greenwich 2°



Fig. 66. — British Coins.

BOOK V.

Second Invasion of Britain. — Fresh Risings of the Gauls. B.C. 54.

Cæsar, Contemplating a Second Invasion of Britain, Orders a Suitable Fleet Built. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

L. DOMITIŌ Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvīs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum formamque[1] dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās[2] nāvīs ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam[3] partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt quī doceant[4] nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō,

Cf. [1] **figūram.** — [2] **ōrnandās.** — [3] opp. **ultimam.** — [4] **ostendant.**

sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā[1] ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat.
5 Eīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātīs dat quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

Returns to Gaul. Orders the New Fleet to Assemble at the Port Itius. Finds Trouble Brewing among the Treveri.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur[2] atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs, sin-
10 gulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvīs et longās XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās,[3] neque multum abesse ab eō quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātīs mīlitibus atque eīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit[4] atque
15 omnīs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum[5] in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat circiter mīlium passuum XXX [trānsmissum] ā continentī. Huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relīquit; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnīs Trē-
20 verōrum proficīscitur; quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, Rival Chiefs of the Treveri, Appeal to Cæsar.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet[6] māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
25 suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit.[7] In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant,[8] Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque ad-

Cf. [1] **audītā, intellēctā.** — [2] **redit.** — [3] **aedificātās.** — [4] **docet.** — [5] **opportūnissimum.** — [6] **potest.** — [7] **attingit.** — [8] **dēcertābant.**

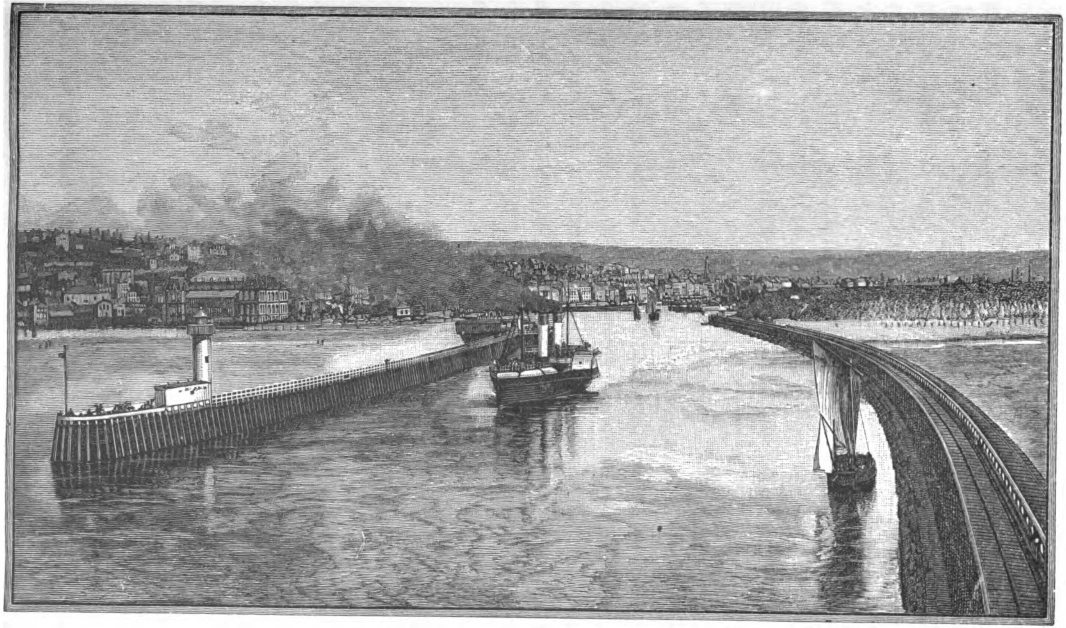


FIG. 67. — BOULOGNE.

ventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnīs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit; quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur[1] ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eīsque quī per aetātem[2] in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnīs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur;[3] itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātisque fortūnās ēius fideī permissūrum.'

He Settles the Dispute in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsī intellegēbat[4] quā dē causā ea dīcerentur quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō[5] cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum CC obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in eīs fīliō propinquīsque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius[6] prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim[7] Cingetorīgī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum

Cf. [1] **agerentur.** — [2] **arma ferre.** — [3] **dēficeret.** — [4] **percipiēbat.** — [5] **inceptō.** — [6] **minus.** — [7] **singulōs.**

valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam[1] in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus [suam grātiam inter suōs minuī]; et quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.[2]

Assembling of Troops at the Port Itius.

5 **5.** Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvīs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās[3] cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās 10 invenit.[4] Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit, numerō mīlia IIII, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat,[5] quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum[6] Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Hæduan, Again Appears.

15 **6.** Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat,[7] quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum 20 Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī;[8] quod dictum Haeduī graviter[9] ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerē-25 tur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī[10] sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā,

Cf. [1] **eximiam.** — [2] **cōnflagrāvit.** — [3] **repulsās.** — [4] **reperit.** — [5] **cōnstituerat.** — [6] **tumultum, sēditiōnem.** — [7] **dēcrēverat.** — [8] **trādī.** — [9] **molestē.** — [10] **dētinērī.**

prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur;[1] id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem 5 reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse [2] ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis[3] tribuēbat, coercendum[4] atque dēterrendum qui- 10 buscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi[5] vidēbat, prōspiciendum[6] nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre[7] posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in 15 hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit,[8] [9] dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret; nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvīs iubet. At omnium impedītīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsci- 20 ente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne[10] atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī [11] vim faciat neque pāreat,[12] interficī iubet; nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbi- 25 trātus quī praesentis imperium[13] neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse

Cf. [1] **prīvārētur.** — [2] **ūsuī.** — [3] **auctōritātis.** — [4] **reprimendum.** — [5] **prōcēdere.** — [6] **prōvidendum.** — [7] **iniūriās īnferre.** — [8] **solitus est.** — [9] **nītēbātur.** — [10] **discessiōne.** — [11] **resistat.** — [12] **dictō audiēns sit.** — [13] **auctōritātem, iūssum.**

cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt ; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar Sets Sail for Britain. The Natives in Alarm Withdraw from the Coast.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs,[1] Labiēnō in continente cum III
5 legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad [2]sōlis occāsum nāvīs
10 solvit ; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit ; et longius dēlātus aestū [3]ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum
15 superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō[4] ferē tempore ;[4] neque in eō locō hostis
20 est vīsus, sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit,[5] cum māgnae manūs[6] eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae,[7] quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant[8] ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Army Lands and Advances. The Natives Resist, but are Defeated.

25 9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC quī praesidiō[9] nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostīs contendit,

Cf. [1] **cōnfectīs.** — [2] **occidentem sōlem.** — [3] **prīmā lūce.** — [4] **merīdiē.** — [5] **repperit.** — [6] **cōpiae.** — [7] **permōtae.** — [8] **excesserant.** — [9] **subsidiō.**

—eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī[1] atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus[2] mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre 5 nostrōs prohibēre[3] et proelium committere coepērunt.



FIG. 68.—TESTUDO.

Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī (ut vidēbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs[4] arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs[5] erant praeclūsī. 10 Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī[6] prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis VII, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō,[7] locum cēpērunt

Cf. [1] lēniter acclīvī. — [2] profectus. — [3] impedīre. — [4] multīs. — [5] aditus, opp. exitus. — [6] introīre. — [7] exstrūctō.

eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs volneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientīs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus[1] relinquī volēbat.

The Fleet Suffers from a Storm, is Hastily Repaired and Drawn up on Shore.

5 **10.** [2] Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne tripartītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coörtā tempestāte, prope 10 omnēs nāvīs adflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī[3] possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum[4] acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque 15 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs [litterīs] cōgnōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs[5] circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō[6] vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; 20 Labiēnō scrībit[7] ut quam plūrimās possit eīs legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvīs īnstituat.[8] Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum[9] esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subdūcī[10] et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs X cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem 25 tempōribus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat prōficīscitur.[11] Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum

Cf. [1] spatium. — [2] posterō diē. — [3] perferre. — [4] dētrīmentum. — [5] perditīs. — [6] labōre. — [7] litterās mittit ad. — [8] comparet. — [9] ūtilissimum. — [10] opp. dēdūcī. — [11] prōcēdit.

locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā[1] Cassivellaunō; cūius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum



FIG. 69. — SOLDIERS BUILDING CAMP, WITH GUARDS.

LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia[2] bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.[3] 5

The Inhabitants of Britain and its Resources.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī[4] causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt 10 (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus

Cf. [1] mandātā. — [2] perpetua. — [3] praeposuerant. — [4] gerendī.

ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque[1] aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia,[2] pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere [aut
5 nummō aereō] aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua[3] est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et
10 gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant;[4] haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā[5] triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,
15 quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat.[6] Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī
20 spatiō trānsmissūs[7] atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula quae appellātur[8] Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae[9] īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs[10] nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōni-
25 bus[11] reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctīs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert[12] illōrum opīniō,[13] DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta[14] terra; sed ēius angulus lateris maximē ad Germā-

Cf. [1] **frequentissima.** — [2] **paria.** — [3] **parva.** — [4] **arbitrantur.** — [5] **fōrmā.** — [6] **vergit.** — [7] **trāiectūs.** — [8] **nōminātur.** — [9] **propinquae.** — [10] **quīdam.** — [11] **quaestiōne.** — [12] **est.** — [13] **sententia.** — [14] **opposita.**

niam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō [1] atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnīs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex hīs nātī eōrum habentur [2] līberī quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Battle with the Britons, Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt,[3] ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collīsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō,[4] imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō [5] sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō [6] intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere [7] pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs [8] recēpērunt. Eō diē Q.

Cf. [1] **longō.** — [2] **exīstimantur.** — [3] **contendērunt.** — [4] **tempore.** — [5] **repente.** — [6] **minimō.** — [7] **modō.** — [8] **tūtōs.**

ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque[1] aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia,[2] pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere [aut
5 nummō aereō] aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua[3] est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et
10 gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant;[4] haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā[5] triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,
15 quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat.[6] Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī
20 spatiō trānsmissūs[7] atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula quae appellātur[8] Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae[9] īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs[10] nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōni-
25 bus[11] reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctīs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert[12] illōrum opīniō,[13] DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta[14] terra; sed ēius angulus lateris maximē ad Germā-

Cf. [1] **frequentissima.** — [2] **paria.** — [3] **parva.** — [4] **arbitrantur.** — [5] **fōrmā.** — [6] **vergit.** — [7] **trāiectūs.** — [8] **nōminātur.** — [9] **propinquae.** — [10] **quīdam.** — [11] **quaestiōne.** — [12] **est.** — [13] **sententia.** — [14] **opposita.**

niam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum 5 ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō[1] atque omnī 10 parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnīs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex hīs nātī eōrum habentur[2] līberī quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est. 15

Battle with the Britons, Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt,[3] ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collīsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō 20 spatiō,[4] imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō[5] sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae 25 perexiguō[6] intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere[7] pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs[8] recēpērunt. Eō diē Q.

Cf. [1] **longō.** — [2] **exīstimantur.** — [3] **contendērunt.** — [4] **tempore.** — [5] **repente.** — [6] **minimō.** — [7] **modō.** — [8] **tūtōs.**

Laberius Dūrus tribūnus mīlitum interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Methods of Fighting.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter
5 gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentīs[1] possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs[2] esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs
10 remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī[3] sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur[4] statiōnēsque[5] dispositās habērent,
15 atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

They are Again Defeated.

17. [6]Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere[7] coepērunt. Sed merīdiē,[8] cum
20 Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.[9] Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt quoad
25 subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs

Cf. [1] **sē recipientīs, terga vertentīs.** — [2] **idōneōs.** — [3] **dēnsī.** — [4] **dīmicārent.** — [5] **subsidia.** — [6] **postrīdiē ēius diēī.** — [7] **vexāre.** — [8] **merīdiānō tempore.** — [9] **discēderent.**

dēsiliendī facultātem[1] dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique[2] convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque[3] post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

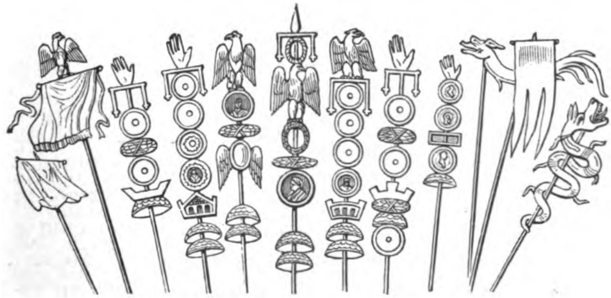


FIG. 70.—SIGNA MILITARIA.

Cæsar Crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnīs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus,[4] atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit[5] ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim[6] legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent[7] ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cf. [1] potestātem. — [2] ex omnibus partibus. — [3] posteā. — [4] vadō. — [5] vīdit. — [6] continuō. — [7] relinquerent.

Cassivellaunus Avoids a General Engagement, but Annoys Cæsar by Guerilla Tactics.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā[1] spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus[2] cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestri-
5 bus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat;[3] et cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī[4] vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat; et māgnō cum perī-
10 culō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnflīgēbat[5] atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur,[6] et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum *in* labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs
15 efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes Yield to Cæsar.

20. Interim[7] Trinobantes, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat, — cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque
20 erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat,[8] — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs: petunt[9] ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque[10] obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL
25 frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter[11] fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Cf. [1] **sublātā.** — [2] **māiōribus.** — [3] **agēbat.** — [4] **dēpopulandī.** — [5] **pūgnāvit.** — [6] **permitteret.** — [7] **intereā.** — [8] **effūgerat.** — [9] **rogant.** — [10] **rēgnum.** — [11] **cum celeritāte.**

Other Tribes also Yield. A British "Oppidum."

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalites, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dedunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus 5 hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās[1] vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis[2] hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit[3] ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc 10 duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre[4] contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī[5] atque interfectī. 15

Cassivellaunus at Last Submits.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adori- 20 antur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne[6] factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumīs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs[7] acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne[8] cīvitātum, lēgātōs 25 per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs[9] Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī[10] posse intellegeret, obsidēs

Cf. [1] dēnsās. — [2] inruptiōnis. — [3] invenit. — [4] adorīrī. — [5] captī. — [6] excursiōne. — [7] incommodīs. — [8] rebelliōne. — [9] subitōs. — [10] prōdūcī.

imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit. Interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvīs
5 invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs,[1] quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat et [2]nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant

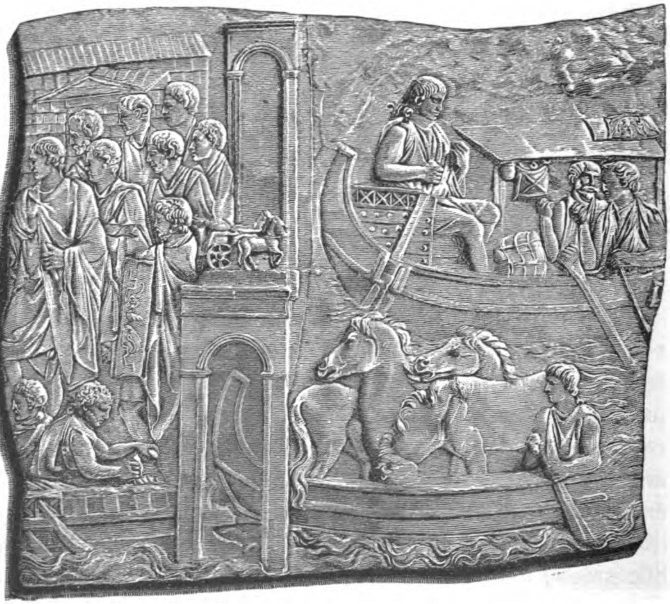


FIG. 71. — ROMAN TRANSPORTS.

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō,[3] tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis
10 quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur;[4] at ex eīs quae inānēs

Cf. [1] opp. **subductīs.** — [2] **aliquot.** — [3] **multitūdine.** — [4] **dēperīret.**

ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent;[1] reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclū- 5 derētur, quod aequinoctium suberat,[2] necessāriō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte[3] cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit[4] omnīsque incolumīs nāvīs perdūxit.

On Account of the Scarcity of Supplies, the Army is Widely Distributed for Winter Quarters.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro- 10 brīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātīs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac[5] superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūrīs cīvitātīs distribuere;[6] ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. 15 Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in confīniō[7] Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē[8] trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, 20 et cohortīs V in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Auruncalēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmen- 25 tāriae sēsē mederī posse exīstimāvit.[9] Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum C continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad[10]

Cf. [1] **pervenīrent ad.** — [2] **aderat.** — [3] **malaciā.** — [4] **capit.** — [5] **quam.** — [6] **dīvidere.** — [7] **fīnibus.** — [8] **nūper.** — [9] **putāvit.** — [10] **dum.**

legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset,[1] in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

Tasgetius, a Friendly Chief, Slain by the Carnutes.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō[2] nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic 5 Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā,[3] quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur[4] ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus,[5] quod ad



FIG. 72. — COIN OF L. PLANCUS.

10 plūrīs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās [6]eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī[7] iubet ibique hiemāre; quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque] quibus 15 legiōnēs trādiderat,[8] certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus. Sabinus's Camp Attacked.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis[9] ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad fīnīs rēgnī suī Sabīnō 20 Cottaeque [10]praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna com-

Cf. [1] **intellēxisset.** — [2] **dīgnitāte.** — [3] **voluntāte.** — [4] **nūntiātur.** — [5] **metuēns.** — [6] **ab eīs permōta.** — [7] **iter facere.** — [8] **dederat.** — [9] **sēditiōnis.** — [10] **adfuissent.**

portāvissent,[1] Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs līgnātōribus māgnā manū[2] ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō [3]superiōrēs fuissent, [4]dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret:[5] habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās[6] minuī posse spērārent.

Ambiorix Treacherously Advises Sabinus to Abandon his Camp and Join Cicero or Labienus.

27. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānūs, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat;[7] apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: 'Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset quod Aduatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ab Caesare remissī essent quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed [8]coāctū cīvitātis; suaque esse ēiusmodī imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem.

'Cīvitātī porrō[9] hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit; id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus[10] rērum ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē

Cf. [1] contulissent. — [2] cōpiīs. — [3] superāssent. — [4] spē dēpositā. — [5] progrederētur. — [6] contentiōnīs. — [7] solitus erat. — [8] ā cīvitāte coāctus. — [9] deinde. — [10] īnsciēns.

qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō[1] venīre posset; nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā[2] commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

'Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc
5 sē ratiōnem officī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre[3] Titūrium prō hospitiō ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius quam fīnitimī sentiant,[4] ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut
10 ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāre tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnīs datūrum; quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs[5]
15 grātiam referre.' Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

Some of his Officers are Opposed to Such a Movement.

28. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant[6] ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī,[7] etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda[8] exīstimābant; maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem īgnōbilem atque
20 humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia.[9] L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque[10] tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex
25 hībernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs [māgnās] cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī[11] posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō[12] volneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī;[13] intereā

Cf. [1] **auxiliō.** — [2] **recipienda.** — [3] **obsecrāre.** — [4] **intellegant.** — [5] **beneficiīs.** — [6] **cōgnōverant.** — [7] **permōtī.** — [8] **praetermittenda.** — [9] **disputātiō.** — [10] **plērīque.** — [11] **resistī,** w. dat. — [12] **praetereā.** — [13] **urgērī.**

et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere[1] cōnsilium?

But Sabinus Argues in Favor.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius 'Sērō factūrōs' clāmitābat, 'cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis[2] in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum; brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem.[3] Caesarem *sē* arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre; subesse[4] Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre[5] Galliam tot contumēliīs[6] acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstīnctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius,[7] nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret,[8] ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.'

Cotta Throws the Responsibility upon Sabinus.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne[9] habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur, "Vincite," inquit, "sī ita voltis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre[10] vōce, ut

Cf. [1] inīre. — [2] incommodī. — [3] spatium. — [4] prope esse. — [5] cōnflagrāre. — [6] indīgnitātibus. — [7] gravius. — [8] cōnspīrāret. — [9] contrōversiā. — [10] māiōre.

māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē[1] ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear: hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, si per tē liceat, [2]perendinō diē cum proximīs
5 hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant."

Sabinus Prevails, and the Army Marches Out of Camp.

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant 'Nē suā dissēnsiōne[3] et pertināciā rem in summum
10 perīculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant[4] seu proficīscantur,[5] sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.' Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūn-
15 tiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. [Omnia excōgitantur quā rē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre[6] mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum auge-
20 ātur.] Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

They are Suddenly Attacked in a Narrow Defile.

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū[7] vigili-
25 īsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs īnsidiīs bipartītō in silvīs opportūnō[8] atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem

Cf. [1] **vehementissimē.** — [2] **bīduō.** — [3] **contrōversiā.** — [4] **morentur.** — [5] **discēdant.** — [6] **lassitūdine.** — [7] **clāmōre.** — [8] **idōneō.**

dēmīsisset,[1] ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō [2] sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre adscēnsū atque inīquissimō [3] nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Sabinus Loses his Self-possession. Cotta Does Nobly, but Makes a Fatal Mistake.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortīsque dispōnere,[4] haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere [5] cōnsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō [6] 5



FIG. 73. — HOLLOW SQUARE (*agmen quadratum*).

cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis 10 auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia [7] praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum [8] esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī 15 ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent.

Cf. [1] dēscendissent. — [2] exstitērunt. — [3] aliēnissimō. — [4] distribuere. — [5] ēvenīre. — [6] discrīmine. — [7] mūnera. — [8] agendum.

Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēiusmodī cāsū[1] reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē[2] cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit[3] et hostīs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre[4] et dēspērātiōne id factum
5 vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit,[5] quod fierī necesse erat, ut volgō mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentīs petere atque abripere properāret;[6] clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Policy of Ambiorix.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit.[7] Nam ducēs eō-
10 rum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. [Erant et virtūte et numerō pūgnandō parēs.] Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen
15 omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat.[8] Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant [levitāte armō-
20 rum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse], rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientīs īnsequantur.

The Fight Continues, the Romans Continually Worsted.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē[9] refugiēbant. Interim eam partem
25 nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde [10]erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant[11] et ab eīs quī proximī

Cf. [1] **discrīmine.** — [2] **male.** — [3] **dētrāxit,** opp. **auxit.** — [4] **metū.** — [5] **fīēbat.** — [6] **contenderet.** — [7] **dēfēcit.** — [8] **occidēbat.** — [9] **celerrimē.** — [10] **exierant.** — [11] **terga verterant, fugam petierant.**

steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus [1] relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī,[2] multīs volneribus acceptīs resistēbant;[3] et māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce 5 ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum committēbant.[4] Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur;[5] Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit,[6] 10 interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnīs cohortīs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā volnerātur.

Sabinus Seeks an Interview with Ambiorix.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum [7] ut sibi mīlitibusque par- 15 cat.[8] Ille appellātus [9] respondet: 'Sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.' Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum 20 Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.[10]

He is Treacherously Slain. The Army Utterly Defeated. Few Escape.

37. Sabīnus quōs [11] in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet; 25 et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere,[12] [13] imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant imperat.

Cf. [1] **occāsiō.** — [2] **exagitātī.** — [3] **repūgnābant.** — [4] **admittēbant.** — [5] **trānsfīgitur.** — [6] **auxilium fert.** — [7] **petītum.** — [8] **clēmentiā ūtātur in.** — [9] **invītātus.** — [10] **perstat.** — [11] **illō tempore.** — [12] **dēpōnere.** — [13] **pāret.**

Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō
5 ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur,[1] aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī
10 aegrē[2] ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix Persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to Join the Revolt.

15 **38.** Hāc victōriā sublātus[3] Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī,[4] proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit[5] peditātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in
20 perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs quās accēperint iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant;[6] interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse[7] dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur
25 adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

A Large Force Attacks the Camp of Q. Cicero.

39. Itaque cōnfestim[8] dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt,

Cf. [1] **urgērētur.** — [2] **vix.** — [3] **ēlātus.** — [4] **proximī.** — [5] **morātur.** — [6] **āmittant.** — [7] **periisse.** — [8] **statim.**

et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant,[1] nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī [2]līgnātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, māgnā 5



FIG. 74. — ROMAN CAMP ASSAULTED.

manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam [3]in perpetuum sē 10 fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

Cicero Makes Vigorous Preparations for Resistance.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, māgnīs prōpositīs[4] praemiīs sī pertulissent; obsessīs

Cf. [1] **properant.** — [2] **māteriandī.** — [3] **semper.** — [4] **cōnstitūtīs.**

omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur.[1] Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur[2] incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctīs
5 cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne[3] quā prīdiē resistitur: hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn volnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt
10 noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur;[4] turrēs contabulantur;[5] pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā[6] valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac
15 vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervian Chiefs Try to Persuade Cicero to Retire. He Refuses.

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte,[7] eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omnem
20 esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque[8] hīberna oppūgnārī.' Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem
25 populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere[9] cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus[10] ex hībernīs discēdere[11] et quāscumque in partīs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem[12] populī Rō-

Cf. [1] **dēprehenduntur.** — [2] **cōnstituuntur.** — [3] **modō.** — [4] **comparātur.** — [5] **excitantur.** — [6] **aegerrimā.** — [7] **facultāte.** — [8] **cēterōrum.** — [9] **cōnfirmārī.** — [10] **tūtīs.** — [11] **ēgredī.** — [12] **mōrem.**

mānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab [1] armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

They Lay Siege to the Camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant [2] et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea,[3] gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre [4] cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnītiōnem [5] perfēcērunt. [6] Reliquīsque diēbus turrīs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcīs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

They Make a Furious Assault, Which is Gallantly Resisted.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē maximō coörtō ventō ferventīs fūsilēs ex argillā glandīs fundīs et fervefacta iacula [7] in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum [8] castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīc utī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrīs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum adscendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs [9] atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnīs fortūnās cōnflagrāre [10] intellegerent,[11] nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed

Cf. [1] **bellum relinquere.** — [2] **didicerant.** — [3] **apta.** — [4] **effodere et exportāre.** — [5] **mūnīmentum.** — [6] **posteā.** — [7] **tēla.** — [8] **partem.** — [9] **fortitūdō.** — [10] **ardēre.** — [11] **sentīrent.**

paene[1] nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium volnerārētur atque interficerētur,
5 ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant[2] recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae

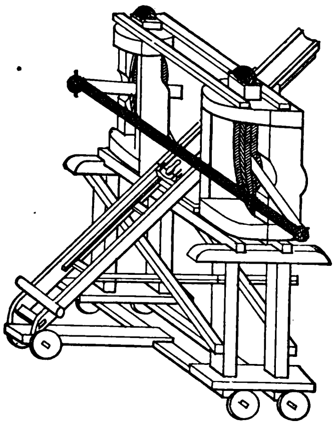


FIG. 75. — BALLISTA.

cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt[3] suōsque omnīs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī in-
10 troīre vellent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī[4] turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of Two Centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorē-

Cf. [1] **ferē.** — [2] **cōnferserant.** — [3] **sē recēpērunt.** — [4] **dēpulsī.**

nus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās[1] habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum[2] tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc 5 diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit[3] extrā mūnītiōnēs, quāque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem[4] subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostīs immittit[5] atque 10 ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit;[6] quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt[7] hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram 15 morātur[8] manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī[9] subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; [illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur]. Gladiō comminus[10] rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prō- 20 pellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxi- 25 liō salūtīque esset, neque diiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Efforts to Inform Cæsar of the Danger.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnātiō, et maximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā[11] vol-

Cf. [1] **dissēnsiōnēs.** — [2] **occāsiōnem.** — [3] **prōgreditur.** — [4] **opīniōnem.** — [5] **conicit.** — [6] **trānsfīgit.** — [7] **dēfendunt.** — [8] **impedit.** — [9] **pressō.** — [10] **pūgnat.** — [11] **dēfessā, īnfīrmā**; opp. **validā.**

neribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum[1] pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine 5 Verticō, locō nātus[2] honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat[3] suamque eī fidem[4] praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad 10 Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.[5]

Cæsar Immediately Sends Messages to his Lieutenants.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter XI diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte 15 legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit[6] cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnīs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad fīnīs Nerviōrum veniat; reli-20 quam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximīs hībernīs conligit.[7]

Crassus Meets him; Labienus Thinks it Best to Stay Where he is.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus[8] dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum XX prōgre-25 ditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit[9] legiōnemque eī attribuit,[10] quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat[11] relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperā-

Cf. [1] **prōpūgnātōrum.** — [2] **ortus.** — [3] **cōnfūgerat.** — [4] **officium.** — [5] **reperītur.** — [6] **abit.** — [7] **cōgit.** — [8] **explōrātōribus.** — [9] **praepōnit.** — [10] **trādidit.** — [11] **dēportāverat.**

tum erat, nōn ita multum morātus[1] in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū[2] Sabīnī et caede[3] cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs 5 recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet omnīs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.[4] 10

How a Letter is Conveyed to Cicero.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus[5] ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnīs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit[6] quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. 15 Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam[7] dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā[8] intrā 20 mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat.[9] Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum,[10] trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa,[11] tertiō diē ā quōdam 25 mīlite cōnspicitur; dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnīs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum[12] procul[13] vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.[14]

Cf. [1] cunctātus. — [2] morte. — [3] interneciōne. — [4] castra posuisse. — [5] lāpsus. — [6] comperit. — [7] litterās. — [8] inligātā. — [9] servet. — [10] imperātum. — [11] vīsa. — [12] īgnium. — [13] opp. prope. — [14] sustulit.

The Gauls Abandon the Siege and March against Cæsar, Who Avoids a Conflict.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt;[1] ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit quī
5 litterās ad Caesarem dēferat;[2] hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs hostīs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.[3] Posterō
10 diē lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculī rēs tantulis[4] cōpiīs inīquō[5] locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīs-
15 timābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsī erant exigua[6] per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim
20 speculātōribus[7] in omnīs partīs dīmissīs explōrat[8] quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Cæsar, Feigning Fear, Draws the Enemy on to his Own Ground.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs[9] cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Caesar, sī
25 forte timōris simulātiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum

Cf. [1] **dēsistunt,** w. abl. — [2] **referat.** — [3] **excitat.** — [4] **tam exiguīs.** — [5] **aliēnō.** — [6] **parva.** — [7] **explōrātōribus.** — [8] **cōgnōscit.** — [9] **māiōrēs.**

perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret.[1] Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit[2] proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere[3] sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs 5 administrandīs[4] rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

In the Attack which Follows the Enemy are Routed.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī[5] cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem 10 ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, 15 quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostīs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō; māgnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnīs 20 armīs exuit.

Cæsar Reaches the Camp of Cicero and Congratulates him and his Men on their Gallant Defense.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat], omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās[6] turrīs, testūdinēs 25 mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine

Cf. [1] trānsgrederētur. — [2] adgreditur. — [3] pedem referre. — [4] gerendīs. — [5] adlectī. — [6] exstrūctās.

volnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat[1] rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae.[2] Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam[3] 5 fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.[4] Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum[5] culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, 10 beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō[6] incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina[7] laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Indutiomarus Defers his Intended Attack on Labienus. All Signs Point to a General Uprising of the Gauls, so that Cæsar Decides to Spend the Winter with his Army.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs 15 Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter sexāgintā, eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam

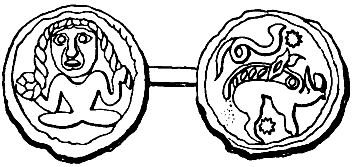


FIG. 76. — GALLIC COIN.

noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orīrētur, quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō 20 diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat,[8] noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnīs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum

Cf. [1] **existimat.** — [2] **gestae.** — [3] **īnsīgnem.** — [4] **reperit.** — [5] **damnum.** — [6] **sānātō.** — [7] **diūturna.** — [8] **īnstituerat.**

suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum III legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit;[1] et, quod tantī mōtūs[2] Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō[3] dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō 5 cōnsultābant;[4] nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnīs partīs dīmittēbant; et quid reliquī cōnsilī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque[5] in locīs dēsertīs[6] concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine[7] Caesaris intercessit quīn aliquem 10 dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī XIII praefēcerat, certior factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlibus passuum VIII ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, 15 sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris, discessisse adeō ut fugae similis discessus[8] vidērētur.

The Senones and Other Tribes are Ready to Revolt.

54. At Caesar, prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs, aliās territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent[9] dēnūntiāret,[10] aliās cohortandō,[11] māgnam partem Galliae in officiō 20 tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est cīvitās[12] in prīmīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat (cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris, cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant), interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille prae- 25 sēnsisset ac profūgisset, ūsque ad fīnīs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt;[13] et missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset,[14] dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. *Ac* tantum apud hominēs barbarōs

Cf. [1] **dēcrēvit.** — [2] **tumultūs.** — [3] **dētrīmentō.** — [4] **dēlīberābant.** — [5] **noctū.** — [6] **sēcrētīs.** — [7] **cūrā.** — [8] **profectiō.** — [9] **gererentur.** — [10] **monēret.** — [11] **cōnfirmandō.** — [12] **maximē.** — [13] **ēiēcērunt.** — [14] **nōn pāruērunt.**

valuit esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īnferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit[1] ut — praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum
5 Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs[2] — nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum maximē quod quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur,[3] tantum sē ēius opīniōnis[4] dēperdidisse[5] ut
10 populī Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Activity of Indutiomarus.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātīs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse
15 dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus[6] Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere,[7] exercēre, ā fīnitimīs
20 equōs parāre,[8] exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs praemiīs ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat[9] ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

Many Tribes Join him, and he Decides to Attack Labienus.

25 **56.** Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris[10] īnstīgārī,[11] alterā Nerviōs Aduatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coe-

Cf. [1] **effēcit.** — [2] **operā.** — [3] **prōpōnēbantur.** — [4] **fāmae.** — [5] **āmīsisse.** — [6] **dēiectus.** — [7] **cōnferre.** — [8] **comparāre.** — [9] **conlēgerat.** — [10] **sceleris.** — [11] **impellī.**

pisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium belli, quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs[1] armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex eīs novissimus[2] venit in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorīgem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum 5 suum,[3] quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum[4] sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per fīnīs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs 10 populātūrum;[5] ac prius quam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum: quae fierī velit praecipit.[6]

Labienus Acts Cautiously.

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret[7] 15 cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorīge atque ēius propinquīs[8] ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cōgnitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās[9] cīvitātīs equitēsque undique ēvocat;[10] hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs ēius 20 vagābātur, aliās ut situm[11] castrōrum cōgnōsceret,[12] aliās conloquendī aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque[13] omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem[14] continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat. 25

Indutiomarus is Defeated by a Sudden Sally, and Slain.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārus ad castra accēderet,[15] nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium

Cf. [1] iuvenēs. — [2] postrēmus. — [3] ēius. — [4] vocātum. — [5] vāstātūrum. — [6] imperat. — [7] praetermitteret. — [8] necessāriīs. — [9] proximās. — [10] arcessit. — [11] locum. — [12] explōrāret. — [13] ferē. — [14] castra. — [15] adgrederētur.

fīnitimārum cīvitātum quōs arcessendōs[1] cūrāverat, tantā dīligentiā omnīs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut nūllā ratiōne[2] ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indūtiomārus
5 ad castra accēdit[3] atque ibi māgnam partem diēī cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla coniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā[4] verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est sub vesperum dispersī ac dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum[5] ēmittit;
10 praecipit atque interdīcit,[6] prōterritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs[7] (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant[8] Indūtiomārum; neu quis quem prius volneret quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum[9] spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit eīs
15 quī occīderint praemia; submittit cohortīs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna; et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntīs equitēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt.
20 Hāc rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

Cf. [1] **ēvocandōs.** — [2] **modō.** — [3] opp. **discēdit.** — [4] **convīciō.** — [5] **equitēs.** — [6] **prohibet.** — [7] **datīs.** — [8] **adgrediantur.** — [9] **cēterōrum.**

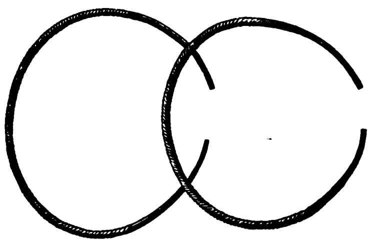


FIG. 77 — GALLIC *Torques.*

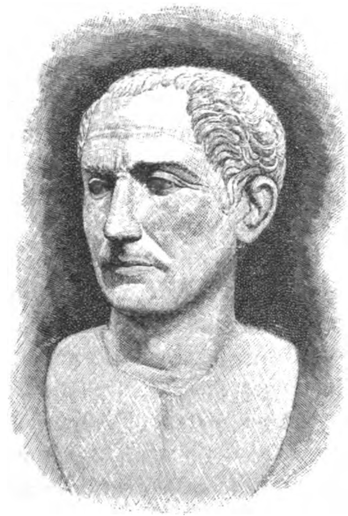


FIG. 78.—GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

BOOK VI.

SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. B.C. 53.

Cæsar Increases his Forces in Order to Cope with the Rebellious Gauls.

MULTĪS dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum [1] exspectāns, per M. Sīlānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dēlēctum habēre īnstituit; [2] simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō reī pūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā 5 cōnsul sacrāmentō [3] rogāvisset ad sīgna convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret; māgnī interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Ītaliae facul-

Cf. [1] **tumultum.** — [2] **dēcrēvit.** — [3] **iūre iūrandō.**

tātīs[1] ut, si quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī[2] acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī,[3] sed etiam māiōribus augērī[4] cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reī pūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dēlēctū, tribus 5 ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus, duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit[5] quid populī Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

2. Interfectō Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propin- 10 quōs ā Trēverīs imperium[6] dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant.[7] Inventīs [8]nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte 15 et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduātucōs, Menapiōs, adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus fīnitimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Ger- 20 mānōs crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

He Again Ravages the Nervian Territory and Marches against the Senones.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā,[9] proximīs IIII coāctīs legiōnibus [10]dē imprōvīsō in fīnīs Nerviōrum contendit,[11] et prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, māgnō 25 pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā mīlitibus concessā[12] vāstātīsque agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus[13] in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre, ut īnstituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs,

Cf. [1] opēs. — [2] calamitātis. — [3] explērī. — [4] amplificārī. — [5] dēmōnstrāvit. — [6] prīncipātus. — [7] sollicitant. — [8] aliquot. — [9] exāctā. — [10] repente. — [11] properāvit. — [12] datā. — [13] iterum.

Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent,[1] initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis[2] hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs[3] erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant; sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō 5 suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur māgnīsque itineribus eō pervenit.

The Senones and Carnutes Submit.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsilī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre; cōnantibus, prius quam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. 10 Necessāriō sententiā[4] dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antīquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque[5] accipit, quod [6]aestīvum tempus īnstantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrābātur; 15 obsidibus imperātīs C, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutes lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus. 20

Next he Goes against the Menapii; he Forbids them to Harbor Ambiorix.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsistit.[7] Cavarinum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius īrācundiā,[8] aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō, cīvitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō[9] 25 habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum,[10] reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapiī propin-

Cf. [1] **convēnissent.** — [2] **mōtūs.** — [3] **proximī.** — [4] **cōnsiliō.** — [5] **satisfactiōnem.** — [6] **aestātem.** — [7] **incubuit.** — [8] **acerbitāte.** — [9] **certō.** — [10] **concertātūrum.**

quī[1] Eburōnum fīnibus, perpetuīs[2] palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnō-
5 verat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda[3] auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet;
10 ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficīscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū,[4] locī praesidiō frētī,[5] in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.

6. Caesar, partītīs[6] cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs[7] pontibus, adit tripar-
15 tītō, aedificia vīcōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī[8] Menapiī lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfīrmat, sī aut Ambiorīgem aut ēius lēgātōs fīnibus suīs recēpissent. Hīs
20 cōnfīrmātīs[9] rēbus Commium Atrebātem cum equitātū custōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

Labienus among the Treveri.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs coāctīs peditātūs[10] equitātūsque[11] cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne
25 quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat adorīrī[12] parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā[13] aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs [14]missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns
30 temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, prae-

Cf. [1] cōnfīnēs. — [2] continuīs. — [3] adimenda. — [4] vī. — [5] cōnfīsī. — [6] dīvīsīs. — [7] īnstitūtīs. — [8] permōtī. — [9] cōnstitūtīs. — [10] peditum. — [11] equitum. — [12] adgredī. — [13] itinere. — [14] ā Caesare missās.



Fig. 79. — Ancient Statue of Gallic Chief.

sidiō v cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, cum xxv cohortibus māgnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mīlle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs.[1] Hōc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō 5 neque hostīs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs.[2] Loquitur in conciliō palam: 'Quoniam Germānī adpropinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās [3] in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtūrum.' Celeriter haec ad hostīs dēferuntur, 10 ut ex māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsilī prōpōnit,[4] et quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspīciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuē- 15 tūdō castra movērī [5] iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostīs dēferuntur.

After Much Manœuvring he Brings on an Engagement and Utterly Defeats them.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī — cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex 20 manibus dēmitterent;[6] longum esse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī [7] dīgnitātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam [8] manum praesertim fugientem atque impedītam adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsīre et inīquō [9] locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. 25 Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnīs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur.[10] Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō [11]

Cf. [1] opp. **lēniter acclīvibus.** — [2] opp. **dēspērātiō.** — [3] **in perīculum nōn dēductūrum.** — [4] **docet.** — [5] opp. **pōnī.** — [6] **āmitterent.** — [7] **permittere.** — [8] opp. **māgnam.** — [9] **aliēnō.** — [10] **prōcēdēbat.** — [11] **colle.**

quōdam conlocātīs, "Habētis," inquit, "mīlitēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque inīquō[1] locō tenētis; praestāte[2] eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepenumerō imperātōrī praestitistis; atque illum adesse et 5 haec cōram cernere exīstimāte." Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī[3] iubet; et paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostīs immittunt.[4] Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdēbant īnfestīs sīgnīs 10 ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre[5] nōn potuērunt, ac prīmō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus,[6] māgnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trē-15 verōrum fugā sēsē domum contulērunt.[7] Cum hīs propinquī Indūtiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, [8]comitātī eōs ex cīvitāte excessērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, prīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Cæsar Again Crosses the Rhine.

20 **9.** Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod *Germānī* auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum[9] habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxe-25 rat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne, māgnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus[10] orīrētur,[11] reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēne-

Cf. [1] opp. **idōneō.** — [2] **praebēte.** — [3] **īnstruī.** — [4] **coniciunt.** — [5] **sustinēre.** — [6] **īnsecūtus.** — [7] **retulērunt.** — [8] **cum eīs.** — [9] **recessum.** — [10] **sēditiō.** — [11] **coörerētur.**

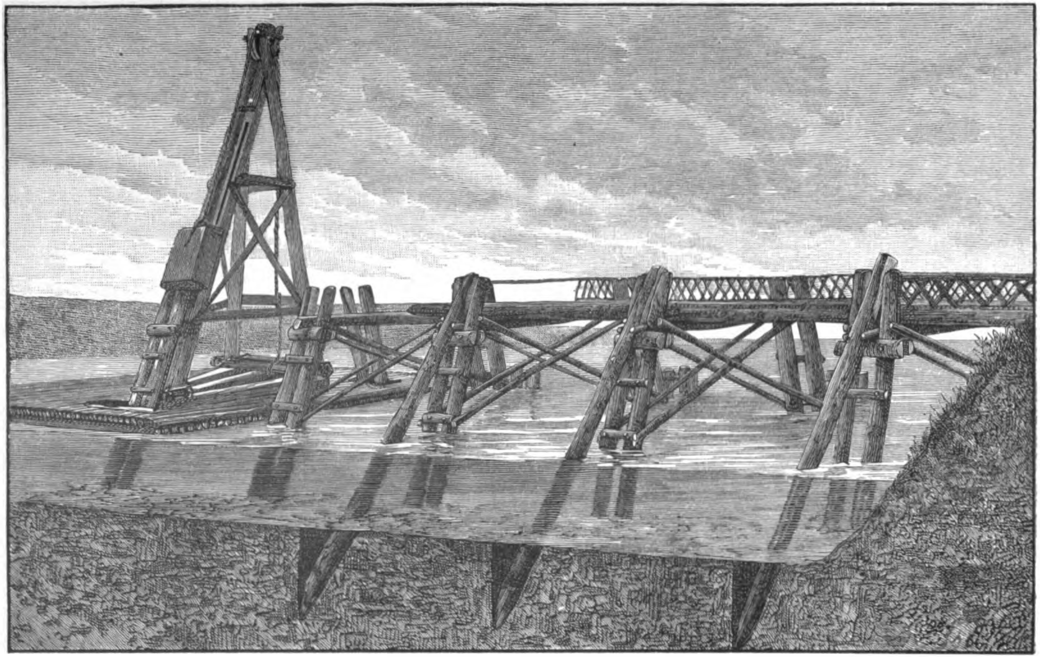


Fig. 80. — Pons a Cæsare in Rheno factus.

rant, pūrgandī[1] suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam:[2] petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant;[3] sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēvīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem[4] accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs perquīrit.[5] 5

He Learns from the Ubii that the Suevi have Retreated to the Forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs omnīs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum[6] locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum[7] adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs[8] explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.[9] Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt:[10] 'Suēvōs omnīs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs[11] fīnīs sē recēpisse;[12] silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus[13] pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēvōrum Suēvōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēvōs adventum[14] Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.' 10 15 20 25

Cf. [1] **excūsandī.** — [2] **violātam.** — [3] **persolvant.** — [4] **excūsātiōnem.** — [5] **explōrat.** — [6] opp. **inīquum.** — [7] **rērum frūmentāriārum.** — [8] **frequentēs.** — [9] **perquīrant.** — [10] **dēferunt.** — [11] **ultimōs.** — [12] **contulisse.** — [13] **penitus.** — [14] opp. **profectiōnem.**

Customs of the Gauls. The Two Parties among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in
5 omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem [1] eōrum iūdiciō [2] habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.[3] Idque ēius reī causā antī-
10 quitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; [4] suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partīs.[5]

Influence of the Romans upon the Relations of the Parties in Gaul. They Favor the Haedui.

15 **12.** Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus [6] valērent (quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant [7] eōsque ad sē māgnīs
20 iactūrīs [8] pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā [9] antecesserant [10] ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent
25 nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus

Cf. [1] **imperium.** — [2] **sententiā.** — [3] **revertātur.** — [4] **carēret, w. abl.** — [5] **factiōnēs.** — [6] **nōn.** — [7] **adscīverant.** — [8] **praemiīs.** — [9] **potestāte.** — [10] **praestiterant.**

auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus[1] clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant[2] meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre 5 imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitāteque amplificātā,[3] Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās[4] nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē 10 Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur;[5] ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū[6] rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. The Druids and their Power.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt nu- 15 merō[7] atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur[8] cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum[9] aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant[10] nōbilibus; *quibus* in hōs eadem omnia 20 sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit,[11] māgnōque hī sunt 25 apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt;[12] et, sī quod est admissum[13] facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrō-

Cf. [1] **antīquīs.** — [2] **concurrerant.** — [3] **auctā.** — [4] opp. **amīcitiās.** — [5] **dēfendēbant.** — [6] **condiciōne.** — [7] **dīgnitāte.** — [8] **invītātur.** — [9] **stīpendiōrum.** — [10] **dēdunt.** — [11] **sē adgregat.** — [12] **dēcernunt.** — [13] **commissum.**

versia est, īdem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,[1] sacrificiīs interdīcunt.[2] Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac
5 scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt,[3] nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs

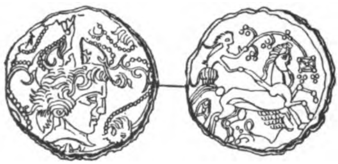


FIG. 81. — GALLIC COIN.

ūllus commūnicātur.[4] Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc
10 mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit[5] dīgnitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, [6]nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique
15 quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta[7] exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Their Privileges and Immunities. Their Education and Beliefs.

20 **14.** Druides ā bellō abesse[8] cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt; [mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī[9] praemiīs et

Cf. [1] **pāruit.** — [2] **prohibent.** — [3] **vītant.** — [4] **tribuitur.** — [5] **praestat.** — [6] **interdum.** — [7] **trāducta.** — [8] opp. **adesse.** — [9] **incitātī.**

suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre,[1] cum in reliquīs[2] ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque 5 ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplīnam efferrī[3] velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, — quod ferē plērīsque accidit[4] ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam 10 remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre[5] animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō.[6] Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum 15 immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights are the Fighting Men.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum[7] quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās[8] īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent[9]), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque 20 eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus,[10] ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientīsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human Sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus 25 morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur,[11] aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent,

Cf. [1] cōnfīdere. — [2] cēterīs. — [3] dīvolgārī. — [4] fit. — [5] perīre. — [6] omissō. — [7] opp. profectiōnem. — [8] bellum. — [9] dēfenderent. — [10] potentissimus. — [11] sunt.

administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, — quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī[1]

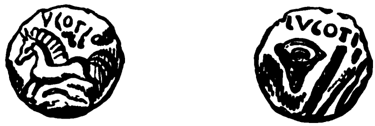


FIG. 82. — GALLIC COINS.

5 māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs[2] circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut lātrōciniō aut aliā noxiā[3] sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius 10 generis cōpia dēficit,[4] etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

Gallic Deities. Consecration of the Spoils of War to Mars.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecū-15 niae mercātūrāsque [5]habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem:[6] Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, 20 Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum [7]proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūc-

Cf. [1] **ingentī.** — [2] **incēnsīs.** — [3] **scelere.** — [4] opp. **suppetit.** — [5] **plūrimum valēre.** — [6] **sententiam.** — [7] **proelium committere.**

tōs cumulōs [1] locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre [2] aut posita tollere [3] audēret; gravissimumque eī reī [4] supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

They Claim Descent from Pluto. Peculiar Treatment of Boys.

18. Gallī sē omnīs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs [5] praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum [6] dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālīs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs [7] hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe [8] dūcunt.

Dowries. Power of Husbands over Wives. Funeral Rites.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur [9] frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum [10] temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīcut in līberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcessit,[11] ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem [12] modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs [13] excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī [14] fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt,[15] etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs,

Cf. [1] **tumulōs.** — [2] **cēlāre.** — [3] **efferre.** — [4] **factō.** — [5] **ortōs.** — [6] **trāditum.** — [7] **mōribus.** — [8] opp. **honestum.** — [9] **cōnficitur.** — [10] **priōrum.** — [11] **mortuus est.** — [12] **servōrum.** — [13] **cruciātīs.** — [14] **cāra.** — [15] **prōiciunt.**

quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs[1] esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

All Rumors from Outside to be Reported to the Magistrates.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius[2] suam rem pūblicam administrāre[3] exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis 5 quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit,[4] utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt 10 occultant, quae esse [5]ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt.[6] Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque 15 sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt[7] quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē[8] impu- 20 berēs permānsērunt maximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī statūram, alī vīrīs nervōsque cōnfīrmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent[9] rēbus: cūius reī nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur,[10] et pellibus aut parvīs 25 rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No Agriculture or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī mo-

Cf. [1] **amātōs.** — [2] **melius.** — [3] **gerere.** — [4] **reppererit.** — [5] **ūtilia.** — [6] **efferunt** — [7] **putant.** — [8] opp. **brevissimē.** — [9] **dūcunt.** — [10] **lavantur.**

dum certum aut fīnīs habet propriōs;[1] sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs [2]in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre[3] cōgunt. Ēius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā[4] cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnīs parāre[5] studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius[6] ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut [7] animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Their Isolation. How Chiefs are Appointed; their Power. Freebooting no Disgrace. Rites of Hospitality Observed.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs[8] habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere:[9] simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.[10] Lātrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam[11] quae extrā fīnīs cūiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit ‘sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,’ — cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs

Cf. [1] prīvātōs. — [2] quotannīs. — [3] dēmigrāre. — [4] perpetuā. — [5] adquīrere. — [6] dīligentius. — [7] aequō animō. — [8] loca dēserta. — [9] cōnsīdere. — [10] compōnunt. — [11] īgnōminiam.

secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum[1] ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur[2] omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.[3] Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent; 5 hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

Migration of Certain Gallic Tribes to Germany.

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum 10 Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns [4]ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.[5] Nunc quidem 15 in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia[6] multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largītur.[7] Paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs vir- 20 tūte comparant.

The Hercynian Forest and its Fauna. The Reindeer (?).

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō VIIII diērum iter expedītō[8] patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās[9] itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur[10] ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus, rēctā- 25 que flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad fīnīs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit[11] sinistrōrsus dīversīs ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnīs propter māgnitūdi-

Cf. [1] **perfugārum.** — [2] **habentur.** — [3] **dētrahitur.** — [4] **adhūc.** — [5] **fāmam.** — [6] **scientia.** — [7] **dōnat.** — [8] opp. **impedītō.** — [9] **longitūdinem.** — [10] **initium capit.** — [11] **convertit.**

nem attingit. Neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae quī sē [aut audīsse] aut adīsse[1] ad initium[2] ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit. Multaque in eā genera ferārum[3] nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ab cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda[4] videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā,[5] cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurīs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius[6] magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus. Ab ēius summō[7] sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The Elk and its Habits.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt [8]mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent; neque quiētis[9] causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflīctae[10] cāsū concidērunt, [11]ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē adplicant[12] atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestīgiīs cum est animadversum[13] ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt[14] aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō īnfrā[15] elephantōs; speciē et colōre

Cf. [1] **adpropinquāsse.** — [2] opp. **fīnem.** — [3] **animālium.** — [4] **trādenda.** — [5] **formā.** — [6] **altius.** — [7] opp. **īmō.** — [8] **carent.** — [9] **somnī.** — [10] **prōstrātae.** — [11] opp. **prōcumbere.** — [12] **adiungunt.** — [13] **compertum.** — [14] **suffodiunt.** — [15] opp. **suprā.**

et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspēxērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē[1] foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; 5 et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, māgnam ferunt[2] laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē[3] 10 conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs[4] epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul and Proceeds against Ambiorix.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit[5] Suēvōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam[6] frūmentī veritus (quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē[7] omnēs Germānī 15 agrī cultūrae student), cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret,[8] reductō exercitū partem ultimam[9] pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum CC rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulā- 20 tōrum IIII cōnstituit[10] praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit māgnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit; ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus, per Arduennam silvam — 25 quae est tōtīus Galliae maxima atque ab rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet, mīlibusque amplius D in longitūdinem patet — L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte[11] temporis prōficere possit; monet ut īgnīs in castrīs

Cf. [1] **dīligenter.** — [2] **pariunt.** — [3] **cupidē.** — [4] **māgnificentissimīs.** — [5] **cōgnōvit.** — [6] opp. **cōpiam.** — [7] opp. **maximē.** — [8] **morārētur.** — [9] opp **prīmam.** — [10] **contabulāvit.** — [11] **occāsiōne.**



FIG. 83.—STATUE OF AMBIORIX.

fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs[1] procul sīgnificātiō fīat; sēsē cōnfestim[2] subsequī dīcit.

Ambiorix Has the Good Luck to Escape.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantīs[3] dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem 5 contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē mīlitārī potest[4] fortūna. Nam *ut* māgnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque ēius adventus ab omnibus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius adferrētur, sīc 10 māgnae fuit fortūnae, omnī mīlitārī īnstrūmentō[5] quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, rēdīs equīsque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs[6] causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum 15 petunt propinquitātīs, comitēs familiārēsque[7] ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim[8] sustinuērunt. Hīs pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suīs intulit;[9] fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum perīculum et ad vītandum multum fortūna valuit.[10] 20

His Forces Disband and Withdraw to the Forest and Marshes. Catuvolcus Commits Suicide.

31. Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne[11] nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore exclūsus et repentīnō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est. Sed certē dīmissīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum 25 pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentīs[12] palūdēs

Cf. [1] opp. **discessiō.** — [2] **statim.** — [3] **īnsciōs.** — [4] **valet.** — [5] **armāmentīs.** — [6] opp. **frīgoris.** — [7] **amīcī.** — [8] **impetum.** — [9] **imposuit.** — [10] **potuit.** — [11] **cōnsultō.** — [12] **perpetuās.**

profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt hī īnsulīs sēsē occultāvērunt[1] quās aestūs efficere cōnsuērunt; multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt.[2] Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum
5 Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat,[3] aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī ēius cōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō (cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est)[4] sē exanimāvit.

Cæsar Proceeds to Aduatuca and Puts Q. Cicero in Command there.

10 **32.** Sēgnī Condrūsīque, ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum[5] 'nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam[6] esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambi-
15 orīgī auxilia mīsisse.' Caesar explōrātā[7] rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, fīnīs eōrum sē violātūrum[8] negāvit. Tum cōpiīs in trēs partīs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id
20 castellī nōmen est. Hōc ferē[9] est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnītiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem sublevāret.[10] Praesidiō impedīmentīs legi-
25 ōnem XIIII relīquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē cōnscrīptās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīsque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs attribuit.

Cf. [1] **abdidērunt.** — [2] **commīsērunt.** — [3] **cēperat.** — [4] **sibi mortem cōnscīvit.** — [5] **petītum.** — [6] **eandem.** — [7] **perquīsītā.** — [8] **vāstātūrum.** — [9] **prope.** — [10] **minueret.**

Divides his Forces and Proceeds in Search of Ambiorix.

33. Partītō[1] exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partīs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī[2] legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucīs adiacet dēpopulandam[3] mittit; ipse cum reliquīs III ad flūmen Scaldim, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque[4] Arduennae partīs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdens post diem VII sēsē reversūrum[5] cōnfīrmat; quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēbērī sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur; ut, rūrsus commūnicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīsque hostium ratiōnibus,[6] aliud initium bellī capere possint.

The Difficulties of the Situation Explained. Cæsar Seeks Alliance with Gallic Tribes against the Eburones.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partīs dispersa[7] multitūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita[8] aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem praesidī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vīcīnitātibus[9] erant nōta, māgnamque rēs dīligentiam[10] requīrēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversīs *ā* perterritīs ac dispersīs perīculum accidere), sed in singulīs mīlitibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen [11] ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultīsque itineribus cōnfertōs adīre prohibēbant. Sī negōtium[12] cōnficī stirpemque[13] hominum scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs dīdūcendīque[14] erant

Cf. [1] **dīvīsō.** — [2] **eōdem.** — [3] **vāstandam.** — [4] **ultimās.** — [5] **reditūrum.** — [6] **cōnsiliīs.** — [7] **dissipāta.** — [8] **remōta.** — [9] **propinquitātibus.** — [10] **cūram.** — [11] **partim.** — [12] **operam.** — [13] **genus.** — [14] opp. **cogendī.**

mīlitēs; sī continēre ad sīgna manipulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat,[1] locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, neque ex occultō īnsidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia. Ut in ēius
5 modī difficultātibus, quantum dīligentiā prōvidērī poterat prōvidēbātur; ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterē-



FIG. 84. — SACRIFICE IN CAMP. MILITARY BAND.

tur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum dētrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātīs nūntiōs Caesar; omnīs ēvocat spē praedae ad
10 dīripiendōs[2] Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur; simul ut māgnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps ac nōmen cīvitātis tollātur.[3] Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Cf. [1] **requīrēbat.** — [2] **dēpopulandōs.** — [3] **dēleātur.**

An Invasion from Germany. The Sugambri Come for a Share in the Plunder of the Eburones. They Advance towards Cæsar's Camp.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque adpetēbat[1] VII, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātīs[2] ac perterritīs hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit[3] fāma dīripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnīs ad praedam ēvocārī.[4] Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque XXX mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus[5] praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum. Prīmōs Eburōnum fīnīs adeunt; multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt,[6] māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī[7] praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniīsque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur.[8] Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs: "Quid vōs," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Aduatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnīs suās fortūnās[9] exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī[10] possit, neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat." *Hāc* oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī[11] erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Aduatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

Cf. [1] accēdēbat. — [2] disiectīs. — [3] perfertur. — [4] arcessī. — [5] factus. — [6] dēprehendunt. — [7] inductī. — [8] tardant. — [9] rēs familiārīs. — [10] dēfendī. — [11] invēnerant.

Cicero Unwisely Sends Large Numbers out to Forage.

36. Cicerō (quī omnīs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs[1] Caesaris summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgredī passus[2] esset) VII diē, diffīdēns[3] dē numerō diērum Caesarem
5 fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma[4] adferēbātur; simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus[5] quī illīus patientiam paene obsessiōnem[6] appellābant, sī quidem ex castrīs ēgredī nōn licēret; nūllum ēius modī cāsum exspectāns quō, VIIII oppositīs legiōnibus
10 maximōque equitātū, dispersīs ac paene dēlētīs hostibus, in mīlibus passuum tribus offendī posset, — V cohortīs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs[7] mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī [8] hōc spatiō diērum con-
15 valuerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māgna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vīs[9] iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Germans Assault the Camp. Panic Within.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore[10] [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab de-
20 cumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur; nec prius sunt vīsī, obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs adpropinquārent, ūsque eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent[11] mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix prīmum impetum cohors in stati-
25 ōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum[12] reperīre possint. Aegrē[13] portās nostrī tuentur,[14] reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs atque alius ex aliō causam

Cf. [1] **mandātīs.** — [2] **permīsisset.** — [3] opp. **cōnfīdēns.** — [4] **rumor.** — [5] **verbīs.** — [6] **obsidiōnem.** — [7] **agrōs.** — [8] **hīs diēbus.** — [9] **numerus.** — [10] **discrīmine.** — [11] **cōnsīderent.** — [12] **introitum.** — [13] **vix.** — [14] **dēfendunt.**

tumultūs quaerit; neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat[1] prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat; alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt, Cottaeque et Titūrī calamitātem,[2] quī 5 in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritīs[3] cōnfīrmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere[4] nītuntur[5] sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant. 10

P. Sextius Baculus again Distinguishes Himself.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī prīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis[6] ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostīs atque in 15 summō rem esse discrīmine; capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit: cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs volneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus[7] servātur. Hōc spatiō[8] 20 interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant[9] tantum ut in mūnītiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum[10] praebeant.

The Foragers Return and Reach the Camp with Some Difficulty and Loss.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in perīculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnītiō est quae perterritōs 25 recipiat; modo[11] cōnscrīptī atque ūsūs mīlitāris imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant: nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī

Cf. [1] **sē cōnferat.** — [2] **caedem.** — [3] **commōtīs.** — [4] **perfringere.** — [5] **cōnantur.** — [6] **sine armīs.** — [7] **ductus.** — [8] **tempore.** — [9] **adhortantur.** — [10] **dēfēnsiōnis.** — [11] **nūper.**

novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul cōnspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt:[1] redīsse prīmō legiōnēs crēdunt quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cōgnōverant; posteā dēspectā[2] paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.



FIG. 85. — SOLDIERS MARCHING IN PRESENCE OF THE IMPERATOR.

5 **40.** Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt.[3] Hinc celeriter dēiectī[4] sē in sīgna manipulōsque coniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent, quoniam tam propinqua[5] sint castra; etsī pars aliqua circumventa[6] ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī 10 posse [confīdunt]; aliī ut in iugō cōnsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs[7] nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostīs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad

Cf. [1] **relinquunt,** w. acc. — [2] **contemptā.** — [3] **profugiunt.** — [4] **dēpulsī.** — [5] **prope.** — [6] **circumclūsa.** — [7] **veterānī.**

ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At eī quī in iugō cōnstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse[1] aliīs vim celeritātemque vīderant, imitārī potuērunt; sed sē in castra recipere[2] cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt.[3] Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nūllī ex īnferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ōrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent,[4] fortissimē pūgnantēs concidērunt. Mīlitum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit; pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit.[5]

The Germans Withdraw. Arrival of Cæsar. Flight of Ambiorix.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant[6] trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum[7] hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor[8] praeoccupāverat ut paene [9]aliēnātā mente, dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs, equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent, neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, — ēventūs[10] bellī [11]nōn īgnōrāns, ūnum[12] quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae questus, nē minimum quidem cāsuī locum relinquī dēbuisse, — multum fortūnam in repentīnō[13] hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō

Cf. [1] **iūvisse,** w. acc. — [2] **referre.** — [3] **dēscendērunt.** — [4] **dēmitterent.** — [5] **interiit.** — [6] **cēlāverant.** — [7] **profectiōnem.** — [8] **metus.** — [9] **āmentiā impulsī.** — [10] **cāsūs.** — [11] **sciēns.** — [12] **tantum.** — [13] **subitō.**

portīsque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset.[1] Quārum omnium rērum maximē admīrandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant ut Ambiorīgis fīnīs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī[2] optātissimum Ambi-
5 orīgī beneficium obtulerant.

After Inflicting Further Military Severities upon the Resisting Tribes, Cæsar Returns to Italy.

43. Caesar, rūrsus ad vexandōs hostīs profectus, māgnō equitum coāctō numerō ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus, in omnīs partīs dīmittit.[3] Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae quisque cōnspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus
10 locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant; ut, sī quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent,[4] tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum[5] vidērētur. Ac saepe in
15 eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnīs partīs dīmissō equitātū, ut [nōn] modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī, nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōnspectū contenderent; ut, spē cōnsequendī inlātā atque īnfīnītō[6] labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiam initūrōs
20 putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam fēlīcitātem dēfuisse vidērētur; atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus[7] sē ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partīsque peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam IIII, quibus sōlīs vītam suam committere[8] audēbat.
25 **44.** Tālī modō vāstātīs[9] regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō[10] Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsilī fuerat, graviōre sententiā

Cf. [1] **pepulisset.** — [2] **dēductī.** — [3] **dissipat.** — [4] **abdidissent.** — [5] **moriendum.** — [6] **summō.** — [7] **ēvāderet.** — [8] **crēdere.** — [9] **dīreptīs.** — [10] **dētrīmentō.**

prōnūntiātā, mōre māiōrum supplicium[1] sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt; quibus cum aquā atque īgnī interdīxisset, duās legiōnēs ad fīnīs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum fīnibus Agēdincī in hībernīs conlocāvit; frūmentōque[2] exercituī prōvīsō,[2] ut 5 īnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

Cf. [1] **poenās.** — [2] **rē frūmentāriā comparātā.**

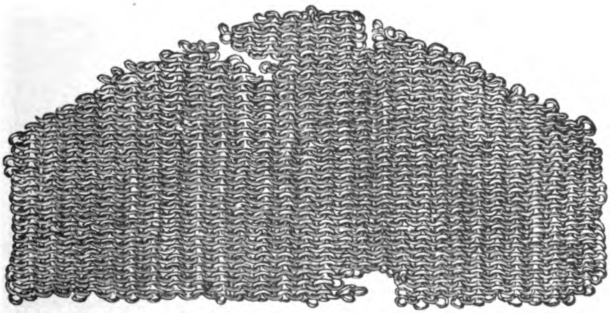


FIG. 86. — CHAIN MAIL (*lorica hamata*).

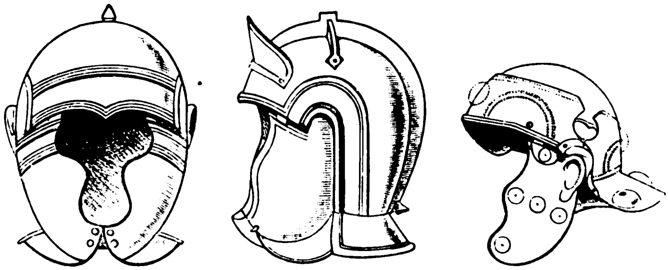


FIG. 87. — HELMETS (*galeae*).

BOOK VII.

UPRISING OF GAUL UNDER VERCINGETORIX. B.C. 52.

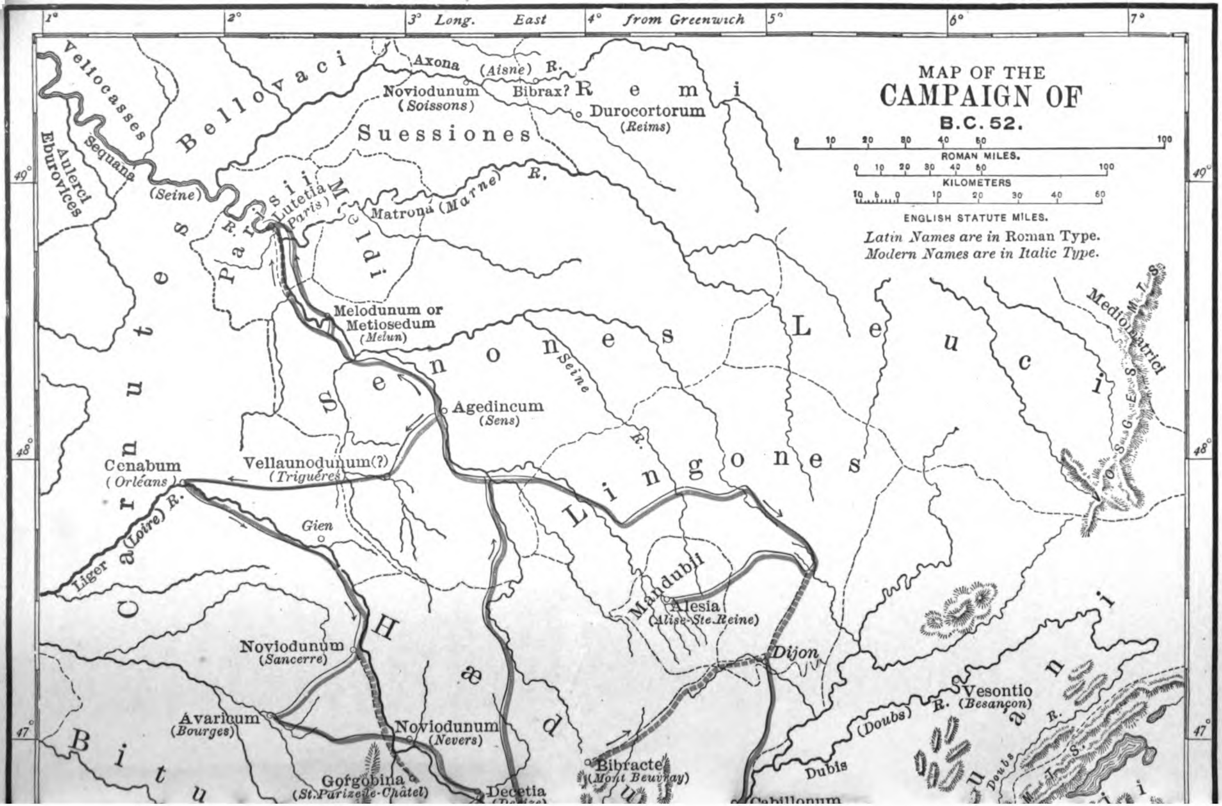
General Movement among the Gauls for Independence.

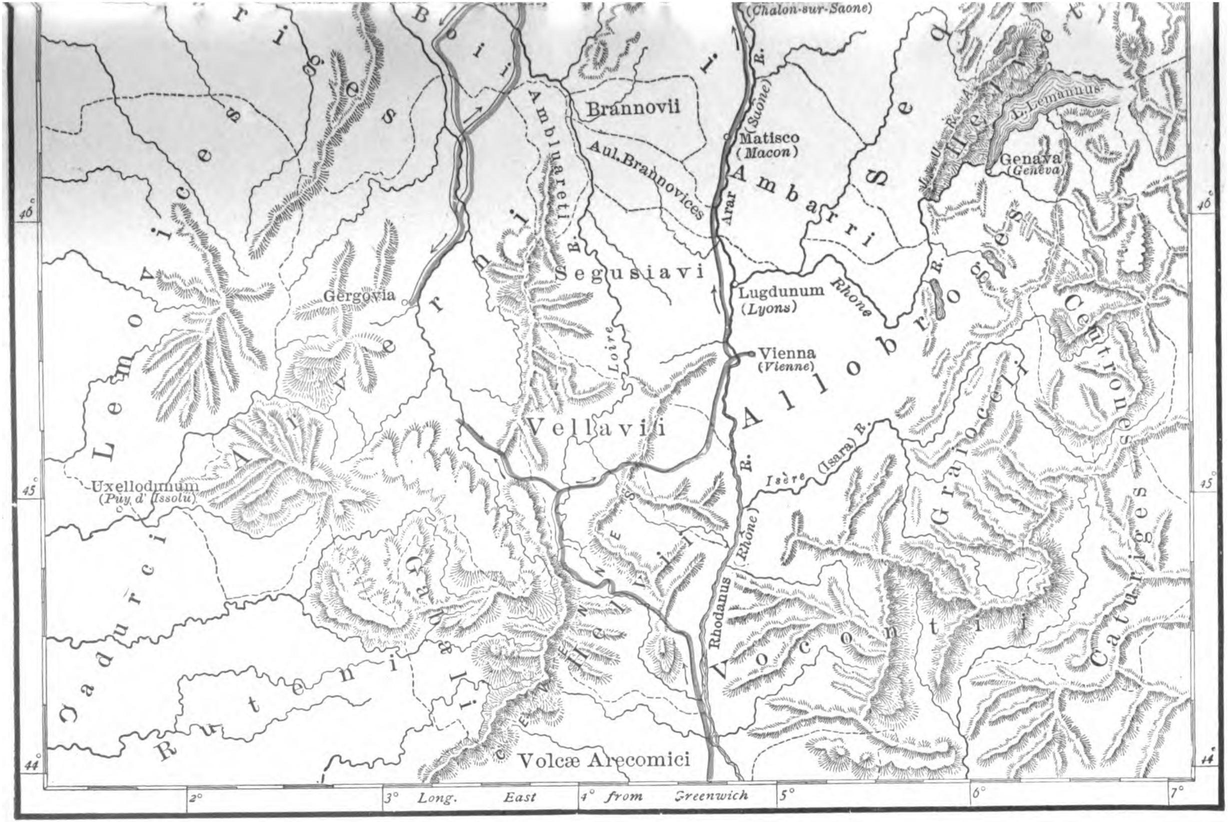
QUIĒTĀ[1] Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clōdī caede; *dē* senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā
5 habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere[2] vidēbātur) retinērī urbānō mōtū[3] Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī[4] occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī
10 Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent[5] līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre[6] incipiunt. Indictīs[7] inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs[8] locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant;[9] miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam;
15 omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī

Cf. [1] pācātā. — [2] postulāre. — [3] tumultū. — [4] incitātī. — [5] molestē ferrent. — [6] capere. — [7] opp. interdictīs. — [8] dē. :tīs. — [9] ostendunt.

ı ad
dē
; ut
nciā
iter
ȝalli
esa-
nīre
puli
cius
nci-
ntur
dere
am;
belli

›lestē
unt.


MAP OF THE
CAMPAIGN OF
B.C. 52.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type.
Modern Names are in Italic Type.
3° Long. East 4° from Greenwich
Vellocasses
Bellovaci
Aulerci Eburovices
Sequana
(Seine)
Axona (Aisne) R.
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Bibrax?
Remi
Durocortorum (Reims)
Suessiones
Matrona (Marne) R.
Parisii
Lutetia (Paris)
Meldi
Melodunum or Metiosedum (Melun)
Senones
Seine R.
Agedincum (Sens)
Leuci
Mediomatrici
Lingones
Carnutes
Cenabum (Orléans)
Vellaunodunum(?) (Trigueres)
Liger (Loire) R.
Gien
Mandubii
Alesia (Alise-Ste.Reine)
Dijon
Haedui
Noviodunum (Sancerre)
Avaricum (Bourges)
Noviodunum (Nevers)
Gorgobina (St.Parize-le-Châtel)
Decetia
Bibracte (Mont Beuvray)
Bituriges
Vesontio (Besançon)
(Doubs) R.
Dubis
Cabillonum
Sequani



(Chalon-sur-Saone)
Brannovii
Matisco
(Macon)
(Saone)
Aul. Brannovices
Ambarri
Arar
Ambluareti
Segusiavi
Lugdunum
(Lyons)
Rhone
Vienna
(Vienne)
Allobroges
Genava
(Geneva)
L. Lemannus
Centrones
Graioceli
Isère
(Isara) R.
Loire
Gergovia
Lemovices
Arverni
Boii
Vellavii
Helvii
Uxellodunum
(Puy d' Issolu)
Cadurci
Ruteni
Gabali
Rhodanus
(Rhone)
Vocontii
Caturiges
Volcæ Arecomici
46°
45°
44°
2°
3° Long. East
4° from Greenwich
5°
6°
7°

initium faciant et suī capitis[1] perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem[2] esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō,[3] in aciē praestāre[4] interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint recuperāre. 5

The Carnutes Begin the Revolt. Rapid Spread of the News.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs[5] profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque[6] ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur[7] petunt, conlātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur. 10 15

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō datō concurrunt,[8] cīvīsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnīs Galliae cīvitātīs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit[9] rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente[10] sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX. 20 25

Cf. [1] vītae. — [2] cūram. — [3] dēnique. — [4] melius esse. — [5] dēlīberatīs. — [6] prīmōs. — [7] cōnfīrmētur. — [8] conveniunt. — [9] contingit. — [10] opp. **occidente.**

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, Takes the Lead, and Induces Many Tribes to Join him. Severity of his Rule.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae[1] adulēscēns, — cūius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat[2] ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, — convocātīs suīs
5 clientibus facile incendit.[3] Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur[4] ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc
10 coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant; māgnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs[5] suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtes-
15 tātur[6] ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnīs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit[7]; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā[8] potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum
20 mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat,[9] cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine supplicī dubitantīs cōgit[10]: nam māiōre commissō dēlictō[11] īgnī
25 atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō[12] et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

Cf. [1] **potestātis.** — [2] **cupiēbat.** — [3] **incitāvit.** — [4] **ēicitur.** — [5] **inimīcōs.** — [6] **obsecrātur.** — [7] **adscīscit.** — [8] **trāditā.** — [9] **paret.** — [10] **perdūcit.** — [11] **facinore.** — [12] **exemplō.**

He Goes among the Bituriges, Who Appeal to the Hædui for Help. Being Refused, They Join him.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Ēius adventū Biturīges ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre[1] possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur,[2] lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant[3] sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsilī fuisse cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent.[4] Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīges eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Cæsar's Difficulty in Reaching his Army. He Proceeds to Narbo to Counteract the Plans of Lucterius.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs,[5] cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem[6] in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbātur,[7] quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās[8] intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

Cf. [1] **resistere, w. dat.** — [2] **sē recipiunt.** — [3] **referunt.** — [4] **circumvenīrent.** — [5] **perlātīs.** — [6] **meliōrem.** — [7] **permovēbātur.** — [8] **pūgnātūrās.**

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrigēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus[1] inruptiōnem[2] facere con-
5 tendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum[3] exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentīs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima,[4] cōnstituit; partem cōpiā-
10 rum ex prōvinciā, supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnīs Arvernōrum contingunt,[5] convenīre iubet.

Cæsar Crosses the Cevennes Mountains through the Snow. Vercingetorix Goes to Protect the Arverni.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs,[6] repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō,[7] quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in
15 Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit,[8] dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum VI atque ita viīs patefactīs,[9] summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnīs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus,
20 quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī[10] quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae[11] patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perfe-
25 runtur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant[12] ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim cum videat[13] omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Cf. [1] **adversus.** — [2] **incursiōnem.** — [3] **antepōnendum.** — [4] **proxima.** — [5] **attingunt.** — [6] **gestīs.** — [7] **repulsō.** — [8] **dīvidit.** — [9] **apertīs.** — [10] **ūnī.** — [11] **viae.** — [12] **implōrant.** — [13] **perspiciat.**

Cæsar Leaves Brutus in Command and Seeks Reënforcements. Vercingetorix Moves towards Gorgobina, a Town of the Boii.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī[1] equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnīs partīs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur[2]; datūrum 5 sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus[3] recentem equitātum, quem



FIG. 89. — COIN OF BRUTUS AND ALBINUS.

multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnīs Haeduōrum in Lingo- 10 nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur[4] cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā[5] Vercin- 15 getorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs[6] Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat,[7] oppūgnāre īnstituit.

Cæsar, though Much Perplexed, Determines to Relieve the Boii.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium 20 capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō

Cf. [1] **auxiliōrum.** — [2] **vagentur.** — [3] **adeptus, inveniēns.** — [4] **caperētur.** — [5] **audītā.** — [6] **superātōs.** — [7] **adiūnxerat.**

legiōnēs continēret,[1] nē stīpendiāriīs Haeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta[2] Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre[3]
5 vīsum est tamen omnīs difficultātīs perpetī[4] quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātīs[5] aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō
10 animō[6] sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

Cæsar Takes Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre īnstituit, eōque
15 bīduō circumvāllāvit; tertiō diē missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne, arma cōnferrī,[7] iūmenta prōdūcī, sexcentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret[8] C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficīscitur; quī tum prīmum adlātō nūntiō dē
20 oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī[9] causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēī tempore exclūsus[10] in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quae-
25 que ad eam rem ūsuī[11] sint mīlitibus imperat; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explō-

Cf. [1] **retinēret.** — [2] **tōta.** — [3] **optimum esse.** — [4] **perferre.** — [5] **animōs.** — [6] **virtūte.** — [7] **comportārī.** — [8] **perficeret.** — [9] **dēfendendī.** — [10] **prohibitus.** — [11] **ex ūsū.**

rātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expedītās esse iusserat, portīs incēnsīs,[1] intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs quīn cūnctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant.[2] Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat; 5 exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum fīnīs pervenit.

Noviodunum Surrenders, but the Inhabitants, Seeing Vercingetorix Approaching, Prepare for Defense.

12. Vercingetorīx ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent 10 ōrātum[3] ut sibi īgnōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsuleret,[4] ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus,[5] arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissīs quī arma iūmentaque 15 conquīrerent,[6] equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorīgis antecesserat. Quem [7] simul atque oppidānī cōnspexērunt atque in spem auxilī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex sīgnificātiōne Gallōrum novī 20 aliquid ab hīs inīrī cōnsilī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumīs[8] recēpērunt.

Cæsar Takes Noviodunum and Marches towards Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit,[9] quōs [10] ab initiō sēcum habēre īnsti- 25 tuerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt,

Cf. [1] exūstīs. — [2] impedierant. — [3] obsecrātum. — [4] parceret. — [5] cōnfēcerat. — [6] quaererent. — [7] ut semel. — [8] tūtōs. — [9] auxiliō mittit. — [10] prīmō.

atque in fugam coniectī[1] multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt; quibus prōflīgātīs[2] rūrsus[3] oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus

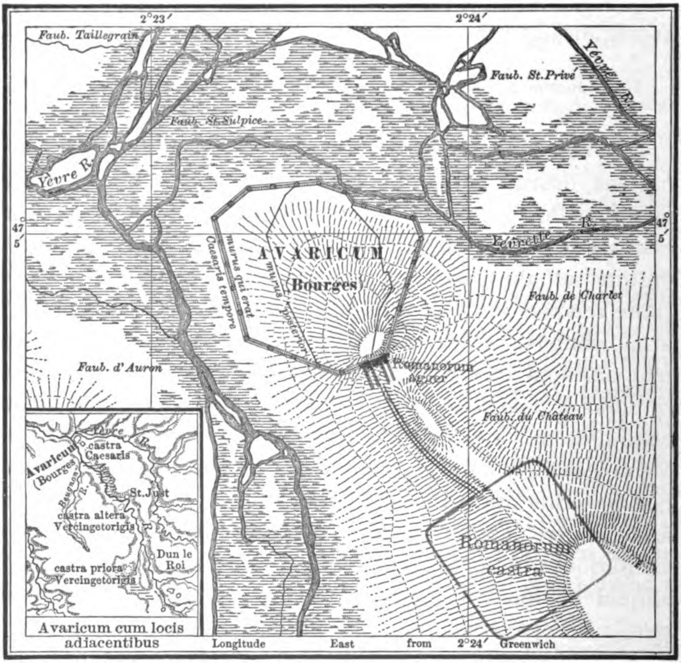


FIG. 90. — SIEGE OF AVARICUM.

5 rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō[4] cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

Cf. [1] **conversī.** — [2] **dēpulsīs.** — [3] **iterum.** — [4] opp. **āmissō.**

Vercingetorix Advises the Gauls to Lay Waste their Country, and thus Keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs[1] Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet 'longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modīs huic reī studendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent[2] et quod annī tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō[3] dispersōs hostīs ex aedificiīs petere; hōs omnīs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] [4]quōque versus, quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur[5]: Rōmānōs aut inopiam[6] nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum perīculō longius ā castrīs prōcessūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant *an* impedīmentīs exuant,[7] quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā, oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta; nē suīs sint ad dētrectandam[8] mīlitiam receptācula, neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, līberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.'

They Burn Many Cities, but Spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur.[9] Hōc idem fit[10] in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōn-

Cf. [1] **cladibus.** — [2] **plūrimum possint.** — [3] **necessitāte adductōs.** — [4] **undique.** — [5] **iuventur.** — [6] opp. **cōpiam.** — [7] **dēspolient.** — [8] **vītandam.** — [9] **combūruntur.** — [10] **accidit.**

spiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā[1] victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur[2] dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendī placeat an
5 dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīges, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata,
10 ūnum habeat et perangustum[3] aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente prīmō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

16. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-
15 quitur, et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum, ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēī tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat, et quid fierī vellet imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat,[4] dispersōsque,
20 cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō adficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōviderī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur,[5] ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque[6] itineribus īrētur.

Although Suffering from Lack of Supplies, the Roman Soldiers Maintain a Resolute Spirit.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae
25 intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre,[7] vīneās agere, turrīs duās cōnstituere[8] coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō[9] agēbant,

Cf. [1] **cōnfīrmātā.** — [2] **cōnsultātur.** — [3] **angustissimum.** — [4] **speculābātur.** — [5] **obsistēbātur.** — [6] **variīs.** — [7] **iacere.** — [8] **excitāre.** — [9] **opp. indīligentiā.**

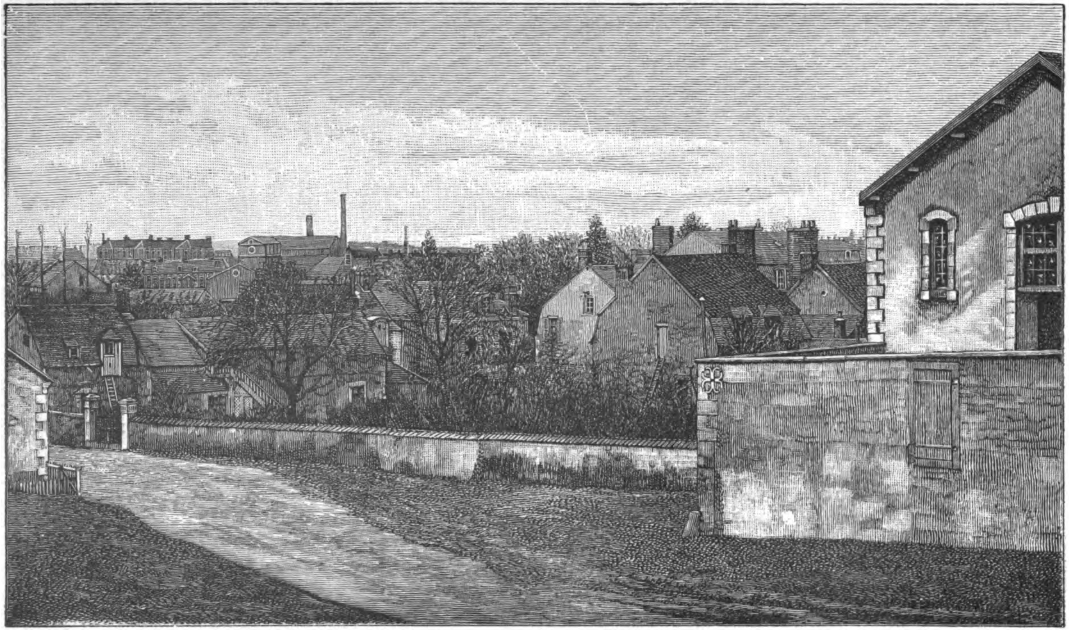


FIG. 91. — BOURGES.

nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus,[1] quod cīvitās erat exigua[2] et īnfīrma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitāte[3] Bōiōrum, indīligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, — ūsque eō ut complūrīs diēs 5 frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint,[4] et pecore ē longinquiōribus[5] vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, — nūlla tamen vōx est ab eīs audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte[6] et superiōribus victōriīs indīgna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret,[7] et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, 10 sē dīmissūrum[8] oppūgnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: 'Sīc sē complūrīs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam īgnōminiam acciperent, numquam īnfectā[9] rē discēderent; hōc sē īgnōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem relīquissent[10]: praestāre omnīs perferre acer- 15 bitātīs[11] quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent[12] parentārent.' Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum mandābant,[13] ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Cæsar Marches towards Vercingetorix.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex captīvīs 20 Caesar cōgnōvit[14] Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs mediā nocte 25 silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs[15] silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās

Cf. [1] **opibus.** — [2] **parva.** — [3] **exiguitāte.** — [4] **eguerint.** — [5] opp. **propiōribus.** — [6] **dīgnitāte.** — [7] **cohortārētur.** — [8] **relictūrum.** — [9] opp. **cōnfectā.** — [10] **dīmīsissent.** — [11] **dūritiās.** — [12] **periissent.** — [13] **trādēbant.** — [14] **comperit.** — [15] **dēnsiōrēs.**

omnīs in locō ēditō[1] atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferrī, arma expedīrī iussit.

He Finds him too Strongly Intrenched to Warrant an Attack.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex 5 omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat, nōn lātior pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptīs[2] ponti-

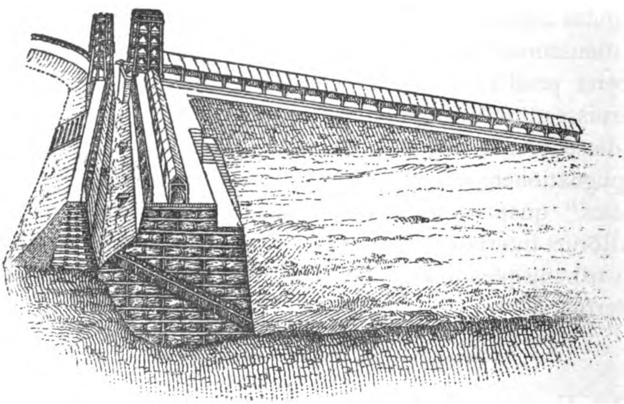


FIG. 92.—VIEW OF SIEGE WORKS.

bus Gallī fīdūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūtī [in cīvitātīs] omnia vada [ac saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant, sīc animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere 10 cōnārentur, haesitantīs[3] premerent ex locō superiōre; ut, quī propinquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret; quī inīquitātem[4] condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantīs mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs 15 ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proelī

Cf. [1] **excelsō.** — [2] **rescissīs.** — [3] **impedītōs.** — [4] opp. **aequitātem.**

exposcentīs,[1] ēdocet quantō dētrīmentō[2] et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam; quōs cum sīc animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude[3] perīculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbēre, nisi eōrum vītam laude suā habeat[4] cāriōrem. Sīc mīlitēs cōn- 5 sōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre[5] īnstituit.

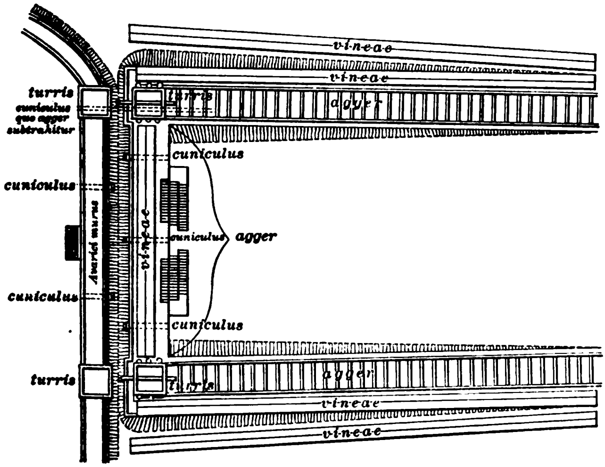


FIG. 93. — PLAN OF SIEGE WORKS.

Suspicions against Vercingetorix, Who Makes a Successful Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorīx cum ad suōs redīsset, prōditiōnis īnsimulātus,[6] — quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō[7] tantās 10 cōpiās relīquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte[8] et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuītō[9] aut

Cf. [1] petentīs. — [2] damnō. — [3] glōriā. — [4] exīstimet. — [5] comparāre. — [6] accūsātus. — [7] imperātōre. — [8] occāsiōne. — [9] forte, cāsū.

sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū[1] quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō, — tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: 'Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī, etiam ipsīs hortantibus[2]; quod propius
5 Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī opportūnitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnītiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam[3] neque in locō palūstrī dēsīderārī dēbuisse, et illīc fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūllī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dīmican-
10 dum impellerētur; cui reī propter animī mollitiem[4] studēre omnīs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū[5] intervēnerint, fortūnae; sī alicūius indiciō vocātī, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere[6] potue-
15 rint, quī dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre,[7] quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallīs explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-
20 antur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs." Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat,[8] et famē vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, mīlitēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; famē et
25 inopiā adductōs clam[9] ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre[10] possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam vīrīs sufficere[11] cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcissent, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere.
30 "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," [Vercingetorīx] "beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō san-

Cf. [1] **grātiā.** — [2] **monentibus.** — [3] **officium.** — [4] **īnfīrmitātem.** — [5] **fortuitō.** — [6] **contemnere.** — [7] **cupere.** — [8] **dēprehenderat.** — [9] **opp. palam.** — [10] **invenīre.** — [11] **satis esse.**

guine tantum exercitum victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat, ā mē prōvīsum [1] est."

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, — quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem 5 adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne [2] bellum administrārī [3] posse.' Statuunt ut x mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam [4] cēnsent; quod paene 10 in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

The Gauls Make a Most Skilful Defense against the Roman Works.

22. Singulārī [5] mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant,[6] ut est summae genus sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trā- 15 duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcīs āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant,[7] tormentīs intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cunīculīs subtrahēbant,[8] eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cunīculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī 20 parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbrīs diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī īgnem īnferēbant [9] aut mīlitēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur [10]; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotīdiānus agger expresserat,[11] commissīs suārum turrium 25 mālīs adaequābant; et apertōs cunīculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et maximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque [12] adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Cf. [1] **cautum.** — [2] **arte.** — [3] **gerī.** — [4] **mandandam.** — [5] **eximiae.** — [6] **obsistēbant.** — [7] **adfīxerant.** — [8] **subruēbant.** — [9] **iniciēbant.** — [10] **adgrediēbantur.** — [11] **ērexerat.** — [12] **mūrīs.**

Description of a Gallic Wall.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs dīrēctae, perpetuae[1] in longitūdinem paribus intervāllīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur[2]; ea autem 5 quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effarciuntur.[3] Hīs conlocātīs et coagmentātīs[4] alius īnsuper ōrdō

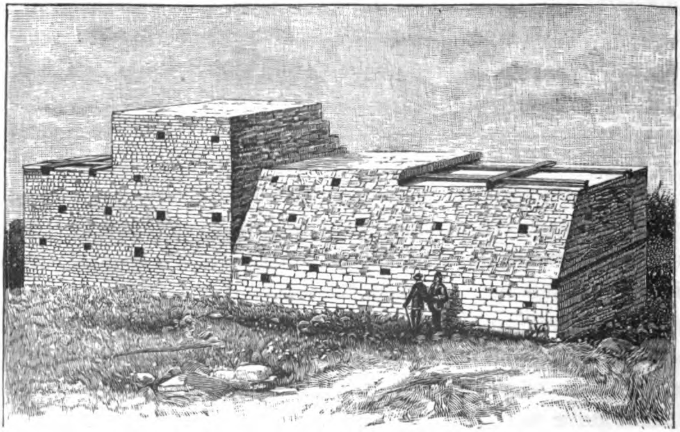


FIG. 94. — GALLIC WALL.

additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps 10 omne opus contexitur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternīs trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete 15 māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrā-

Cf. [1] opp. **intermissae.** — [2] **integuntur.** — [3] **complentur.** — [4] **cōnfīxīs.**

gēnum plērumque[1] intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī[2] neque distrahī potest.

The Gauls Set Fire to the Roman Works and Make a Sortie.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnātiōne mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et adsiduīs[3] imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus 5 XXV aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret mīlitēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, — paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre ag- 10 gerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant[4]; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat. Aliī facīs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus[5] iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque[6] rēs quibus īgnis excitārī[7] potest fundēbant; 15 ut, quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui reī ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō[8] Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrīs redūcerent[9] aggerem- 20 que interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Heroism of the Gauls.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur,[10] — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium 25 vidēbant, nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum[11] animadvertēbant, — semperque ipsī recentēs[12] dēfessīs succēderent,

Cf. [1] **ferē.** — [2] **perfringī.** — [3] **perpetuīs.** — [4] **incenderant.** — [5] opp. **comminus.** — [6] **cēterās.** — [7] opp. **restinguī.** — [8] **cōnsiliō, iūssū.** — [9] **removērent.** — [10] **renovārētur.** — [11] **auxilium ferendum.** — [12] **integrī.**

omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod dīgnum memoriā vīsum praetereundum[1] nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās
5 glēbās in īgnem[2] ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab

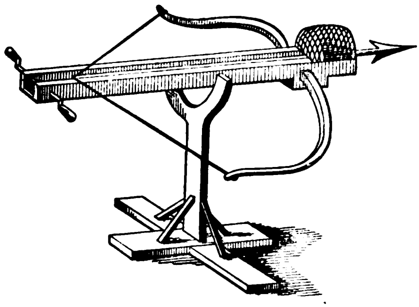


FIG. 95. — SCORPIO.

latere dextrō trāiectus[3] exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere[4] fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertiō quartus; nec prius ille est ā prō-
10 pūgnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restīnctō aggere atque omnī parte submōtīs hostibus, fīnis est pūgnandī factus.

The Gauls Prepare to Abandon the Town, but are Dissuaded by the Women.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod[5] rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante
15 et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā[6] suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequen-

Cf. [1] **omittendum.** — [2] **ex adversō.** — [3] **trānsfossus.** — [4] **officiō.** — [5] **nihil prōfēcerant.** — [6] **dētrīmentō.**

dum tardābat.[1] Iamque hōc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt[2] nē sē et commūnīs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impe- 5 dīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā[3] perstāre[4] vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor[5] misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt. 10

Storming of the Walls.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā[6] turrī dīrectīsque operibus quae facere īnstituerat, māgnō coörtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum[7] cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet 15 ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vīneās] in occultō expedītīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum[8] victōriae perciperent, eīs quī prīmī mūrum adscendissent praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnum dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt. 20

The Town is Taken, and Most of the Inhabitants are Butchered.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī, in forō ac locīs patentiōribus[9] cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hōc animō[10] ut, sī quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum[11] sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, 25 veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās[12] oppidī partīs continentī impetū petīvērunt; parsque

Cf. [1] **morābātur.** — [2] **obsecravērunt.** — [3] **cōnsiliō.** — [4] **permanere.** — [5] opp. **fortitūdō.** — [6] opp. **reductā.** — [7] opp. **omittendum.** — [8] **praemium.** — [9] **apertiōribus.** — [10] **cōnsiliō.** — [11] **dēscendere.** — [12] opp. **proximās.**

ibi, cum angustō[1] exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sīc et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn
5 mulieribus,[2] nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt.[3] Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, *et* veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum
10 concursū et misericordiā volgī sēditiō orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus[4] suīs prīncipibusque cīvitātum, disparandōs[5] dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō[6] obvēnerat.

Vercingetorix Appeals to the Gauls to Continue the War.

29. Posterō diē conciliō[7] convocātō cōnsōlātus cohortā-
15 tusque est: 'Nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius reī fuerint ipsī imperītī; errāre, sī quī in bellō omnīs secundōs[8] rērum prōventūs[9] exspectent; sibi numquam
20 placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius reī testīs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dissentīrent,[10] hās suā dīligentiā
25 adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab eīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī[11] ut castra mūnīre īnstituerent, quō facilius repentīnōs[12] hostium impe-
30 tūs sustinēre possent.'

Cf. [1] opp. **lātō.** — [2] **fēminīs.** — [3] opp. **occīdērunt.** — [4] **amīcīs.** — [5] **distribuendōs.** — [6] opp. **fīne.** — [7] **contiōne.** — [8] opp. **adversōs.** — [9] **ēventūs.** — [10] **discēderent.** — [11] **obtinērī.** — [12] **imprōvīsōs.**

They are Inspired by his Appeal to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et maximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat [1] tantō acceptō incommodō, neque *sē* in occultum [2] abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat [3]; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae [4] auctōritātem minuunt, sīc [5] hūius ex contrāriō



Fig. 96. — Coin of the Bituriges.

dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfīrmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; prīmumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt, et sīc erant animō cōnfīrmātī, hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda [6] exīstimārent.

He Levies New Troops.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātīs adiungeret, atque eārum prīncipēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat.[7] Huic reī idōneōs [8] hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ōrātiōne subdolā [9] aut amīcitiā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat. Simul, ut dēminūtae [10] cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in

Cf. [1] **dēfuerat.** — [2] opp. **apertum.** — [3] **vītāverat.** — [4] opp. **secundae.** — [5] **ita.** — [6] **perferenda.** — [7] **conciliābat.** — [8] **aptōs.** — [9] **callidā.** — [10] opp. **auctae.**

castra addūcī velit[1]; sagittāriōsque omnīs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī[2] et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat[3] explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis fīlius, rēx Nitiobrigum, 5 cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervēnit.[4]

The Hædui Appeal to Cæsar to Settle a Dispute.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrīs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī[5] commeātūs nactus, exer-10 citum ex labōre[6] atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā, — cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōnstituisset, sīve eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne[7] premere posset, — lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut 15 maximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat[8]: 'Summō esse in perīculō rem; quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolita-20 vem, flōrentem[9] et inlustrem adulēscentem; alterum Cotum, antīquissimā[10] familiā nātum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae[11] et māgnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiācus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs, dīvīsum senātum, dīvīsum populum, suās 25 cūiusque eōrum clientēlās.[12] Quod sī diūtius alātur[13] contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōnflīgat; id nē accidat positum in ēius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.'

Cf. [1] opp. **nōlit.** — [2] **cōgī.** — [3] **interierat.** — [4] opp. **discessit.** — [5] **alius.** — [6] opp. **quiēte.** — [7] **obsessiōne.** — [8] **succurrat.** — [9] **amplum.** — [10] opp. **novissimā.** — [11] **auctōritātis.** — [12] **clientēs.** — [13] **augeātur.**

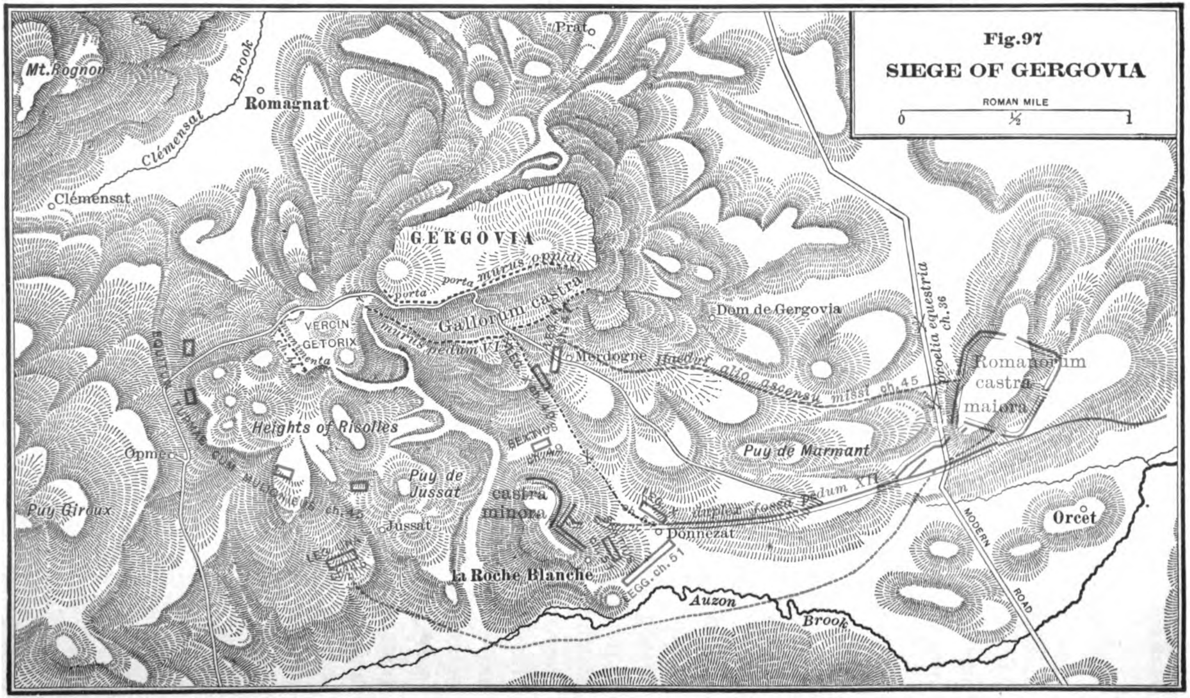


Fig. 97
SIEGE OF GERGOVIA

He Goes to them in Person and Decides the Case.

33. Caesar etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmentōsum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn īgnōrāns quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī[1] cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, 5 atque ea pars quae minus[2] sibi cōnfīderet auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret,[3] huic reī praevertendum[4] exīstimāvit; et quod lēgibus Haeduōrum eīs quī summum magistrātum obtinērent[5] excēdere ex fīnibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse[6] vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs 10 proficīscī statuit, senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset, docērēturque, paucīs clam[7] convocātīs, aliō locō, aliō tempore atque[8] oportuerit, frātrem ā frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō[9] utrōque 15 nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent,[10] sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, — Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convictolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātis intermissīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

Cæsar Sends Labienus Northward and himself Proceeds towards Gergovia.

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, — cohortātus Haeduōs ut 20 contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis oblīvīscerentur atque omnibus omissīs[11] [hīs] rēbus huic bellō servīrent, eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā[12] Galliā exspectārent, equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiīs reī frūmentāriae causā dispō- 25 neret,[13] — exercitum in duās partīs dīvīsit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parīsiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit; sex ipse

Cf. [1] **exsistere.** — [2] opp. **plūs.** — [3] **vocāret.** — [4] **praecipiendum.** — [5] **gererent.** — [6] opp. **auxisse.** — [7] opp. **palam.** — [8] **quam.** — [9] opp. **mortuō.** — [10] opp. **iubērent.** — [11] **dēpositīs.** — [12] **pācātā.** — [13] **distribueret.**

in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi relīquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx, omnibus interruptīs[1] ēius flūminis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

He Succeeds in Crossing the Allier River.

5 **35.** Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōnspectū ferēque [2] ē regiōne castrīs castra pōnēbant. Dispositīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent, erat in māgnīs Caesari difficultātibus rēs nē māiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur; quod nōn ferē ante 10 autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī solet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs,[3] ē regiōne ūnīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit[4]; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedīmentīs, ut cōnsuērat, mīsit, dis- 15 trāctīs quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre[5] vidērētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum, īsdem sublicīs, quārum pars īnferior[6] integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit.[7] Celeriter effectō 20 opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō[8] dēlēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

At Gergovia he Gains an Advantage of Position over Vercingetorix.

36. Caesar ex eō locō [9] quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam per- 25 vēnit, equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnīs aditūs difficilīs[10] habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit[11]; dē obsessiōne nōn

Cf. [1] **interscissīs.** — [2] **adversus,** w. acc. — [3] opp. **mōtīs.** — [4] **remānsit.** — [5] **explērī.** — [6] opp. **superior.** — [7] **incēpit.** — [8] opp. **inīquō.** — [9] **diē sextō.** — [10] opp. **lēniter adclīvīs.** — [11] **spem dēposuit.**

prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedīsset.[1] At Vercingetorīx castrīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās conlocāverat; atque omnibus ēius iugī collibus occupātīs quā dēspicī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat[2]; prīncipēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administrandum[3] vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus,[4] quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne līberā prohibitūrī hostīs vidēbantur; sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn īnfīrmō[5] tenēbātur; tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs conlocāvit[6] fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū[7] etiam singulī commeāre possent.

Some of the Hædui Organize a Revolt.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus conloquitur, quōrum erat prīnceps Litavīcus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī[8] adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat[9] hortāturque ut sē līberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: 'Ūnam[10] esse Haeduōrum cīvitātem quae certissimam[11] Galliae victōriam distineat; ēius

Cf. [1] **prōvīdisset.** — [2] **praestābat.** — [3] **gerendum.** — [4] **praeruptus.** — [5] opp. **validō.** — [6] **posuit.** — [7] **impetū.** — [8] **ortī.** — [9] **partītur.** — [10] **sōlam.** — [11] **explōrātam.**

auctōritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōnsi-
stendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Cae-
saris beneficiō[1] adfectum, sīc tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum
causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūnī lībertātī[2] tribuere.
5 Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesa-
rem disceptātōrem,[3] quam Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant?'
Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō
dēductīs, cum sē vel prīncipēs ēius cōnsilī fore profitēren-
tur,[4] ratiō[5] perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temerē
10 ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōnfīdēbant.
Placuit[6] ut Litavīcus decem illīs mīlibus quae Caesarī ad
bellum mitterentur praeficerētur, atque ea dūcenda cūrāret
frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā
ratiōne agī placeat cōnstituunt.

Litavicus at the Head of the Hæduan Contingent Stops at Some Distance from Gergovia, and Incites his Troops to Abandon the Roman Cause.

15 **38**. Litavīcus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circi-
ter xxx ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus
lacrimāns,[7] "Quō proficīscimur," inquit, "mīlitēs? Omnis
noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs cīvitātis,
Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī[8] prōditiōnis, ab Rō-
20 mānīs indictā[9] causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite
quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribus atque omni-
bus meīs propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre prohibeor quae gesta
sunt prōnūntiāre." Prōdūcuntur eī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae
dīcī vellet,[10] atque eadem quae Litavīcus prōnūntiāverat
25 multitūdinī expōnunt: 'Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfec-
tōs, quod conlocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter
multitūdinem mīlitum occultāsse[11] atque ex mediā caede
effūgisse.' Conclāmant Haeduī et Litavīcum obsecrant ut

Cf. [1] opp. **maleficiō**. — [2] opp. **servitūtī**. — [3] **arbitrum**. — [4] **pollicē-
rentur**. — [5] **cōnsilium**. — [6] **cōnstitūtum est**. — [7] **flēns**. — [8] **accūsātī**. —
[9] opp. **dicta**. — [10] opp. **nōllet**. — [11] **abdidisse**.

sibi cōnsulat. "Quasi vērō," inquit ille, "cōnsilī sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere[1] et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere! An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī[2] est, persequāmur[3] eōrum mortem quī indīgnissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus!" Ostendit cīvīs Rōmānōs quī ēius praesidī fīdūciā[4] ūnā erant; continuō māgnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīripit; ipsōs crūdēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitāte Haeduōrum dīmittit; eōdem mendāciō[5] dē caede equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

Eporedorix Conveys the News to Cæsar.

39. Eporēdorīx Haeduus, summō[6] locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā[7] sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīviciācō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dīgnitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō; et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitave alter prō Cotō, summīs opibus[8] pūgnāverant. Ex eīs Eporēdorīx cōgnitō Litavīcī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prāvīs[9] adulēscentium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī[10] mōmentō aestimāre possit.

Cæsar Immediately Goes to the Hædui and Suppresses the Revolt.

40. Māgnā adfectus sollicitūdine[11] hōc nūntiō Caesar, quod semper Haeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat,[12]

Cf. [1] **concurrere.** — [2] **virtūtis,** opp. **timōris.** — [3] **ulcīscāmur.** — [4] opp. **perfidiā.** — [5] **simulātiōne.** — [6] opp. **humilī.** — [7] **auctōritāte.** — [8] **facultātibus.** — [9] opp. **bonīs.** — [10] opp. **gravī.** — [11] **cūrā.** — [12] **fāverat.**

[1]nūllā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expedītās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte vidēbātur. C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus
5 castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litavīcī cum comprehendi[2] iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostīs profūgisse. Adhortātus mīlitēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur,[3] cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum XXV, agmen Haeduōrum cōnspicātur, immissō equi-
10 tātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit; interdīcitque[4] omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorīgem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cōgnitīs et Litavīcī fraude[5] perspectā, Haeduī manūs tendere,[6] et dēditiōnem
15 sīgnificāre, et prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī[7] incipiunt. Litavīcus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere[8] patrōnōs, Gergoviam profugit.

Hastens Back to Gergovia to Relieve Fabius.

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Haeduōrum missīs quī
20 suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet.[9] Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit expōnunt;[10] summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō[11]
25 integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque adsiduō[12] labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vāllō permanendum; multitūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs volnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta; Fabium discessū

Cf. [1] **sine morā.** — [2] opp. **līberārī.** — [3] **sē animō dēmittant.** — [4] **vetat**, w. acc. and inf. — [5] **mendāciō.** — [6] **pandere.** — [7] opp. **petere.** — [8] **relinquere.** — [9] opp. **pōnit.** — [10] **nūntiant.** — [11] opp. **rārō.** — [12] **continuō.**

eōrum, duābus relictīs portīs, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum[1] adparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

Further Plots among the Gauls.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī prīmīs nūntiīs ab Litavīcō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit[2] aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās,[3] quae maximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem[4] habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedīs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt.[5] Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem[6] impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem, fidē datā ex oppidō Cabillōnō ēdūcunt[7]; idem facere cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant.[8] Hōs continuō *in* itinere adortī omnibus impedīmentīs exuunt; repūgnantīs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs māiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

The Hædui Seek Reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not Cease Plotting.

43. Interim nūntiō adlātō omnīs eōrum mīlitēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil pūblicō[9] factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt; Litavīcī frātrumque bona pūblicant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī[10] suī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum[11] suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō[12] ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitātīsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant.[13]

Cf. [1] **fortūnam.** — [2] **indūcit.** — [3] opp. **prūdentia.** — [4] **rūmōrem.** — [5] **abdūcunt.** — [6] **āmentiam.** — [7] **adliciunt.** — [8] **cōnsēderant.** — [9] opp. **prīvātō.** — [10] **excūsandī.** — [11] opp. **āmittendōrum.** — [12] **quaestū.** — [13] **concitant.**

Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē [1] potest lēgātōs appellat: 'Nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque volgī gravius dē cīvitāte iūdicāre, neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere.' Ipse māiōrem Galliae



FIG. 98.—CARE OF THE WOUNDED.

5 mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat [2] quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

Cf. [1] lēnissimē. — [2] quā ratiōne.

Cæsar now Devotes himself to the Capture of Gergovia.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum [1] hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Admīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat.[2] Cōnstābat inter omnīs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat,[3] dorsum [4] esse ēius iugī [4] prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum,[5] quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī [6] atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum omnīs ā Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.

He Skilfully Arranges his Troops.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrīs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum numerum impedīmentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī [7] mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus, equitum speciē ac simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentātiōnis [8] causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnīs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur,[9] ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō,[10] certī quid esset, explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem x eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit [11] locō silvīsque occultat.[12] Augētur Gallīs suspīciō atque omnēs illō ad mūnītiōnem cōpiae trādū-

Cf. [1] **vacuum.** — [2] **concurrēbat.** — [3] **reppererat.** — [4] **summum iugum.** — [5] opp. **lātum.** — [6] **circumdatī.** — [7] opp. **induī.** — [8] **speciēī.** — [9] **conspiciēbantur.** — [10] **intervāllō.** — [11] **conlocāvit.** — [12] **cēlat.**

cuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus, tectīs īnsīgnibus suōrum occultātīsque sīgnīs mīlitāribus, rārōs [1] mīlitēs (nē ex oppidō animadverterentur) ex māiōribus castrīs in minōra trādūcit, lēgātīsque quōs singulīs legiōni-
5 bus praefēcerat quid fierī velit ostendit: in prīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hōc ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī [2]; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proelī. Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnum dat et ab
10 dextrā [3] parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

He Makes a Sudden Attack and Captures the Enemy's Camp.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat.[4] Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdi-
15 nem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus [5] saxīs VI pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs [6] castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveni-
20 unt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs [7] celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrigum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus,[8] ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, volnerātō equō vix sē [9] ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.[9]

The Troops are Eager to Assault the Town.

25 **47.** Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque X, quācum erat, contiōnātus, sīgna cōnstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn audītō

Cf. [1] opp. **dēnsōs, cōnfertōs.** — [2] **sānārī.** — [3] opp. **sinistrā.** — [4] opp. **minuēbat.** — [5] **ingentibus.** — [6] opp. **rārissimīs.** — [7] **occupandīs.** — [8] **dēprehēnsus.** — [9] **effugeret.**

sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum,[1] retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs[2] proeliīs, nihil adeō arduum[3] sibi exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī[4] pos- 5 sent; neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque adpropinquārunt.[5] Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā[6] portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō 10 vestem argentumque iactābant; et pectore nūdō[7] prōminentēs, passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent; neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent. Nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant.[8] L. Fabius, centuriō 15 legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārīs atque ab eīs sublevātus[9] mūrum ascendit. Hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit. 20

The Gauls are Reënforced.

48. Interim eī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā[10] dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ab Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus[11] māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō 25 cōnsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitūdō[12] convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant,[13] suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōs-

Cf. [1] **mandātum.** — [2] opp. **adversīs.** — [3] **difficile.** — [4] **adipīscī.** — [5] **subiērunt,** w. acc. — [6] opp. **extrā.** — [7] **apertō.** — [8] **dēdēbant.** — [9] **sublātus.** — [10] opp. **īnfrā.** — [11] **summā celeritāte.** — [12] **numerus.** — [13] **pandēbant.**

que in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa [1] contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō [2] pūgnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentīs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

Close and Doubtful Struggle. Gallant Exploit of Petronius.

5 **49.** Caesar cum inīquō [3] locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut cohortīs ex castrīs celeriter [4] ēdūceret et sub īnfimō [5] colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret; ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs [6] 10 vīdisset, quō minus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus [7] pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī vīsī 15 ab latere nostrīs apertō,[8] quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt; ac, tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs [9] animadvertēbantur, quod īnsīgne pāctum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā 20 mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur.[10] M. Petrōnius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere [11] cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam 25 volneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte [12] glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte [13] vōbīs cōnsulite." Simul in mediōs hostīs inrūpit

Cf. [1] **pār,** opp. **dispār.** — [2] **diūturnitāte.** — [3] **aliēnō.** — [4] opp. **tardē.** — [5] opp. **summō.** — [6] **ēiectōs.** — [7] opp. **ēminus.** — [8] **nūdō.** — [9] **nūdīs.** — [10] **dēiciēbantur.** — [11] rescindere. — [12] **studiō.** — [13] **occāsiōne.**

duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī[1] suīs, "Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vītae subvenīre[2] cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte dum est facultās[3] vōsque ad legiōnem recipite."[4] Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit. 5

The Romans are Driven Back.

51. Nostrī cum undique premerentur,[5] XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī[6] sunt locō; sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentīs legiō X tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfēstīs contrā hostem sīgnīs cōnstitērunt. Vercingetorīx ab[7] rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī. 10 15

Cæsar Reproves his Soldiers for too Great Eagerness, but Praises their Courage.

52. Posterō diē Caesar contiōne advocātā temeritātem[8] cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit,[9] quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam[10] victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuis- 20 25

Cf. [1] iuvāre. — [2] auxilium ferre. — [3] potestās. — [4] referte. — [5] urgērentur. — [6] repulsī. — [7] īnfimō colle. — [8] opp. prūdentiam. — [9] incūsāvit. — [10] certam.

set, tantō opere licentiam[1] adrogantiamque[2] reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque [3] animī māgnitūdinem
5 dēsīderāre.

After Some Skirmishing, Cæsar Moves towards the Hædui.

53. Hāc habitā contiōne et ad extrēmam[4] ōrātiōnem cōnfīrmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī[5] hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat,
10 legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem[6] minuendam mīlitumque animōs
15 cōnfīrmandōs factum exīstimāns, in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver *vēnit;* pontīs refēcit atque exercitum trādūxit.

He is Confirmed in his Suspicion that the Hædui Mean to Revolt, but Tries to Dissuade them.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Haeduīs appellātus, discit cum omnī equitātū Litavīcum ad sollicitandōs
20 Haeduōs profectum; opus[7] esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōnfīrmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī[8] dēfectiōnem[9] cīvitātis exīstimābat; tamen eōs retinendōs[10] nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur
25 aut daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem. Discēdentibus eīs breviter sua in Haeduōs merita exposuit; quōs et quam

Cf. [1] opp. **continentiam.** — [2] opp. **modestiam.** — [3] opp. **turpitūdinem.** — [4] opp. **prīmam.** — [5] **fortitūdinī.** — [6] **adrogantiam.** — [7] **necesse.** — [8] opp. **tardārī.** — [9] **sēditiōnem.** — [10] opp. **dīmittendōs.**

humilīs[1] accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs[2] agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs cōpiīs, impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs; et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstinum[3] statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem et grātiam 5 antecessisse[4] vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dīmīsit.

Eporedorix and Viridomarus Kill the Roman Garrison at Noviodunum, Seize and Destroy Cæsar's Stores, and Burn the Town.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnīs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exer- 10 citūs impedīmentōrum māgnam partem contulerat; hūc māgnum numerum equōrum, hūius bellī causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēmptum, mīserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū cīvitātis cōgnōvissent, Litavīcum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum 15 apud eōs maximae auctōritātis, Convictolitavim magistrātum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē missōs; nōn praetermittendum[5] tantum commodum[6] exīstimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī custōdibus[7] quīque 20 eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē[8] partītī sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī[9] nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, 25 reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere,[10] praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs inici-

Cf. [1] opp. **ēlātōs**. — [2] **exūtōs**. — [3] **priōrem**. — [4] **superāsse**. — [5] **neglegendum**. — [6] opp. **incommodum**. — [7] **praesidiīs**. — [8] **dīvīsērunt**. — [9] **dēfendī**. — [10] opp. **dīmittere**.

endī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt; sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā in prōvinciam expellere[1]] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat[2] quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse
5 trānsīrī vidērētur.

Cæsar Makes a Successful Crossing to the North Side of the Loire.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar mātūrandum[3] sibi cēnsuit,[4] sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae[5] cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret,
10 ut *nōn* nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciundum exīstimābat, cum īnfāmia[6] atque indīgnitās[7] reī et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat; tum maximē quod abiūnctō[8] Labiēnō atque eīs legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat vehementer timēbat.[9] Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnīs
15 nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs, contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit; vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo[10] atque umerī ad sustinenda arma līberī[11] ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus prīmō adspectū
20 perturbātīs,[12] incolumem exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus, replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere īnstituit.

Labienus Marches towards Lutetia. Camulogenus Opposes him.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō[13] quod nūper ex Ītaliā vēnerat relictō Agēdincī,
25 ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parīsiōrum positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus

Cf. [1] **ēicere.** — [2] opp. **impediēbat.** — [3] **properandum.** — [4] **sēnsit.** — [5] **conlēctae.** — [6] **īgnōminia.** — [7] **turpitūdō.** — [8] **dētrāctō.** — [9] **metuēbat.** — [10] **tantum.** — [11] **exsertī.** — [12] **permōtīs.** — [13] **auxiliīs.**

cōgnitō māgnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus[1] aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam reī mīli-



Fig. 99. — Expeditio Labieni.

tāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus.[2] Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

Cf. [1] **cōnsūmptus.** — [2] **sublātus.**

Labienus Falls back to Metiosedum, Which he Captures. The Enemy Follow him.

58. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre[1] cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius fierī animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. 5 Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus. Dēprehēnsīs[2] nāvibus circiter L celeriterque coniūnctīs atque eō mīlitibus impositīs[3] et reī novitāte perterritīs[4] oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. 10 Refectō[5] ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō[6] flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab eīs quī ā Metiosēdō profūgerant, Lutetiam incendī,[7] pontīsque ēius oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē 15 regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

Labienus Learns of Cæsar's Repulse at Gergovia and of the Spread of the Gallic Revolt.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur; iam dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs adferēbantur; Gallīque in conloquiīs interclūsum[8] itinere et Ligerī Caesarem, inopiā frūmentī coāctum,[9] in prōvinciam 20 contendisse cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs,[10] manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā[11] sēnserat intellegēbat; neque 25 iam ut aliquid acquīreret proeliōque hostīs lacesseret,[12] sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat.

Cf. [1] **efficere.** — [2] **captīs.** — [3] **iniectīs.** — [4] **perturbātīs.** — [5] opp. **rescissō.** — [6] opp. **adversō.** — [7] **succendī.** — [8] **exclūdō,** with **ab** and the **abl.** — [9] **adductum.** — [10] **perfidī.** — [11] opp. **posteā.** — [12] **vexāret.**

Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitās in Galliā maximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īnstābant;[1] alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īnstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclūsās maximum flūmen distinēbat.[2] Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat. 5

Successful Stratagem of Labienus.

60. Itaque [3]sub vesperum cōnsiliō[4] convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset dīligenter industriēque[5] administrārent, nāvīs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit; et prīmā cōnfectā[6] vigiliā IIII mīlia 10 passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. V cohortīs quās minimē fīrmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō relinquit; V ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flūmine māgnō tumultū[7] proficīscī imperat. Con- 15 quīrit etiam lintrīs; hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās[8] in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvīs adpellī iusserat.

The Enemy Divide their Forces, as Labienus Desired.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod māgna 20 subitō erat coörta tempestās,[9] ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque, equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat,[10] celeriter trānsmittitur.[11] Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuētūdinem tumultuārī,[12] et māgnum īre 25 agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī, et paulō īnfrā mīlitēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus

Cf. [1] **premēbant.** — [2] opp. **coniungēbat.** — [3] opp. **sub lūcem.** — [4] **contiōne.** — [5] opp. **tardē.** — [6] opp. **initā.** — [7] opp. **silentiō.** — [8] **āctās.** — [9] opp. **malacia.** — [10] **praeposuerat.** — [11] **trānspōrtātur.** — [12] **trepidāre.**

rēbus audītīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnīs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partīs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō [1] ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū
5 Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Labienus, having Attacked and Routed the Gauls, Joins Cæsar.

62. Prīmā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur.[2] Labiēnus, mīlitēs cohortātus ut
10 suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriam, atque ipsum Caesarem, [3] cūius ductū saepe numerō hostīs superāssent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proelī. Prīmō concursū [4] ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque
15 in fugam coniciuntur [5]; ab sinistrō, quem locum XII legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfīxī pīlīs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspīciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō [6] etiam nunc
20 exitū victōriae, cum VII legiōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt [7] signaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam [8] locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam [9] tulit Camulogenus. At eī
25 quī in praesidiō [10] contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sīc cum suīs fugientibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt inter-

Cf. [1] **adversus,** w. acc. — [2] **perspiciēbātur.** — [3] **quō duce.** — [4] **impetū.** — [5] **dantur.** — [6] opp. **explōrātō.** — [7] **impetum fēcērunt.** — [8] **pedem retulit, sē recēpit.** — [9] **cāsum.** — [10] **ē regiōne castrōrum.**

fectī. Hōc negōtiō[1] cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum, ubi impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relicta erant. Inde cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervenit.

Further Spread of the Revolt. Vercingetorix Appointed Commander-in-chief by a General Vote. The Hædui Dissatisfied.

63. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur.[2] Lēgātiōnēs in omnīs partīs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, 5 auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātīs nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantīs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque[3] bellī gerundī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā[4] contendunt[5] ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et 10 rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs.[6] Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingones, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequē- 15 bantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt[7]; neque tamen susceptō bellō 20 suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre[8] audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

Vercingetorix Lays Extensive Plans to Extend the Revolt and Weaken the Romans.

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs; dēnique eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnīs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō, 25 celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē

Cf. [1] **rē.** — [2] opp. **minuitur.** — [3] **consilia.** — [4] opp. **recūsātā.** — [5] **postulant.** — [6] **plūrimī.** — [7] **dēsīderant.** — [8] **distinēre.**

dīmicātūrum[1]; sed quoniam abundet[2] equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant,[3] aedificiaque incendant; quā reī familiāris iactūrā per-
5 petuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī[4] videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī [eī] prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque
10 pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnīs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs[5] mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat,[6] quōrum mentīs nōndum ab superiōre[7] bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem
15 imperium[8] tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Cæsar Sends to Germany for Cavalry.

65. Ad hōs omnīs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnīs partīs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur, et C. Vale-
20 riō Donnotaurō, Caburī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnīs tuentur.[9] Caesar, quod hostīs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs[10]
25 omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī[11] poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātīs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcessit[12] et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs

Cf. [1] **contentūrum.** — [2] opp. **caret.** — [3] **perdant.** — [4] **adipīscī.** — [5] **vāstandōs.** — [6] **temptat.** — [7] **vetere.** — [8] **prīncipātum.** — [9] **dēfendunt.** — [10] **obsessīs.** — [11] **iuvārī.** — [12] **postulāvit.**



Fig. 100. — Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne.

A. Cæsar's camp the day before the battle.
B. The three camps of Vercingetorix.
C. Roman column of march at the time the attack was made.
D. Gallic lines of infantry.
E. Cæsar's camp the night after the battle.
  a. Roman cavalry.
  b. German cavalry.
  c. Gallic cavalry.

ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque [sed et] equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix Addresses a Council of Cavalry Officers, Urging an Attack upon the Romans. They Eagerly Assent.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs, equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnīs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit; convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat[1]: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem[2] satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium[3] parum prōficī; māiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde[4] *in* agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur,[5] iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat,[6] relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dīgnitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant animō,[7] cōpiās sē omnīs prō castrīs habitūrum[8] et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentīs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

The Attack is Made, and the Gauls are Defeated with Considerable Loss.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs,[9] posterō diē in trēs partīs distribūtō[10] equitātū duae sē aciēs

Cf. [1] ostendit. — [2] opp. servitūtem. — [3] opp. negōtium. — [4] quam ob rem. — [5] cunctentur. — [6] spēret. — [7] virtūte. — [8] īnstrūctūrum. — [9] obstrictīs. — [10] dīvīsō.

ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit.[1] Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit[2] agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna īnferrī Caesar aciemque cōnvertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostīs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostīs locō dēpellunt[3]: fugientīs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrīsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī,[4] sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitavī proximīs comitiīs habuerat; et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litavīcī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat; et Eporēdorīx,[5] quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix Retires to Alesia, Which Cæsar Determines to Invest.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque[6] Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō[7] agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.[8] Perspectō[9] urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant[10]) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre[11] īnstituit.

Cf. [1] **incēpit.** — [2] opp. **prōgressum est.** — [3] **dēiciunt.** — [4] **terga vertunt.** — [5] **cūius ductū.** — [6] **continuō.** — [7] opp. **prīmō.** — [8] **posuit.** — [9] **explōrātō.** — [10] opp. **diffīdēbant.** — [11] **obsidēre.**

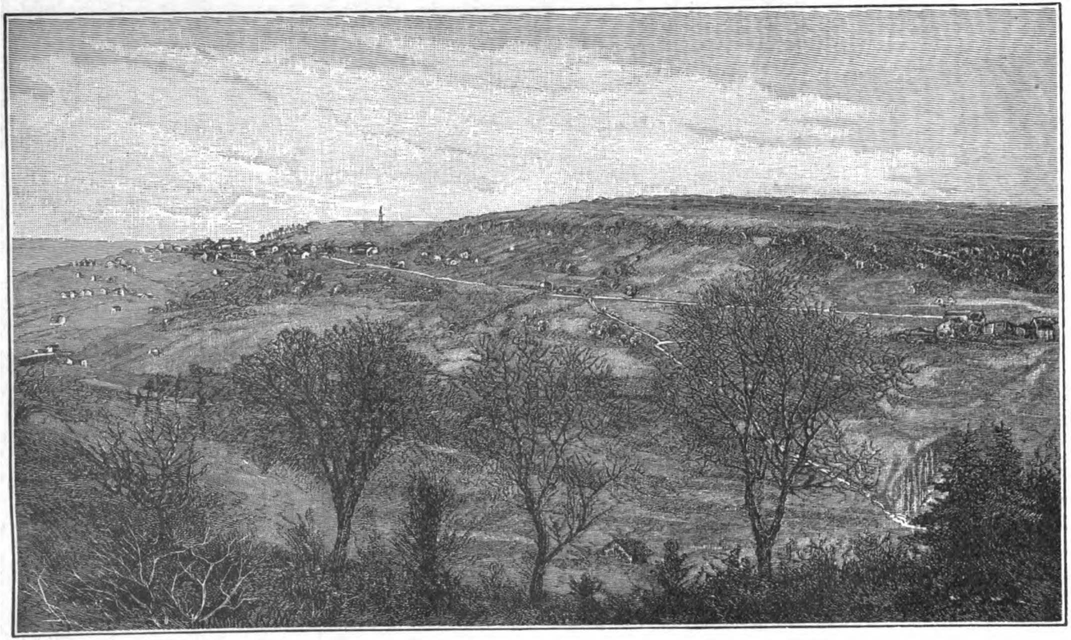


FIG. 101. — ALISE-SAINTE-REINE (*Alesia*).

Description of Alesia and its Defenses.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō [1]admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat [2]; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam [3] in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat.[4] Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū [5] statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō [6] fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus [7] ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. The Gauls Defeated with Great Slaughter.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō [8] ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī [9] sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus [10] portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn

Cf. [1] **altissimō.** — [2] **pertinēbat.** — [3] **mūrum.** — [4] **patēbat.** — [5] opp. **noctū.** — [6] **excursiō.** — [7] **vigiliīs.** — [8] **incursiō.** — [9] **datī.** — [10] opp. **lātiōribus.**

minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim[1] exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī,[2] nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, com-
5 plūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix Sends Away his Cavalry and Calls for Help from Without.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit[3] omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint
10 ad bellum cōgant.[4] Sua in illōs merita[5] prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs[6] fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frū-
15 mentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre[7] posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam eīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cūius māgna
20 erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat[8] in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus[9] auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Description of Cæsar's Works of Circumvallation.

25 **72.** Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit: fossam pedum vīgintī dīrēctīs[10] lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem

Cf. [1] **prōtinus.** — [2] opp. **aperīrī.** — [3] **init.** — [4] **conquīrant.** — [5] **officia.** — [6] **neglegentiōrēs.** — [7] **sustinēre.** — [8] **cōnstituerat.** — [9] **modīs.** — [10] **dīrēctē ad perpendiculum.**

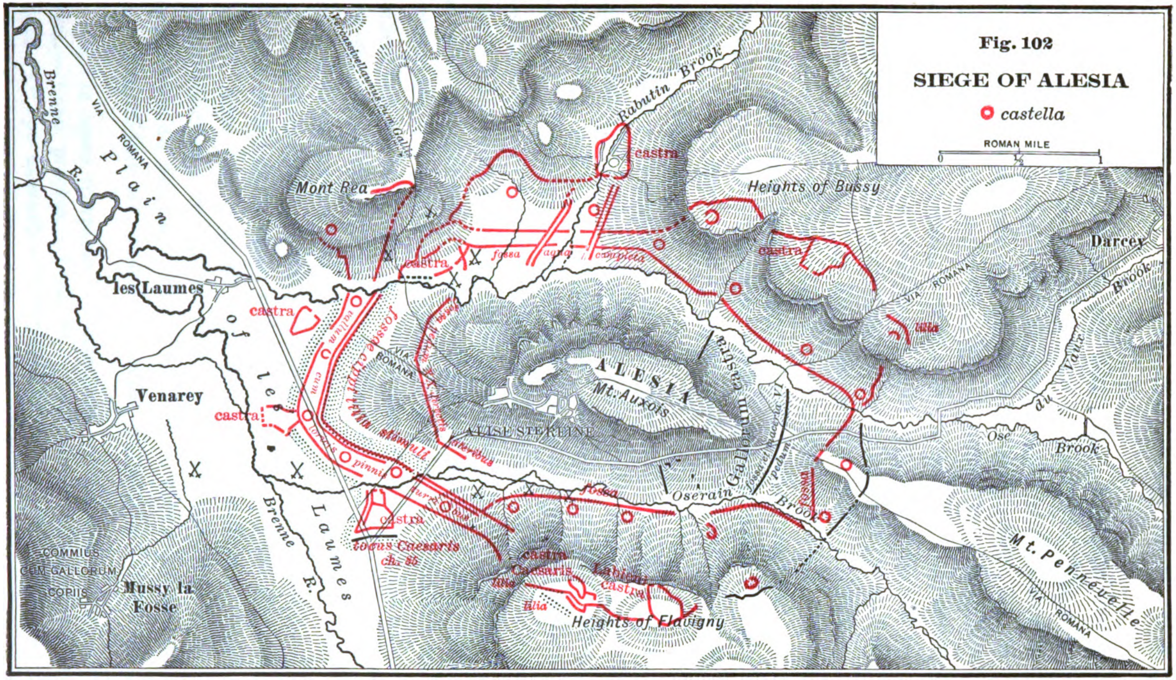


Fig. 102

SIEGE OF ALESIA

patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnīs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit: [id] hōc cōnsiliō (quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur), nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advo- 5 lāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs [1]operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs[2] locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā[3] complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit: huic 10 lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent[4]; et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs lxxx inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tan- 15 tās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius[5] ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre[6] atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum 20 mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs[7] ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī,[8] nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant.[9] Quīnī erant ōrdi- 25 nēs coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant,[10] sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant.[11] Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum[12] fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs femi- 30 nis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēban-

Cf. [1] **in opere occupātōs.** — [2] **humilibus.** — [3] **dēductā.** — [4] **impedīrent.** — [5] opp. **propius.** — [6] **adorīrī.** — [7] **exūtīs.** — [8] **īnfīxī.** — [9] **exstābant.** — [10] opp. **exierant.** — [11] **trānsfodiēbantur.** — [12] opp. **summum.**

tur, ita ut nōn amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā[1] ēminērent; simul cōnfīrmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās[2] īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur.
5 Hūius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur,[3] mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

10 **74.** Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās[4] prō locī nātūrā, XIV mīlia passuum complexus parīs[5] ēiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat[6] ēius discessū], mūnītiōnum praesidia circum-
15 fundī[7] possent; nē autem cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum XXX pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs convectum[8] iubet.

Levy of Troops from All Gaul for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnīs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit
20 Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī[9] nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habere possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs, Brannovīcibus, [Blanno-
25 viīs,] mīlia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs X; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs

Cf. [1] **solō.** — [2] opp. **patefaciendās.** — [3] **dēmittēbantur.** — [4] opp. **inīquissimās.** — [5] **similīs.** — [6] **fīat.** — [7] **circumvenīrī.** — [8] **comportātum.** — [9] **continēre, regere.**

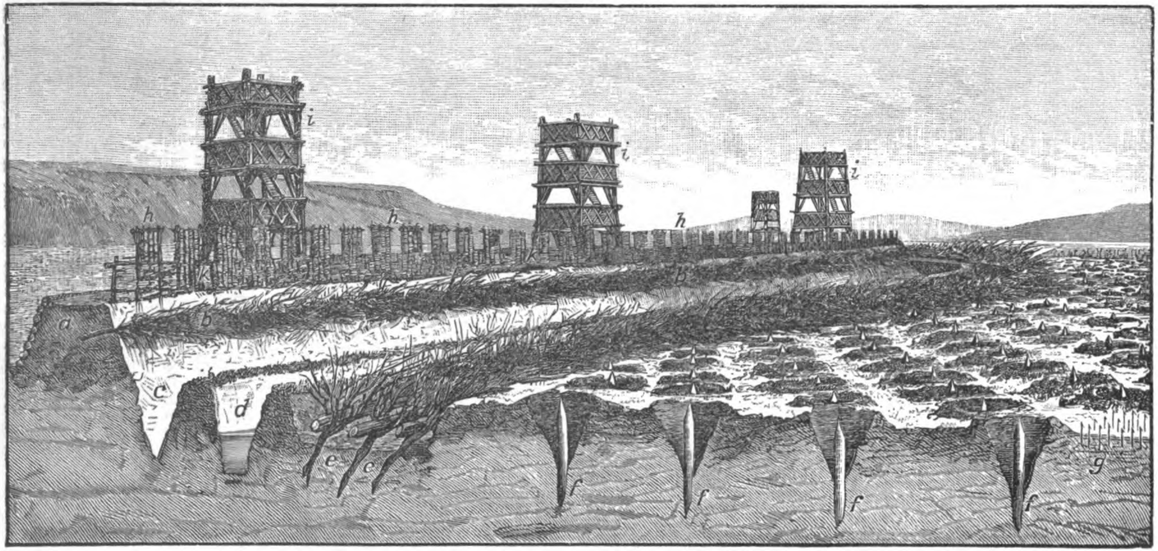


FIG. 103.—VIEW OF CÆSAR'S LINE OF WORKS BEFORE ALESIA.

a, vallum; *b*, cervi; *c*, fossa; *d*, fossa cum aqua; *e*, cippi; *f*, lilia; *g*, stimuli; *h*, pinnae; *i*, turres; *k*, lorica.

et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrigibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomānīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs, et] Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Bōiīs bīna; X ūniversīs cīvitātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt 5 quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibariī, Caletes, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent, neque cūiusquam 10 imperiō obtemperātūrōs[1]; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

The Gauls under Commius Approach Alesia with High Hopes.

76. Hūius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem[2] esse iusserat, 15 iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō[3] fuit lībertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis[4] recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.[5] Coāctīs equi- 20 tum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī[6] cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus 25 attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī adspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, forīs tantae 30 cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.[7]

Cf. [1] **concessūrōs.** — [2] opp. **stīpendiāriam.** — [3] opp. **dissēnsiō.** — [4] **glōriae.** — [5] **īnsisterent.** — [6] **ducēs.** — [7] **cōnspicerentur.**

A Council is Held in Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Proposal.

77. At eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī[1] quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs[2] dictīs senten-
5 tiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent,[3] ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda[4] ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem ac nefāriam crūdēlitātem.[5]

Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus[6] locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātis: "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum
10 quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre[7] virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia,
15 nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam[8] ferre[9] nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dīgnitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capi-
20 endō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.[10] Quid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī[11] fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae
25 salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt; nec stultitiā ac temeritāte[12] vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque[13] dubitātis?

Cf. [1] **īgnōrantēs.** — [2] **dīversīs.** — [3] **superessent.** — [4] **praetermittenda.** — [5] opp. **clēmentiam.** — [6] **nātus.** — [7] **manēre.** — [8] opp. **cōpiam.** — [9] **tolerāre.** — [10] **convocāvimus.** — [11] **fortitūdinis.** — [12] opp. **prūdentiā.** — [13] opp. **imbēcillitāte.**

Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne[1] causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praeseptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. 5

"Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt.[2] Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn 10 habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. 15 Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilīs potentīsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam[3] iniungere[4] servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiō- 20 nibus geruntur īgnōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus[5] subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"

The Mandubii are Compelled to Leave the Town. Cæsar Declines to Receive them.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant,[6] atque omnia 25 prius experiantur[7] quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum[8] cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant,

Cf. [1] **voluptātis.** — [2] **dēdidērunt.** — [3] **perpetuam.** — [4] **impōnere.** — [5] **imperiō Rōmānō.** — [6] **exeant.** — [7] **temptent.** — [8] opp. **omittendum.**

cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of Commius with the Army of Relief. Joy of the Besieged.

5 **79.** Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs,[1] quibus summa imperī permissa[2] erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdi-
10 nem mīlia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent; pedestrīsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs[3]; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Ita-
15 que prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere[4] explent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

A Fierce Engagement Takes Place in the Valley. The Gauls are Defeated.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat[5]
20 et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pūgnae prōventum[6] exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs[7] sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī
25 suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō volnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse

Cf. [1] **praefectī.** — [2] **commissa.** — [3] **cōnspectīs.** — [4] **terrā.** — [5] opp. **dēserat.** — [6] **ēventum.** — [7] opp. **dēnsōs.**

Gallī cōnfīderent[1] et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī[2] poterat; utrōsque 5



FIG. 104. — LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.



FIG. 105. — ARCHER.

et laudis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex 10 reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentīs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī conligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prō-

Cf. [1] crēderent. — [2] occultārī.

cesserant, maestī[1] prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls Make a Night Attack.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte
5 silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre,[2] reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent
10 parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.
15 Prōspectū tenebrīs[3] adēmptō multa utrimque volnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

They Retire Discomfited.

20 **82.** Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique volneribus acceptīs, nūllā
25 mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret,[4] veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī,

Cf. [1] **trīstēs.** — [2] **prōpellere.** — [3] opp. **lūce.** — [4] **adīret.**

prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Army of Relief Makes Another Attempt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō[1] repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs[2] adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs[3] opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorix Coöperates. Difficulties of the Romans.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcīs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post

Cf. [1] **caede.** — [2] opp. **imperītōs.** — [3] **circumvāllāre.**

tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

Fighting Continues with Energy on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte 5 gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus *subsidium* submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnī-10 tiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs, 15 et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Cæsar Personally Encourages his Troops.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi neces-20 sāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant 25 cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

His Activity in Various Parts of the Field.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,



Fig. 106.—Statue of Vercingetorix.

cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortīs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostīs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam 5 neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XL cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

Utter Defeat of the Gauls with Great Slaughter.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, [quō īnsīgnī 10 in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat], turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī omissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem 15 gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria LXXIIII ad 20 Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent 25 dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātīs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix Surrenders.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmā-
5 nīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātīs recu-
10 perāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Cæsar's Distribution of his Forces for the Winter. A Twenty Days' Thanksgiving Decreed at Rome.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum.
15 Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit; captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs
20 conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentā-
25 riae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hīs *rēbus ex Caesaris* litterīs cōgnitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

NOTES.



FIG. 107.—THE LEGIONARY.

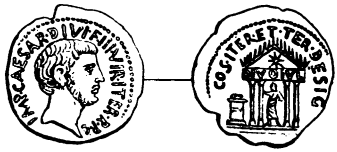


FIG. 108. — COIN OF CÆSAR.

BOOK FIRST. — B.C. 58.

THE HELVETIAN WAR. — Early in the year 58 B.C. the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of becoming masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death — when he was charged with guilty conspiracy and put on trial for his life — caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Cæsar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier when they were overtaken by Cæsar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetian War.

READING REFERENCES ON THE HELVETIAN WAR

Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 50-81.
Froude's Cæsar, pp. 214-231.
Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 35-38.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 8.
Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I. pp. 47-51.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 26-36.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 237-254.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 289-295.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 3.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.

N.B. The grammars cited are those of Allen and Greenough (§), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale and Buck (H-B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; sc. (*scilicet*) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; imv. = imperative; ftn. = footnote.

PAGE **1**. LINE 1. **Gallia**: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (*Provincia*) in the southeast, as well as *Gallia Cisalpina*, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2). — **omnis** (predicate), *as a whole.* — **est divisa,** *is divided:* the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. *b*); B. 337. 2; G. 250. R.[2]; H. 640. 3 (550. N.[2]); H-B. 320. iii. — **unam**: sc. *partem.*

1 2 **incolunt**: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: *of which one is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (*at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such*). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom. — **Belgae**: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1). — **Aquitani**: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20). — **aliam**: here *alteram* would be more usual as meaning the second in the list. — **qui . . . appellantur**: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (*whoever*) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (*those*) *who.* So here **tertiam qui** = *tertiam partem ei incolunt qui;* see § 307. *c* (200. *c*); B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445. 6); H-B. 284. 1. — **ipsorum**, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in *their own* tongue . . . in *ours.*

1 3 **Celtae**: probably of the Gælic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch. — **lingua**: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

1 4 **differunt**: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.

1 4 inter se, *from one another:* the preposition **inter** may be used to show any *reciprocal* relation; § 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — **Gallos**: see note on **incolunt**, l. 2.

1 5 dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. *b* (205. *b*); B. 255. 3; G. 211. R.[1]; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.

1 6 horum: part. gen. with **fortissimi**; § 346. *a*. 2 (216. *a*); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. — **propterea quod,** *because;* lit. *because of this, that,* etc. The difference between this and the simple *quod* is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as *and the reason is* or *and it is because.*

1 7 cultu, *civilization,* as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — **humanitate,** *refinement,* of mind or feeling. — **provinciae**: the province of *Gallia Narbonensis,* organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (*Marseilles*), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (*Narbonne*), a Roman colony. The name *Provincia* has come down to us in the modern *Provence.*

1 8 mercatores: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as Cæsar says, "tend to debauch the character." These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. — **commeant**: this verb means, especially, *to go back and forth* in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (*Loire*). — **ea**: object of **important.**

1 9 effeminandos: § 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii. — **proximi**: notice how the three superlatives, **longissime, minime,** and **proximi** are arranged. After the emphatic idea of **cultu,** etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

1 10 Germanis: dat. with an adjective of nearness; § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii. — **trans Rhenum**: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. — **continenter** (adverb from the participle of *contineo, hold together*), *incessantly;* strictly, *without any interruption.* The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 449.

1 11 qua de causa, *and for this reason:* § 308. *f* (180. *f*); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to **proximi,** etc., and further explained by **quod . . . contendunt.** — **Helvetii**: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — **quoque**: i.e. just as the Belgians.

1 12 **reliquos,** *the rest of:* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R.[2]; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.[1, 2]); H-B. 346. *c*; notice the emphasis of position; the *others* as opposed to the Helvetii. — **virtute,** not *virtue*, but *courage;* for construction, see note on **lingua,** l. 3. — **praecedunt,** *excel;* lit. *go ahead of.*

1 13 **proeliis**: abl. of means; **finibus**: abl. of separation. — **cum prohibent,** *while they keep them off* (*pro-habeo*).

1 14 **ipsi** (emphatic), *themselves*, the Helvetians; **eos** and **eorum** refer to the Germans.

2 1 **eorum una pars,** *one division of them* (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country. — **quam . . . dictum est,** *which, it has been* (already) *said, the Gauls hold.* Notice that in direct discourse it would be *Galli obtinent:* the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the infin. after the verb of *saying*, **dictum est**; § 561. *a* (272. R.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here **quam** is the object and **Gallos** the subject of **obtinere,** while the clause is the subject of **dictum est**; § 560, 561, 566. *b* (329, 330. *a*. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. *a*. — **obtinere** (*ob-teneo*), not *obtain*, but *occupy;* strictly, *hold against* all claimants. *Ob* in composition almost always has the sense of *opposing* or *coming in the way of* something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. *Obtineo* does *not* mean *obtain*, nor *occupo*, *occupy*. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

2 3 **ab Sequanis,** *on the side of*, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of **ab**; § 429. *b* (260. *b*); G. 390. 2. N.[6]; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

2 4 **vergit,** etc., *slopes to the north;* the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly. — **septentriones** (*septem triones*, "the seven plough-oxen"): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.

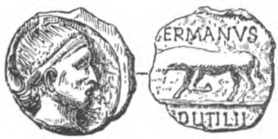


FIG. 109. — GALLIC COIN.

2 5 **Galliae**: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not *Gallia omnis.*

2 6 **spectant**: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

2 8 **ad Hispaniam,** *next to Spain*, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. *d* (259. *f*); H. 420. 1 (433. 1).

2 9 **spectat**: cf. **spectant** above. — **inter occasum**, etc., *northwest*, i.e. from the Province.

2 11 CHAP. 2. **nobilissimus**, *of highest birth*. Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called *Vergobret* (ch. 16). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power, and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

2 12 **M.=Marco.** Always read and translate these names without abbreviation. — **Messala**, etc.: this was B.C. 61, three years before Cæsar's first campaign in Gaul. This construction of **consulibus** was the usual way of denoting the year; not so formal in English as *while Messala and Piso were consuls*, but merely *in the consulship of;* abl. abs., § 419. *a* (255. *a*); B. 227. 1; G. 409, 410; H. 489 and 1 (431 and 2); H-B. 421. 1.

2 13 **cupiditate**: abl. of means; § 409 (248. *c*); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — **coniurationem**, *a league* sworn to fidelity by oath (*iuro*). — **nobilitatis**: from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles, and why they would naturally join in such a combination.

2 13 **civitati persuasit**: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. ii); H-B. 362. ftn.[3] and 1; the direct object of **persuasit** is the clause **ut . . . exirent**; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. i (498); H-B. 502. 3. *a*; translate the latter by the infinitive according to the English idiom. Votes were easily "persuaded" by such means as Orgetorix possessed. For the sequence of tenses in **exirent**, see § 484 (286. R.); B. 267; G. 510; H. 545. ii. 1 (493. 1); H-B. 476; and for the plur., see § 280. *a* (182. *a*); B. 254. 4; G. 211. R.[1]; H. 389 (636. iv. 4); H-B. 325.

2 15 **perfacile**: predicate with **esse**, while its subject is the infin. clause with **potiri**; § 289. *d* (189. *d*); G. 422. 3; H. 394. 4 (438. 3); cf. H-B. 325. *b*; *showing that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul.* — **esse**: indir. disc., depending on some word implied in **persuasit**; § 580. *a* (336. 2. N.[2]); B. 314. 2; G. 546. R.[1], 649. R.[2]; H. 642. 1 (523. i. N.); cf. H-B. 534. 1. *a*. Notice that the Latin has the power of putting various dependent clauses after a single verb. Here the idea of persuading takes the thing that was to be done in an *ut*-clause. The facts of which they were persuaded take the indir. disc. Careful attention to this usage will make many difficult passages easy. It is not the verb used, but the meaning, that decides the construction. — **cum praestarent**: subjv. after **cum** meaning *since;* § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

2 16 **imperio**: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

2 17 **hoc facilius,** *all the easier:* originally degree of difference, as in all ablatives with comparative; but hardly different in sense from the abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 424. *a.* — **id**: object of **persuasit**; § 369 (227. *f*); B. 176. 2. *a*; G. 345; H. 426. 6 (384. 2); H-B. 364. 4: we should say, *persuaded them of it.* Usually with *persuadere* the dat. and acc. are *both* used only when the latter is a pronoun. — **loci natura,** *by the nature of the country.*

2 18 **una ex parte,** *on one side:* cf. **ab Sequanis** above, so **undique,** *on* (lit. *from*) *all sides; hinc, on this side,* etc. The effect on the senses is supposed to come *from* the direction referred to. — **latissimo,** *very broad.*

2 19 **qui** takes its gender not from **flumine,** but from **Rheno**; § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. *b*; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326.

2 23 **his rebus,** etc.: lit. *from these things it was coming about that they roamed about less widely and could less easily make war,* etc. But this is obviously not an English mode of thought, nor a form which any English-speaking person would ever naturally use. So here, *as always,* you must see from this clumsy expression what is meant and then express it in the natural vernacular, something like, *from all this they were getting less free to wander and having less opportunity to make war,* etc. Several other ways of expressing this may be imagined. One of the greatest advantages of classical study is to set the mind free from *forms,* and bring into prominence the possibility of saying the same thing in fundamentally different ways. — **fiebat**: the imperfect expresses the continued effect of the causes; § 470 (277); B. 260. 1; G. 231; H. 534 (468, 469); H-B. 468. 2; the subject of **fiebat** is the clause **ut . . . possent**; § 569 (332. *a*); B. 297. 2, cf. 284. 1; G. 553. 3, 4; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. *a.*

2 24 **qua ex parte**: here *in which respect* hardly differs from *from which cause.* — **homines** (a sort of apposition) = *being* (as they were) *men eager for war.*

3 1 **bellandi**: § 349. *a* (218. *a*); B. 338. 1. *b*; G. 374. 5; H. 626, 451. 1 (542. 1, 399. i. 1); H-B. 612. 1. — **adficiebantur** = *afficiebantur:* for the assimilation of consonants, see § 16 (11); B. 8. 4; G. 9; H. 374. 2 (344. 5); H-B. 51. 2. In this edition the *unchanged* form of the preposition is usually preferred. — **pro,** *in proportion to;* cf. our force of *for.*

3 2 **multitudine**: their numbers, including some small dependent populations, were 368,000 (see ch. 29).

3 3 **angustos finis,** *too narrow limits.* So in English such words often suggest a negative idea; cf. a "scant pattern."

3 4 **milia passuum,** *miles* (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, **milia** being acc. of *extent of space,* and **passuum** part. gen. The *passus* was the *stretch* from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised

to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (*mille passuum*) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double paces. — **CCXL** = *ducenta quadraginta*. Always give the Latin words for numerals in reading the text.

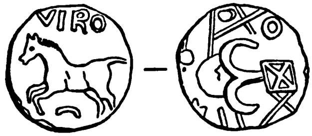


FIG. 110. — GALLIC COIN.

3 5 **patebant**: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of *description* or *general statement*, compared with the perfect of *simple narrative* in **persuasit** above and **constituerunt**, etc., below. This distinction is very marked in Latin, and must always be noticed, though not always translated. Our progressive imperfect is much more limited in its use than the Latin imperfect. But the latter always describes a situation and never advances the narrative of occurrences.

3 7 CHAP. 3. **quae . . . pertinerent**: dependent clause in indir. disc.; § 592. 3 (341. *d*); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. i (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1 and *a*. The mood shows that its clause expresses not the writer's statement, but that of the speaker or actor or some other person concerned. Always bear in mind that Cæsar uses the subjunctive to express something different from the indicative, whether you can find the technical rule for it or not. — **comparare . . . confirmare**: these infinitives correspond exactly with our idiom *to prepare*, etc., but the same meaning is oftener expressed by a subjunctive clause with *ut;* § 457 (271. *a*); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 1 (533. i. 1); H-B. 586. *e*.

3 8 **iumentorum,** *beasts of burden;* properly, *yoke-animals* (kindred with *iungo*, *join*, and *iugum*, *yoke*); **carrorum**, a Celtic word, two-wheeled *carts*. See Fig. 55, p. 94. — **quam maximum,** *as great as possible:* § 291. *c*, 321 (93. *b*, 207); B. 240. 3, 177. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4.

3 9 **coëmere . . . facere . . . confirmare**: notice that the Latin more easily dispenses with connectives than we do.

3 11 **conficiendas,** *completing:* **con** in composition may mean *together;* or, as here, may be simply intensive (cf. *do a thing up*). This word is shown to be a gerundive by having a noun with which it agrees. Cf. **proficiscendum, 3** 7, where there is no noun; § 503 (296); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 623 (544. 1); H-B. 613. 1.

3 13 **lege**: probably a resolution passed in a public assembly.

3 12 **in tertium annum confirmant,** *fix for the third year.*

3 14 **sibi . . . suscepit,** *took on himself:* for construction see § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. Observe the force of **sub,** as if he put his shoulders *under* the load.

3 15 **civitatis,** *clans,* such as the Hædui, Sequani, etc., each constituting a commonwealth (*civitas*), — about 60 in all. Their territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name **Gallia** itself — as was said of Italy a few years ago — was only "a geographical expression," implying no united political sovereignty. — **persuadet,** *prevails on: suadet* would be simply *urges.*

3 16 **filio, Sequano**: appositives with **Castico.**

3 17 **obtinuerat,** *had held:* see note on **obtinere, 2** 1. The pluperfect implies that he had held it formerly, but had been ousted by some popular movement.

3 18 **amicus**: an honorary title given by the Roman Senate to friendly powers; § 283, 284, 393. *a* (185, 239. 1. N.[2]); B. 168. 2. *b*; G. 206; H. 393. 8 (362. 2. 2); H-B. 319. ii, 392. *b.* — **ut . . . occuparet,** *to lay hands on:* this clause is the object of **persuadet**; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. ii); H-B. 502. 3. *a*; for the sequence of tenses, see § 485. *e* (287. *c*); B. 268. 3; G. 511. R.[1]; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491. 2; in English it would be expressed by the infin. — **regnum**: here, not hereditary authority, but personal rule, — what the Greeks called *tyranny.*

3 19 **quod**: the relative. — **ante**: i.e. before the popular movement. — **Dumnorigi** (dat. after **persuadet**): Dumnorix, a younger brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristocracy of the clan; therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy. He afterwards headed a desertion of Cæsar's cavalry just before the second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (Bk. v. ch. 6). It is implied that in the popular movement Dumnorix had come into prominence. It must be borne in mind that the personal rule of a chief (*regnum*) was an entirely different thing from the prominence (*principatum*) which one man or another might have in the national councils, as the latter had no constitutional or official power.

3 20 **Diviciaci**: this Hæduan chief was of the order of Druids (see pp. 165–168); he had been in Rome where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Cæsar. The party of Druids, represented by Diviciacus and Liscus (ch. 16), was in a manner the *popular* party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed to the old clan feeling kept up for ambitious purposes by military or tribal chiefs (*principes*) such as Orgetorix and Dumnorix. The former, or popular party, was headed by the Hædui; the latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (*equites*) of the tribe or clan, which latter

represented what may be called the patriotic or "native-Celtic" party (see Bk. vi. chs. 12–17). A knowledge of this division helps to clear up many of the events of Cæsar's campaigns. In fact, Gaul was conquered by the strategy underlying the maxim "*divide et impera.*" — **qui**: i.e. Dumnorix. The regular rule is that the relative should refer to the last person named. But this in all languages is often overborne by the prominence of some preceding person. — **principatum,** *highest rank*, as distinct from political power (see above).

3 21 **plebi acceptus,** *a favorite with the people* (acceptable to the people). — **ut idem conaretur**: i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs. The expression here is a striking example of the tendency of the Latin to say things by verbs which we say by nouns; Lat. *attempt the same thing*, Eng. *make the same attempt.*

3 23 **perfacile factu**: § 510. N.[2] (303. R.); B. 340. 2; G. 436. N.[1]; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619. 1; in predicate agreement with **conata perficere,** which is subject of **esse,** depending on **probat.** — **illis probat,** *undertakes to show them,* i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix: conative present; § 467 (276. *b*); B. 259. 2; G. 227. N.[2]; H. 530 (467. 6); H-B. 484. —**propterea quod**: see note on **1** 6.

3 24 **ipse,** etc., i.e. and so they could count on him for a powerful ally. — **non esse dubium quin,** *there was no doubt* (he said) *that:* here **esse** is infin. of indir. disc.; for the construction of **quin,** see § 558. *a* (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *b*. For purposes of analysis we may consider the **quin** clause a subject of **esse,** and **dubium** as a predicate adjective in the neuter to agree with the subject.

3 25 **Galliae**: part. gen. with **plurimum**; § 346. *a*. 2 (216. *a*. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

3 26 **se suis**: begin as soon as possible to master the use of the reflexive in Latin, to which we have nothing that exactly corresponds in English. Our forms with *self* are emphatic and not ordinarily reflexive. The forms of *se* and *suus* refer (without emphasis) to the subject of their clauses, and in indir. disc. to the speaker. They take the place of an *I* or *mine* of the direct. Where no ambiguity would arise in English translate them by *he* and *his*. In case of ambiguity some device must be used to avoid it. Here there is an emphasis on **se,** but it comes from position. — **regna**: translate by the singular. To a Roman each man's power would be a separate *regnum*, hence the plural here. — **conciliaturum**: sc. *esse*, which is often omitted with the fut. infin.

4 1 **oratione,** *plea*, or *argument* (abl. of means). — **fidem et iusiurandum**: i.e. *assurance confirmed by oath*; hendiadys; § 640 (385); B. 374. 4; G. 698; H. 751. 3. N.[1] (636. iii. 2); H-B. 631. 5.

4 2 **regno occupato**: abl. abs., expressing *condition;* § 419. 4, 521. *a* (255. 4, 310. *a*); B. 227. 2. *b*; G. 409, 593. 2; H. 489. 1, 638. 2 (431. 2, 549. 2); H-B. 421. 6, 578. 6; *in case they should get in their hands the royal power = si occupaverimus* in the direct. — **per tres . . . populos**: i.e. Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul. — **firmissimos**, *most stable.*

4 3 **Galliae**: governed by **potiri**; § 410. *a* (249. *a*); B. 212. 2; G. 407. *d*; H. 458. 3 (410. v. 3); H-B. 353. — **posse**: equivalent to a fut. infin.; § 584. *b*; B. 270. 3; G. 248. R.; H. 618. 1 (537. N.[1]); H-B. 472. *d*.

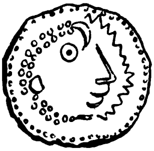


FIG. 111. — GALLIC COIN.

4 4 CHAP. 4. **ea res**, *this* (i.e. the conspiracy). The word **res** is constantly used in Latin where we use some more specific word in English, as *action*, *fact*, *event*, *estate*, etc., according to the passage. The conduct of Orgetorix was treated as criminal because, though the Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body and subdue the rest of Gaul, they would not give to Orgetorix the power thus acquired. — **moribus suis**, *according to their custom:* abl. of spec.; § 418. *a* and N. (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 441, cf. 414 and *a*.

4 5 **ex vinculis**, *out of chains*, i.e. (standing) in chains; a Latin idiom; cf. *ex equo, on horseback.* — **causam dicere**: a technical expression for being brought to trial. — **damnatum** (sc. *eum*, object of **sequi**), *if condemned = si damnatus esset.* The Latin may almost always omit a pronoun of reference, if there is a participle or adjective to show what its form would be if expressed. In this sentence the subject of **oportebat** is the clause **damnatum . . . sequi**; the subject of **sequi** is **poenam**; and **ut . . . cremaretur** is in apposition with **poenam**, defining the punishment: § 562. 1, 571. *c* (329. 2, 332. *f*); B. 294, cf. 297. 3; G. 557; H. 571. 4 (501. iii); H-B. 502. 3. *a*. N.. Translate, *he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned by fire* (lit. *it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, condemned, of being burned with fire*). For the abl. in **i**, see § 76. *b*. 1 (57. *b*. 1); B. 38; G. 57. 2; H. 102. 4 (62. iv); H-B. 88. 2. *c*.

4 7 **die constituta**, *on the day appointed:* § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. For the gender of **die**, see § 97 (30. *a*, 73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135 (123); H-B. 101. — **causae dictionis**, *for the trial* (it would be more usual to say *dicendae*); **dictionis** depends on **die**, and **causae** is the objective gen. after **dictionis**.

4 8 **familiam**, *clansmen:* ordinarily this word means *slaves;* but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name or regarded him as their chief. — **ad** (adv.) . . . **milia decem** (in apposition with **familiam**), *to* (the number of) *ten thousand.*

4 9 **clientis,** *retainers:* volunteer or adopted followers. — **obaeratos,** *debtors:* the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul; see Bk. vi. ch. 13.

4 10 **eodem**: an adverb. — **per eos,** *by their means:* § 405. *b* (246. *b*); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. 1. N.[1]); H-B. 380. *d*. — **ne . . . diceret**: a purpose clause.

4 12 **cum . . . conaretur,** *when the state attempted.* The force of the subjv. here cannot easily be made apparent in translation, and may be disregarded as too subtle for this stage of the pupil's advancement. It is perfectly manifest, however, and can be learned later; § 546 (323); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600, ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

4 15 **quin . . . consciverit** (*conscisco*), *that he decreed death to himself* (*his own death*), i.e. *committed suicide.* The construction of the clause is analogous to that with *non dubito*, etc.; § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *b*. Observe that **ipse,** *self,* agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the object.

4 16 CHAP. 5. **nihilo minus** (often written in one word, as in English), *nevertheless.* — **constituerant,** *had resolved:* observe the pluperfect, as following not a real but a historical present.

4 17 **ut . . . exeant,** in apposition with **id**: as we should say, "namely, to go forth." Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends. Here **facere** would take a result clause with **ut,** and so this clause has that form. — **ubi . . . arbitrati sunt,** *when they judged:* observe the regular use of the perfect indic. with *ubi*, *postquam*, etc., and cf. **cum . . . conaretur** above; § 543 (324); B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602 (518. N.[1]); H-B. 557.

4 18 **rem,** *enterprise;* cf. note on **ea res,** l. 4. — **oppida,** *towns,* fortified and capable of defence.

4 19 **vicos,** *villages,* i.e. groups of houses about a single spot. The villages and houses were burned; partly to cut off hope of return, partly to prevent their being occupied by the Germans. — **ad**: cf. l. 8 above. — **reliqua,** etc.: i.e. isolated farmhouses not collected in villages.

4 21 **portaturi erant,** *intended to carry:* § 194. *a* (129); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236 (233); H-B. 162. — **domum**: following the verbal noun **reditionis**; § 427. 2 (258. *b*); B. 182. 1. *b*; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2, 1); H-B. 450. *b*.

4 23 **molita cibaria,** *meal.* Food for 368,000 people (cf. **26** 11) for three months required five or six thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals. This would make a line of march of over thirty miles. — **domo**: § 427. 1 (258. *a*); B. 229. 1. *b*; G. 390. 2; H. 462. 4 (412. ii. 1); H-B. 451. *a*.

5 1 **Rauracis,** etc.: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385, ii); H-B. 362 and 1: German tribes from the banks of the Rhine.

5 2 **uti**: the older form for *ut*, common in Cæsar. — **eodem usi consilio,** *adopting the same plan:* § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407. N.[3]; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429.—**una cume is,** *along with them*. The use of **eis** avoids ambiguity, though *secum* would be more regular, referring to the subject of the main clause; cf. note on **se, 3** 26. — **oppidis . . . exustis,** *having burned,* etc.: § 493. 2 (113. *c.* N.); B. 356. 2. *b*; G. 410. R.[1]; H. 640. 4 (550. N.[4]); H-B. 602. 1.

5 3 **Boios** (from whom the name *Bohemia* is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5 4 **Noricum,** etc.: now eastern Bavaria and upper Austria. — **oppugnarant** = *oppugnaverant:* § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

5 5 **receptos . . . adsciscunt**: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle; § 496. N.[2] (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R.[1]; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1. Translate, *they receive the Boii into their own number* (**ad se**), *and vote them in as their allies.* They do not merely unite with them, but incorporate them into their own body as a homeless people.

5 6 CHAP. 6. **erant omnino,** *there were in all*, i.e. *only*. — **itinera . . . itineribus**: observe the form of this relative sentence, common in Cæsar, which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other; in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other; § 307 (200); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 5 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

5 7 **possent**: subjv. in a relative clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 1; i.e. not merely *by which they could*, but *of the sort by which they could.* In such clauses, which describe something by its qualities, the subjv. is regular in Latin. — **Sequanos**: i.e. the region now called *Franche-Comté*, north of the Rhone.

5 8 **inter . . . Rhodanum**: the pass now guarded by the Fort l'Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (seventeen and a half English) miles below Geneva (see note on **7** 13). The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was either to cross the river and go through the country held by the Romans, or to proceed along its northern bank through the friendly Sequani. — **vix qua**, etc., *where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file:* § 137. *a* (95. *a*); B. 81. 4. *a*; G. 97; H. 164. 1 (174. 2, 1); H-B. 133. See Fig. 55, p. 94.

5 9 **ducerentur**: the same "characteristic subjv." as in **possent**. The distinction is one that we rarely express in English; but a little study will make it appear in most cases. — **autem**, *then again*.

6 1 **possent**: § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2.

6 2 **multo facilius** (cf. **nihilo minus, 4** 16), *much easier* in itself; but it required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way through about fifty miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms. — **propterea quod**: see note on **1** 6.

6 3 **nuper pacati erant**: a rebellion "of despair" (B.C. 61) had been subdued by C. Pomptinus.

6 4 **locis**: loc. abl.; § 429. 2 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1. *b*; G. 385. N.[1]; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. — **vado**: *by ford* (*wading*, *vadendo*). The bed of the Rhone must have changed somewhat since Cæsar's time. There is now but one ford between Geneva and the Pas-de-l'Ecluse.

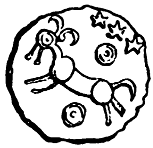


Fig. 112. — Gallic Coin

6 8 **sese persuasuros** [*esse*]: notice that in the fut. infin., used in indir. disc., *esse* is usually omitted (cf. **conciliaturum, 3** 26; in dir. disc. we should have *persuadebimus*), *they thought they should persuade*; its object is **Allobrogibus** (cf. **Rauracis**, etc., **5** 1). — **bono animo**, *well disposed*; § 415 (251); B. 224. 1; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. Five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued with Catiline's agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat. iii. ch. 9).

6 9 **viderentur**: § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2.

6 10 **eos**: again the demonstrative to avoid ambiguity; see note on **eis, 5** 2. — **paterentur**: the subjv. with *ut* is the regular form of object clause after all verbs of commanding, inducing, and the like; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. 1 (498, ii); H-B. 502. 3. *a*.

6 11 **diem . . . die**: cf. **itinera . . . itineribus, 5** 6 and note.

6 12 **conveniant**: the subjv. is used because **diem dicunt** has the force of a command. The indic. would mean "on which they *do* assemble"; this means "on which they *should*." Technically, the clause is a purpose clause; § 529 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544. ii; H. 590 (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2. — **a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis)**: nominally March 28; § 631, 424. *g* (376, 259. *e*); B. 371 and 6, 372; G. App.; H. 754, 755 (642–644); H-B. 664, 667. But the calendar was in a state of great confusion at this time, and till Cæsar's reform twelve years later. — **L. Pisone**, etc.: notice again the regular Roman method of giving dates; see note on **Messala, 2** 12. Piso was Cæsar's father-in-law.

6 14 CHAP. 7. **Caesari**: the tendency is so strong in Latin to put the most emphatic word first that it is so placed even when the first clause is a dependent one, as here. We should say: *Cæsar, when it was reported*, etc., *hastened;* the Latin says: *to Cæsar, when it was reported*, etc., [he] (which in such cases is unnecessary, having already been expressed in a different form) *hastened.* He was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and, by a special law, Cæsar's government (consisting of the three provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum) had been conferred for a term of five years. The news of the emigration hastened his movements. — **nuntiatum esset**: the same idiomatic use of the subjv. with **cum** as in **4** 12. The relation here, however, is more apparent. The clause gives not the *time* merely, but the *circumstances*, "upon this being," etc. — **id** in apposition with **eos . . . conari** (the real subject of **nuntiatum esset**), *that they were attempting.*

6 15 **maturat**: travelling, his biographers say, one hundred miles in a day, and reaching the Rhone in a week, according to Plutarch. — **ab urbe**: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, THE CITY. Cæsar was *near*, but not *in* the city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (*imperium*) of proconsul. Hence he says **ab**, not *ex*. — **proficisci**: the so-called complementary infin., used like our own with verbs which require another action to complete their sense.

6 16 **quam maximis potest itineribus**: § 291. *c* (93. *b*); B. 240. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4; **potest** is usual with Cæsar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it would be *tam magnis quam maximis, as great as the greatest*, i.e. *the greatest possible.* — **ulteriorem**: i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called *Gallia Cisalpina*, and was a part of Cæsar's province.

6 17 **ad**, *near to, as far as.* — **provinciae**: dat.; § 369 (227. *f*); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 364. 4. — **imperat**: i.e. Transalpine Gaul. Here *impero* is used in what seems to have been its original meaning, *make requisition upon;* see Vocab.

6 18 **erat omnino**: cf. **erant omnino, 5** 6 and note.

6 19 **legio**: the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous. With reference to the Roman legions, see chapter on military affairs, I. I.

6 20 **rescindi**: notice that *iubeo* and *veto*, unlike other verbs of commanding and forbidding, take the acc. and the infin.

6 21 **certiores facti sunt**, *were informed* (made more certain): a technical expression for official communication or certain information.

6 23 **qui dicerent,** *who were* (instructed) *to say:* the same construction as **qua die conveniant** above, l. 11, see note. Notice the difference between *obtinebant, who did,* etc., and *dicerent, who should,* etc. Treat your subjunctives according to the sense, and use the rules only to formulate the usages; § 531 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544; H. 590 (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

6 24 **sibi . . . liceat:** observe carefully the construction of the indir. disc.; § 584, 585 (336. A. B.); B. 317, 318; G. 650; H. 642–653 (523–531); H-B. 534. I. 2; in dir. disc. it would be: *Nobis est* in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter *habemus* nullum; *rogamus*, ut *tua* voluntate id *nobis* facere liceat. Careful attention to this construction in the beginning will be amply repaid later. — **sibi:** dat. of possession; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; the subject of **esse** is the clause **iter . . . facere**, while the whole passage, **sibi . . . liceat**, is the object of **dicerent.** Render, *that they had* (it was to them) *in mind to march*, etc.

6 26 **rogare:** of this verb the subject is *se*, understood (often omitted by Cæsar, contrary to the rule), and the object is the object clause **ut . . . liceat**; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546 and N.[1]; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 530. 2. — **voluntate:** abl. in accordance with which; § 418. *a* (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; cf. H. 475. 3 (416); cf. H-B. 414. *a*.



FIG. 113. — GALLIC COIN.

7 1 **L. Cassium . . . occisum** [*esse*]: object of **memoria tenebat,** as a phrase of *knowing;* § 459 (272); B. 330; G. 527. 2; H. 613 (535. i. 1); H-B. 589. This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, to whom the Helvetians were joined as allies. "The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians."

7 2 **sub iugum,** *under the yoke* (hence the word *subjugate*). The *iugum* was made by sticking two spears in the ground and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to *laying down arms* by a modern army.

7 3 **concedendum** [*esse*]: impersonal depending on **putabat,** *thought that no concession should be made* (lit. *that it must not be yielded*). — **homines:** subject of **temperaturos** [*esse*], depending on **existimabat.**

7 4 **inimico animo:** abl. of quality; cf. **bono animo, 6** 8. — **data facultate:** abl. abs., expressing a condition; § 496, 521. *a* (292, 310. *a*); B. 227. 2. *b*; G. 593. 2; H. 575. 9 (507. 3. N.[7]); H-B. 421. 6; cf. **4** 2. — **faciundi:** gerundive; § 504 (297, 298); B. 339. 1; G. 428; H. 626 (544. 1); H-B. 612. 1.

7 5 **iniuria:** not "injury" in our sense, but *wrong, outrage.*

7 6 **dum . . . convenirent**: notice again the purpose expressed in this clause, *until the men should*, etc. Cf. **qua die conveniant, 6** 11, and **qui dicerent, 6** 23; § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 5.

7 9 **reverterentur**: subjv. for imv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In dir. disc.: diem (= time) ad deliberandum sumam; si quid *vultis*, ad. Id. Apr. *revertimini*. Note the changes made, and the reasons for them.

7 10 Chap. 8. **ea legione,** *with that legion* (abl. of instrum.). In this sentence observe how all the qualifying clauses come first and the direct objects, **murum, fossam,** come next before the leading verb **perducit**; § 596 and *a* (343); B. 348, 349; G. 674; H. 664 (560); cf. H-B. 623; while each relative belongs to *the verb which comes next after it* unless another relative intervenes, — a very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.

7 13 **milia**: acc. of extent of space; cf. **3** 4; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. — **decem novem,** *nineteen*: following the windings of the river (see note on **5** 8). — **murum**: this rampart, or earthwork, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only five short reaches — a little over three miles in all — requiring defences. The current is in general quite rapid. Some remains of Cæsar's works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. According to Cæsar's statement the work was continuous (this is the meaning of *perducit*). This undoubtedly means that, after the five accessible points were strengthened by artificial defences, the entire left bank of the Rhone, from Geneva to Pas-de-l'Ecluse (17½ English miles), formed a continuous barrier against the Helvetians. The construction of any one of the fortifications may be described as follows: Along the crest of the ridge facing the river the slope was cut so as to be vertical, or nearly so, and then a trench was hollowed. The earth dug out was partly thrown up to increase the height of the wall, and quite likely in part thrown down the hill. At all events, it seems probable that the measure of 16 feet is the distance from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the wall. Thus the work formed really little more than a trench with scarp higher than the counterscarp. Then the crest was fortified with a breastwork of palisades, behind which the soldiers were protected while hurling their missiles at the enemy. This entire series of works, with the force at Cæsar's command, could not have occupied more than two or three days. See Map, p. 5.

7 14 **pedum**: § 345. *b* (215. *b*); B. 203. 2; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355.

7 15 **castella** (lit. *little fortifications*), *redoubts*. See treatise on military affairs, v. In them were stationed guards (*praesidia*). The redoubts were sufficiently numerous so that the guard from one or another could quickly reach any point in the lines that might be threatened.—**quo facilius . . . posset**, *that he may the more easily:* the usual construction where a comparative is to be used; without the comparative it would be *ut . . . posset;* § 531. *a* (317. *b*); B. 282. 1. *a*; G. 545. 2; H. 568. 7 (497. ii. 2; H-B. 502. 2 and *b*.

7 16 **se invito** (abl. abs.), *against his will:* **se** is used because this is a part of what Cæsar had in his mind; § 300. 2 (196. *a*. 2); B. 244. ii. *a*; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2.—**conarentur . . . posset**: note the sequence of tenses after the historical presents **disponit** and **communit**.

7 17 **ubi . . . vēnit**: notice the difference between this clause and those above noted with **cum** and the subjv. This one expresses a real time and not circumstance like the others. You cannot render it by "upon the coming" or any similar phrase.

7 18 **negat se . . . posse**, *says he cannot*, etc. His words would be: More et exemplo populi Romani non possum iter ulli per provinciam dare; si vim facere conabimini, prohibebo.—**more et exemplo**, *according to the custom and precedents:* always constituting the rule of conduct with the conservative Romans.

7 19 **si . . . conentur**: future condition in indir. disc.; see the direct as given in note to l. 18.

7 20 **prohibiturum** [*esse*]: sc. *se* subject and *eos*, object.—**deiecti**, *cast down: de* in composition generally has the meaning *down*.

7 22 **non numquam**, *sometimes:* § 326 and *a* (150 and *a*); B. 347. 2; G. 449 and R.[4]; H. 656. 1 (553. 1); H-B. 298. 2.

7 23 **si . . . possent**: practically an indir. quest. depending on **conati**, *trying if* (whether) *they could break through;* § 576. *a* (334. *f*); B. 300. 3; G. 601, 460. 1. (*b*); H. 649. ii. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.[1]); H-B. 582. 2 and *a*.

7 24 **conatu**: abl. of separation, following **destiterunt**; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408. 2.

8 1 CHAP. 9. **una**: emphatic.—**via**, *only the way*.—**qua**: abl. of the way by which; § 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426.—**Sequanis invitis** (abl. abs. expressing a condition), *in case the*, etc.

8 2 **sua sponte**, *by their own influence;* a rare meaning of this phrase, which is generally *of their own accord*.

8 3 **possent**: cf. note on **nuntiatum esset, 6** 14.

8 4 **eo deprecatore** (abl. abs. denoting means), *by his means as advocate.* — **impetrarent,** *they might obtain* (it): a purpose clause; § 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.

8 5 **gratia,** *personal influence.* — **largitione,** *lavish gifts and hospitalities:* like those of old chiefs of the clan. These words are ablatives of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444.

8 7 **duxerat**: this word is used only of the man who marries a wife, i.e. he *leads* her to his own house.

8 8 **novis rebus**: *revolution,* change in government, dat.; § 368. 3 (227. *e.* 3); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346, R.[2]; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

8 9 **habere obstrictas,** *to keep close bound:* § 497. *b* (292. *c*); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. I. N.); H-B. 605. 5.

8 10 **impetrat** has for object **ut . . . patiantur,** and **perficit** has **uti . . . dent,**—clauses of result; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. *a.*

8 11 **obsides**: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished.

8 12 **ne . . . prohibeant**; **ut transeant**: object clauses of purpose, depending on the idea of agreement implied in **obsides . . . dent.** — **itinere**: abl. of separation; cf. **conatu, 7** 24.

8 14 CHAP. 10. **renuntiatur,** *word is brought back:* i.e. by messengers sent to ascertain, as the prefix **re** implies; the subject is the clause **Helvetiis esse,** etc.; see note on **6** 24.

8 15 **Santonum**: a people north of the Garonne, on the Bay of Biscay. This is so far from the borders of the province as to show that Cæsar was only searching for a pretext. But the conquest of Gaul was already determined upon, and the warlike Helvetii were too dangerous a people to be allowed to add their strength to that of the present inhabitants.

8 16 **Tolosatium**: the people of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse.

8 17 **Id** refers to the Helvetii marching into the territory of the Santones. — **fieret**: the subjv. of indir. disc. after **intellegebat.**

8 18 **futurum** [*esse*] **ut . . . haberet,** etc., *it would be to the great peril of the province that it should have,* etc.: § 561. N.[1] (329. N.); B. 294; G. 506; H. 571 (540); H-B. 238. — **ut . . . haberet**: a substantive clause of result used as the subject of **futurum** [*esse*]; § 537, 569 (319, 332. *a*); B. 284. 1, 297. 2; G. 553. 4. R.[3]; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); H-B. 521. 3. *a.* Cæsar's thought would be: "Id si fiet, magno . . . futurum est ut populus Romanus . . . habeat."

8 19 **locis** (loc. abl.) **patentibus,** *in an open country:* the southwest part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.

8 20 **finitimos**: predicate, *have as neighbors*, etc.

8 21 **munitioni . . . praeficit,** *he put in command of the fortification.*— **Labienum**: this was Cæsar's best officer, a prominent and influential politician of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil War broke out he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, B.C. 45.

8 22 **legatum,** *aide, lieutenant:* no English word exactly translates this word.— **magnis itineribus**: cf. **quam maximis potest itineribus, 6** 16. It is the usual phrase for *forced marches* of an army. The ordinary day's march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a *magnum iter* was from 20 to 25 miles.—**Italiam**: probably only into his province of Cisalpine Gaul, but this was already regarded as a part of Italy.

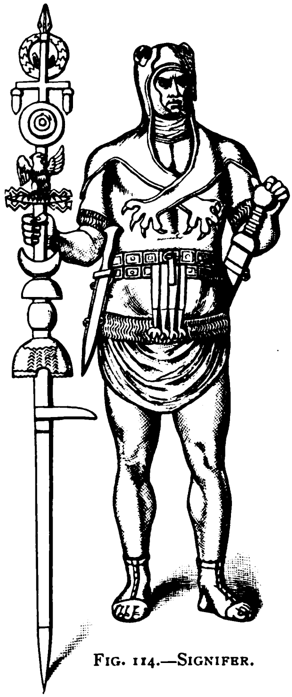


FIG. 114.—SIGNIFER.

9 1 **Aquileiam**: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice.— **qua proximum iter**: i.e. by way of Turin and Susa, by Mt. Genèvre. Ocelum has been variously identified with Briançon and probably Grenoble.

9 5 **compluribus . . . pulsis**: the order is interlocked, **his** agreeing with **pulsis**; § 597. *h* (344. *h*); B. 350. 11. *d.*

9 7 **Vocontiorum**: this people extended from the Durance to the Isère.

9 8 **Allobrogum**: these extended as far south as the Isère, and had possessions north of the Rhone in the sharp angle at St. Didier.

9 9 **Segusiavos**: these were west of the Rhone in the region of Lyons and opposite Vienne. They probably extended across the Saône above Lyons, so that Cæsar only crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône and did not cross the Saône also. He evidently had his camp in the heights above Lyons in the angle of the two rivers. His army amounted to six legions of nearly 25,000 men and an uncertain number of Gallic cavalry. He had doubtless been joined by Labienus with his legion from

Geneva, though that fact is not mentioned. Cæsar evidently went beyond his province without the order of the Senate, hence his explanatory tone.

9 11 CHAP. 11. **iam,** *by this time.* — **angustias**: i.e. the Pas-de-l'Ecluse before described; see Figs. 5, 6. The entire train of the Helvetii has been reckoned at 8500 four-horse wagons, extending some fifty miles (cf. note on **4** 23). The passage must have been extremely slow. They probably followed in the line of the modern railroad as far as Culoz, then to Amberieu and across the plateau des Dombes to the Saône between Lyons and Macon, a distance of nearly a hundred miles. It is calculated that Cæsar must have been absent two months in Italy, and the march of the Helvetians probably took about the same time. This would make the time of these events about the latter part of June.

9 12 **Haeduorum**: it does not appear that these occupied the left bank of the Saône. But predatory excursions may have been made across the river, and in ch. 12 the Helvetians were engaged in crossing.

9 13 **cum . . . possent,** *not being able*, etc.

9 15 **rogatum**: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618. — **ita se**, etc.: in English supply *saying* or some such word. In Latin, after the idea of speech or thought is suggested, as here by **legatos** and **rogatum**, no further expression of saying is necessary. In dir. disc. this would be, "Ita [*nos*] . . . *meriti sumus*, ut paene in conspectu exercitus *vestri*, . . . *liberi nostri* . . . non *debuerint*"; i.e. our services have been such, etc., that we did not deserve to have this happen (as it has). Probably the account is somewhat exaggerated.

9 16 **meritos**: "Alone among the Gauls," says Tacitus, "the Hædui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people" (Ann. xi. 25). So, also, Cicero calls them *fratres nostri*.

9 17 **[eorum]**: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.

9 18 **debuerint**: if this were stated not as a result but independently, the form would be perf. indic., implying that the thing had happened contrary to what ought to be. According to the Latin idiom, the same tense is retained in such cases, contrary to the sequence of tenses; see § 485. *c.* N.[2] (287. *c.* N.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); H-B. 478. The English idiom is *that our lands*, etc., *ought not to have been*, etc., putting the past idea into the infin.; § 486. *a* (288. *a*); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. *a*. ftn.[2]. — **Haedui Ambarri,** *the Hædui near the Arar* (or Saône), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. They were evidently closely akin to the Hædui and were their allies.

9 19 **necessarii,** bound by *necessitudo*, or community of interests of any kind. — **consanguinei,** *akin by blood.*

9 20 **depopulatis agris . . . prohibere**: i.e. their lands were already wasted, and it was with difficulty that they could keep off, etc.; see § 496. N.[1] (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R.[1]; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 421. 4; **depopulatis** is pass., though from a dep. verb; see § 190. *b* (135. *b*); B. 112. *b*; G. 167. N.[2]; H. 222. 2 (231. 2); H-B. 291. *d*.

9 21 **Allobroges**: from Culoz the Rhone flows almost south and then makes a very sharp turn to the northwest. It was probably in this angle that the Allobroges overlapped the river.

9 23 **sibi**: § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. — **sŏlum** is a noun. — **nihil esse reliqui**: part. gen., a common usage with neut. adjectives; § 346. *a*. 1 (216. *a*. 1); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 440. 5. N. (397. 1); H-B. 346; i.e. they had nothing left, etc.; the land was completely stripped.

9 24 **non exspectandum** [*esse*]: impers., as this construction is always passive. Translate by the act., *He must not*, etc.; see § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355, 251. 1; H. 302. 7, 431 (301. 2, 388); H-B. 373. 1.

9 25 **sociorum**: the Helvetians would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

9 26 **Santonos**: cf. **8** 15. — **pervenirent**: § 553 (328); B. 292. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. The subjv. is used because of the idea, *they should come*, technically called purpose.

10 1 CHAP. 12. **flumen**, etc., *the Arar* (Saône) *is a river which flows through*, etc.; not *between*, which would be expressed by *dividit*. The Saône joins the Rhone about seventy-five miles southwest of Lake Geneva.

10 2 **lenitate**, *sluggish current*, abl. of description.

10 3 **in . . . fluat**: indir. quest., subject of **iudicari possit**: see § 574. N. (334. N.); B. 300; G. 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 537.

10 4 **ratibus**, *rafts* of logs; **lintribus**, *canoes* of hollowed logs, joined to make a kind of bridge. — **transibant**: notice the imperf.; they were in the act of crossing.

10 5 **partis**: object of **duxisse**; **flumen**, governed by **trans** in composition; § 395 (239. *b*); B. 179. 1; G. 331. R.[1]; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386.

10 7 **citra**: i.e. on the east side. — **Ararim**: for the acc. in **im**, see § 74. *d*, 75. *a*. 1 (55. *d*, 56. *a*. 1); B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 2 (62. iii. 1); H-B. 88. 1. It is to be noticed that Gallic names were felt by the Romans as Greek, and were treated accordingly. — **reliquam** = *relictam*: in fact, this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle. — **de tertia vigilia**: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches, the third beginning at midnight. This movement took place soon after (**de**) the watch began.

10 10 **eos impeditos**, etc.: the emphasis gives a force like "while these were hampered and not expecting, he engaged them," etc. In Latin the two sentences are made into one; such telescoping of two coördinate ideas is almost regular in Latin.

10 11 **concīdit**: see Vocab. — **mandarunt** = *mandaverunt:* § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

10 12 **pagus**: this "district" (*Tigurinus*) was about the modern Zurich. The inhabitants of the *pagus* probably composed a clan, and formed a division of the force.

10 15 **L. Cassium**: see **7** 1, 2.

10 17 **deorum**: this reference to a special providence is noticeable in so stern a realist as Cæsar, and was possibly for political effect. Yet he often speaks of fortune as powerful in human affairs (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 42), and mentions divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey (Bell. Civ. III. 105). A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power. — **quae pars . . . intulerat . . . ea . . . persolvit**, render *that part which*, etc.: see § 307. *b*. N. (200. *b*. N.); cf. B. 251. 4; G. 620; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

10 19 **princeps poenas persolvit**, *was the first to pay the penalty:* § 290 (191); B. 239; H. 497. 3 (442. N.); H-B. 243; referring to the complete overthrow of the rest later. Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as *suffering* to be *inflicted*, but as of the nature of a *fine* or *penalty* to be *paid;* hence *sumere*, *capere*, *to inflict*, and *dare* or *solvere*, *to suffer*.

In 1862 numerous remains buried in two trenches were discovered near this spot, possibly of those slain in this battle.

11 1 **iniurias**, *wrongs*, not simply *damage*, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar's point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong.

11 2 **soceri**: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia (Shakespeare's *Calpurnia*), and consul of the present year (see end of ch. 6). — **legatum**: notice how carefully titles are given, a matter of military and social etiquette; cf. **consulem, 10** 15.

11 4 CHAP. 13. **reliquas**: the emphasis on this word displaces the connective **ut**, which would naturally stand first in its clause.

11 5 **consequi**, *overtake* (hence the frequent meaning *acquire*). — **pontem . . . faciendum curat**, *has a bridge made:* § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.[2]); H-B. 612. iii. — **pontem**: see chapter on military affairs, VI.

11 7 **cum . . . intellegerent**: § 546 (323, 325); B. 288. I. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525; cf. notes on **4** 12, **6** 14, **7** 17. Here **cum** may be translated *when*, but the clause gives the state of mind of the

Helvetii as the main feature of the situation, and really expresses no time at all, but circumstance only, hence the subjunctive. — **id**: object of **fecisse**.

11 8 **diebus XX,** *in the course of twenty days:* § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — **ut . . . transirent**: this clause is in app. with **id**, but, as it is through that app. the object of **fecisse**, it takes the result construction just as if it depended immediately on the verb of effecting; cf. note on **4** 17; and see § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. *a.* N.

11 9 **legatos**: a participle of *lego* (*depute*), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically *envoy* or *ambassador*, and in military affairs *lieutenant*.

11 10 **Divico**: now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place forty-nine years before. It was, of course, a piece of arrogance to send him.

11 12 **si pacem,** etc.: Direct, —

Si pacem p. R. cum Helvetiis *faciet*, in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvetii*, ubi eos tu, Caesar, *constitueris* atque esse *volueris* (or Caesar *constituerit . . . voluerit*); sin bello . . . *perseverabit*, *reminiscere* et veteris incommodi p. R. et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus *es*, cum ei qui flumen *transierant* suis auxilium ferre non possent, *noli* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtuti *tribuere*, aut *nos despicere; nos* ita a patribus maioribusque *nostris didicimus* ut magis virtute *contenderemus* (*contendamus*) quam dolo aut insidiis *niteremur* (*nitamur*). Qua re *noli committere* ut is locus ubi *constitimus* ex calamitate . . . nomen *capiat* aut memoriam *prodat.*

This discourse, as well as Cæsar's answer, is confused by a partial identification of Cæsar and the Roman people. Hence, many of the forms might be either third person as referring to the Roman people, or second or first as addressed to Cæsar, or spoken by him.

The indirect discourse is found in almost all languages, and each one has its own methods of change from the direct. In English it is regularly introduced by *that.* This word, however, is often omitted, in which case only the *persons* and the *tenses* are changed to fit the new relations. Dependent clauses keep their connectives, but change, like others, their *persons* and *tenses.* In long passages, if *that* is omitted, parenthetical phrases are frequently introduced to keep the connection of the thought, like "he said," "he asked," "he urged," "he begged." The passage here may be translated: "If the Roman people would make peace, etc., [that] the Helvetii would go . . . and remain where Cæsar should settle them and desire them to be; but if they (the Roman people) should persist in pursuing them, etc., let him remember [he said] (or he begged him to remember), etc. As to the fact that (because) he had attacked, etc., he should

not ascribe it, etc., or despise them (the Helvetians). [That] they had [he said] been taught rather to contend, etc. Let him therefore not allow that place . . . to be," etc. So in **12** 8, **num . . . posse**, "could they, he asked."

11 13 **in eam partem . . . ubi**, *to whatever part*, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration.

11 15 **bello**: note the emphatic position as opposed to emphatic **pacem**, l. 12. — **reminisceretur**, subjv. for imv. of the dir.: *he should remember*, or *let him remember*.

11 16 **incommodi**, *disaster* (lit. *inconvenience*), a euphemism: cf. "the late unpleasantness" for our Civil War. For the government of the gen., see § 350. *c* (219); B. 206. 2; G. 376; H. 454 (406. ii); H-B. 350.

11 17 **quod**: conj., *as to the fact that;* § 572. *a* (333. *a*); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3. N. (516. ii. 2, N.); H-B. 552. 2. — **pagum**: the Tigurini.

11 18 **suis**, *to their people:* § 302. *d* (190. *a*); B. 236. 1; G. 204. N.[1]; H. 494. 1 (441. 1); H-B. 250. 2. *a*.

11 19 **ne tribueret**, *he should not ascribe it:* cf. **reminisceretur**, l. 15.

11 21 **contenderent, niterentur**: subjv. of result. — **dolo**, *craft;* **insidiis**, *ambuscade*. For these ablatives, see § 431 (254. *b*); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N.[6]; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1, N.); H-B. 438. 1.

11 22 **ne committeret ut**, etc.: § 568. N.[1] (332. *e*); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 566. 1 (498. ii. N.[2]). — **ubi constitissent**, *where they had taken their stand.*

12 1 CHAP. 14. **eo sibi**, etc.: Direct, —

Eo *mihi* minus dubitationis *datur*, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii *commemoraverunt* (or vos *commemorastis*) memoria *teneo*, atque eo gravius *fero*, quo minus merito populi Romani *acciderunt;* qui si . . . sibi conscius fuisset, non *fuit* difficile cavere; sed eo *deceptus est*, quod neque commissum a se *intellegebat* qua re timeret, neque sine causa timendum *putabat*. Quod si . . . oblivisci *velit* (*velim*), num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod *me* invito iter . . . *temptastis*, quod Haeduos, . . . *vexastis*, memoriam deponere *potest* (*possum*)? Quod *vestra* victoria . . . *gloriamini*, quodque tam diu *vos* impune iniurias tulisse *admiramini*, eodem *pertinet*. *Consuerunt* enim *di immortales* quo gravius homines . . . doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci *volunt* . . . his . . . impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides a *vobis mihi dabuntur*, uti ea quae *pollicemini* [vos] facturos *intellegam*, et si Haeduis de iniuriis quas . . . *intulistis* . . . *satisfacietis* [ego], *vobiscum* pacem *faciam*.

12 1 **eo** (cf. note on **quo minus**, l. 3) **minus . . . dari**, *he had all the less hesitation.* — **dubitationis**: § 346. *a*. 2 (216. *a*. 2); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

12 3 **eo gravius . . . quo minus**, *he was the more incensed . . . in that . . . not*, etc.: § 414. *a* (106. *c*, 250. R.); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424 and *a*.

12 4 **qui si . . . fuisset**, *now if they* (the Roman people) *had been.*

12 5 **non fuisse** (for *fuit* of dir. disc.): translate as if *futurum fuisse, it would not have been;* and see § 437. *a* (264. *b*, 308 *d*. N.); B. 271. I. *b*, 322. *b*; G. 597. 3 (*a*); H. 525. 2, 583 (476. 5, 511. I. N.[3]); H-B. 582. 3. *a*. N.[2] — **eo deceptum** [*esse*], *they had been deceived by this.*



FIG. 115.

1. FUNDITOR. 2, 2. MILITES LEVIS ARMATURAE. 3, 3. LEGIONARII.

12 6 **quare timeret** = *propter quod*, with *quicquam* for its understood antecedent. The clause stands as subject of **commissum** [*esse*], which in turn depends on **intellegeret**: *because they* (the Roman people) *did not know they had done anything to cause them to fear.*

12 7 **quod si . . . vellet**, *but if they* (or *he*) *should consent to forget*, etc.: § 397. *a* (240. *b*); B. 185. 2; G. 333. 1, 610. R.[1]; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); H-B. 388. *a*. — **contumeliae**: for construction, cf. **incommodi, 11** 16.

12 8 **num . . . posse**, *could they* (or *he*), *he asked*, etc.: § 586 (338); B. 315. 2; G. 651. R.[1]; H. 642. 2 (523. ii. 2); H-B. 591. *a*. The infin. is used because the question is not a real one expecting an answer, but a rhetorical one asked for effect, and implying its own answer. Such questions are treated in indir. disc. as declarative sentences. — **iniuriarum** depends on **memoriam** below.

12 9 **eo invito,** *against his will;* we should expect *se*, referring to the subject of **posse,** but Cæsar's mind wavers between himself and the Roman people, so that the pronoun does not exactly refer to the subject.

12 10 **quod . . . vexassent** is a clause of *fact*, properly indic.: § 572 (333); B. 286; G. 525; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555; it is subjv. by indir. disc.

12 11 **quod**: cf. note on **quod, 11** 17. — **sua**: i.e. the Helvetians; so **se tulisse,** *that they had committed.* — **quod . . . admirarentur**: the two **quod** clauses are used as the subject of **pertinere,** *as for their boasting*, etc., *and as for their wondering*, etc., *it tended in the same direction;* i.e. it all belonged together in the divine purpose of exalting them expressly to make the fall more marked. "Divico had not said anything in the way of direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner, or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain Lucius Cassius."

12 13 **consuesse**: present in force; § 205. N.[2] (143. *c.* N.); B. 262. *a*; G. 175. 5; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

12 14 **quo**: cf. note on **7** 15.

12 15 **quos . . . his,** *to grant an interval of prosperity and longer impunity to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt;* the relative clause, as usual, preceding: § 308. *d* (201. *c*); G. 620; H. 683. 2. N. (572. ii. N.); H-B. 284. 5. Observe the change to primary tenses, when the language of Cæsar expresses a general truth.

12 18 **cum,** *though:* § 549 (326); B. 309; G. 587; H. 598 (515. iii); H-B. 526. — **sibi,** *to him*, Cæsar.

12 19 **facturos** [*esse*]: sc. *eos.* — **Haeduis**: dat. after **satisfaciant** supplied from the next clause, *pay damages.*

12 20 **ipsis** (the Hædui): dat. after **intulerint.**

12 22 Write Divico's reply in dir. disc.

12 24 **testem**: another allusion to the victory over Cassius.

13 2 CHAP. 15. **equitatum.** Who made up the cavalry? See chapter on military affairs, I. 2.

13 4 **coactum habebat,** lit. *had collected*, more strictly *held* (had in hand) *after being collected:* § 497. *b* (292. *c*); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. I. N.); H-B. 605. 5. — **videant**: subjv. of purpose.

13 5 **faciant**: subjv. of indir. quest., **quas** being interrog. — **cupidius,** *too eagerly:* § 291. *a* (93. *a*); B. 240. 1; G. 297. 2; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2. — **novissimum agmen,** *the rear;* **agmen** is the army in line of march (**ago**), and its *newest* part is that which comes along last. See chapter on military affairs, VI.

13 6 **alieno loco,** *on unfavorable ground;* so *suo* would be *favorable* (cf. "one's own ground"). For construction, see § 429. 1 (258. *f.* 1); B. 228. 1. *b*; G. 385. N.[1]; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436.

13 8 **equitibus**: abl. of means.

13 10 **novissimo agmine** (loc. abl.), *at their rear.* — **proelio**: abl. of manner or means.

13 12 **satis habebat,** *held it sufficient.* — **hostem . . . prohibere**: in a kind of pred. agreement with **satis,** as object of **habebat.** — **rapinis**: § 400 (243); B. 214. 2; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 2.

13 13 **ita . . . uti,** *in such a way that* (correlative). — **dies**: cf. with **diebus, 11** 8, and note the difference between the acc. and the abl. of time.

13 15 **quinis aut senis**: distributives, implying that this was the *constant* or *average* daily distance between the two armies. They apparently marched along the Saône, in the direction of Châlon. Their exact route from the Saône towards Autun is uncertain. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Cæsar to get any advantage by a rapid march or by an attack on the Helvetian rear. He consequently followed them, watching his chance. — **milibus**: § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. *d.*

13 17 CHAP. 16. **Haeduos frumentum,** *demanded corn of the Hædui:* § 396 (239. *c*); B. 178. 1. *a*; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.

13 18 **essent polliciti**: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc., *which* (he said) *they had promised.* — **flagitare**: histor. infin.; § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595. Notice that this construction, like the imperfect tense, only describes a situation, and never advances the narrative. The word expresses an earnest and repeated demand accompanied with reproaches. — **frigora,** *the cold seasons,* or *spells of cold;* not *the cold* in general. The climate of Gaul in Cæsar's day was much colder than that of France now. The change has come from clearing away the forests and draining the marshes, which then covered much of the country.

13 20 **frumenta**: the plur. is regularly used of *standing grain.* The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (**pabuli**) was scarce because Cæsar was following in the path of the Helvetians, whose thousands of cattle had almost swept the country bare. — **ne . . . quidem,** *not even:* § 322. *f.* (151. *e*); B. 347. 1; G. 448. 2; H. 569. iii. 2.

13 22 **frumento**: abl. after **uti.** — **flumine**: § 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; but G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426. — **navibus**: § 409 (248. *c.* 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — **propterea . . . quod**: see **1** 6.

13 23 **ab Arari**: i.e. towards the valley of the Loire, westerly, but by what road is unknown.

13 24 **diem**: acc. expressing duration of time. — **ducere**: histor. infin.

13 25 **conferri,** etc. [*frumentum*]: a climax. *They said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.*

14 1 **quo die**: note the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, but do not translate it; see § 307. *a* (200. *a*); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

14 2 **metiri,** *serve;* see chapter on military affairs, IV. *f.*

14 4 **Diviciaco et Lisco**: abl. in apposition with **principibus.** — **summo magistratui praeerat,** *held the chief office,* of which the Celtic title was *guerg breth,* "executor of judgment," represented in Latin by *vergobretus.*

14 6 **in suos,** *over his people.*

14 7 **posset**: sc. *frumentum.* For the subjv., see § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

14 8 **propinquis,** *with the enemy so near:* not attribute, but predicate; an abl. abs.

15 1 **sublevetur**: cf. **essent polliciti, 13** 18, and note; also **sit destitutus** just below; § 592. 3 (341. *d*); B. 323; G. 508. 3; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. *a.*

15 4 CHAP. 17. **quod**: sc. *id,* object of **proponit.**

15 5 **esse non nullos,** etc.: Direct, —

Sunt non *nulli* quorum auctoritas . . . valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. *Hi* . . . multitudinem *deterrent* ne frumentum conferant quod *debent: praestat,* si iam principatum . . . obtinere non *possunt,* Gallorum . . . imperia . . . *perferre;* neque *dubitant* quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, . . . libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem *vestra* (or *Romanorum*) consilia quaeque in castris gerantur (*geruntur*) hostibus *enuntiantur; hi* a *me* coerceri non *possunt.* Quin etiam, quod necessario . . . coactus Caesari (*tibi*) *enuntiavi, intellego* . . . quanto id cum periculo *fecerim,* et ob eam causam quam diu *potui tacui.*

15 6 **privatim plus possint,** *have more power in private station:* see note on **3** 20.

15 7 **improba oratione,** *reckless talk.*

15 8 **ne . . . conferant,** *from bringing:* § 558. *b* (331. *e.* 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 596. 2 (505. ii); H-B. 502. 3. *b.*

15 11 **neque dubitare quin**: § 537. *a* (319. *a*); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *b.* — **superaverint**: perf. subjv. — **una**: an adv.

15 12 **Haeduis**: dat.; § 558 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 347; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — **sint erepturi**: the first periphrastic conjugation. It almost equals *eripiant,* but emphasizes the future intention of the Romans.

15 14 **a se**: i.e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate. — **quod . . . enuntiarit**: cf. **11** 17, **12** 11, and notes.

15 15 **coactus,** *on compulsion* (lit. *being forced*).

15 16 **quanto . . . fecerit**: cf. **quas . . . faciant, 13** 5 and note. — **id**: i.e. **quod . . . enuntiarit.**

15 19 CHAP. 18. **pluribus praesentibus**, *in the presence of many;* observe that the abl. abs. will rarely bear a literal translation, but its force must be brought out in various ways.

15 20 **iactari**, *bandied about* (frequentative of *iacio*).

15 21 **Liscum retinet**, [but] *keeps Liscus.* The omission of the conj. (asyndeton) is very common in Cæsar's rapid narrative. — **ex solo**, *from him in private.*

15 22 **secreto** (from *secerno*), *each by himself.*

15 23 **esse vera** (sc. *haec*), *that the facts are these.* — **ipsum esse Dumnorigem**, etc.: Direct, —

Ipse est Dumnorix . . . cupidus rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria . . . redempta *habet*, . . . quod illo licente contra liceri *audet* nemo. His rebus et suam rem . . . *auxit* et facultatis . . . *comparavit;* magnum numerum equitatus . . . *alit* et circum se *habet*, neque solum domi sed etiam apud . . . civitatis largiter *potest;* atque . . . matrem . . . *conlocavit*, *ipse* . . . uxorem *habet*, sororem . . . *conlocavit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvetiis . . . *odit* . . . Caesarem . . : quod . . . frater . . . *est* restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem . . . *venit;* imperio populi Romani . . . de ea quam *habet* gratia, *desperat.*

15 24 **summa audacia**, [a man] *of the utmost boldness.* The general word is rarely, as here, omitted after a proper name with an abl. of quality.

15 25 **rerum novarum**: the regular expression for a change of government, revolution, or *coup d'état.* Such overturnings seem to have been frequent in Gaul. — **portoria**, *customs dues* or *tolls*, levied at the frontier; collected, apparently, as by the Romans, through *publicani*, who bid for the contract at public auction and made what they could above the contract price. The Hædui controlled at least a part of the Saône, which was a water-way into the centre of Gaul. It was customary among the ancients to levy tolls or blackmail on goods passing through their territories.

16 1 **redempta**: agreeing with **vectigalia**, and taken with **habere**, *had bought in* (cf. **8** 9, **13** 4).

16 2 **illo licente**, *when he bid:* see note on **15** 19.

16 4 **ad largiendum**, *for bribery*, to buy political support: § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; G. 432; H. 628 (541. iii. N.[2]); H-B. 612. iii.

16 7 **causa**, *for the sake:* as always when thus following a gen. — **potentiae**, *power*, as an attribute of the person; *potestas* is power to do anything; *facultas*, opportunity; *imperium*, military authority.

16 8 **Biturigibus**: near the modern *Bourges*, west of the Hædui.

16 9 **uxorem**: the daughter of Orgetorix; see **3** 22. — **ex matre,** *on the mother's side* (a half-sister).

16 10 **nuptum**: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618; see Vocab. under *conlocare.*

16 11 **Helvetiis**: dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

16 12 **suo nomine,** *on his own account:* a mercantile phrase applying to business debts, etc.

16 14 **si quid accidat**: a mild phrase, *in case of any disaster;* future less vivid protasis with **venire** as apodosis; § 589 (337); B. 319. B; G. 658; H. 646 (527. ii); cf. H-B. 580.

16 15 **obtinendi**: gerund or gerundive? See **3** 11 and note.

16 16 **imperio** (abl. of time and cause), *under the rule.*

16 18 **quod . . . factum,** *in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought the other day.* The idea expressed in English by *whereas*, *as to the fact that*, and the like is regularly expressed in Latin by a *quod*-clause with the indic., almost independent of the rest of the sentence; cf. **11** 17, **12** 11, **15** 14, and notes.

16 19 **initium fugae**: it is implied that this action was treacherous.

16 21 **auxilio Caesari**: § 382. 1 (233. *a*); B. 191. 2. *b*; G. 356; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 360 and *b.*

16 24 Chap. 19. **res,** *facts;* see note on **4** 4. — **accederent**: § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525. This word is used as a kind of pass. of *addo.* — **quod . . . traduxisset,** *the fact that* (as he learned) *he had led*, etc. The verbs in these *quod*-clauses are in the subjv. on the principle of implied or informal indir. disc.; cf. **13** 18, **15** 1, and notes.

16 25 **inter eos**: i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani. — **dandos**: cf. **pontem faciendum curat, 11** 5 and note.

16 26 **iniussu suo,** etc., *without his authority or that of the state.* For form, see § 94. *c* (71. *b*); B. 57. 1; G. 70. A; H. 143. 1 (134); H-B. 106. 1; here **suo** is equivalent to a genitive.

16 27 **ipsis**: himself and the Hædui. — **magistratu**: see **14** 4.

16 28 **causae**: gen. depending on **satis,** which is used as a noun. — **in eum . . . animadverteret,** *should proceed against* or *punish him* (see Vocab.): a clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591 (503); cf. H-B. 521. 1.

17 3 **quod . . . cognoverat,** *that he well knew*, etc. (the present inceptive, *cognosco*, having the meaning *to learn*). This clause, in apposition with **unum** (*only one thing*), might in English be introduced by some such word as *namely.*

17 4 **studium,** *attachment,* as a partisan.

17 5 **voluntatem,** *good will,* as a friend. Note the absence of connectives in vivid narration.

17 6 **eius**: i.e. of Dumnorix. — **supplicio,** *punishment* or *execution.* This word is derived from the adj. *supplex, down-bent,* signifying *on the bended knee;* i.e. either as a suppliant for mercy, or, as here, to receive the blow of the executioner.

17 7 **prius quam conaretur,** *before he should attempt:* § 556. *b* (327); B. 292. 1. *a*; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. *a.*

17 10 **cui,** etc.: an easier construction would be *cuius fidei omnes res credebat.* — **summam . . . fidem,** *full confidence.*

17 11 **eo**: i.e. Diviciacus. — **commonefacit,** *reminds* or *notifies* (see Vocab.).

17 12 **ipso**: i.e. Diviciacus.

17 13 **apud se,** *in his* (Cæsar's) *presence.*

17 14 **ut . . . statuat**: cf. note on **6** 10. — **offensione animi,** *displeasure* (of Diviciacus); **ipse,** which follows, refers to Cæsar: the gist of the request is in **sine eius offensione.** Cæsar hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.

17 17 CHAP. 20. **complexus**: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees or falls at his feet.

17 18 **ne quid gravius** (a common euphemistic phrase), *no severe measures.* Notice that **gravius** is an adj., modifying **quid** (*anything*), a subst. — **scire se,** etc.: Direct, —

Scio haec esse vera, nec *quisquam* ex eo plus quam *ego* doloris *capit,* propterea quod, cum *ego* gratia plurimum [*possem*] . . . ille minimum . . . posset, per *me crevit;* quibus opibus . . . paene ad perniciem *meam utitur. Ego* tamen et amore . . . *commoveor.* Quod si quid ei a *te acciderit,* cum *ego hunc* locum . . . *apud te teneam* (*teneo*), *nemo existimabit* non *mea* voluntate factum; qua ex re . . . totius Galliae animi a *me avertentur.*

17 19 **plus doloris**: except as an adv., this comparative is mostly used, as here, with the part. gen.

17 20 **ipse, se, suam, sese**: all refer to Diviciacus; **ille** to Dumnorix, which is also the subject of **crevisset** and **uteretur.**

17 22 **opibus ac nervis,** *sinews of power,* after **uteretur**: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

17 23 **gratiam,** as well as **perniciem,** takes **suam.**

17 24 **amore fraterno,** *love to his brother:* § 348. *a* (217. *a*); B. 353. 5. *b*; H. 439. 3 (395. N.2); H-B. 354. *d.*

17 25 **si quid accidisset** (a euphemism; cf. **incommodi, 11** 16 and note): pluperf. representing fut. perf. indic. (*acciderit*) of the direct by sequence

[illegible] and note.

[illegible] the consul.

[illegible] this in [illegible] commander. [illegible] in [illegible]

18 [illegible] (88. *a*): [illegible] who had been [illegible]

18 [illegible] B. 108. 3: [illegible] not rare in Cæsar. [illegible] **reprehendat**. 1. 8, above.

18 [illegible] **de quarta vigilia** [illegible] season rising here about four o'clock.

18 [illegible] H. 451. 1 (390. i. 2); H.-B. 554.

18 23 **Sullae, Crassi**: Sulla, the dictator, had conducted the war against Mithridates about thirty years before (B.C. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B.C. 71). — **in**: sc. *exercitu.*

19 1 CHAP. 22. **teneretur**: subjv. after **cum**, describing the situation; cf. **4** 12, **6** 14, **7** 17, and notes.

19 2 **ipse**: Cæsar.

19 3 **passibus**: abl. of degree of difference after **abesset**; § 425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424; not after **longius**; § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.[4]; H. 471. 4 (417. I. N.[2]); cf. H-B. 416. *d.*

19 4 **aut Labieni**: after **adventus** and coördinate with **ipsius**. — **equo admisso**, *at full speed* (with reins thrown loose).

19 6 **armis**: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans; see Fig. 11, Fig. 28, Fig. 87, etc.

19 7 **insignibus**: i.e. *devices* on shields and helmets, — stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.; see Fig. 11. The inference from this report would be that Labienus and his force had been cut to pieces, and Cæsar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

19 8 **ut**, *as.*

19 9 **ne . . . committeret . . . essent**: subject of **erat praeceptum**; § 566 (331. *h*); B. 295. 1.

19 10 **ut . . . fieret**, *in order that the attack might be made on all sides at once*: a purpose clause.

19 11 **monte occupato**, etc., *having seized the height, continued to look out for our men.* Observe how the imperfects **exspectabat** and **abstinebat** describe the situation; see note on **3** 5.

19 12 **multo die**: abl. of time, *late in the day.* — **denique**, *not till*: see Vocab.

20 2 **quod non vidisset**, *what he had not seen*; sc. *id*, object of **renuntiasse**. — **pro viso**, *as if seen*; **viso** is used here as a noun. — **quo**, sc. *eodem*, *at the same interval as usual*, i.e. five or six miles; see **13** 15.

20 3 **milia**: acc. of extent; §425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

20 5 CHAP. 23. **diei**: § 359. *b* (214. *g*); B. 201. 3. *a*; G. 360; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. *c*; making **postridie** more formal and precise. — **omnino**, *in all* (i.e. *only*).

20 6 **cum**, *within which*, a common Latin idiom. — **metiri**: cf. **14** 2 and note. — **Bibracte**, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about ten miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). The place afterwards became a Roman colony, and contains numerous Roman remains.

of tenses; a future condition; § 516. *f* (307. *f*); B. 319. B; G. 656, 657; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 580. *b* and N. — **ei**: i.e. Dumnorix.

18 1 **futurum** [*esse*] **uti . . . averterentur,** *the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned from him:* periphrastic fut. infin.; § 569. *a* (147. *c.* 3, 288. *f*); B. 115, 270. 3; G. 248; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. *c.* Cf. **8** 18.

18 4 **rogat** [*ut*] **. . . faciat**: § 565. *a* (331. *f.* R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.[2]; H. 565. 4 (499. 2).

18 5 **tanti,** *of so great account:* § 417 (252. *a*); B. 203. 3; G. 380. 1; H. 448. 4 (405); H-B. 356. 1.

18 6 **eius . . . precibus,** *in deference to his wish and prayers.* — **condonet** (subjv. of result): this word means to give up a right to some one; here the just resentment of Cæsar was given up to Diviciacus.

18 8 **reprehendat**: why subjv.? cf. **15** 16. Note the same construction in the next clause.

18 10 **praeterita,** *things bygone, the past.*

18 11 **custodes**: i.e. *spies.*

18 15 CHAP. 21. **qualis esset,** etc.: indir. quest. after **cognoscerent.** — **natura,** *character.* — **qualis . . . ascensus**: i.e. what kind of an ascent there was at various points of its circuit. — **qui cognoscerent**: § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2; the antecedent of **qui** is *eos*, *quosdam*, or some such word, to be supplied as object of **misit,** *he sent men to ascertain.* Such a relative may in Latin always imply its own antecedent, as in English the relatives *whoever* and *what;* cf. **qui . . . appellantur, 1** 2 and note.

18 16 **facilem**: sc. *ascensum.* — **de tertia vigilia**: cf. **10** 7 and note.

18 17 **pro praetore,** *with powers of prætor.* The prætor, like the consul, held the *imperium* or power to command; a *legatus*, not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander. Labienus, and perhaps others of Cæsar's lieutenants, had the *imperium* in their own right, by special grant.

18 18 **ducibus**: a kind of predicate apposition, *as guides;* § 284 (185. *a*); B. 168; G. 325; H-B. 319. 1. — **qui . . . cognoverant**: i.e. who had been of the reconnoitering party.

18 19 **consili**: a predicate gen. after **quid sit**; § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340. Such genitives are not rare in Cæsar, but are probably more or less colloquial. — **sit**: cf. **reprehendat,** l. 8, above.

18 20 **de quarta vigilia**: about 2 A.M., the sun at this season rising here about four o'clock.

18 22 **rei**: § 349. *a* (218. *a*); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

18 23 **Sullae, Crassi**: Sulla, the dictator, had conducted the war against Mithridates about thirty years before (B.C. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B.C. 71). — **in**: sc. *exercitu.*

19 1 CHAP. 22. **teneretur**: subjv. after **cum**, describing the situation; cf. **4** 12, **6** 14, **7** 17, and notes.

19 2 **ipse**: Cæsar.

19 3 **passibus**: abl. of degree of difference after **abesset**; § 425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424; not after **longius**; § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.[4]; H. 471. 4 (417. I. N.[2]); cf. H-B. 416. *d.*

19 4 **aut Labieni**: after **adventus** and coördinate with **ipsius**. — **equo admisso**, *at full speed* (with reins thrown loose).

19 6 **armis**: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans; see Fig. 11, Fig. 28, Fig. 87, etc.

19 7 **insignibus**: i.e. *devices* on shields and helmets, — stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.; see Fig. 11. The inference from this report would be that Labienus and his force had been cut to pieces, and Cæsar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

19 8 **ut**, *as.*

19 9 **ne . . . committeret . . . essent**: subject of **erat praeceptum**; § 566 (331. *h*); B. 295. 1.

19 10 **ut . . . fieret**, *in order that the attack might be made on all sides at once:* a purpose clause.

19 11 **monte occupato**, etc., *having seized the height, continued to look out for our men.* Observe how the imperfects **exspectabat** and **abstinebat** describe the situation; see note on **3** 5.

19 12 **multo die**: abl. of time, *late in the day.* — **denique**, *not till:* see Vocab.

20 2 **quod non vidisset**, *what he had not seen;* sc. *id*, object of **renuntiasse**. — **pro viso**, *as if seen;* **viso** is used here as a noun. — **quo**, sc. *eodem*, *at the same interval as usual*, i.e. five or six miles; see **13** 15.

20 3 **milia**: acc. of extent; §425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

20 5 CHAP. 23. **diei**: § 359. *b* (214. *g*); B. 201. 3. *a*; G. 360; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. *c*; making **postridie** more formal and precise. — **omnino**, *in all* (i.e. *only*).

20 6 **cum**, *within which*, a common Latin idiom. — **metiri**: cf. **14** 2 and note. — **Bibracte**, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about ten miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). The place afterwards became a Roman colony, and contains numerous Roman remains.

20 8 **milibus**: cf. **19** 3 and note. — **rei frumentariae** (dat.), *the supply of corn.*

20 9 **prospiciendum**: impers.; sc. *esse.* — *itaque:* words in italics are conjectural readings. — **avertit**: towards the north, as the Helvetii were travelling westward to reach the Loire.

20 10 **fugitivos**, *runaways*, i.e. fugitive slaves.

20 11 **decurionis**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 2.

20 12 **existimarent**: the subjv. is here used idiomatically because Cæsar was not sure of the real reason; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. *a.*

20 13 **eo magis**, *all the more:* cf. note on **2** 17. — **superioribus**, etc.: concessive, i.e. though they had gained an advantageous position, still they did not attack the Helvetii.

20 14 **commisissent**: see note on **existimarent** above, l. 12. — **eo quod**, etc., *for this reason, because they felt sure that they* (the Romans) *could be cut off from their supplies;* **eo** is abl. of cause, not different in sense from **eo** (**magis**) above, though its origin is different. — **re**: abl. of separation.

20 15 **itinere converso**: i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, their vain confidence led them to return and give Cæsar the chance that he had been waiting for.

20 18 CHAP. 24. **id**: governed by **animum advertit** treated as an active compound verb. The tense of the verb is perfect, as usual after **postquam**; cf. note on **arbitrati sunt**, **4** 17.

20 19 **sustineret**: subjv. of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

20 20 **ipse**: Cæsar himself as opposed to the cavalry, which he had sent elsewhere. — **medio**: see Vocab. and cf. § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R.[2]; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.[1]); H-B. 244. — **triplicem aciem**: see chapter on military affairs, VII.

20 21 **legionum**: gen. of material; § 344 (214. *e*); B. 197; H-B. 349. The four veteran legions stood side by side, each in three lines; see plan, Fig. 16.

20 22 **summo**: cf. note on **medio**, l. 20. — **proxime**: these new legions last raised (cf. **8** 23) were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle, and so they were set to guard the camp.

20 23 **auxilia**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 3. — [**ac totum**, etc.]: this clause may well be read in this connection, though many editors omit it; cf. note on **eorum**, **9** 17. The force of **ac** is *and thus;* see Vocab.

20 24 **sarcinas**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 6 and IV. *e*, and Fig. 14. In a regular battle these were left behind in camp. So here, they were deposited in one spot, which was to be the site of the camp when made

(**muniri, 21** 2) by the less trustworthy troops. Nothing is said of the baggage train (*impedimenta*), but it probably was sent on towards Bibracte.

21 1 **eum**: i.e. the spot chosen (**locum, 20** 24). — **his**: i.e. the soldiers last mentioned. — **superiore**: i.e. those who were at the top of the hill. — **constiterant,** *were stationed;* cf. § 476 (279. *e*); B. 262. *a*; G. 241. 3. R.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.



Fig. 116. — Scutum.

21 2 **cum omnibus suis carris**, etc.: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the habit of these peoples to go to battle with their families and their carts for encouragement as well as for defence.

21 3 **confertissima acie . . . phalange facta**: see introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

21 4 **reiecto,** etc.: the ancient cavalry were no match for any considerable number of foot-soldiers, and hence were not depended upon for the main engagement. They opened the fight, but were expected to flee as soon as the foot advanced.

22 1 Chap. 25. **suo** [*equo remoto*], etc.: i.e. his own and those of the officers and staff. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sall. Cat. 59). Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." — **omnium**: notice that the poss. gen. and the poss. adj. have the same sense, and so may be coördinated; cf. **19** 4 and note.

22 4 **pilis**: see chapter on military affairs, IV. *d* and Fig. 15.



Fig. 117. — Scutum.

22 6 **Gallis . . . impedimento**: dat. of service and of person affected; § 382. 1. N.[1] (233. *a*); B. 191. 2. *b*; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and *b*.

22 7 **pluribus,** *several.*

22 8 **inflexisset**: subjv. with **cum** causal; cf. **praestarent, 2** 15. — **sinistra impedita,** *since the left hand was hampered,* which carried the shield.

22 9 **multi ut,** *so that in the case of many,* **multi** being placed first for emphasis.

22 12 **mons**: see battle plan, Fig. 16. — **eo**: an adv. — **mille**: acc. of distance.

22 13 **capto monte,** etc.: i.e. after the Helvetii had gained the mountain and the Romans were going up to attack them.

22 14 **agmen claudebant,** *brought up their rear.* The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetian line of march,

and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (**latere aperto**) as they came on the field from the road (hence **ex itinere**).

22 15 **novissimis praesidio**: cf. **Gallis . . . impedimento,** l. 6.

22 16 **circumvenire**: sc. *coeperunt.*

22 18 **conversa signa . . . intulerunt,** *faced about* (lit. *bore their reversed ensigns upon* the enemy), *and charged in two divisions.* The divisions stood not back to back, but at an angle, facing outward, — the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (*venientis*), i.e. the Boii and Tulingi. The phrase *conversa signa* refers only to the movement of the third line, while *intulerunt* denotes the action of the entire army. The exact position of this battle is uncertain. It is usually placed at a point between Chides and Luzy, near the river Alène, and about ten miles south of Mont Beuvray.

23 1 CHAP. 26. **ancipiti**: i.e. facing in both directions. — **pugnatum est**: impers. expressions should not be translated literally; here, *a contest went on, the fighting continued,* or something of the kind.

23 3 **alteri**: the Helvetians; **alteri**: the Boii, etc.

23 4 **nam**: in reference to the previous sentence; i.e. they did not flee, but retired in good order, *for,* etc.

23 5 **proelio**: abl. of time. — **ab hora septima**: i.e. from a little past 1 P.M.; sunset was about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time. In the Roman reckoning an hour was one-twelfth of the time, whether long or short, between sunrise and sunset, and varied from about forty-five minutes to an hour and a quarter. — **pugnatum sit**: cf. note on l. 1. For mood, cf. **sint, 12** 18.

24 1 **aversum hostem,** *a fleeing enemy.* — **ad multam noctem,** *till late in the night.*

24 2 **pro vallo,** *as a barricade.*

24 3 **e loco superiore,** *from vantage-ground,* i.e. the height of the carts, etc.

24 4 **coniciebant, subiciebant,** *hurled* (from above), *thrust* (from below). For the form of these words, see § 6. *d* (11. *b.* 2); B. 9. 3; H. 58. 6 (36. 4); H-B. 30. 1. — **carros redasque**: the former a two-wheeled cart, the latter a four-wheeled wagon. See Fig. 55.

24 5 **mataras ac tragulas**: these were peculiar forms of pike or lance used by the western nations of Europe, not yet certainly identified.

24 6 **impedimentis castrisque**: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

24 7 **potiti sunt**: notice the use of tenses in the above passage. The *narrative* proceeds as far as **pugnatum est** (histor. perfect), then, as if

answering a question why the fight continued thus, Cæsar gives a *description* of the situation with pluperfect and imperfects. "The Gauls *had made* a rampart of their carts and from this they *kept discharging* missiles and using other means of defence." Then the *narrative* is resumed in the clause with **potiti sunt**: cf. note on **3** 5. — **captus est**: observe that the agreement is with the nearer subject; § 317. *c* (205. *d*); B. 255. 2; G. 285. 1; H. 392 (463. 1); H-B. 329. 2.

24 10 **Lingonum**: i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north; see map of Gaul, Fig. 2. The chief town of that region, now Langres, is about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray. It is very likely, however, that they reached the Lingones farther west. Napoleon III puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24 11 **propter**, etc.: gives the reason of **morati**. — **cum . . . potuissent**: here the description of the situation (see notes on **6** 14, **7** 17, **11** 7) is so clearly the cause of the main action that we may translate **cum** *since* and refer the subjv. to *cum* causal (cf. **cum praestarent, 2** 15; **cum inflexisset, 22** 8).

24 13 **Lingonas**: Greek form of the acc. common in these names of tribes; § 81, 82 (63. *f*, 64); B. 47. 3; G. 66. 4; H. 109. 5 (68); cf. H-B. 95.

24 14 **qui si iuvissent**, *for if they should*, etc.; the direct would be *si iuveritis*. — **se**, etc. = *se* (*Lingonas*) *eodem loco habiturum* (*esse*) *quo Helvetios* (*haberet*).

24 20 Chap. 27. **eos**: i.e. *Helvetios*.

24 21 **essent**: subjv. of integral part or attraction; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. — **iussisset**: i.e. Cæsar; this change of subject, though unusual in Latin, is justified by the mention of **eum** in l. 18.

24 22 **qui . . . perfugissent**: i.e. fugitive slaves. Cæsar in his demand would say *qui perfugerunt*, but the subjv. is used in the indir. form; § 592. 2 (341. *c*); B. 323; G. 663. 2; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *a*.

24 24 **conquiruntur, conferuntur**: to express the pass. it is often better in English to use the act. form, *while they were hunting these up*, etc.; the present tense is regular with **dum**; § 556 (276. *e*); B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. 4); H-B. 559.

24 25 **Verbigenus**: from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

24 26 **perterriti**: agreeing with the persons referred to in **milia**. — **ne armis**, etc.: i.e. either in sheer desperation or in the hope of escape. Note that after verbs of fearing **ne** is translated by *that* or *lest*.

25 2 **occultari**, *be hid* from Cæsar; **ignorari**, *unknown* to anybody.

25 3 **existimarent**: the supposed reason of the Helvetii, hence the subjv.; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. *a*; cf. **20** 12 and note.

25 4 **contenderunt ad**, *made* (rapidly) *for*.

25 5 Chap. 28. **quod**: accustom yourself to the common use of the relative, where our idiom expects a demonstrative or personal. — **quorum**: the antecedent is **his** (dat.) following **imperavit**, the dir. object of which is **uti . . . reducerent**.

25 6 **sibi**: dat. of reference; § 378 (235. *b*); B. 188. I. N.; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N.[3]); H-B. 370. — **purgati**: perfect participle used as an adj.; § 495 (291. *b*); B. 337. 2; G. 250. R.[2]; H. 640. 3 (550. N.[2]); H-B. 320. iii.

25 7 **reductos . . . habuit**: i.e. he massacred them all.

25 8 **in deditionem accepit**: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

25 11 **reverti**, *turn back* (from a march or journey; *redire, go back*, from a place of rest). — **frugibus**: grain and other field produce.

25 12 **tolerarent**: best regarded as a purpose clause like, "nothing [for] to eat," — § 531. 2 (317), — but referred by many grammarians to the "characteristic" use of the relative; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 517. 2 and *a*. The two constructions, having grown up side by side in Latin, were very often confounded.

25 13 **ipsos**: the Helvetians and their allies as opposed to the others who were to provide food.

25 14 **ea ratione**, *with this view*.

25 18 **Allobrogibus**: these were within the Province, but the Latin often adds an explanatory word by means of *que*. The Helvetii were thus in the Roman manner stationed as a kind of colony on the frontier towards Germany. The wisdom of the Romans in the defence of their Empire is not less remarkable than their prowess in war.

25 19 **petentibus Haeduis**, *to the Hædui, at their request:* dat. after **concessit**, of which the object is **ut Boios conlocarent**. The Hædui were anxious for this accession to their strength because they were oppressed by the Sequani (cf. **27** 21 ff.). It will be remembered that the Boii were emigrating when they joined the Helvetians and had no proper home to return to. The Hædui gave them land between the Elaver and the Liger rivers, and they appear later in several parts of Gaul. Their prowess in war made them valuable allies.

26 1 **parem . . . atque ipsi erant**, *equal with themselves:* § 324. *c* (156. *a*. 4); B. 341. I. *c*; G. 643; H. 508. 5 (451. 5); H-B. 307. 2. *a*.

26 3 Chap. 29. **tabulae**, *tablets*, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called *stilus*. See Fig. 27. — **litteris Graecis**: not in the Greek *language*, but in Greek *letters*. These were probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the

Gauls had no alphabet of their own. The Druids made use of Greek letters (Bk. vi. ch. 14), but the Gauls in general seem to have been ignorant of them (Bk. v. ch. 48). Specimens of Gallic names on coins appear in the names DUBNOREX, ΔIVICIACOS, VERCINGETORIXS. See Fig. 29, Fig. 82.

26 5 **ratio,** *an account:* followed by the indir. quest. **qui . . . exisset.**

26 6 **possent:** not the subjv. of indir. quest., but of characteristic; § 535. *a* (320. *a*); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 521. 1. *a*.

26 10 **ad milia XCII,** *about* 92,000. — **summa,** *the sum;* **fuerunt** agreeing with the plur. predicate. Deducting the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (to be sold as slaves), in this short campaign, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other non-combatants. The carnage seems extraordinary even under the conditions of ancient warfare. But, as in all battles, many more must have escaped than the record showed.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Hædui (ch. 11); and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (ch. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.

Abbott's Cæsar, pp. 86–93.
Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 82–99.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 9.
Froude's Cæsar, pp. 231–238.
Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I. pp. 51–53.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 36–46.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 254–262.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 295–300.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 4.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 38–44.

26 15 CHAP. 30. **gratulatum**: § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

26 16 **intellegere**, etc.: Direct,—

Intellegimus nos, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello *repetisti* (*repetieris*), tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod ea consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii *reliquerunt*, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum . . . iudicassent, reliquasque civitatis stipendiarias haberent.

26 17 **populi Romani**, *against*, etc. (obj. gen. after **iniuriis**).—**ab his repetisset**, *had inflicted on them;* see Vocab., and cf. **10** 14–18.

26 19 **eo consilio**, *with this design:* explained by the purpose clause **uti . . . haberent**; § 531. 1. N.[1] (317. *a*); G. 546. N.[2]; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. *a*.—**florentissimis rebus**: i.e. with no plea of necessity. Translate by a concessive clause.

26 21 **domicilio**, *for habitation:* dat. of service.

26 25 **concilium totius Galliae**: of course Cæsar had no authority either to allow or to prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, the Gauls thought it best to secure his countenance (**voluntate**, not *auctoritate*) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him.

27 2 **iure iurando . . . sanxerunt**, *ordained under oath* [of secrecy]; the object is **ne quis**, etc.

27 3 **enuntiaret**: subjv. with **ne**, after **sanxerunt**, used as a verb of commanding; § 563. *d* (331. *d*); B. 295. 4; G. 546. 2; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 502. 3. *a*; cf. also **6** 10 and note.—**nisi quibus**, etc., *except* (to those) *to whom some commission should be assigned* (pluperf. for fut. perf. in dir. disc.). For omission of the antecedent of **quibus**, cf. note on **qui . . . appellantur, 1** 2.

27 5 CHAP. 31. **eo concilio dimisso**, *when this assembly had been* (held and) *dissolved:* i.e. after providing for the business now to be described. —**idem** (*eidem*): nom. plur.

27 7 **secreto**, *apart.*—**in occulto**, *in a secret place.* These words are probably genuine.

27 8 **Caesari ad pedes**, *at Cæsar's feet.* **Caesari** is dat. of reference; § 377 (235. *a*); B. 188. 1; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4. N. (384. 4. N.[2]); H-B. 368.

27 9 **non minus**, etc.: sc. *dixerunt:* Direct,—

Non minus id *contendimus* et *laboramus*, ne ea quae *dixerimus enuntientur*, quam uti ea quae *volumus impetremus;* propterea quod, si enuntiatum *erit*, summum in cruciatum *nos* venturos *videmus*.

27 9 **id**: in app. with **ne . . . enuntiarentur**.

27 13 **Galliae**, etc.: Direct, —

Galliae totius factiones *sunt duae;* harum alterius principatum *tenent Haedui*, alterius *Arverni*. Hi cum . . . multos annos contenderent, factum *est* uti . . . Germani . . . arcesserentur. Horum primo . . . milia . . . *transierunt;* posteaquam agros . . . homines . . . *adamarunt*, *traducti sunt plures;* nunc *sunt* in Gallia ad CXX milium numerum (more probably *ad . . . milia numero*). Cum his *Haedui* . . . armis *contenderunt;* magnam calamitatem *pulsi acceperunt*, omnem nobilitatem . . . *amiserunt*. Quibus proeliis . . . *fracti*, qui . . . plurimum ante . . . *potuerant*, *coacti sunt* . . . obsides dare, etc. *Unus ego sum* ex omni civitate . . . qui adduci non *potuerim* ut *iurarem* aut liberos *meos* obsides *darem*. Ob eam rem . . . *profugi* et Romam ad senatum *veni* . . . quod solus neque iure iurando neque obsidibus *tenebar*.

Sed peius victoribus Sequanis *accidit*, . . . quod Ariovistus . . . *consedit* tertiamque partem agri . . . qui *est* optimus . . . *occupavit*, et nunc . . . decedere *iubet*, propterea quod . . . milia hominum XXIIII . . . *venerunt*, quibus locus ac sedes *parentur* (possibly *pararentur*). . . . Paucis annis . . . omnes . . . *pellentur* atque omnes Germani Rhenum *transibunt;* . . . neque enim *conferendus est Gallicus* cum Germanorum agro, neque *haec consuetudo* victus cum illa *comparanda*.

Ariovistus . . . ut semel . . . copias . . . *vicit*, quod proelium factum *est* ad Magetobrigam, superbe . . . *imperat*, obsides . . . *poscit*, et . . . exempla cruciatusque *edit*, si qua res non ad nutum . . . eius facta *est*. *Homo est barbarus*, *iracundus*, *temerarius ;* non *possunt* eius imperia diutius sustineri.

Nisi quid in Caesare . . . *erit* auxili, omnibus . . . idem *est* faciendum quod Helvetii *fecerunt*, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium . . . petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non *dubito* quin de omnibus . . . qui apud eum sint (*sunt*) . . . supplicium sumat. *Caesar* . . . deterrere *potest* ne maior multitudo . . . traducatur Galliamque . . . *potest* defendere.

27 13 **Galliae totius**: not to be taken literally, but referring to the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

27 14 **factiones duas**: see note on **3** 20. — **alterius**: notice that this word may mean *the one* as well as *the other*. It depends on which one you look at first. — **principatum**, *the head*.

27 15 **Arvernos**: these inhabited the mountainous country southwest of the Hædui, the modern Auvergne. They had been conquered in B.C. 121, but not reduced to a province. Before their conquest they had been one of the most powerful tribes. Apparently in the earlier wars the Hædui had befriended the Roman people from antagonism to these rivals.

27 16 **contenderent**: translate as if pluperf; § 471. *b* (277. *b*); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485. — **factum esse uti,** *it came to pass that*, etc.

27 17 **Sequanis**: these were the rivals of the Hædui on the north. — **mercede**: § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1.

27 19 **copias** (= *opes*), *resources.* — **feri ac barbari**: as to the condition of the Germans, see Introduction.

27 20 **adamassent** (= *adamavissent*): § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. — **traductos pluris** = *pluris* (*Germanos*) *traductos* (*esse*).

27 22 **clientis**: the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, etc.

27 23 **omnem . . . equitatum**: of course an exaggeration; Diviciacus was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother Dumnorix was a commander of the Hæduan cavalry.

27 25 **qui . . . potuissent, coactos esse,** (they) *who had once*, etc., *were compelled.*

28 4 **quo minus**: following a verb of refusing; § 558. *b* (317. *b.* N.[1]); B. 295. 3; G. 547; H. 568. 8 (497. ii. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *b*; see also note on **7** 15.

28 5 **dicione**: i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

28 6 **potuerit**: the same in dir. disc.; § 535. *b* (320. *b*); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. *a* and ftn. The tense has been retained, as is usual in result clauses; see note on **9** 18.

28 8 **Romam . . . venisse**: see note on **3** 20. His application was not successful. See Bk. vi. ch. 12. — **postulatum**: cf. **gratulatum, 26** 15.

28 11 **peius . . . accidisse,** *a worse fate had befallen.* Observe that a misfortune is usually said *accidere*, as if it fell on one, while a good thing is said *evenire.* — **victoribus**: here used as an adj., as often.

28 12 **Ariovistus**: supposed to be the German word *Heerfürst*, "prince of the host."

28 13 **tertiam partem**: i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory in the fifth century of the Christian era. Such "annexation" seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. II. 41).

28 14 **optimus**: this district (Franche-Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France. — **nunc . . . iuberet**: the same thing was afterwards done by the Burgundians. — **altera,** *a second.*

28 17 **quibus . . . pararentur** = *to be provided with a place for habitation* (subjv. of purpose). — **futurum esse uti** (periphrastic fut.; cf. note on **18** 1), *the result would be that.*

28 19 **neque enim** introduces an explanation admitting no doubt: *for you see, for you know, for of course.*

28 20 **Gallicum**: sc. *agrum.* — **hanc** = *nostram*: § 297. *a* (102. *a*); B. 87; G. 305; H. 505 (450); H-B. 271. ii. *a.* N.; said with some feeling of superiority or contempt. The Gauls looked upon the Germans as savages.

28 22 **ut . . . vicerit**: for mood and tense, see dir. disc.; cf. tense of **potuerit,** l. 6, above.

28 23 **Magetobrigam**: somewhere a little northwest of Vesontio (Besançon).

28 25 **exempla cruciatusque**: a so-called hendiadys. The Latin likes to dwell on an idea by giving its parts separately; **edere exempla** means to use every known form of (something) on the victims; **cruciatus edere** would mean to employ tortures. The whole combines the two ideas.

28 27 **barbarum,** etc., *rude, passionate, and hasty.*

29 1 **nisi,** etc., *unless they find some aid.*

29 2 **idem**: in apposition with **ut . . . experiantur**; cf. **4** 17, **11** 8.

29 3 **ut domo emigrent**: i.e. *to forsake their home.*

29 5 **haec**: notice the emphasis, as if he said: "Why! if this very colloquy should be reported," etc. — **dubitare**: sc. *se,* i.e. *Diviciacum.* — **quin . . . sumat**: § 558. *a* (332. *g.* R.); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 594. ii (501. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 2. *b*; cf. note on **poenas persolvit, 10** 19.

29 7 **auctoritate**: i.e. his reputation and the fear it inspires.

29 9 **Rhenum**: acc. after *trans* in **traducatur**; § 395. N.[2] (239. 2. *b.* N.[2]; B. 179. 3; G. 331. R.[1]; H. 406 (372); H-B. 386. *a.*

29 13 CHAP. 32. **unos,** *alone:* § 134. *a* (94. *a*); cf. B. 66; G. 95. R.[1]; H. 175. N.[1]. This whole scene is illustrative of the Gallic character.

29 15 **quae esset**: indir. quest. after **miratus**; cf. **13** 5, **15** 16, **18** 15.

29 16 **respondere**: histor. infin.; cf. **flagitare, 13** 18 and note.

29 19 **hoc**: we may translate, *in this respect,* but for the real construction compare **hoc facilius, 2** 17. — **hoc esse,** etc.: Direct, —

Hoc *est* . . . *gravior fortuna* Sequanorum . . . quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri . . . *audent;* absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram *adsit, horrent,* propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas *datur,* Sequanis vero, qui . . . Ariovistum *receperunt,* quorum oppida . . . in potestate eius *sunt,* omnes cruciatus *sunt* perferendi.

29 20 **ne . . . quidem**: notice the position of these words before and after the emphatic word or phrase.

29 21 **absentis** (predicate), *even when absent.*

29 22 **crudelitatem**: object of **horrerent**; § 274. *b.* (177. *c*); B. 175. 2. *b*; G. 330. R.; H. 405. 1 (371. iii. N.[1]); H-B. 391. 1. — **adesset**: § 524 (312); B. 307. 1. 2; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and *a.*

29 23 **tamen,** *after all,* whatever they might have to suffer. — **facultas**: on the force of this word, cf. note on **potentiae, 16** 7.

29 24 **Sequanis**: dat. of apparent agent with **perferendi**; § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1; *the Sequani must endure* (changing the voice).

30 2 CHAP. 33. **sibi curae**: dat. of service; § 382. 1 and N.[1] (233. *a*); B. 191. 2. *a*; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and *b*; cf. **22** 6, **22** 15.

30 3 **et . . . et**: construe after **adductum,** *induced by both . . . and.* — **beneficio . . . auctoritate**: the first refers to services which would inspire gratitude, the second to the prestige which would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

30 5 **secundum,** *in accordance with* (lit. *following*).

30 7 **putaret**: subjv. after **qua re,** which may be considered equal to *propter quas = ut propter eas.* — **quod,** *because,* or *that.* — **Haeduos,** subject of **teneri** below.

30 8 **appellatos** (pred.), *who had been often called.*

30 11 **quod**: relative; the antecedent is the preceding clause **Haeduos . . . Sequanos**.

30 14 **periculosum**: pred., agreeing with **Germanos consuescere,** etc., *he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine,* etc.

30 15 **sibi . . . temperaturos . . . quin . . . exirent,** *would refrain* (check themselves) *from going forth.* — **sibi**: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346. 2; H. 426. 4 (385. i); H-B. 362.

30 16 **ut,** *as;* **fecissent** being subjv. as dependent on **exirent**; § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.[1]. 1); H-B. 539. — **Cimbri Teutonique**: these German tribes had been crushed by Marius (B.C. 102, 101), after having been for several years a terror upon the Italian frontier.

30 17 **exirent**: § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); H-B. 502. 3. *b*.

30 18 **[praesertim,** etc.**]**: this clause makes good sense and may be translated.

30 19 **Rhodanus** = *only the Rhone.* — **rebus**: dat. following **occurrendum** [*sibi*]; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376; *possibilities which he thought must be met at once.* In this clause two things are to be noticed: first, that the Latin regularly puts an antecedent which is in apposition with something preceding in the relative clause, e.g. "which kind," not "a kind which"; and, second, that a verb which governs the dat. cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subject. In both these respects the form must be altered in translating to suit the English idiom.

30 21 **ferendus**, etc.: in Latin the negative has an attraction for the main verb. We should say, "seemed unendurable," connecting the negative with the adjective idea.

30 23 CHAP. 34. **ut . . . mitteret**: a purpose clause, subject of **placuit**.

30 24 **medium utriusque**, *between the two*.

30 25 **conloquio** (dat.), *for a conference*. — **velle**, etc., depends on the idea of saying in **postularent**. Give the direct words of Cæsar.

30 27 **si quid**, etc.: Direct, —

Si quid *mihi* a Caesare opus esset, *ego* ad eum *venissem;* si quid ille *me vult*, illum ad *me* venire *oportet*. [The first condition is contrary to fact; § 589. *b* (337. *b*); B. 321. B; G. 597. R.[4]; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581 and *b*. 1; cf. **12** 4: the second is a simple present condition; § 589. *a*. 1 (337. *a*. 1); B. 319. B; G. 595. R.[1]; H. 646 (527. i); cf. H-B. 536.] Praeterea *ego* neque . . . in eas partis . . . venire *audeo* quas Caesar *possidet*, neque exercitum . . . in unum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mirum *videtur* quid in *mea* Gallia, quam bello *vici* (*vicerim*), aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negoti *sit*.

30 27 **opus**: § 411. *b* (243. *e*. R.); B. 218. 2. *a*; G. 406; H. 477. iii. N. (414. iv. N.[4]); H-B. 430. 2. *a*. — **ipsi**: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. Observe in this sentence that the reflexives **ipse** and **se** refer to Ariovistus; § 298. *e* (195. *k*); B. 249. 3; G. 521. N.[3]; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 1; and that the demonstratives **is** and **ille** refer to Cæsar; cf. also note on **3** 26.

31 1 **quid . . . se velit**, *wants anything of him* (lit. *wants him for anything*): a colloquial construction; § 390. *d* (238. *b*); B. 176. 2; G. 333. R.[2]; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 397. 1.

31 5 **mirum . . . quid . . . esset**: a sort of indir. quest.; *it seemed strange to him*, i.e. he wondered, *what business*, etc. — **in sua Gallia**, *in* HIS (part of) *Gaul*. Notice the emphasis of **sua**.

31 7 **negoti**: part. gen. with **quid**; § 346. *a*. 3 (216. *a*. 3); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

31 9 CHAP. 35. **quoniam**, etc.: Direct, —

Quoniam tanto *meo* populique Romani beneficio adfectus, cum in consulatu *meo* rex . . . appellatus *sit*, hanc *mihi* . . . gratiam *refert*, ut in conloquium venire . . . *gravetur* neque de communi re dicendum sibi . . . *putet*, haec *sunt* quae ab eo *postulo:* primum, ne quam multitudinem . . . in Galliam *traducat;* deinde obsides quos *habet* ab Haeduis *reddat*, Sequanisque *permittat* ut quos illi *habent* (*habeant*) voluntate eius reddere . . . *liceat;* neve Haeduos . . . *lacessat*, neve his . . . bellum *inferat*. Si id ita *fecerit*, *mihi* . . . *perpetua gratia* . . . cum eo *erit;* si non *impetrabo*, *ego*, — quoniam

... senatus *censuit* uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret ... Haeduos ... defenderet, — (*ego*) Haeduorum iniurias non *neglegam.*

31 9 **tanto ... adfectus**: see introductory note to this campaign, p. 287.

31 10 **beneficio** is explained by **cum ... esset**, and **gratiam referret** by **ut ... putaret**; the first **sibi** refers to Cæsar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the causal clause is **quoniam ... putaret**, and the leading verb is **esse**: *Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such an* (ill) *return* (**hanc gratiam referret**) *as to grudge coming to a conference when invited, and did not consider that he ought to speak or hear about their common business*, (therefore) *these were the demands he made* (the things he required) *of him*, etc. Observe that in Latin the significant word, the *verb* (**postularet**), becomes in English the *noun* (*demands*).

31 15 **ne quam,** *not any.*

31 18 **eius**: Ariovistus; **illis**: the Sequani.

31 21 **si non impetraret**: i.e. this pledge or assurance.

31 22 **M. Messala,** etc.: cf. note on **2** 12. This was in B.C. 61.

31 24 **obtineret,** *should hold* (as governor), not *obtain.* Avoid the kindred word in translation. Words are liable to change their meanings in 2000 years. See note on **obtinere, 2** 1. For construction, cf. note on **6** 10. — **quod,** *so far as.* — **commodo** (abl. of specification) **rei publicae,** *to the advantage of the state.*

31 25 **defenderet**: see the reasons in the note on the campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287. — **se**: a repetition of **sese** above on account of the long parenthesis.

31 27 CHAP. 36. **ius esse,** etc.: Direct, —

Ius *est* belli ut qui *vicerunt* eis quos *vicerunt* quem ad modum *velint imperent;* item *populus Romanus* victis non ad alterius praescriptum ... imperare *consuevit.* Si *ego* populo Romano non *praescribo* quem ad modum suo iure *utatur*, non *oportet me* ... in *meo* iure impediri. *Haedui mihi,* quoniam belli fortunam *temptaverunt* et ... superati *sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti.* Magnam *Caesar* iniuriam *facit* qui suo adventu vectigalia *mihi* deteriora *faciat.* Haeduis (*ego*) obsides non *reddam*, neque his ... bellum *inferam*, si in eo *manebunt* quod *convenit* stipendiumque ... *pendent;* si id non *fecerint*, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani *aberit.* Quod *mihi* Caesar *denuntiat* se Haeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, *nemo mecum* sine sua pernicie *contendit.* Cum *volet, congrediatur; intelleget* quid invicti Germani ... qui inter annos XIV tectum non *subierunt* (*subierint*), virtute *possint.*

32 1 **eis**: governed by **imperarent.** The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses: § 482, 485 (285, 287. *d*); B. 267; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 476, 482. 1.

32 2 **victis**: governed by **imperare**. — **alterius**, *any one else's*.

32 5 **suo**: i.e. the Roman people. — **uteretur**: subjv. in an indir. quest.

32 6 **suo**: i.e. Ariovistus. — **sibi . . . stipendiarios**, *tributary to him*.

32 8 **qui faceret**, *in making:* subjv. also in dir. disc.; § 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 598 (517); H-B. 523.

32 10 **non . . . neque**, (on the one hand) *he would not restore*, etc., *but* (on the other) *he would not wrongfully*, etc.

32 11 **iniuria**, abl. of manner, § 412. *b* (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399. N.[1]; H. 473. 3 (419. iii. N.[2]); H-B. 445. 1.

32 13 **longe . . . afuturum**, *the name of brothers would be a great way off from them*, i.e. too far to help them.

32 14 **quod**, etc.: the whole clause is construed as an adv. acc.: *as to Cæsar's threat*, etc.; cf. note on **16** 18, and § 572. *a* (333. *a*); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. iii. N. (516. ii. 2. N.); H-B. 552. 2.

32 15 **secum, sua**: observe that these refer, one to Ariovistus, the other to his antagonist; § 300 (196. *a*); B. 244; G. 520; H. 504. 2 (449. 6); H-B. 262.

32 16 **cum vellet, congrederetur**, *he might come on when he would.*

32 17 **inter** refers to something coming between two extremes. Hence, when applied to time, it means the entire interval between the beginning and the end of a given period, and may be rendered *during*.

32 19 CHAP. 37. **eodem tempore**, etc.: in Latin the two actions are made coördinate, but in English we should be more likely to make one subordinate, *at the same time that*, etc.

32 20 **Treveris**: from the region of Treves in the valley of the Moselle. — **questum**: supine (after **veniebant**, supplied from the one preceding); see **26** 15, **28** 8, and notes.

32 21 **qui . . . essent**: § 592. 3 (341. *d*); B. 323; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. *a*. The following passage is a good example of what is called informal indir. disc. The formal indir. disc. introduced by a verb of saying has the main clause in the infin. and dependent clauses in the subjv. But often the verb of saying and the thing said are expressed together in some one word or phrase, as here **questum**. In such cases the dependent clauses have the subjv. just as in formal indir. disc.; cf. **13** 17, **15** 2, **16** 24 for similar examples.

32 22 **ne . . . quidem**: cf. note on **29** 20.

32 24 **pagos** (see note on **10** 12): these divisions were those known as *hundreds*, meaning not only the people but the district they occupied. — **Suevorum**: this is a general name, embracing a number of tribes that lived in the interior of Germany. Their habits and customs are described in the opening chapters of Book iv.

32 27 **maturandum sibi** (sc. *esse*): impers.; § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 138. iv; G. 208. 2; H. 518. 1 (465. 1); H-B. 600. 3. *a*; cf. **exspectandum, 9** 24 and note.

32 29 **minus facile,** *not very easily:* i.e. it would be *impossible;* but this is avoided as a word of ill omen. — **resisti**: impers.; § 372 (230); B. 187. ii. *b*; G. 217; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2; cf. note on **rebus, 30** 19.

33 1 **magnis itineribus**: see chapter on military affairs, VI.

33 2 **contendit**: the place from which Cæsar started is uncertain. After the destruction of the Helvetian force he appears in the country of the Lingones, sixty to eighty miles north of Bibracte. In that vicinity he held a council of the Gallic chiefs (ch. 30), but whether he remained there is not stated. He probably came towards the north in the direction of Langres.

33 3 CHAP. 38. **tridui**: gen. of measure. — **viam**: § 390 (238); B. 176. 4. *a*; G. 333. 2; H. 409. 2 (371. ii. N.); H-B. 396. 1.

33 4 **occupandum**: gerundive agreeing with **Vesontionem**. — **Vesontionem**: the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E.N.E. of the former battle ground. There are many Roman remains here.

33 5 **quod** relates to **Vesontionem**, but agrees in gender with **oppidum**: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. *b*; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

33 6 **finibus**: the country which he had taken from the Sequani (Upper Alsace). — **processisse,** *had advanced.* The bracketed words are probably authentic, and at any rate may be translated. — **ne,** following **praecavendum**: § 558. *b* (331. *e*. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 3. *b*.

33 10 **ducendum**: cf. **occupandum** above, and note.

33 11 **Dubis**: the modern Doubs. This name is said to mean "black river." — **ut,** *as it were.*

33 12 **spatium**: object of **continet**.

33 13 **pedum**: pred. gen. after **est**; for construction with **amplius,** see § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.[4]; H. 471. 4 (417. N.[2]); H-B. 416. *d*. — **sexcentorum**: the real distance is about 1600 feet, but in other respects the present site exactly corresponds to Cæsar's words. See view, Fig. 18. — **qua,** *where.*

33 14 **altitudine**: abl. of quality or description. — **radices**: object, and **ripae,** subject of **contingant**.

33 15 **hunc** [*montem*], etc., *this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.*

33 17 **oppido**: the town must be regarded as having occupied the lower ground towards the bend in the river.

33 20 CHAP. 39. **moratur**: cf. **24** 24 and note.—**percontatione,** *questions.*—**nostrorum**: i.e. the soldiers who inquired in regard to the enemy.

33 21 **vocibus,** *talk.*—**Gallorum**: these, it would seem, volunteered reports. The whole indicates a great deal of talk on the subject, and to this Cæsar attributes the panic.—**mercatorum**: see note on **1** 8.—**magnitudine**: cf. **altitudine,** l. 14. Roman writers frequently speak of the huge size of the barbarians of the north as compared with themselves.

33 24 **congressos,** *having met them.*

33 27 **hic**: i.e. **timor.**

34 1 **reliquis**: i.e. aids or *attachés* (*contubernales, comites*), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. These were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

34 2 **quorum . . . inlata,** *these on various pretexts:* § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 279. 3.

34 3 **quam . . . diceret,** *which, they said:* § 592. 3. N. (341. *d.* R.); B. 323; G. 626. R.; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. *a.* N.[3]. See also note on **qui . . . essent, 32** 21. The verb is singular in Latin on account of **alius.**

34 6 **voltum fingere,** *put on a brave face* (**voltum** refers to the *expression* of the face).

34 7 **tabernaculis**: see Fig. 128.

34 9 **totis castris**: § 429. 2 (258. *f.* 2); B. 228. 1. *b*; G. 388; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. *a.*—**testamenta obsignabantur**: indicating utter despair.

34 11 **in castris,** *in service.*

34 15 **rem frumentariam . . . timere,** *feared* (for) *the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in:* § 564 (331. *f*); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4. Observe the force of **ut** after **vereri.**

34 17 **nuntiabant**: what did they say in dir. disc.?—**cum . . . iussisset,** for *cum iusseris* (fut. perf.) of dir. disc.—**castra moveri,** *to break camp;* the regular expression.

34 19 **signa laturos**: i.e. advance. This is the technical term, as the standards were planted in the ground during a halt.

34 20 CHAP. 40. **omnium ordinum,** *of all ranks.* Was this usual? See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

34 22 **quam . . . ducerentur**: indir. quest.; cf. **10** 3.

34 23 **sibi quaerendum,** etc., *that they had a right to inquire* (lit. *it ought to be inquired*) *or consider* (lit. *it ought to be thought*).

34 24 **putarent**: see note on **32** 21.—**Ariovistum,** etc.: Direct,—

Ariovistus me consule . . . populi Romani amicitiam *adpetiit;* cur hunc . . . quisquam ab officio discessurum *iudicet? Mihi* quidem *persuadetur*, cognitis *meis* postulatis . . . eum neque *meam* neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore . . . impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereamini?* aut cur de *vestra* virtute aut de *mea* diligentia *desperetis?* Factum (*est*) eius hostis periculum . . .; factum (*est*) etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nobis *acceperant sublevabant.* Ex quo iudicari *potest* quantum *habeat* in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos . . . inermis sine causa *timuistis* (*timueritis*), hos postea armatos *superavistis.*

Denique *hi sunt idem Germani* quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque *superaverunt;* qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non *potuerunt.* Si quos adversum proelium . . . *commovet, hi*, si *quaerent* (*quaerant*), reperire *possunt* . . . Ariovistum . . . dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione . . . quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros . . . locus *fuit*, hac ne *ipse* quidem *sperat* nostros exercitus capi posse.

Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem . . . *conferunt, faciunt* adroganter, cum . . . de officio imperatoris desperare . . . *videantur* (*videntur*). Haec *mihi sunt* curae; frumentum *Sequani*, . . . *subministrant*, iamque *sunt* . . . frumenta matura; de itinere (*vos*) *ipsi* . . . *iudicabitis.*

Quod non fore dicto audientes . . . *dicimini* (more probably *dicuntur milites*), nihil (*ego*) ea re *commoveor; scio* enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, . . . avaritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia* perpetua vita, *felicitas* . . . bello *est perspecta.*

Itaque (*ego*) quod . . . conlaturus *fui repraesentabo*, et . . . castra *movebo*, ut . . . intellegere *possim* utrum apud *vos* pudor . . . an timor plus *valeat.* Quod si praeterea nemo *sequetur*, tamen (*ego*) cum sola decima legione *ibo*, de qua non *dubito*, *mihique ea praetoria cohors erit.*

This speech, one of the most remarkable, if not of the most famous, of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. His whole fortunes may be said to have depended on this campaign, at the outset of which he is confronted with a mutiny. By this skilfully contrived address, in which he glosses over the difficulties of the undertaking, which he must have known well, he contrives to inspire in his soldiers the Roman spirit, which was invincible whenever it was really roused. Cæsar's marvellous conquest of Gaul depended quite as much on the devotion of his soldiers as on his unequalled ability as a general.

34 25 **cur quisquam iudicaret,** *why should any one think?* For the form of question, see § 586 (338); B. 315. 3; G. 651. R.²; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. N.); cf. H-B. 513. 1 (dir., *iudicet*, dubit. subjv.). For the use of

quisquam, implying a negative, see § 311 (105. *h*); B. 252. 4; G. 317; H. 513 (457); H-B. 276. 7.

34 26 **sibi persuaderi**: see note on **30** 19; the subject of **persuaderi** is **eum . . . repudiaturum.**

35 1 **quod . . . si intulisset,** *but if he should*, etc.

35 2 **quid tandem,** etc., *what, pray, should they be afraid of?*

35 3 **sua,** *their* OWN; **ipsius,** *his; ipse*, used in this way to avoid the repetition of *sua*, is an *indirect reflexive ;* § 300. *b* (196. *a*. 2. N.); B. 249. 3; G. 660. 5; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 2.

35 4 **periculum** (root in *experior*), *a trial.* — **Cimbris,** etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories. — **cum . . . videbatur**: although this clause was a part of Cæsar's speech to his officers, yet the indic. is used to emphasize to the reader the *reality* of the fact it asserts; § 583. *a* (336. *d*); B. 314. 3; H. 652. 1 (529. N.[1,2]); H-B. 535. 1. *d.*

35 6 **meritus**: sc. *esse.*

35 7 **servili tumultu** (abl. of time): the insurrection of the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73–71. These consisted, in part, at any rate, of Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called *tumultus.* — **quos** (referring to *servos* implied in **servili**) . . . **sublevarent** (change to pass. in translation, so as to keep the emphasis), *who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline which they had got from us.* — **aliquid**: adv. acc.

35 9 **quantum . . . boni,** etc., *how much advantage firmness has:* § 289. *a* (189. *a*); B. 237. 2. *a*; G. 204. N.[2]; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 249. 1; for the tense of **haberet,** see § 485. *d* (287. *d*); H. 549 (495. v); H-B. 482. 1.

35 10 **quos . . . hos**: notice the antecedent following the relative. — **inermis**: i.e. the slaves of Spartacus's force.

35 12 **hos esse**: the Germans with Ariovistus. — **quibuscum . . . congressi,** etc. (changing the relative clause), *whom the Helvetii had often met and beaten not only on their own ground, but even*, etc.

35 14 **qui**: i.e. the Helvetii. — **tamen**: i.e. though they were strong enough to beat the Germans, *after all*, etc.

35 15 **potuerint**: § 485. *c*. N.[1] (287. *c*. R.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi and ftn.[2]); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also **9** 18 and **28** 6. — **adversum proelium**: see **27** 21 ff. — **si quos . . . commoveret,** *if any were alarmed by* (lit., *if the disastrous battle disturbed any*).

35 17 **Ariovistum**: subject of **vicisse.**

35 18 **neque . . . fecisset,** *and had given them no chance at him.*

36 2 **adortum** agrees with **Ariovistum** and governs **desperantis,** with which a pronoun (*eos*) must be supplied in English. This may always be omitted in Latin if any word appears to show its case.

36 3 **cui rationi . . . hac** = *hac rationi cui:* the noun being attracted to the relative clause; *by this stratagem, for which there had been room against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in;* § 307. *b* (200. *b*); B. 251. 4. *a*; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6; cf. note on **30** 19.

36 6 **qui . . . conferrent,** (those) *who laid their own cowardice to the pretended difficulty about provisions,* etc.

36 8 **desperare,** etc., *to be discouraged about the commander's doing his duty.* Such words as *officium* have a wider range of meaning in Latin than similar words in English, as *duty, a duty, sense of duty, discharge of duty.* — **praescribere**: sc. *officium;* i.e. that they were dictating to him *what his duty was.*

36 9 **sibi . . . curae**: cf. **22** 6, **22** 15.

36 10 **subministrare,** *were* (now) *furnishing.* — **esse,** *were beginning to be.* — **frumenta,** *crops;* note the plur. and cf. with meaning of the sing.

36 12 **quod . . . dicantur,** *as to its being said that they would not,* etc.; cf. **12** 11, **15** 14, **32** 14. — **dicto audientes,** etc.: cf. **34** 18.

36 13 **nihil,** *no way.* — **re**: see note on **4** 4. — **quibuscumque**: dat. after **audiens dicto**; i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army who has not either been unsuccessful through his own fault, so that his men had no confidence in his ability, or else has been convicted of avarice by some overt act, so that they had no confidence in his integrity.

36 16 **suam,** *his own:* emphatic by position; equivalent to *in his case.* — **innocentiam**: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Cæsar's fault lay just the other way, — a lavish and reckless generosity at the expense of subjects or allies. In this sentence, in opposite (chiastic) order, **innocentiam** is opposed to **avaritiam,** and **felicitatem** to **male re gesta**; a peculiarly Latin turn.

36 18 **quod . . . fuisset,** *what he had intended to defer.* — **repraesentaturum,** *he would do at once.* This is a legal term, meaning *to do a thing before the time.*

36 21 **officium**: cf. note on **36** 8.

36 22 **decima legione**: this was the legion which had been stationed in the province of Gallia Transalpina (cf. **6** 19); it was distinguished for discipline and courage.

36 23 **praetoriam cohortem,** *body-guard,* made up of the bravest men.

36 28 CHAP. 41. **innata est**: agreeing with the last noun; cf. **captus est, 24** 7.

37 1 **optimum iudicium fecisset,** *had expressed the very highest opinion* (a technical phrase).

37 3 **cum tribunis . . . egerunt,** etc., *urged upon the tribunes . . . to apologize.*

37 4 **primorum:** see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

37 6 **summa belli,** *the policy of the campaign.* — **suum . . . sed imperatoris:** predicates after **esse**; § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340.

37 7 **satisfactione,** *apology;* cf. **satisfacerent,** above.

37 8 **ei,** *in him;* after the phrase *fidem habere* = *fidere*, which takes the dat. or abl.

37 9 **ut . . . duceret** (result): depends upon **itinere exquisito**; **duceret** refers to **itinere.** The sense is, such (a route) that it led, etc., *a road which led.* Cæsar might have said *quod duceret* but for the *quod* in the previous line. The valley of the Doubs above Besançon is very narrow and the mountains are precipitous; but, turning first to the north by the railroad coming from Vesoul and then up the valley of the Oignon River, the country becomes tolerably open to Villersexel and to Belfort, which lies in the gap between the Vosges and the Jura. This pass is interesting as having been for ages one of the great avenues from Germany into Gaul. See view, Fig. 20 and map, Fig. 22. — **milium** [*passuum*] limits **circuitu,** *by a circuit of more than fifty miles.* This must be reckoned as the distance to be traversed before coming to the main road again at about Belfort.

37 11 **septimo die,** etc.: at this time Cæsar must have been somewhere near Mühlhausen (Mulhouse), about seventy-five miles from Besançon (see maps, Figs. 3, 22); at any rate, at some point beyond Belfort on the route from Besançon to Strasburg (120 miles), having passed beyond the gap into the valley of the Rhine. Ariovistus was then some twenty-four miles farther on.

37 12 **a nostris:** i.e. forces.

37 15 CHAP. 42. **quod:** a relative; antecedent is **id.** — **per se,** *so far as he was concerned* (a common expression with *licet*).

37 16 **accessisset:** the subject is Cæsar.

37 17 **non respuit,** etc.: notice the emphasis. Cæsar did *not reject* the offer (as one might have supposed he would do).

37 18 **iam . . . reverti,** *that he was beginning to return.* — **arbitrabatur:** the imperfect indicating the beginning of an action.

37 19 **petenti** [*Caesari*], *when he asked it.* — **ultro:** opposed to **petenti.**

37 21 **fore uti . . . desisteret:** periphrastic future (cf. **18** 1, **28** 17) following **spem**; *that he would cease from his stubbornness.*

37 23 **conloquio**: dat. of purpose; § 382. 2 (233. *b*); B. 191; G. 356. N.[1]; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 361.

37 26 **vereri**: sc. verb of saying from **postulavit**. Note the force of **ne** after **vereri** and cf. **ut, 34** 16.

37 27 **veniret**: for *veniat* (hortatory) of dir. disc. — **alia ratione,** *on any other terms.*

37 28 **interposita causa** (abl. abs.), *by putting in an excuse.*

37 29 **Gallorum equitatui**: he had no other; see chapter on military affairs, I. 2. They numbered about 4000, about the same as a legion.

38 1 **commodissimum**: pred. adj. after **esse,** whose subject is the infin. clause **eo . . . imponere.**

38 2 **Gallis equitibus,** dat. following **detractis**: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 345. R.[1]; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — **eo** (= *in eos*), *upon them.*

38 4 **si quid,** etc., *if there should be need of any active measures;* **quid** is adv. acc.; § 390. *c. d* and N.[2] (240. *a*); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378); cf. H-B. 387. iii.

38 5 **facto**: § 243. *e.* N.; B. 218. 2. *c*; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. N.[3]); H-B. 430. 2. *b.* — **quod cum fieret,** *while this was going on.* On the use of the rel., see note on **58** 9.

38 7 **pollicitum**: see **36** 23.

38 8 **ad equum rescribere,** *he enrolled them among the knights.* The word *equites* means not only the cavalry service in war but a special privileged class in Roman society.

38 9 CHAP. 43. **tumulus terrenus,** *a smooth* (i.e. not rocky) *hill.*

38 10 **spatio**: abl. of degree of difference.

38 12 **equis,** *on horseback,* abl. of means. — **passibus ducentis** (abl. of distance, or degree of difference) = 320 yards.

38 15 **se**: plural. — **denos,** *ten on each side.*

38 18 **appellatus esset**: see note on **32** 21. — **amicus**: sc. *appellatus esset.* — **munera**: according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa, king of Numidia, were "a golden crown and bowl, a curule chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm-leaf figures," such as were worn in triumphal processions.

38 19 **quam rem,** *a tribute which;* see note on **30** 19.

38 20 **docebat,** *showed him.* — **illum**: emphatic as opposed to other beneficiaries implied in the preceding.

38 21 **aditum**: i.e. right to approach the Senate.

38 22 **ea praemia consecutum,** *had attained these prizes,* as if he had eagerly sought them (cf. introductory note to campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287).

38 24 **ipsis** (instead of *sibi*, which might refer to Cæsar alone): the Romans.—**intercederent,** *existed between*, indir. quest.

38 27 **adpetissent:** § 592. 1 (341. *b*); B. 323; G. 633; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 535. 1. *a*. In the dir. this might be either perf. indic. or the same as here. If only priority of time is meant, it would be indic.; if there is any internal relation between the main clause and the time clause, it would require the subjv. In this case the latter seems more probable.

38 28 **populi,** etc.: Direct,—

Populi Romani *haec est consuetudo* ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia . . . auctiores *velit* esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani *adtulerunt*, id eis eripi quis pati *possit?*

38 29 **sui nihil,** *nothing of their own* (dignity, etc.); **sui** is used substantively, and is a part. gen.

39 1 **quod . . . adtulissent,** *what they had brought to the alliance;* i.e. the independence and dignity which they had possessed.

39 2 **posset:** § 587 (338. *a*); B. 300. 2; G. 651. R.[2]; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. 1. N.); cf. H-B. 503.—**postulavit eadem,** *he made the same demands.*

39 3 **ne,** etc.: these clauses are in apposition with **eadem,** and are indirectly quoted from imperative forms of the dir. disc.

39 8 CHAP. 44. **transisse,** etc.: Direct,—

Transii Rhenum (*ego*) non *mea* sponte, sed *rogatus* et *arcessitus* a Gallis; non sine magna spe . . . domum . . . *reliqui;* sedis *habeo* in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium *capio* iure belli quod victores victis imponere *consuerunt*. Non *ego* Gallis, sed *Galli mihi* bellum *intulerunt; omnes* Galliae *civitates* ad *me* oppugnandum *venerunt* ac contra *me* castra *habuerunt; eae omnes copiae* a *me* uno proelio *pulsae* ac *superatae sunt*. Si iterum experiri *volunt*, (*ego*) iterum *paratus sum* decertare; si pace uti *volunt*, iniquum *est* de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad *hoc* tempus *pependerunt*.

Amicitiam populi Romani *mihi* ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse *oportet*, idque . . . hac spe *petii*. Si per populum Romanum stipendium *remittetur* et dediticii *subtrahentur*, non minus libenter . . . *recusabo* populi Romani amicitiam quam *adpetii*.

Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam *traduco*, id *mei* muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa *facio:* eius rei testimonium *est* quod nisi rogatus non *veni*, et quod bellum non *intuli*, sed *defendi*. *Ego* prius in Galliam *veni* quam *populus Romanus*. Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populi Romani . . . provinciae finibus egressus (*est*). Quid *tibi vis?* Cur in *meas* possessiones *venis? Provincia mea haec est Gallia*, sicut *illa vestra*. Ut *mihi* concedi non *oportet*, si in *vestros finis* impetum *faciam*, sic item *vos estis iniqui* quod in *meo* iure *me interpellitis*.

Quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos *dicis*, non (*ego*) tam *barbarus* . . . *sum* . . . ut non *sciam* neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui *mecum* . . . *habuerunt* (*habuerint*), auxilio populi Romani usos esse.

Debeo suspicari simulata *te* amicitia quem exercitum in Gallia *habes mei* opprimendi causa habere. *Tu* nisi *decedes* atque exercitum *deduces* . . . *ego te* non pro amico, sed pro hoste *habebo.* Quod si *te interfecero*, multis (*ego*) nobilibus . . . gratum . . . *faciam;* id (*ego*) ab ipsis . . . compertum *habeo* quorum omnium gratiam . . . *tua* morte redimere *possum.* Quod si *discesseris* et . . . possessionem Galliae *mihi tradideris*, magno *ego te* praemio *remunerabo*, et quaecumque bella geri *voles* sine ullo *tuo* labore . . . *conficiam.*

39 9 **rogatum et arcessitum**: participles expressing cause.

39 10 **sine magna spe magnisque praemiis** = *sine magna spe magnorum praemiorum;* hendiadys, cf. **28** 25 and note.

39 11 **obsides**: object of **habere.** Translate the participles **concessas** and **datos** by relative clauses.

39 14 **sibi**, *on him*, referring to the main subject, Ariovistus. — **ad se oppugnandum**: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. **33** 4, **33** 10.

39 21 **oportere**: impers.; its subject is **amicitiam . . . esse.** — **id**, not *eam*, because it refers to the idea, *ut amicus populi Romani esset.* — **si remittatur**: fut. cond.; § 516, 589 (307, 337); B. 268. 7; G. 656; H. 573. 1, 646 (507. i, 527. i); H-B. 536, 579. *a*; the pres. for imperf., contrary to regular sequence, for greater vividness.

39 22 **per**, *through the action of.*

39 23 **subtrahantur**, *are got away* (by underhand means).

39 25 **quod . . . traducat**, *as for his bringing over;* made subjv. by indir. disc.

39 26 **impugnandae**: observe the gerundive.

40 4 **provinciam**: emphatic; i.e. he had a right to govern it as the Romans did their provinces. — **hanc Galliam**, *this part of Gaul.*

40 5 **ut . . . sic**, *as . . . so.* — **ipsi**: i.e. Ariovistus (used as an *indirect reflexive*); see note on **35** 3.

40 8 **quod**, *in that.*

40 9 **imperitum rerum**: i.e. unsophisticated; for construction, cf. **18** 22.

40 10 **bello proximo**: i.e. B.C. 62.

40 14 **debere se suspicari**, etc., *he had ground to suspect that Cæsar, in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it under the pretence of friendship*, [but really] *for the purpose of crushing him* (Ariovistus).

40 15 **sui opprimendi causa**: gerund; § 504. *c* (298. *a*); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.[1]); H-B. 614.

40 18 **nobilibus . . . gratum**: Cæsar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would have been glad of any safe way to be rid of him.

40 20 **compertum habere** has almost the force of *comperisse;* § 497. *b* (292. *c*); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. I. N.); H-B. 605. 5.

The three relatives **qui** (l. 16), **quod** (l. 17), and **quod** (l. 21) illustrate the principle that the relative, serving to connect with the previous proposition, may represent various conjunctions: *if then he should not withdraw* (**qui** = *is igitur*); *and if he should kill him* (**quod**, adv. acc.); *but if he should withdraw* (**quod** = *sed*, etc.).

40 25 CHAP. 45. **in eam sententiam qua re**, *to this effect* (to show) *why*.

40 26 **negotio**: abl. of separation. — **posset**: indir. quest.; cf. **18** 15, **29** 15, **38** 23. — **neque suam**, etc.: Direct, —

Neque *mea* neque populi Romani *consuetudo patitur* uti optime meritos socios *deseram*, neque *ego iudico* Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello *superati sunt Arverni* et *Ruteni* ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus *ignovit* neque in provinciam *redegit* neque stipendium *imposuit*. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari *oportet*, populi Romani iustissimum *est* in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari *oportet*, *libera debet* esse *Gallia*, quam bello victam suis legibus uti *voluerit*.

40 28 **neque se iudicare**, *and* HE *did not* CONSIDER; notice the emphasis.

41 1 **bello superatos**: B.C. 121, when the Allobroges also were subdued, and the Province probably organized; notice the emphasis. These peoples had been *conquered*, a fact which gave special rights to the Romans.

41 3 **ignovisset**: but, in fact, their country lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cévennes, and so could not then be conveniently occupied by the Romans.

41 4 **antiquissimum quodque**: § 313. *b* (93. *c*); cf. B. 252. 5. *c*; G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2 (458. 1); H-B. 278. 2. *b*; Cæsar, referring to the statement of Ariovistus in **39** 28, claims priority of conquest for the Romans.

41 7 **suis**, *its own*, referring through **quam** to **Galliam**.

41 8 **voluisset**: the subject is *senatus* understood.

41 9 CHAP. 46. **geruntur**: for tense after **dum**, cf. **24** 24, **33** 19.

41 10 **tumulum**: governed by **propius**, which sometimes has the force of a prep.; § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437. 1); H-B. 380. *b*.

41 14 **periculo legionis**, *danger to the legion;* notice that in Latin the gen. is the regular form of one noun dependent on another, whatever prep. we may use to express the relation.

41 15 **committendum non putabat, ut dici posset,** *he thought that no ground should be given for saying.* The subject of **committendum** is the **ut**-clause: § 568. N.[1] (332. *e*); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1).

41 16 **per fidem,** *through* (misplaced) *trust.*

41 17 **elatum est,** *it was reported.* Observe the regular mood and tense after **posteaquam**; cf. **4** 17 and note.

41 18 **omni Gallia**: abl. of separation with **interdixisset**; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (413); H-B. 408. 3.

41 20 **ut,** *how,* with indir. quest.

42 2 CHAP. 47. **coeptae**: this verb is regularly pass. when used, as here, with a pass. infin. (*agi*).

42 3 **uti constitueret**: following **velle**; § 563. *b* (331. *b*); B. 296. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 587. *a.*

42 4 **suis**: refers to Cæsar; **se** (l. 5) to Ariovistus.

42 6 **eo magis**: cf. **hoc facilius, 2** 17 and note. — **retineri quin,** *be kept from:* § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 595. 2 (504. 4); H-B. 502. 3. *b.*

42 7 **legatum [e suis]** = *one of his own* (officers) *as an envoy.*

42 8 **[e suis]**: this may either be translated or omitted. The meaning is essentially the same. — **magno . . . missurum,** *it would be at great risk that,* etc. This meaning is given by the emphatic position of **magno,** etc. The Latin often puts into one sentence ideas which we are inclined to express (for emphasis) in two.

42 11 **humanitate**: not *humanity* (cf. note on **obtinere, 2** 1); the word refers to his education.

42 12 **Flacco**: governor of Gaul B.C. 83. It was customary for slaves or aliens to become clients of the person from whom they received freedom or citizenship and to take his *gentile* name: § 108 (80. *a*); G. p. 493; H. 354 (649); H-B. 678. 1. Thus, here Procillus takes the name (C. Valerius) of his patron Flaccus, retaining his own as *cognomen.* — **civitate donatus erat**: § 364 (225. *d*); B. 187. i. *a*; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 365. *b.*

42 13 **qua multa . . . utebatur,** *which Ariovistus spoke freely.*

42 14 **in eo,** *in him.*

42 15 **peccandi causa,** *ground of offence:* i.e. the Germans had no reason to commit any outrage on him, as they might on a Roman.

42 16 **hospitio**: the relation of *hospes,* existing between two persons of different cities or nations, made a sacred bond far closer than that of simple *hospitality;* see Vocab.

42 18 **quos**: cf. note on **25** 5. — **conspexisset**: note the subjv. and cf. **4** 12, **6** 14, **7** 17, and notes.

42 20 **venirent**: indir. disc. for *venitis*. — **conantis**, etc.: this proceeding was evidently for effect upon the army which was in attendance. Ariovistus cried out aloud and did not allow the messengers to be heard.

42 22 CHAP. 48. **a Caesaris castris**: this camp is placed by Napoleon III at the southern foot of the Vosges Mountains near Cernay (Sennheim), a few miles northwest of Mühlhausen, and thirty miles beyond Belfort (Fig. 20), the fortress which now defends this pass on the frontier between France and Germany. The march of Ariovistus placed him nearer the passage, so as to cut off Cæsar's supplies.

42 25 Whether this camp was between Cæsar and the Vosges Mountains or merely beyond him in the open is uncertain.

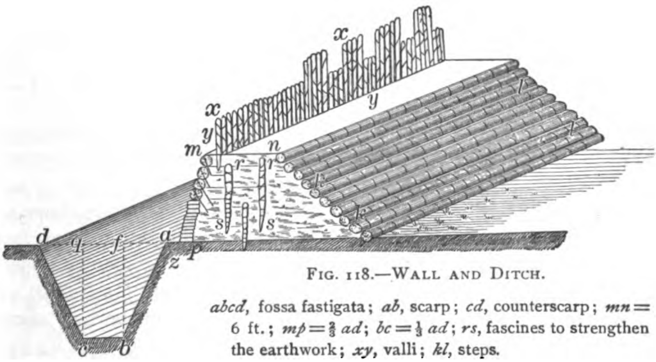


FIG. 118.—WALL AND DITCH.

abcd, fossa fastigata; *ab*, scarp; *cd*, counterscarp; *mn* = 6 ft.; *mp* = ⅔ *ad*; *bc* = ⅓ *ad*; *rs*, fascines to strengthen the earthwork; *xy*, valli; *kl*, steps.

42 26 **supportaretur**: § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539; and cf. **14** 7, **24** 21.

42 28 **instructam habuit**: cf. **40** 20 and note.

43 1 **vellet**: for construction, cf. **supportaretur, 42** 26.

43 3 **castris**: the *place where* may omit the prep. when the idea of means is prominent; § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1; G. 389; H. 485. 2. (425. ii. 1. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

43 4 **hoc**: pointing to the description which follows. — **se exercuerant**, *were trained:* § 476 (279. *e*); B. 262. A; G. 241. 3. R.; H. 299. 2 (297, i. 2); H-B. 487.

44 1 **singuli** [*equites*] **singulos** [*pedites*]: i.e. one apiece.

44 5 **si quo . . . prodeundum**, *if there was occasion for advancing to any place.*

44 7 **cursum adaequarent**: Tacitus (Ger. 6) says: "They fight in combination [infantry and cavalry], and the foot soldiers, picked out of

the entire body of young men and placed in front of the line, are able to keep up with the cavalry in speed." This method of fighting, peculiar to the Germans, seemed so advantageous to Cæsar that he employed it himself on occasion, notably at the battle of Pharsalia.

44 10 CHAP. 49. **consederant**: cf. **exercuerant,** above.

44 11 **acie triplici**: see chapter on military affairs, VII.

44 13 **castra munire**: the spade and pickaxe were as familiar to the Roman soldier as the sword or javelin. See chapter on military affairs, V, also Figs. 23, 54, 69, 118, 119. In this case Cæsar had one larger camp about two miles east of the Germans, and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the south of them.

45 8 CHAP. 50. **instituto suo,** *according to his previous practice:* § 418. *a* (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 414.

45 11 **tum**: note the emphasis.

45 13 **quae . . . oppugnaret**: a purpose clause; cf. l. 3 above.

45 14 **pugnatum est**: how translated? Cf. note on **23** 1.

45 19 **matres familiae**: according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not matrons only, but women as a class, or most of them, to whom this prophetic power was ascribed.

45 20 **sortibus**: *lots* of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance. — **vaticinationibus**: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly the mere prophetic impressions analogous to "second sight." — **declararent**: § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 557; H. 571. 2 (501. i. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *a.* — **utrum . . . necne**: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234. *a.*

45 21 **non esse fas,** *it was not fated.*

45 22 **novam lunam**: a common superstition among semicivilized peoples (cf. Tacitus, Ger. 11); so the Spartans refused to advance to Marathon before the full moon.

45 25 CHAP. 51. **alarios**: the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, from *ala*, a *wing*.

45 26 **pro**: note the force of the prep. here as distinguished from its meaning in **46** 1; cf. also **3** 1.

46 2 **ad speciem,** *to make a show*, as if the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the other force at the greater camp. — **acie**: of the legionaries alone. The six legions in battle array (**triplici acie**) presented a front of more than a mile in length.

46 3 **necessario**: the necessity seems to have come from the fact that the tactics of the Germans demanded more room than a crowded stronghold could give. Rarely in ancient warfare was a fortified camp

assailed. The usual way was to form two battle lines between the fortified camps.

46 5 **intervallis**: § 412 (248); B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. iii); H-B. 445.

46 8 **eo**, *thereon*, i.e. the carts and wagons; cf. note on **eo**, **38** 2.

46 9 **proficiscentis**, (the men) *as they advanced* (object of **implorabant**).

46 11 CHAP. 52. See chapter on military affairs, VII, for description of a battle. — **singulos legatos**, etc.: i.e. *a legatus in command of each legion*. This was the beginning of a very important reform in the military organization. Cæsar felt so keenly the evil of the command being divided among six tribunes that he detailed one of his *legati* nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time we find the *legatus* as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion, having only five *legati*, he also appointed his quartermaster (*quaestor*) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command.

46 13 **eam partem**: that, of course, would be the enemy's left.

46 14 **ita acriter . . . ut**, *so fiercely that*.

46 17 **coniciendi**: observe the gerund with a dir. object (**pila**). Give the corresponding gerundive construction.

46 20 **in phalanga**, *upon the phalanx*. This was a compact body of men with shields close locked in front and above, lapping over one another like shingles on a roof. See Fig. 68, the Roman *testudo*.

46 21 **revellerent**, etc.: i.e. they leaped upon the roof of shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (**desuper**).

46 24 **P. Crassus**: son of Marcus Crassus the triumvir. He next appears at the head of an important expedition against the Aquitanians, pp. 88–92.

46 25 **adulescens**: like our *junior*, to distinguish him from his father. — **expeditior**, *more free*.

46 26 **tertiam aciem**: the line of reserves, kept for just such emergencies.

47 1 CHAP. 53. **restitutum est**: contrasted with **laborantibus**, above.

47 2 **prius . . . quam . . . pervenerunt**: see note on **38** 27.

48 1 **Rhenum**: the nearest point on this river was a little below Bâle, somewhat more than five miles distant from the supposed place of the engagement. But the Germans may have fled down the valley of the Ill, reaching the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battlefield.

48 2 **tranare contenderunt**, *by great effort swam across*.

48 5 **reliquos omnis**: said to be 80,000.

48 6 **duae uxores**: only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (Ger. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.

48 7 **Sueva**: for character and customs of the Suevi, see Bk. iv. chs. 1–3.

48 8 **duxerat**: cf. note on **8** 7. Observe that **duxerat** in the line above has a different meaning.

48 10 **Procillus**: see **42** 10.

48 11 **trinis catenis**, *three* (sets of) *manacles*.

48 16 **eius calamitate**, *by any harm to him;* **eius** is obj. gen., and refers to Procillus.

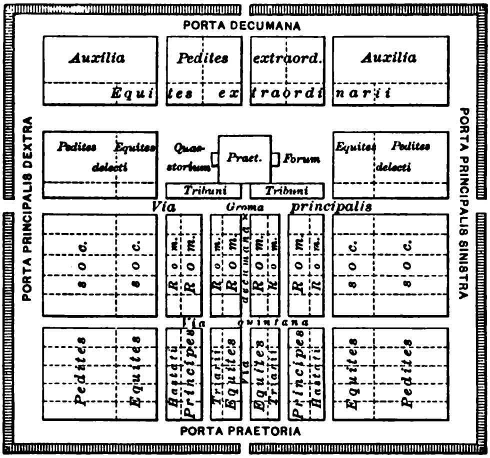


FIG. 119. — CASTRA ROMANA.

48 17 **quicquam**: adv. acc.; § 390. *d* and N.[2] (240. *a*); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 396. 2.

48 18 **se praesente**, *in his presence.* — **ter**: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tacitus, Ger. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, etc. — **consultum**: impers., sc. *esse*.

48 19 **necaretur**: indir. quest.; the dir. was a dubit. subjv., *necetur*. The site of this battle is still very uncertain. The account of Cæsar's march would seem to point to some place from thirty to fifty miles beyond Belfort, and accordingly it has been located by some near Cernay and by others near Gemar, twenty miles farther down the valley. Perhaps it may have been even nearer the gap than Cernay. The plan in the text, that of Col. Stoffel, must be taken, therefore, only as a supposable arrangement. The country is nearly the same in all that region, and a few miles can make no difference. The great point is that for the first time a Roman army ventured beyond one of the natural bounds of Gaul into the valley of the Rhine and defeated a German horde on its own ground, as it were. The campaign against

Ariovistus settled the question of sovereignty over Gaul for several centuries to come. The Germans did not gain possession of it until after the fall of the western Roman empire.

48 24 CHAP. 54. **Ubii**: these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi, and therefore generally in alliance with the Romans (Bk. iv. ch. 3). — **Rhenum**: governed by **proximi**; § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.[1]; H. 420. 5 (391. ii. 2); H-B. 380. *b* and cf. **propius tumulum, 41** 10.

48 26 **maturius**, *earlier;* the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought somewhere about the 10th of September.

48 28 **in citeriorem Galliam**: south of the Alps.

48 29 **conventus**: the proconsular courts held for the administration of justice. A further reason for going was to be nearer Rome and to watch political movements there.

BOOK SECOND. — B.C. 57.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. — The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Cæsar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 7, 8.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 10.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 267–281.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 300–304.
Motley's Rise of the Dutch Republic, Vol. I. pp. 11, 12.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 3.

49 1 CHAP. 1. **cum esset**, etc., *while Cæsar was:* subjv. with **cum temporal**; § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

For discussion of the principle, see notes on **6** 14, **7** 17, **11** 7. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like *and being thus in*, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. lvii. — **citeriore Gallia**: northern Italy. — **ita uti** (=*ut*), *as*: correlatives; the demonstrative word *so* is often omitted in English: § 323. *g* (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144. — **demonstravimus, dixeramus**: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing (see end of Bk. i); the pluperf., what took place before the time of **demonstravimus**.

49 2 **adferebantur, certior fiebat**: imperf. of *repeated action;* § 470 (277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate *kept coming in; he was informed from time to time.*

49 3 **litteris**, *by despatches:* abl. of means; § 409 (248. *c*); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — **Belgas . . . coniurare . . . dare**, *that the Belgians*, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase **certior fiebat**; § 459 (272); B. 331. i; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct, — *Belgae coniurant.* Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked. — **quam** agrees with **partem**, though the proper antecedent is **Belgas**: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. R.[3]. *b*; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

49 4 **esse**: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. **quam**), after **dixeramus**. — **dixeramus** is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. *b*); B. 314. 3; G. 628. R. *a*; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *d*.

49 5 **coniurare**: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified." — **obsides**: see note on **8** 11. — **inter se**, *to one another:* § 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — **coniurandi**: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. *a*; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

49 6 **has esse causas**, *that the reasons were as follows:* the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc. — **quod vererentur, sollicitarentur**: subjv. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2. The two clauses introduced by **primum** and **deinde** contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (**partim . . . partim**), but to these are added in Cæsar's words, but in a different construction (**ab non nullis**), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans. — **ne . . . adduceretur**: subst. clause, object of **vererentur**; § 564 (331. *f*); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498.

iii); H-B. 502. 4.—**omni pacata Gallia**: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, *having subdued*, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best bring out the thought.

49 7 **Gallia**: i.e. Celtic Gaul, within which the previous campaigns had been conducted; § 521. *a* (310. *a*); B. 305. 1; G. 667; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 578. 6.—**exercitus noster**: i.e. to subdue them in their turn.—**ab non nullis Gallis**: § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i); H-B. 406. 1.

49 8 **partim qui**, etc.: not part of Labienus's report, but explanatory remarks added by Cæsar; hence the indic.—**ut . . . ita**: correlatives; § 323. *g* (107); G. 110. 3; H. (305); H-B. 144, 563.—**Germanos . . . versari**: object of **noluerant**; § 457, 563. *b* (271. *a*, 330. 3); B. 295. N., 331. iv; G. 532; H. 614 (535. ii); H-B. 587 and *a*.

49 9 **exercitum hiemare**, etc., *they took it hard* (**moleste ferebant**) *that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold* (**inveterascere**, lit. *grow old*) *in Gaul*. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. **exercitum**, are in indir. disc. after **moleste ferebant**: § 572. *b* (333. *b*); B. 331. v; G. 650; H. 642. ii (523. N.); H-B. 594.

49 11 **mobilitate**: abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444.—**novis imperiis studebant** = *were eager for a change of government* (lit. *new ruling powers*): dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362. Notice that **novis** is emphatic.

49 12 **ab non nullis**, *by some also* (sc. *sollicitabantur*); these were petty chiefs of clans.—**quod** (causal) . . . **occupabantur**, *because royal power was* (constantly) *usurped*. Notice the indic.; Cæsar explains the statement of Labienus (**quod . . . sollicitarentur**) by facts from his own knowledge; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 540; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555. A clause with the subjv. (*occuparentur*) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus.—**potentioribus**: used substantively; *the more powerful*.

49 13 **ad . . . facultatis**, *the means to take men into their pay*.—**conducendos**: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544. N.[2]); H-B. 612. iii.

49 14 **rem**: cf. note on **4** 4.

49 15 **imperio nostro**: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, *under our dominion*.—**consequi**, complementary infin.: § 456 and N. (271 and N.); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 2 (533. i. 2); H-B. 586 and *a*.

50 1 CHAP. 2. **nuntiis**: abl. of cause; cf. **mobilitate, 49** 11.—**duas legiones . . . misit**: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII–XII) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.

50 2 **inita aestate**: abl. abs., expressing time *when;* § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. *a*; G. 665; H. 489. 1 (431. 1); H-B. 421. 1; *aestas* is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

50 3 **qui deduceret** (the antecedent is **Q. Pedium**): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2. — **Pedium**: Pedius was Cæsar's nephew, son of his sister Julia. — **legatum**: see note on **8** 22.

50 4 **cum primum**, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — **inciperet**: cf. note on **esset, 49** 1. — **ad exercitum**: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See Map, Fig. 26.

50 5 **Senonibus**: these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in *Sens.* — **reliquis Gallis**, *the rest of the Gauls:* § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.[1]); H-B. 346. *c.*

50 6 **Belgis**: dat. with **finitimi**; § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362. — **uti . . . cognoscant**, *to find out.* This is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with **negotium**; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. *a.* — **gerantur**: subjv. as depending on **cognoscant**; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

50 7 **seque . . . faciant**, *and inform him* (Cæsar); **se** is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. *a.* 2); B. 244. ii. *a*; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2. — **constanter**, *consistently* (with one another); their accounts all agreed.

50 8 **manus** (acc. plur., subject of **cogi**): small *bands* or companies.

50 9 **tum vero**: see Vocab. and observe the emphatic position. — **dubitandum non** [*esset*], *he must no longer hesitate;* the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after **existimavit**; § 158. *d.* N. (113. *d.* N.); B. 115; G. 251; H. 531 (466. N.); H-B. 162; **dubitandum** is impers.; § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*; G. 208. 2; H. 192. 1 (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. *a.* — **quin** can follow only a negative expression, as here **non existimavit**, etc. — **quin . . . proficisceretur**, *to set out* (lit. *but that he should*, etc.): relative clause of result depending on **dubitandum** [*esse*]; § 558. *a* (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 596. 1 (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 502. 3. *b.* In the sense of *hesitate*, *dubito* regularly takes the infin. and not **quin**, but exceptions occur, as here.

50 10 **re comparata**: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on **49** 6.

50 11 **diebus**: abl. of time *within which;* § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — **finis**: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march

from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocortorum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

50 12 CHAP. 3. **eo**: adv. — **omnium opinione,** *than any one expected* (following the comparative **celerius**): § 406. *a* (247. *b*); B. 217. 4; G. 398. N.[1]; H. 471. 7 (417. i. N.[5]); H-B. 416. *e*.

50 13 **Remi**: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12. — **proximi Galliae,** *nearest to Gaul;* for the dat., see § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. *e*. — **ex Belgis,** *of the Belgæ,* for part. gen. *Belgarum ;* see § 346. *c* (216. *c*); B. 201. 1. *a*; G. 372. R.[2]; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. N.[3]); H-B. 362; translate with **proximi.**

50 14 **legatos,** *as ambassadors,* predicate apposition.

50 15 **qui dicerent**: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Cæsar in indir. disc. Notice that the *principal clauses* are in the infin. with subj. acc., and all *dependent clauses* in the subjv.: § 580 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642-644 (522-524); H-B. 534. i, ii. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani *permittimus;* neque [*nos*] cum reliquis Belgis *consensimus* neque contra populum Romanum *coniuravimus, paratique sumus* et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; *reliqui omnes Belgae* in armis *sunt, Germanique,* qui cis Rhenum *incolunt,* sese cum his *coniunxerunt, tantusque est* eorum omnium *furor* ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque *nostros,* qui eodem iure et isdem legibus *utuntur* (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum *nobiscum habent* (habeant), deterrere *potuerimus* quin cum his consentirent (*consentiant*).

50 15 **se in fidem permittere,** *put themselves under the protection* (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat. — **se suaque omnia,** *themselves and all their* (possessions) ("their all"): object of **permittere.** The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition **se** (subject) **se** (object). In the next clause **se** is expressed.

50 16 **neque,** *and* (had) *not:* § 328. *a* (156. *a*); B. 341. 1. *d*; G. 480; H. 657. 1 (554. i. 2); H-B. 307. 3. — **cum Belgis**: accompaniment; § 413 (248. *a*); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1 (419. i); H-B. 419. 1.

50 18 **paratos** (participial adj.), *ready.* — **dare, facere,** etc.: infinitives following **paratos**; § 460. *b* (273. *b*); B. 326. N.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533. 3); H-B. 586. *f*.

50 19 **oppidis recipere,** *receive* [the Romans] *into their strongholds;* **oppidis** is abl. of place without *in:* § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 436, cf. 446. 1.— **frumento**: abl. of means; cf. **litteris, 49** 3. — **ceterisque rebus,** *everything else* (necessary); see Vocab. — **recipere, iuvare**: sc. *eos* (i.e. the Romans) as object.

50 20 **cis**: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

50 21 **sese . . . coniunxisse,** *had united;* it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin. — **tantum . . . ut**: correlatives; § 537. 2. N.[2] (319. R.); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. N.[1]; H-B. 521. 2. *a*.

50 22 **furorem,** *madness* (blind and unreasoning passion). — **ut . . . potuerint**: result clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2; for tense, see § 485. *c*. N.[1] (287. *c*. R.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on **28** 6. — **ne . . . quidem**: § 322. *f* (151. *e*); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1. — **Suessiones** (obj. of **deterrere**): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

50 23 **iure et legibus**: *rights and laws;* for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429. — **isdem**: for *eisdem*.

50 24 **unum imperium,** etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguing with the other party. — **cum ipsis**: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. **se** is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of *ipse* are occasionally used instead. Here *ipse* is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. *e* (195. *k*); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.

50 25 **quin . . . consentirent,** *from leaguing with:* relative clause of result depending on **deterrere**; § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. *b*. (Notice that **deterrere** is negatived by **ne . . . quidem** above, which make the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)

50 26 CHAP. 4. **ab his**: i.e. of the envoys; § 396. *a* (239. *c*. N.[1]); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. R.[1]; H. 411. 4 (374. N.[4]); H-B. 393. *c*. — **quae . . . essent**: indir. quest.; § 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. *b*.

50 27 **quid . . possent,** *what strength they had in war;* **quid** is cognate acc. with adv. force; § 390. *c* and *d*. N.[2] (240. *a*); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. 1, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii. — **sic,** *as follows.* — **reperiebat**: for force of the tense, cf. **adferebantur, 49** 2 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words **Remi dicebant, 51** 8. — **plerosque,** etc.: Direct, —

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque . . . *traducti* propter loci fertilitatem ibi *consederunt*, Gallosque qui ea loca *incolebant expulerunt*, *solique sunt* qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re *fit* uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . *sumant*. De numero eorum omnia (nos) *habemus* explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognovimus*. Plurimum inter eos *Bellovaci* . . . *valent; hi possunt* conficere armata milia centum, *polliciti* ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi *postulant*. Suessiones *nostri sunt finitimi;* finis latissimos feracissimosque agros *possident*. Apud eos *fuit rex* nostra etiam memoria *Diviciacus*, totius Galliae *potentissimus*, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtinuit;* nunc *est rex Galba;* ad hunc . . . *summa* totius belli . . . *defertur;* oppida *habent* numero XII, *pollicentur* milia armata quinquaginta; totidem *Nervii*, qui maxime feri inter ipsos *habentur*, longissimeque *absunt;* quindecim milia *Atrebates*, (likewise) *Ambiani*, *Morini*, etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. . . . qui . . . Germani appellantur, *arbitramur* (*conficere posse* or *polliceri*) ad XL milia.

50 27 **plerosque,** *most of:* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.[2]); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

51 1 **ab Germanis**: abl. of source; § 403. *a*. N.[1] (244. *a*. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. *b*. — **Rhenum**: acc. governed by *trans* in **traductos**; § 395 (239. 2. *b*); B. 179. 1; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. *a*.

51 2 **traductos**: participle agreeing with **Belgas.** — **propter fertilitatem**: construe with **consedisse.**

51 4 **qui . . . prohibuerint**: rel. clause of characteristic with **solos**; § 535. *b* (320. *b*); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. *a* and ftn.[1]. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. **ut . . . potuerint, 50** 22 and note. — **memoria**: cf. **diebus, 50** 11. — **Teutonos,** etc.: cf. **35** 5.

51 5 **ingredi**: the subjv. might have been used; § 457 (271. *a*); B. 295. 1; G. 532. R.[1]; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 587 and *a*. — **qua ex re,** *in consequence of which* (*fact*); abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. N.[7]; H. 475. 4 (416. i); H-B. 444. *b*.

51 6 **fieri uti,** *it was coming to be the case that:* the subject of **fieri** is the clause **uti . . . sumerent**; § 569 (332. *a*); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. *a*. — **memoria**: abl. of cause. — **sibi**: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. N.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.

51 7 **de numero,** etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on **Remi dicebant.**

51 8 **se habere explorata,** *had found out all about* (**de**), etc.: **habere explorata** differs but little in sense from *explorasse;* § 497. *b* (292. *c*); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. I. N.); H-B. 605. 5 and *a*; in construction **explorata** agrees with **omnia,** which is obj. of **habere.** See note on **compertum habere, 40** 20.

51 9 **propinquitatibus,** *ties of blood.*—**adfinitatibus,** *alliances by marriage.*

51 10 **quantam quisque . . . pollicitus sit**: indir. quest., object of **cognoverint**; cf. **50** 26.

51 11 **cognoverint**: the primary tense is used in violation of the *sequence of tenses.* The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said *cognovimus, we know* (lit. *have found out*). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.

51 12 **virtute,** etc.: abl. of specification.

51 13 **armata milia centum** = *armatorum hominum milia centum.* As here expressed, **milia** is the noun with which the adj. **armata** agrees; § 134. *d* (94. *e*); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.

51 14 **electa,** *choice troops, picked men.*

51 15 **sibi**: dat. of reference; cf. **sibi,** l. 6, above; it refers to the Bellovaci. — **suos,** *their own* (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on **cum ipsis, 50** 24.

51 16 **possidere**: sc. *eos*, i.e. the Suessiones. — **fuisse . . . esse**: notice the difference of time; **fuisse** (in the dir. disc. *fuit*) refers to time *past*, **esse** (dir. *est*) to time *present*, with respect to the verb of saying (**dicebant,** l. 8). — **regem**: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.

51 18 **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also.*

51 19 **Britanniae**: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author. — **obtinuerit,** *had held;* in the dir. *obtinuit, held.* For tense, cf. note on **cognoverint,** l. 11, above.

51 20 **summam**: subject of **deferri.**

51 21 **voluntate**: abl. of manner; § 412. *b* and N. (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. 1 (419. iii. N.[2]); H-B. 445. 1. — **habere**: the subject must be supplied from **Suessiones,** above. — **numero**: abl. of specif.; cf. **51** 12.

51 22 **Nervios,** etc. (see Map, Fig. 26): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: Atrebates, *Arras;* Ambiani, *Amiens;* Caleti, *Calais;* Viromandui, *Vermandois;* Condrusi, *Condroz.*

52 1 **feri**: pred. after **habeantur,** *are regarded.*

52 5 **Condrusos,** etc.: subjects of *polliceri* or *conficeri posse* understood. — **qui . . . appellantur**: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note

added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while **qui . . . habeantur** above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive.

52 6 **Germani**: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (*Condrusi, Eburones*, etc.). — **arbitrari**: in dir., *arbitramur;* in translation we may say *they thought*, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

52 7 CHAP. 5. **cohortatus, prosecutus**: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. *b*); B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. 1 (550. N.[1]); H-B. 601. 1.

52 9 **obsides** (pred. appos.), *as hostages:* if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves; cf. also note on **8** 11. — **quae omnia**, *and all this*. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308. *f* (201. *e*); B. 251. 6; G. 610. R.[1]; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.

52 11 **quanto opere . . . intersit**, *how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety*. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.

52 12 **intersit**: indir. quest.; cf. **50** 26, **51** 10. — **manus** (acc. plur.) . . . **distineri**: infin. clause, subject of **intersit**. — **ne confligendum sit**, *lest they should have to contend:* clause of purpose depending on **distineri**; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. — **confligendum sit** is an impers. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. *c* (129, 146. *d*); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. *a*.

52 13 **id fieri posse**, etc., *this, he said, could be done*, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

52 14 **suas copias**: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army. — **Bellovacorum**: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations; so that the manœuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. **56** 21–25). — **introduxerint . . . coeperint**: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516. *c* (307. *c*); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. *a*, 577. *a*.

52 15 **eorum**: i.e. **Bellovacorum**. — *datis:* words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

52 16 **dimittit**: the effect of his mission appears in **56** 23, and he has returned to Cæsar in **59** 2. — **postquam . . . vidit**, *as soon as he saw:* § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.

52 17 **neque**: **-que** connects **vidit** and **cognovit**; **ne-** with **iam** = *no longer*. — [**vidit**]: see note on [**eorum**], **9** 17.

52 18 **ab eis**: construed with **cognovit**.

52 19 **Axonam** (apposition), *the Aisne;* here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise. — **in extremis . . . finibus,** *in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi:* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

52 20 **exercitum** is dir. object of **traducere; flumen** (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on *trans* (*tra-duco = trans-duco*); § 395 (239. 2. *b*); B. 179. 1; G. 331. R.[1]; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386. — **castra**: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 31), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see Map, Fig. 32).

52 21 **quae res,** *this movement* (or *manœuvre*), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. — **ripis**: cf. **frumento, 50** 19.

52 22 **post eum quae erant,** *the rear of his army* (lit. [*those things*] *which were behind him*). — **tuta**: pred. acc.; § 393. N. (239. *a.* N.[1]); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. N.[2]); H-B. 392. *a*; the dir. object is *ea*, the omitted antecedent of **quae.** — **commeatus**: subject of **possent.**

52 23 **ut . . . possent**: subst. clause of result, object of **efficiebat;** § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. *a*; cf. this with the pure result clause, **50** 22, and with the subject clause of result, **51** 6.

52 24 **efficiebat**: the subject is still **quae res**; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on **3** 5.

52 25 **in altera parte,** *on the other side*, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.

52 27 **pedum xii**: gen. of measure, with **vallo;** § 345. *b* (215. *b*); B. 203. 2; G. 365. R.[2]; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. — **duodeviginti pedum**: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 118.

53 1 CHAP. 6. **nomine**: cf. the ablatives in **51** 12. — **Bibrax**: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaurieux to the west, more probably the latter.

53 2 **milia passuum octo,** *eight miles:* acc. of extent of space; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. 1; **passuum** is part. gen.; § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367; H. 440. 5 (397); H-B. 346; cf. note

on **3** 4. — **ex itinere,** *on the march,* i.e. turning aside *from* their course to attack the town. — **magno impetu**: abl. of manner; cf. **voluntate, 51** 21.

53 3 **aegre sustentatum est** (impers.), *it was with difficulty that they held out.* In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. — **Gallorum . . . haec,** *the attack* (mode of attacking) *of the Gauls, being the same as* **(atque)** *that of the Belgians, is this* (the following).

53 5 **circumiecta multitudine** (abl. abs.) . . . **moenibus,** *a host of men being thrown round all the walls:* § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

53 6 **iaci**: complem. infin.; cf. **consequi, 49** 15 and note. — **coepti sunt**: the pass. is used with the pass. infin. — **defensoribus**: abl. of separation; § 401 (243. *a*); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

53 7 **testudine facta,** *making a testudo.* See chapter on military affairs, VII (last part), and Fig. 68.

53 8 **quod,** *this,* i.e. the movements just described. — **tum,** *in the present instance.* — **multitudo,** subject of **conicerent**: § 317. *d* (2) (205. *c.* 1); B. 254. 4. *a*; G. 211. Exc. (*a*); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. — **cum . . . conicerent**: **cum** describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on **49** 1.

53 9 **consistendi**: gen. of gerund with **potestas**; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. *a*; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

53 10 **nulli**: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374: *nobody could keep a foothold on the wall* (lit. *power of standing on the wall was to nobody*). — **cum . . . fecisset**: again describing the situation. — **oppugnandi**: gerund; cf. **coniurandi, 49** 5.

53 11 **summa nobilitate et gratia,** [a man] *of the highest,* etc.; abl. of quality; § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. — **inter suos,** *among his* [fellow-citizens]. — **oppido**: dat. with **praeerat**; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

53 12 **unus ex eis,** *one of those:* after numerals **ex** with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. — **legati,** *as ambassadors:* pred. appos.

53 13 **nisi . . . posse**: indir. disc. depending on the idea of *reporting* contained in **nuntium mittit.** Trans. *unless reënforcements, he said,* etc. — **sibi**: i.e. **Iccius**; the dat. is used instead of *ad se* with **subsidium submittatur,** because the idea of help (*for him*) is more prominent than that of motion (*towards him*). In the dir. disc. the message of Iccius was:

Nisi subsidium *mihi submittetur,* (*ego*) diutius sustinere non *possum.*

54 1 CHAP. 7. **eo,** *thither, to that place,* i.e. Bibrax. — **isdem ducibus usus,** *employing the same men* [as] *guides:* for the ablative, cf. **iure, 50** 23. Observe that **ducibus** is pred. appos.; cf. **legati, 53** 12.

54 2 **Numidas et Cretas**: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 105.

54 3 **Baleares** (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 30. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies. — **subsidio oppidanis**: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N.[1] (233. *a*); B. 191. 2. *b*; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. *b*.

54 4 **et . . . et**: see Vocab. — **studium . . . accessit**, *eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi.* — **propugnandi**: obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. **coniurandi**, **49** 5.

54 5 **hostibus**, *from the enemy:* dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N.[3]); H-B. 366. — **potiundi oppidi**: gerundive; § 503. N.[2] (296. R.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N.[5]; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N.[5]); H-B. 613. N.

54 6 **morati . . . depopulati . . . vicis . . . incensis**: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of *deponent verbs*. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, **vicis incensis**, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on **49** 6.

54 7 **quo**, *to which* (or the like).

54 8 **omnibus copiis**: cf. **50** 16, and for the omission of *cum*, see § 413. *a* (248. *a*. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.[1]; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

54 9 **a milibus passuum minus duobus**, *less than two miles off:* **a** is used adverbially; § 433 (261. *d*); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 303. *c*: **milibus** is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424: **minus** does not affect the construction: § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.[4]; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.[2]); H-B. 416. *d*: **amplius** (l. 10) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387: and **milibus** (l. 10), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under **minus**.

54 13 CHAP. 8. **eximiam opinionem virtutis**, *their high reputation for valor:* obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — **proelio supersedere**, *to defer the engagement:* for the abl., cf. **defensoribus**, **53** 6, and see § 401 (243. *a*); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

54 14 **quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . auderent**, indir. questions. — **virtute**: abl. of specif. But the whole is best rendered, *tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers*. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.

54 15 **periclitabatur**: note the tense and cf. **adferebantur, 49** 2 and note.

54 16 **loco . . . idoneo**: abl. abs. expressing cause.—**ad . . . instruendam**: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. **49** 13.

54 18 **tantum**, etc., *spread over as much* **(tantum)** *ground as* **(quantum)**, etc.—**adversus**, *right in front.*

54 19 **in latitudinem,** *in breadth,* i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.—**loci**: part. gen. with **quantum**, but more conveniently translated with the correlative **tantum**, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

54 20 **lateris deiectus** (acc. plur.), *lateral slopes* (lit. *slopes of the side*).

54 21 **in fronte,** etc., *falling with an easy slope in front* (i.e. to the west), *sank gently to the plain* (see battle plan, Fig. 32).

54 22 **transversam**: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

54 23 **passuum quadringentorum**: gen. of measure; cf. **pedum, 52** 27.—**extremas,** *the ends of:* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.[2]); H-B. 244.

54 24 **tormenta**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 61, 75, and 95.

54 25 **instruxisset**: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 593, 547 (342, 325. *c*); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. *d*.—**tantum**: adv. acc.; cf. **quid, 50** 27.—**poterant**: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like **instruxisset**) attracted into the subjv.

54 26 **ab lateribus,** *on the flanks:* § 429. *b* (260. *b*); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying **circumvenire.**—**suos**: i.e. Cæsar's, referring back to the subject of **conlocavit.**

55 1 **si quo** (adv.): sc. *duci*, but translate freely *if they were needed anywhere.*—**esset**: protasis of a fut. condition (*si . . . erit*); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause **ut . . . possent**; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.—**subsidio**: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on **54** 3.

55 2 **sex**: see note on **50** 1.—**suas**: notice the emphatic position, THEIR *forces too.*

55 3 **copias . . . eductas instruxerunt,** *had led out and drawn up*, etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coördinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

55 4 CHAP. 9. **nostrum**: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 302. *a* (197. *a*); B. 243; G. 362. R.[1]; H. 440. 1. N.[2] (396. ii. N.); H-B. 339. *a*.

55 5 **hanc**: i.e. *paludem*. — **si . . . transirent**, (*to see*) *if our men would cross:* § 576. *a* (334. *f*); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.[1]); cf. H-B. 582. 2.

55 6 **si . . . fieret**, *in case they should begin the passage* (lit. *a beginning of crossing should be made by them*): fut. condition (*si . . . fiet*); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause **ut . . . adgrederentur**; cf. note on **esset**, l. 1.

55 7 **adgrederentur**: purpose, depending on **parati**, etc.

55 8 **contendebatur**: impers.; cf. note on **23** 1.

55 9 **nostris**: § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

55 11 **ad flumen**, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

56 1 **eo consilio ut**, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with **consilio**; § 531. 1. N.[1] (317. *a*); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. *a*.

56 2 **castellum**, *the redoubt* beyond the river, held by Sabinus (**52** 25). — **cui**: cf. **oppido**, **53** 11.

56 3 **pontem**: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (**52** 25). By destroying this, the Belgæ would cut off Cæsar's supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. **52** 21–24. — **si possent** (l. 1), **si minus potuissent**: fut. conditions; **possent** represents the fut., **potuissent** the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense cf. note on **55** 1. — **minus**, *not*.

56 4 **popularentur, prohiberent**: in same construction as **expugnarent**. — **magno nobis usui**: cf. note on **subsidio oppidanis**, **54** 3. — **ad bellum gerendum** (gerundive), *for carrying on the war;* cf. **49** 13.

56 5 **commeatu**: abl. of separation; cf. **defensoribus**, **53** 6.

56 6 CHAP. 10. **ab Titurio**: abl. of voluntary agent.

56 7 **levis armaturae** (gen. of description), *of light equipment = light-armed* (see chapter on military affairs, 1. 3, and Figs. 104, 115). — **Numidas**, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

56 8 **traducit**: with two accusatives; cf. **52** 20 and note. — **pugnatum est**: cf. **contendebatur**, **55** 8.

56 11 **conantis**: with **reliquos**.

56 12 **equitatu**: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep. — **circumventos interfecerunt**: cf. note on **eductas**, **55** 3.

56 13 **ubi . . . intellexerunt**: the regular mood and tense with **ubi**; cf. **53** 4. — **de**, *with regard to*.

56 14 **neque**, *and . . . not*.

56 15 **pugnandi causa**: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404. *c*, 533. *b* (245. *c*, 318. *b*); B. 338. I. *c*; G. 373; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 444. *d*, 612. i.

56 16 **ipsos**: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

56 17 **constituerunt** here has two objects: (1) **optimum esse**, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) [*ut*] **convenirent** (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. *d* (332. *h*); B. 295. 1 and N.; G. 546. R.[1]; H. 565. 5 (498. i. N.); H-B. 589. *a*; cf. note on **2** 15. The subject of **esse** is the infin. clause **quemque reverti**: § 452 (330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — **domum**: § 427. 2 (258. *b*); B. 182. 1. *b*; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. *b*.

56 18 **quorum**: the antecedent is **eos**.

56 19 **introduxissent** stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose clause; cf. **potuissent**, **56** 3. — **convenirent**: sc. *ut;* § 565. *a* (331. *f*. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.[2]; H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *a*. ftn.[2].

56 20 **suis, alienis, domesticis**: notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

56 23 **quod . . . cognoverant**: indic. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority; cf. **49** 12 and note. The clause is in apposition with **haec ratio**. — **Diviciacum . . . adpropinquare**: see **52** 14. — **finibus**: dat. after **adpropinquare**.

56 24 **his persuaderi**, etc., *these could not be persuaded*, etc. (lit. *it could not be persuaded to these*). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used impers. in the pass. and retain the dat. — **ut**, etc.: subst. clause of purpose, depending for its construction on **persuaderi**, but (in the impers. construction) used as subject of **poterat**.

56 25 **neque . . . ferrent**, *and so fail to carry* (lit. *and not carry*). — **suis**: § 363 (225. *b*); B. 193; H-B. 365. ftn. par. 2.

56 26 CHAP. 11. **strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio**: abl. of manner; cf. **impetu**, **53** 2.

57 1 **cum**, *where*, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a causal clause: § 549. N.[2] (326. N.[2]); B. 288. B; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 525.

57 2 **fecerunt**: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, "the *result* was." — **ut . . . videretur**: subst. clause of result, object of **fecerunt**;

§ 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. *a*.— **fugae**: § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

57 3 **per**: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is generally expressed by **per** with the acc.; § 405. *b* (246. *b*); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. N.[1]); H-B. 380. *d*.—**speculatores**, *spies*: they obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the *scouts*, *exploratores*, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

57 4 **veritus**, *fearing*; cf. note on **52** 7.—**discederent**: indir. quest.; cf. **51** 10, **52** 11, **55** 5.

57 5 **castris**, *in camp*: § 429. *f* (258. *f*); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

57 6 **re**: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating.—**ab exploratoribus**: abl. of agent; cf. above, **per speculatores**.—**qui moraretur**: rel. clause of purpose; cf. **50** 15.

57 7 **his**: dat. with **praefecit**; cf. construction of **oppido**, **53** 11.

57 10 **milia**: cf. **53** 2.

57 11 **cum**: causal; cf. **57** 1 and note.—**ab extremo agmine**, *in the rear*.

57 12 **quos**: relates to the implied subject of **consisterent**.—**ventum erat**: § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. *a*. 1.

57 13 **priores**: sc. *and* in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy.—**quod . . . viderentur**, *because they seemed* (i.e. *they thought themselves*). This word and **continerentur** are subjunctives as being part of the subjv. clause **cum . . . ponerent**. For similar cases of attraction, see **55** 1, **55** 6, **56** 1, **56** 19.

57 15 **exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus** (abl. abs., the first defining the time of the second), ***breaking ranks on hearing the outcry*** (of those engaged in the rear).

57 16 **sibi**: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. N.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B. 366.—**ponerent**: same construction as **consisterent** and **sustinerent**.

57 17 **tantam . . . spatium**, *killed as great a number of them as the time* (before night) *allowed* (lit. *as the day was long*); notice the correlatives **tantam . . . quantum**; § 152 (106); G. 642. 1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144; cf. **54** 18–20.

57 20 CHAP. 12. **postridie eius diei**, *next day* (lit. *on the day after that day*): for the gen., see § 359. *b* (223. *e*); B. 201. 3. *a*; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. *c*.—**priusquam . . . reciperent**, *before the enemy could recover themselves*: § 551. *b* (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *b*.

57 21 **in finis . . . duxit**: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.

57 22 **Remis**: cf. **Galliae, 50** 13. — **magno itinere**: see chapter on military affairs, VI.

57 23 **Noviodunum** (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic *dunum* = English *town*; hence Noviodunum = *Newton* or *Newburg*. *Soissons* is derived from *Suessiones*. — **ex itinere**: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. **53** 2.

57 24 **esse**: sc. *oppidum* for subject.

57 25 **paucis defendentibus** (abl. abs. denoting concession), *though there were few defenders*. — **oppugnare** means *to attack*; **expugnare**, *to take* (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Cæsar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 43, 92, 93, 118, 120.

57 26 **quaeque**, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of **quae**, if expressed, would be *ea*.

57 27 **ad oppugnandum**: § 506, 385. *a* (300, 234. *b*); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. N.; G. 432, 359. R.[3]; H. 628, 435. 1 (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.

58 2 **magnitudine**: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. — **quae**, *which* (i.e. *the like of which*).

58 3 **ante**: adv.

58 5 **petentibus Remis**, *at the request of the Remi*. — **ut conservarentur**: subst. clause of result, obj. of **impetrant**; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. *a*.

58 6 CHAP. 13. **obsidibus acceptis primis**, *after he had received as hostages the chief men*, etc.

58 7 **Galbae**: see **51** 19–21.

58 9 **Bellovacos**: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. — **qui cum**, *and when they*. A relative is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here *hi autem*). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — **se suaque omnia**: cf. **50** 15 and note.

58 10 **Bratuspantium**: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that **Bratuspantium** is in *apposition* with **oppidum**, not in the gen. according to the English usage.

58 11 **circiter**, etc., [only] *about five miles*. — **milia passuum**: cf. **53** 2, **57** 10.

58 12 **maiores natu**: § 131. *c* (91. *c*); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122; **natu** is abl. of specification.

58 13 **voce significare**, *show by the tones of their voice* (of course they could not talk Latin). — **in eius fidem . . . venire**: i.e. surrendered at

discretion; cf. the clause **se in fidem permittere, 50** 15. Notice that the reflexive **sese** refers to the *speakers*, and represents the first person of the dir. disc.; **eius** refers to *Cæsar*, the person spoken to.

58 14 **neque,** *and* [*that they would*] *not.*

58 16 **pueri mulieresque,** *women and children.* — **ex muro**: English says *on the wall*, from another point of view.

58 17 **ab Romanis**: § 396. *a* (239. *c.* N.[1]); B. 178. 1. *a*; G. 339. N.[2]; H. 411. 4 (374. N.[4]); H-B. 393. *c.*

59 1 CHAP. 14. **pro his,** *in behalf of these*, i.e. the Bellovaci.

59 2 **eum**: i.e. Cæsar.

59 3 **Bellovacos,** etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on **facit verba.** Direct,—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae *fuerunt; impulsi* ab suis principibus, qui *dicebant* Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis *defecerunt* et populo Romano bellum *intulerunt.* Qui eius consili principes *fuerant*, quod *intellegebant* quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam *profugerunt. Petunt* non solum *Bellovaci* sed etiam pro his *Haedui* ut *tua* clementia ac mansuetudine in eos *utaris.* Quod si *feceris*, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas *amplificabis*, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella *inciderunt*, sustentare *consuerunt.*

59 3 **omni tempore,** *always.* — **in fide atque amicitia**: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

59 4 **impulsos** (notice the emphatic position: *not* of their own accord, but *induced* by their chiefs): agreeing with the subject (*eos*) of **defecisse** and **intulisse**, which is to be supplied from **Bellovacos.**

59 5 **dicerent**: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by Cæsar as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subject is **Haeduos**; the verb, **perferre.** — **omnis,** *all* (kinds of).

59 7 **qui,** (those) *who.* — **eius consili,** *in this design*: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by *in*, *to*, and many other forms of speech in English.

59 8 **quantam . . . intulissent**: cf. **50** 26 and note.

59 9 **civitati**: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. — **Britanniam**: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was Cæsar's excuse for his subsequent expedition there. — **profugisse**: the subject is the implied antecedent of **qui.**

59 10 **sua clementia,** *his* (characteristic or well-known) *clemency*: for the case, cf. **50** 23, **54** 1.

59 11 **in eos**: but for the interposition of **Haeduos**, this would be *in se;* § 300. *b* (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H–B. 262. 2, here, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction.—**utatur**: subst. clause of purpose, after **petere**; § 563. *d* (331. *d*); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H–B. 530. 2. ftn.[1]; cf. also **6** 10 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. **cognoverint, 51** 11 and note.—**quod si fecerit**: fut. condition (more vivid); **fecerit** is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is **amplificaturum**: § 516. *a* (307. *a*); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H–B. 579. *a*; on the use of **quod**, see note on **qui cum, 58** 9.

59 13 **quorum**: the antecedent is **Belgas**.—**si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint**: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. *b* (309. *c*); G. 594. N.; H. 578. 1 (508. 5); cf. H–B. 579, 577. *a*.

59 14 **consuerint**: present in force; § 205. *b*. N.[2] (143. *c*. N.); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H–B. 487.

59 15 CHAP. 15. **honoris Diviciaci . . . causa**, *out of respect for Diviciacus* (lit. *for the sake of honor*).—**Diviciaci**: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H–B. 354.—**causa**: abl. of cause; § 404. *c* (245. *c*); B. 198. 1; G. 373, 408; H. 475. 2 (416. ftn.[2]); H–B. 444. *d*, 339. *d*; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here **honoris**.

59 16 **recepturum** [*esse*]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits *esse*, as here.—**quod erat**: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require *quod esset*); cf. **49** 12.

59 17 **magna . . . auctoritate**: cf. **53** 11.—**multitudine**: cf. **51** 12.

59 20 **Ambianorum**: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

59 21 **eorum finis**: notice the emphatic position. *Their territories* reach to the Nervii.—**natura**: i.e. what sort of people they were, like *quales essent.*

59 22 **reperiebat**: cf. note on **49** 2.—**nullum aditum**, etc.: Direct,—

Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil *patiuntur* vini . . . inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . *existimant; sunt* homines *feri* magnaeque virtutis; *increpitant* atque *incusant* reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano *dediderint* patriamque virtutem *proiecerint; confirmant* sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

59 23 **mercatoribus** (dat. of poss.; cf. **nulli, 53** 10), *traders have.*—**pati** (subj. *eos* understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is

only brief notes of his campaigns (*commentarii*). — **nihil . . . vini**: § 346. *a*. 1 (216. *a*. 1); B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. 1); H-B. 346.

59 25 **relanguescere**: an inceptive verb (ending, *-sco*); § 263. 1 (167. *a*)· B. 155. 1; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2. — **esse**, *that they are*.

59 26 **magnae virtutis**: § 345 (215); B. 203. 1; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with **feros** by a coördinate conj.: § 223. *a* (154. *a*); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 305. i.

59 27 **Belgas**: object. — **qui . . . dedidissent . . . proiecissent**, *who* [they said] *had surrendered*, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. *d*); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *a*; cf. also note on **32** 21.

60 1 **patriam**: an adjective.

60 2 **missuros . . . accepturos**: on the omission of *esse*, cf. note on **59** 16. The subject of the infinitives is **sese**, which refers back to the omitted subject (*eos*) of **confirmare**.

60 3 Chap. 16. **cum . . . fecisset**: for similar *cum*-clauses, cf. **49** 1, **53** 8, **53** 10. — **eorum**: i.e. of the Nervii. — **triduum**: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

60 4 **Sabim flumen**, etc.: Direct, —

Sabis flumen a castris . . . milia passuum x *abest;* trans id flumen *omnes Nervii consederunt* adventumque Romanorum *exspectant* una cum Atrebatibus . . . (nam his . . . *persuaserunt* uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); *exspectantur* etiam ab eis Aduatucorum *copiae* atque *sunt* in itinere; mulieres quique . . . inutiles *videbantur* in eum locum *coniecerunt*, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

60 4 **Sabim**: *the Sambre*, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. *a*. 1 (56. *a*. 1); B. 37; G. 57. R.[1]; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — **non amplius milia**, etc.: **milia** is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by **amplius**; cf. a similar construction, **54** 9, and see § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.[4]; H. 471. 4 (417. i. N.[2]); H-B. 416. *d*.

60 7 **Atrebatibus**, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois. — **his**: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

60 8 **experirentur**: subst. clause of purpose; cf. **59** 10.

60 9 **exspectari**: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

60 10 **quique**, *and* (those) *who* (not to be confounded with the plur. of **quisque** with the same form); **qui**, as so often, implies its own antecedent *eos*, the obj. of **coniecisse**.

60 11 **quo** = *in quem.*

60 12 **esset**: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1; cf. **51** 4. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the MARSHES an *army* could not get access."

60 14 CHAP. 17. **locum . . . idoneum**: see chapter on military affairs, V. — **deligant**: cf. construction of **dicerent, 50** 15. — **ex . . . Belgis**: for part. gen. following **complures**, cf. **50** 13, **53** 12.

60 15 **dediticiis**: i.e. the three states just subdued.

60 16 **una,** *along* (with him).

60 17 **eorum dierum,** *during those days:* see note on **consili, 59** 7.

60 19 **inter singulas legiones,** *between each two legions.* — **impedimentorum magnum numerum,** *a great number of baggage-animals* (i.e. *a very long baggage-train*). See chapter on military affairs, I. 6.

60 20 **neque,** *and that . . . not* (or *no*); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them. — **negoti**: part. gen.; cf. **nihil vini, 59** 23.

60 21 **cum . . . venisset . . . abessent**: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the dir. disc.

60 22 **hanc**: i.e. the first legion. — **sarcinis**: see chapter on military affairs, IV. *e*, and Fig. 14. — **adoriri**: subject of **esse** (l. 20), **quicquam** being in the predicate. — **qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis** (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), *if this should be routed*, etc.

60 23 **futurum** [*esse*]: apodosis of the condition. — **ut . . . non auderent**: subst. clause of result, subject of **futurum** [*esse*]; § 569 (332. *a*); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. *a*; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. *a* (147. *c*. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. *c*. — **contra consistere,** *to withstand their attack.*

60 24 **adiuvabat**: the subject is the subst. clause **quod Nervii . . . effecerant,** *the advice of those who reported the matter was* REËNFORCED *by the fact that the Nervii*, etc. Notice the emphatic position of **adiuvabat,** which may be expressed in English by using the pass. as above.

60 25 **antiquitus**: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England. — **cum**: causal.

60 26 **nihil** (adv. acc.) **possent,** *had no strength.* — **neque enim,** *and in fact . . . not.* — **ad hoc tempus**: opp. to **antiquitus.** — **rei**: cf. construction of **imperiis, 49** 11.

60 27 **quicquid** (cf. **nihil** above) **possunt**, etc., *all the strength they have is in infantry.* — **quo facilius . . . impedirent**, *in order to check the more*

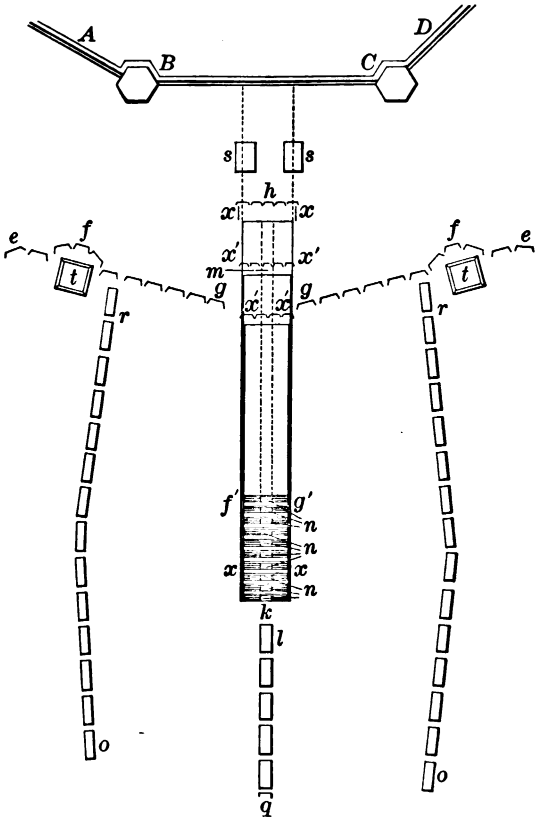


FIG. 120. — GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS.

ABCD, hostile wall; *ss*, *testudines aggestitiae*, protecting those levelling the ground; *hk*, *agger; xx*, *x'x'*, etc., *plutei*, protecting those working on the *agger; efg*, line of *plutei*, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, *turres*, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with *tormenta; ro*, covered way of *vineae*, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of *vineae* approaching the point of beginning the *agger; f'g'*, position of *plutei*, covering the beginning of the *agger; mn*, covered gallery through the *agger; nnn*, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.

easily; **quo** is the regular conj. introducing a purpose clause which contains a comparative; § 531. *a.* (317. *b*); B. 282. 1. *a*; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. *b.*

61 1 **praedandi causa**: cf. **56** 15.—**venissent**: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

61 3 **in latitudinem,** etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

61 4 **ut . . . praeberent**: object clause of result, depending on **effecerant**; cf. **57** 2.—**instar muri**: § 359. *b* (214. *g*); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. *d.*

61 5 **quo** (adv.): i.e. *into which.*

61 6 **posset**: result clause.

61 7 **sibi**: dat. of agent with **omittendum** [*esse*].

61 8 CHAP. 18. **loci . . . quem locum**: § 307. *a* (200. *a*); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.—**castris**: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. *b*); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.

61 9 **aequaliter declivis,** *with even downward slope.*

61 10 **quod** agrees in gender with **flumen.**—**vergebat**: imperf. of description; cf. note on **3** 5.—**ab**: i.e. on the other side.

61 11 **pari acclivitate**: abl. of quality; cf. **53** 11, **59** 17. Notice the opposition to **declivis,** above.—**adversus . . . contrarius,** *facing this, and on the other side* (of the stream).

61 12 **passus**: cf. **53** 2, **57** 10.—**apertus**: i.e. cleared of woods.—**infimus,** *at the foot:* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 290. R.[2]; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.[2]); H-B. 244; opposed to **ab superiore parte,** *along the upper portion:* § 429. *b* (260. *b*); G. 390. 1; H. 434. i; H-B. 406. 2.

62 1 **ut non**: observe that a negative result is expressed by *ut non,* while a negative purpose is expressed by *ne.*

62 3 **secundum**: preposition.

62 4 **pedum trium**: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. **54** 23.

62 6 CHAP. 19. **copiis**: cf. **50** 16, **54** 8.—**ratio ordoque**: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular.—**aliter . . . ac,** etc. (see Vocab.), *was different from what the Belgæ had reported* (lit. *had itself otherwise* [than] *as,* etc.): § 324. *c* (156. *a*); B. 341. 1. *c*; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. *a.*

62 7 **ad Nervios**: § 363 (225. *b*); B. 358. 2. *a*; G. 340. R.[2]; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).

62 8 **consuetudine sua,** *in accordance with his custom.*

62 9 **ducebat**: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, VI. — **conlocarat,** *had put in place* [of greatest safety]; this verb (*conloco*) is often confounded by beginners with *conligo, collect.*

62 10 **proxime conscriptae,** *latest levied.* These were legions XIII and XIV, mentioned in **50** 1, 2, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

62 11 **praesidio impedimentis**: cf. **54** 3, **55** 1, **56** 4.

62 13 **cum,** etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by **interim**, which follows (cf. **53** 8, **53** 10, **60** 3). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.

62 14 **reciperent . . . facerent,** *kept retiring,* etc. (strengthened by **identidem**).

62 15 **quem ad finem**: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were *ad finem ad quem*, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.

62 16 **cedentis** agrees with *eos*, the understood object of **insequi.** Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.

62 17 **opere dimenso,** *having staked out the works.* See chapter on military affairs, V.

62 18 **ubi . . . visa sunt**: cf. **53** 4, **56** 13. Notice that this is purely temporal. Cæsar might have used *cum* with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with **62** 13 shows the difference clearly.

62 20 **quod tempus,** *the moment which.* Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; **tempus** is in apposition with the clause **ubi . . . visa sunt.** The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. **30** 19, **38** 19, and notes). — **committendi proeli**: depending on **tempus.** Notice that the gen. is the regular form to connect one noun with another, though we use various prepositions. — **ut** (*just as*) . . . **confirmaverant**: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.

62 24 **ut,** *so that* (result).

62 25 [**et iam in manibus nostris**]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.

62 27 **adverso colle**, etc., *pushed straight up the hill.* The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition. — **eos**: after **ad.** — **occupati**, *still at work on the fortifications* (**in opere**); *occupatus* is regularly used as an adj.

63 1 CHAP. 20. **Caesari**: dat. of agent; cf. **sibi**, **61** 7. Notice the emphatic position of **omnia**. Cæsar had to do *everything at one time.* — **vexillum**: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 121, and chapter on military affairs, II.

63 2 **proponendum** [*erat*]: second periphrastic, like **agenda erant** above; so also **dandum**, etc.

63 3 **tuba**: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 37. — **ab opere**, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.

63 4 **qui** relates to the understood subject (*ei*) of **arcessendi** [*erant*]. — **aggeris**, *materials for a mound*, an unusual meaning. — **arcessendi**: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.



FIG. 121. — VEXILLUM.

63 5 **cohortandi**: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. *d* (135. *d*); B. 112. *b*; G. 251; H. p. 114, ftn. at end; H-B. 291. — **signum dandum**: the last signal for immediate action; cf. **64** 5. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Cæsar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. **impediebat**). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers who did what was proper without orders.

63 7 **difficultatibus . . . subsidio**: cf. **54** 3, **62** 11.

63 9 **quid . . . oporteret**: indir. quest., object of **praescribere**; cf. **50** 26.

63 10 **quam** connects similar constructions: § 323. *a* (208. *a*); H-B. 305. 1.

63 11 **quod**: i.e. the second of the *two things* mentioned. — **singulos**, etc., *had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.*

63 12 **nisi munitis castris**: abl. abs.; see note on **49** 6. The meaning here is *not until after*, etc.

63 13 **nihil**: adv. acc.; § 390. *d.* N.[2] (240. *a*); B. 176. 3. *a*; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than *non; nihil iam, no longer.*

63 14 **quae videbantur**, *what seemed best.*

63 16 CHAP. 21. **necessariis**: i.e. such as were (absolutely) *necessary;* observe emphasis. — **ad cohortandos milites**: gerundive of purpose; cf. **49** 13, **54** 16.

63 17 **quam in partem** = *in eam partem in quam;* cf. note on **quem ad finem, 62** 15.

64 1 **decimam**: Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. **36** 24. — **non longiore . . . quam uti,** *with no more words than that they should,* etc.

64 2 **retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent**: object clauses of purpose with **ut,** etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

64 4 **quam quo . . . posset**: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320. *c*); B. 283. 2. *a*; G. 298; H. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. *c*.

64 7 **pugnantibus**: sc. *eis,* and see note on **cedentis, 62** 16. — **hostium** depends on **animus.**

64 8 **paratus** (adj.) **ad dimicandum,** *ready for battle.*

64 9 **ad insignia accommodanda,** *for fitting on the decorations* (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the *insignia* of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, VII.

64 10 **scutis**: abl. of separation; cf. **53** 6, **56** 5. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 14. — **defuerit,** *failed,* i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. **50** 25, **51** 5. — **quam in partem,** *to whatever place.*

64 11 **ab opere**: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying. — **quaeque,** etc., *and whatever standards he saw first* (**prima,** adj. with **signa**), *he fell in* (lit. *took his stand*) *there.* The Roman soldier was so well drilled that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.

64 12 **haec** (*signa*): antecedent to **quae,** but implying also the antecedent (*in hac parte*) of **quam** above, for which it is really substituted. — **in quaerendis suis** [*signis*]: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, II; also Figs. 70, 114.

64 14 CHAP. 22. **ut . . . quam ut**: *as . . . than as.* The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

64 16 **cum**: causal; cf. **57** 1. — **aliae alia in parte,** *some in one position, some in another:* § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 35.

64 17 **saepibus . . . interiectis**: cf. note on **60** 25.

64 18 **ante**: i.e. in ch. 17.—**impediretur**: connected with **resisterent** by **-que** in l. 17.

64 19 **neque**: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is **poterant**.

64 20 **provideri**: complem. infin. with *poterat* supplied from **poterant**. The subject of this *poterat* is the indir. quest. **quid . . . opus esset**.—**ab uno** (emphatic), *by only one man*.

64 21 **fortunae**: emphatic, set off against **rerum**. The *circumstances* were diversified; the *fortune* that attended them consequently had various results.

64 22 **eventus** (nom. plur.): subject of **sequebantur**.

64 23 CHAP. 23. **ut**, *as*, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, *having taken up their position*: cf. § 493. *d*. 2 (290. *d*.); B. 356. 2. *c*; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of *as*, **ut** is not followed by the subjv.—**sinistra**: here Labienus was in command.

64 24 **acie**: gen.; § 98. N. (74. *a*); B. 52. 3; G. 63. N.[1]; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2.—**pilis emissis**: see chapter on military affairs, VII, and Fig. 15, p. 22.—**exanimatos**: agrees with **Atrebates** (object of **compulerunt**).

64 26 **ex loco superiore**: i.e. from the higher ground up which the Atrebates had rushed after crossing the river.

65 1 **impeditam**, *embarrassed* (in their attempt to cross).—**ipsi**: referring to **milites, 64** 23.

65 2 **progressi**: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.

65 3 **rursus resistentis** (acc.), *when they again made a stand*.

65 6 **ex loco superiore**: i.e. starting from, etc.—**in ripis** modifies **proeliabantur** (*were continuing the fight*).

65 7 **totis**: emphatic position (cf. English "exposed *entirely* almost").

65 8 **nudatis**, *being exposed*, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were VII and XII, **in dextro cornu**.

65 9 **constitisset**: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a *situation* passes over into *cause*.—**magno intervallo, confertissimo agmine**: best regarded as ablatives of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use *in*, *at*, or *by*.

65 10 **duce**: abl. abs.; translate *under the leadership of.*

65 12 **aperto latere**: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1. *b.*; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436.—**legiones**: the twelfth and the seventh.—**castrorum**: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).

65 14 CHAP. 24. **levis armaturae**: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., *light-armed.* See chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 104, 115.

65 15 **una**: adverb.

65 16 **pulsos** [*esse*]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. **quos.**—**adversis hostibus**, etc., *met the enemy face to face*: § 370 (228); B. 187 iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

65 17 **occurrebant . . . ferebantur**: these *descriptive* imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects **contenderunt**, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on **3** 5.

65 18 **ab decumana porta**: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, V, and Fig. 119. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

65 20 **cum respexissent**, *on looking back.* Notice that this descriptive *cum*-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. **cum . . . vidissent**, l. 26, below.

65 21 **praecipites**: adj., agreeing with **calones**, but with the force of an adv., *pell-mell, in utter confusion;* § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.

65 22 **qui**, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see **62** 9–11.

65 23 **oriebatur**: observe the sing. number, and cf. **62** 6 and note.—**alii aliam**: § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265.—**perterriti**, *frantic with fear*, *panic-stricken* (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of **per-** (see Vocab.).

65 25 **quorum** (poss.) **virtutis** (obj.) **opinio**, *whose reputation for valor*: § 348. *b* (217. *b*); B. 200; G. 363. R.[2]; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

65 26 **a civitate**: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

65 27 **compleri** (*was filling*) . . . **premi . . . teneri . . . fugere**: indir. disc. with **vidissent**. The present tenses indicate what they saw *going on* before their eyes (dir. *complentur . . . premuntur . . . tenentur . . . fugiunt*). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

66 2 **domum**: cf. **56** 17 and note.

66 3 **pulsos superatosque** [*esse*]: indir. disc.; the subject is **Romanos.** —**castris**: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

66 4 **hostis**: acc., subject of **potitos** [*esse*].

66 5 CHAP. 25. **Caesar**: subject of **processit, 67** 9. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are *suspended.* Such a sentence is called a *Period:* § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus: —

Cæsar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Cæsar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank — it happened that he had come there without a shield himself — and advanced to the front.

66 6 **ubi**: construe with **vidit,** l. 8. — **in unum locum**: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

66 7 **sibi . . . impedimento,** *hindered one another in fighting* (lit. *were for a hindrance themselves to themselves*); cf. **56** 4, **62** 11.

66 8 **quartae cohortis**: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI and VII. —**omnibus centurionibus occisis**: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on **omni pacata Gallia, 49** 6.

66 9 **signo**: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

67 1 **in his,** *among these.* — **primipilo**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7. — **Baculo**: this was one of Cæsar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.

65 10 **duce**: abl. abs.; translate *under the leadership of.*

65 12 **aperto latere**: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1. *b.*; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436. — **legiones**: the twelfth and the seventh. — **castrorum**: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).

65 14 CHAP. 24. **levis armaturae**: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., *light-armed.* See chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 104, 115.

65 15 **una**: adverb.

65 16 **pulsos** [*esse*]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. **quos.** — **adversis hostibus**, etc., *met the enemy face to face*: § 370 (228); B. 187 iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

65 17 **occurrebant . . . ferebantur**: these *descriptive* imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects **contenderunt**, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on **3** 5.

65 18 **ab decumana porta**: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, V, and Fig. 119. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

65 20 **cum respexissent**, *on looking back.* Notice that this descriptive *cum*-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. **cum . . . vidissent**, l. 26, below.

65 21 **praecipites**: adj., agreeing with **calones**, but with the force of an adv., *pell-mell, in utter confusion;* § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.

65 22 **qui**, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see **62** 9–11.

65 23 **oriebatur**: observe the sing. number, and cf. **62** 6 and note. — **alii aliam**: § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. — **perterriti**, *frantic with fear, panic-stricken* (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of **per-** (see Vocab.).

65 25 **quorum** (poss.) **virtutis** (obj.) **opinio**, *whose reputation for valor:* § 348. *b* (217. *b*); B. 200; G. 363. R.[2]; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

65 26 **a civitate**: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

65 27 **compleri** (*was filling*) . . . **premi . . . teneri . . . fugere**: indir. disc. with **vidissent**. The present tenses indicate what they saw *going on* before their eyes (dir. *complentur . . . premuntur . . . tenentur . . . fugiunt*). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

66 2 **domum**: cf. **56** 17 and note.

66 3 **pulsos superatosque** [*esse*]: indir. disc.; the subject is **Romanos**. — **castris**: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

66 4 **hostis**: acc., subject of **potitos** [*esse*].

66 5 CHAP. 25. **Caesar**: subject of **processit, 67** 9. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are *suspended*. Such a sentence is called a *Period:* § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus:—

Cæsar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Cæsar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank — it happened that he had come there without a shield himself — and advanced to the front.

66 6 **ubi**: construe with **vidit**, l. 8. — **in unum locum**: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

66 7 **sibi . . . impedimento,** *hindered one another in fighting* (lit. *were for a hindrance themselves to themselves*); cf. **56** 4, **62** 11.

66 8 **quartae cohortis**: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI and VII. — **omnibus centurionibus occisis**: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on **omni pacata Gallia, 49** 6.

66 9 **signo**: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

67 1 **in his,** *among these.* — **primipilo**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7. — **Baculo**: this was one of Cæsar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.

67 3 **iam . . . non,** *no longer.* — **tardiores,** *rather slack* (discouraged): § 291. *a* (93. *a*); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.

67 4 **ab novissimis,** *in the rear:* so below, l. 8. — **deserto proelio,** *withdrawing from the fight* (abl. abs.).

67 5 **neque:** correl. to **et** = *both . . . not . . . and.*

67 7 **vidit:** repeated from **66** 8 on account of the length of the sentence. — **neque ullum subsidium:** the rear guard, legions XIII and XIV, had not yet arrived.

67 8 **posset:** rel. clause of characteristic; cf. **51** 4, **64** 5. — **militi:** dat. after **detracto**; cf. construction of **hostibus, 54** 5 and note.

67 11 **signa . . . laxare,** *to charge and* [thus] *open out the ranks,* i.e. as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and so more room obtained for the use of the sword. — **quo . . . possent:** cf. **60** 27.

67 12 **gladiis;** cf. **castris, 66** 3. — **militibus:** dat. with **inlata.**

67 14 **etiam . . . rebus,** *even in his own extreme peril.*

67 16 CHAP. 26. **constiterat** (from *consisto*): NOT *had stood,* but *had taken up a position,* and so *stood;* cf. **consuerint, 59** 14; § 476 (279. *e*); B. 262. A; G. 241. R.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

67 18 **ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent:** subst. clause, secondary obj. of **monuit;** cf. **6** 10, **59** 10, and notes. — **conversa,** etc., *should face about and charge the enemy in opposite directions* (lit. *bear turned standards against*). The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

67 19 **alii:** dat. after a verbal phrase of *helping;* § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 365. ftn.[1]. 2d par.

67 20 **ne . . . circumvenirentur:** cf. **ne . . . adduceretur, 49** 6. — **aversi,** *in the rear* (lit. *while their backs were turned*). — **ab hoste:** collectively, in which sense the plur. is more common.

67 22 **legionum duarum:** i.e. XIII and XIV; see plan, Fig. 35.

67 24 **colle:** i.e. the site of the Roman camp. — **Labienus:** he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.

67 26 **gererentur:** indir. quest.

67 27 **qui:** i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.

67 28 **esset:** indir. quest.

68 1 **nihil . . . fecerunt,** *left nothing undone in the way of speed* (i.e. *hastened as fast as they could*).

68 2 **reliqui:** a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used with *facere:* § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 369. R.[2]; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340. *a.*

68 4 CHAP. 27. **etiam qui,** *even such as.* — **procubuissent,** subjv. of characteristic; cf. **67** 8. — **scutis**: abl. with **innixi**; § 431 (254. *b*); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 438. 2. *a*.

68 6 **inermes armatis,** etc., (though) *unarmed, threw themselves upon the armed* (enemy). — **occurrerent**: result, like **redintegrarent.**

68 7 **delerent, praeferrent**: purpose clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on **pugnant.** The use of **quo** as a conj. to introduce a purpose clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in **60** 27, **67** 11. Here we should expect *ut.*

68 8 **at**: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

68 9 **tantam virtutem praestiterunt**: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — **insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.**

68 10 **primi,** *foremost.* — **iacentibus** (sc. *eis*, dat. after **insisterent**), *stood upon them as they lay fallen* (lit. *them lying*).

68 12 **qui superessent**: characteristic clause. — **ut ex tumulo,** *as if from a mound.*

68 13 **ut . . . deberet,** *so that we may consider* (lit. *it must be judged*) *that not without good hope of success* (**nequiquam**) *did men*, etc.; **ut . . . deberet** is a result clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of **deberet** is the infin. clause **homines ausos esse.**

68 16 **quae**: the antecedents are the preceding infin. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate *deeds which.* — **facilia**: pred. adj.; § 285. 2, 282. *b* (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar's wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage, — they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

68 18 CHAP. 28. **prope ad internecionem**: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

68 20 **aestuaria**: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

68 21 **dixeramus**: for tense, cf. note on the same word, **49** 4. — **cum**: causal; cf. **57** 1. — **impeditum** [*esse*], etc., *there was no obstacle in the way of* (lit. *nothing hindered to*) *the conquerors.*

68 24 **in . . . calamitate**: gerundive construction.

68 26 **qui . . . possent**: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the dir.; cf. **26** 10. — **quos**: see note on **58** 9.

68 27 **usus** [*esse*]: § 582 (330. *b*); B. 332. *b*; G. 528. 1; H. 611. N.[1] (534. 1. N.[1]); cf. H-B. 590. 2. — **misericordia** (abl.), *mercy:* it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.

69 2 **ut . . . prohiberent**: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of **imperavit**; cf. this construction with that of **uti iussit** just before.

69 4 CHAP. 29. **supra**: see **60** 9. — **cum . . . venirent**, *while on the way.* — **omnibus copiis**: cf. **50** 16, **54** 8.

69 7 **sua omnia**: cf. **50** 15 and note. — **oppidum**: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see Fig. 41). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's "Dutch Republic," iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.

69 8 **quod cum**: cf. **qui cum**, **58** 9 and note.

70 1 **pedum**: cf. **52** 27.

70 3 **conlocabant**: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.

70 4 **ex Cimbris Teutonisque**: abl. of source; cf. **51** 1; see note on **7** 1.

70 6 **impedimentis** refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence the two verbs, **agere** and **portare**. Cf. *ferre et agere, to plunder.*

70 7 **custodiam**, *a guard*, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the booty, etc.; **praesidium**, *a garrison*, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with **milia**.

70 8 **sex milia**: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent. — **una** (adv.), *with it*, i.e. the *impedimenta* — **hi**: i.e. the six thousand. — **eorum**: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.

70 9 **obitum**, *destruction:* the Teutons were totally defeated by Gaius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ (*Aix-les-Bains*), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ. — **alias**: adv.

70 10 **inferrent**: the regular word for offensive war. — **inlatum** [*sibi bellum*] **defenderent**, *defended themselves when attacked.* — **consensu eorum omnium**, *by mutual agreement*, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.

70 11 **sibi domicilio**: cf. **54** 3. — **hunc locum**: the land between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

70 12 CHAP. 30. **adventu**: abl. of time.

70 13 **faciebant**: notice the tense, and cf. **49** 2 and note. — **parvulis**: for the formation of the word, see § 243 (164. *a*); B. 153; G. 189. 6; H. 340 (332); H-B. 207. 1.

70 14 **pedum XII**: i.e. in height. — **XV milium**: fifteen miles (sc. *passuum*) seems large for so small a hill, but no satisfactory explanation has yet been given.

70 15 **oppido**: for the omission of *in*, cf. **castris, 57** 5 and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 43, 92, 93, 120.

70 17 **viderunt**: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal clause with **ubi**; cf. **62** 18 and note. — **inridere**: histor. infin.; see note on **13** 18.

70 18 **quod . . . institueretur**: *because* (as they said), etc.: subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 540, 592. 3 (321, 341. *d*); B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 555. *a*. — **ab tanto spatio**, *so far off* (lit. *away by so great a space*): abl. of degree of difference, **ab** having an adv. force. — **quibusnam**, etc.: the enclitic **nam** gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, *by what hands, pray, or what strength?*

71 2 **conlocare**: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., *conlocaturos* [*esse*]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (**in muro**); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

71 3 CHAP. 31. **moveri**, *that it was actually moving*: for the omission of the subj. acc. *turrim*, see § 581. N.[1] (336. *a*. N.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, ftn.[2]); H-B. 592.

71 5 **locuti**, *speaking*: cf. **52** 7.

71 6 **existimare** (sc. *se*, and cf. **59** 23 and note), *that they thought*: depending on **locuti**.

71 8 **possent**: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3. *a*; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523. — **se** (obj.) . . . **permittere**, *that they surrendered themselves*, etc.: depending on **dixerunt**.

71 9 **unum**, *only one thing*; notice the emphatic position of the word. — **pro sua**, etc., *in accordance with his usual*, etc.; cf. **68** 27.

71 10 **quam . . . audirent**, *which they were* [all the time] *hearing of*: repeated action.

71 11 **statuisset**: for the fut. perf. (*statueris*) of the dir. disc.; § 516. *c* (307. *c*); B. 264. *a*; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. ftn.[1] — **ne . . . despoliaret**: subst. clause of purpose, in app. with **unum**, but really depending on **deprecari** for its form; see note on **4** 17.

71 12 **inimicos**: cf. **70** 10.

71 13 **virtuti**: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. — **traditis armis** (= *si arma tradita essent*): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. *a* (310. *a*); B. 227. 2. *b*; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, *si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.*

71 14 **sibi praestare**, *that it was better for them:* impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause. — **si . . . deducerentur** (fut. condition), *if they should be reduced to such an extremity.*

71 15 **quamvis**: from *quivis.*

71 16 **consuessent**: for the form, see § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aduatuci in dir. disc., and also Cæsar's reply, ch. 32.

71 17 CHAP. 32. **consuetudine . . . merito**: cf. note on **65** 9. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If **consuetudine** were alone we should call it *manner*, "that in accordance," etc.; if **merito** were alone we should call it *cause.* Cæsar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them *cause* if we like.

71 19 **aries**: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 126). — **attigisset . . . dedidissent** stand for *attigerit . . . dedideritis* (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. *c* (327. *a*); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *b*.

71 20 **nisi armis traditis**: cf. **nisi munitis castris, 63** 12.

71 21 **facturum**: i.e. in case they came to terms. — **ne quam**, *lest any:* § 310. *a* (105. *d*); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.

71 22 **re nuntiata ad suos**: the idea of motion causes the use of **ad**; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.

71 23 **imperarentur**: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. — **facere**: sc. *se* as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Cæsar; cf. **59** 23. We should expect *facturos* [*esse*]. The pres. infin. standing for *facimus* of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. *c*); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. — **dixerunt**: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.

71 25 **ut prope . . . adaequarent**: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the *agger* almost to the top. See Figs. 43, 118.

72 2 **eo die**: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.; § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429);

H-B. 439. — **pace . . . usi**: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.

72 3 CHAP. 33. **ex oppido exire**: for the repetition of **ex**, see § 402 (243. *b*); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. 1 (413. N.[3]); H-B. 408. 1.

72 4 **ne quam**: see note on **71** 21.

72 5 **ante inito consilio,** *in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.*

72 6 **quod crediderant**: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the indic.; cf. **49** 12, **56** 23. — **praesidia**: i.e. those stationed in the *castella.*

72 8 **ex cortice**: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

72 9 **viminibus intextis**: in the same construction as **cortice**.

72 10 **pellibus**: abl.; § 364 (225. *d*); B. 187. i. *a*; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376. *b*.

72 11 **qua,** *where;* an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

72 13 **celeriter**: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it *instantly.* — **ignibus**: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

72 14 **eo,** *to that place.* — **concursum . . . pugnatum**: impers. use of pass.; § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. *a*. 1; see note on **23** 1.

72 15 **ita . . . ut,** *they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight.* — **in extrema spe,** *for their last chance* (lit. *in the last hope*).

72 16 **iniquo loco**: § 429. 1 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1. *b*; G. 385. N.[1]; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436. — **qui . . . iacerent**: subjv. of characteristic; cf. **51** 4, **68** 12, **68** 26.

72 17 **in una virtute,** *in valor alone.* — **cum . . . consisteret,** *at a time when,* etc.; see note on **62** 18.

72 18 **ad,** *about.*

72 19 **postridie eius diei**: cf. **20** 5 and note.

72 21 **sectionem . . . universam**: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

72 22 **capitum**: cf. **26** 7. — **milium**: pred. gen., after *esse* understood.

72 25 CHAP. 34. **Venetos,** etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern *Vannes;* that of the Redones, in *Rennes.*

72 26 **maritimae civitates**: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

73 4 CHAP. 35. **perlata**: notice the force of **per**; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.

73 5 **incolerent**: subjv. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.[1] 1); H-B. 539.

73 6 **se . . . daturas**: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.

73 7 **in Italiam**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar's province extended to the Rubicon. — **Illyricum**: this province formed part of Cæsar's government, but he went there only during the winter season; see **78** 9 and **117** 14.

73 9 **Carnutes**: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern *Chartres.* — **Andes** (whence *Anjou*): near the lower Loire. — **Turonos**: preserved in *Tours.* These camps made a cordon from Orléans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the sea-coast. — **quaeque civitates**: translate as if *et civitates quae.*

73 12 **supplicatio,** *a public thanksgiving:* ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Cæsar's party was now all-powerful at Rome. — **quod**: for *id quod;* § 307. *d.* N. (200. *e.* N.); B. 247. 1. *b*; G. 614. R.[2]; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. *a.* N.[2]

Book Third. — B.C. 56.

Alpine Campaign. — The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. The two legions sent by Cæsar under Q. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the Rhone above Lake Geneva; hence this expedition, sent in the fall of 57, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

Reading References on Cæsar's Third Campaign

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 9.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 11.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 289–297.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 304–309.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 4.

74 1 **cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar**: cf. this with the beginning of the second book, **cum esset Caesar in,** etc. There the *verb* is made emphatic because the place where he was has been already named, and his

being absent is the most important idea. Here he is going to speak about a road to Italy across the Alps. Hence his *destination* becomes important and so takes the first place. If this were the first book, it would begin with **Caesar**, the principal personage in the narrative. If his going away were the main thing, it would begin with **proficisceretur**. But as it is, the route across, and so his destination, is here the main thing. Hence instantly the Latin order corresponds to the thought, and we have the form here presented. — **proficisceretur**: the familiar use of the subjv. with **cum** in descriptive clauses; cf. **11** 7, **62** 13. — **Galbam**: this officer was one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general. The emperor Galba was his great-grandson.

74 3 **qui a finibus**, etc.: Geneva seems to have been at the northeast corner of the Allobroges' territory. Between that point and the entrance to the Rhone must have been the country of the Nantuates. On the other side of the Rhone were the Seduni and Veragri. See maps, Figs. 6, 46.

74 5 **iter per Alpis**: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus) at the great bend of the river. This was the shortest route across the Alps at this period. Hannibal is said to have crossed by the Little St. Bernard, and the pass by Mont Genèvre was also in use. — **magno cum periculo**, *but only with great danger*, referring probably rather to the savage tribes than to the dangers of the way.

74 6 **magnis portoriis**, *heavy transit-duties*: **portoriis** and **periculo** are ablatives of manner; for meaning, see note on **15** 25. — **mercatores**: see note on **1** 8.

74 7 **arbitraretur**: informal indir. disc. The form of the original would be *arbitraris* with an imv. in the conclusion, which is absorbed in **permisit** and the following **uti**-clause; see note on **32** 21.

74 8 **hiemandi causa**: cf. **39** 26, **56** 15.

74 9 **secundis . . . factis**, etc.: see notes on **15** 19, **49** 6 (last note).

74 15 **hic, eius**: both refer to **vicus**. — **flumine**, the Dranse.

74 17 **concessit**, etc.: he seems to have deprived the natives of one-half of their village to accommodate his troops, and to have left the rest to them.

75 3 CHAP. 2. **concesserat**: indic. because not part of the indir. disc.; cf. **qui . . . appellantur, 52** 5 and note.

75 4 **montis**: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly upon the valley.

75 5 **id**, *this*, in apposition with **ut . . . caperent**; cf. note on **4** 17.

75 8 **neque eam plenissimam**, etc., *and that not entirely full*. The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the battle on the Sambre (Bk. ii.

ch. 25), and was probably already below the normal strength before the detachments were sent off. — **detractis**: see **74** 11.

75 9 **commeatus . . . causa**: gerundive of purpose; cf. gerund, **74** 8.

75 10 **despiciebant, existimabant,** etc.: notice the imperfects describing the situation; see note on **3** 5.

75 11 **cum ipsi . . . decurrerent,** *when they should charge down from the hills upon the valley.* The imperf. subjv. of indir. disc. with **cum** is here equivalent to the fut. indic. of dir. disc.

75 13 **accedebat quod,** *and besides* (lit. *it was added that*). The subject of **accedebat** is the clause **quod . . . dolebant**; cf. **60** 25.

76 2 **Romanos . . . adiungere**: indir. disc. after **persuasum habebant** = *they had persuaded themselves* (lit. *they had it persuaded to themselves*). With **persuasum habebant** cf. **coactum habebat, 13** 4, **compertum habere, 40** 20, **habere explorata, 51** 8, and notes.

76 6 CHAP. 3. **hibernorum**: see chapter on military affairs, v. In the present case, Galba saved labor by appropriating a part of the Gallic buildings without much ceremony; but he proceeded to lay out the usual fortifications (**munitiones**).

76 7 **perfectae**: referring both to **opus** and **munitiones,** but agreeing with the nearer; cf. **24** 7.

76 10 **consilio**: i.e. of tribunes, cavalry officers, and first centurions.

76 11 **quo in consilio**: cf. **25** 5, **58** 9, and notes.

76 14 **subsidio veniri,** *that any one should come to their aid:* **veniri** is impers., sc. *posset* implied in **possent**; **subsidio** is dat. of service or end for which.

76 15 **non nullae . . . sententiae,** *several opinions* (or *votes*) given by the officers in council.

76 18 **maiori . . . placuit,** *it was determined by the majority.* — **hoc . . . defendere,** *to reserve this course for the extremity, and meanwhile,* etc.

76 21 CHAP. 4. **rebus . . . administrandis**: dat. of the gerundive, expressing purpose; an unusual construction, the acc. with *ad* or *in* or the gen. with *causa* being much more common. Why is **constituissent** in the subjv.?

76 23 **decurrere, conicere, propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superari**: histor. infinitives, describing the scene and implying incessant action; cf. **13** 18, **70** 17, and notes.

76 24 **gaesa**: Gallic javelins of unknown form. — **integris viribus** (abl. abs.), *as long as their strength was unimpaired.*

76 27 **eo**: adv. — **occurrere,** *ran to meet* the danger.

76 29 **alii,** *while others.* — **quarum rerum,** *things of which;* cf. **30** 19, **38** 19, **62** 20, and notes. The gen. is partitive with **nihil.**

77 1 **non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem,** *not only not, but not even,* etc.; we should expect another negative after **modo,** but the Latin regularly omits it where both parts have the same predicate. Note the emphasis on **saucio.**

77 3 **sui recipiendi**: cf. **40** 15 and note.

77 5 CHAP. 5. **cum . . . pugnaretur,** *when the fight had been* (and was still) *going on:* § 471. *b* (277. *b*); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. ii. 2); H-B. 485.

77 7 **languidioribus nostris**: abl. abs., expressing cause.

77 9 **Baculus**: see **67** 1 and note.

77 13 **unam**: note the emphasis, *only one.*

77 14 **experirentur**: note that the histor. pres. **docent** has the effect of a secondary tense on the dependent verb.

77 15 **intermitterent**: a command in indir. disc., following **certiores facit** in the sense of *instructs.*

77 16 **tela . . . exciperent**: i.e. the Romans were to gather up the spent weapons to use them against the enemy, as their weapons were almost exhausted (l. 6).

77 19 CHAP. 6. **quod** = *id quod*: cf. **73** 12.

77 20 **cognoscendi facultatem,** *opportunity of finding out.* — **sui conligendi,** *of collecting their wits:* observe that **sui** is plural in meaning; cf. **sui recipiendi,** l. 3, above, and note.

77 23 **circumventos interficiunt,** *they surround and kill.* — **ex milibus**: for part. gen. after **parte.**

77 27 **armis**: abl. of separation.

77 28 **exutis**: agreeing with **copiis**; § 364 (225. *d*); B. 187. i. *a*; G. 348; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 3. ftn.[2]; in their flight they threw their arms away. Of course the Romans did not catch them and strip off their arms.

77 29 **fortunam temptare**: cf. English "to tempt Providence." — **alio consilio . . . aliis rebus viderat,** *remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met a different state of things.*

NAVAL CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. — The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of Aremorica called *Bretagne*, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Cæsar's narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Cæsar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

78 8 CHAP. 7. **Germanis**: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in

this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the *Seduni* are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

78 10 **Illyricum**: part of Cæsar's province.

78 12 **Crassus**: see **46** 24–27, **72** 24 ff.; for force of **adulescens**, see note on **46** 25.

78 13 **mare**: following **proximus** with the construction of *prope;* § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.[1]; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. *b*.

78 14 **praefectos**: *officers* of cavalry and auxiliaries.

78 15 **compluris** goes with **civitatis**.

78 19 CHAP. 8. **huius civitatis**: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.

78 20 **orae**: part. gen. — **regionum**: added to describe and limit **orae**.

78 21 **Britanniam**: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain. — **consuerunt**, *are accustomed:* § 476 (279. *e*); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. I. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. **59** 14.

78 23 **in magno . . . aperti**: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.

78 24 **omnis . . . habent vectigalis**: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; **vectigalis** is in pred. app. with **omnis**.

78 28 **subita . . . consilia**: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.

79 5 **quam acceperint**: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. I. *a*.

79 6 **quam perferre**, *than to endure*, following the comparative contained in **malint**.

79 9 **remittat**: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in **legationem mittunt**. The dir. disc. would be *si vis*, etc., *remitte*.

79 11 CHAP. 9. **aberat longius**, *was too far off*, i.e. to take command at once in person. — **navis longas**, *galleys*. See chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 48, 51. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see **84** 25–28.

79 12 **Ligeri**: the *Loire*, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. — **institui**, *to be organized*, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.

80 1 **cum primum**: *the first moment when* (lit. *when first*). Cæsar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.

80 3 [**certiores facti**]: omit in translation.

80 4 **admisissent**: indir. quest. — **legatos . . . coniectos** (the specific act): in app. with **facinus**, but the construction is determined by **intellegebant**; see note on **4** 17; **legatos**: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar's *legati* or lieutenants.

80 5 **quod nomen**: cf. **quarum rerum, 76** 29 and note.

80 8 **hoc**: abl. of degree of difference, approaching the idea of cause.

80 9 **pedestria itinera**, etc., *approaches by land.*

80 10 **concisa, impeditam**: with **esse**. They depend upon **sciebant**.

80 11 **inscientiam**: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — **neque . . . confidebant,** *and they trusted that our armies could not,* etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

80 13 **ut . . . acciderent**, etc., *granting that,* etc.: **ut** here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. *c*); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. *b*.

81 1 **posse** and the following infinitives depend upon **perspiciebant,** l. 5.

81 3 **gesturi essent**: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

81 4 **longe aliam . . . atque,** *very different . . . from;* cf. **aliter ac, 62** 6. — **concluso**: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

81 9 **socios**: pred. apposition; cf. **vectigalis, 78** 25. — **Osismos,** etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in *Lisieux;* Namnetes in *Nantes;* Diablintes in *Jablins.*

81 14 CHAP. 10. **iniuria retentorum equitum,** *the wrong done by detaining the knights:* § 497 (292. *a*); B. 337. 5; G. 664. R.[2]; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. N.[2]); H-B. 608. 2. — **rebellio,** *renewal of hostilities* (not *rebellion*).

81 16 **ne . . . arbitrarentur**: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose clause is under the same construction as the nominatives **iniuria, defectio,** etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar's action, and are all in apposition with **multa.**)

81 17 **idem**: subj. of licere.

81 19 **excitari**: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while **odisse** answers to *oderunt* taken as a pres., *all men naturally hate.*

81 20 **priusquam . . . conspirarent**: see note on **38** 27.

81 24 CHAP. 11. **flumini**: dat. with **proximi**, but cf. **78** 13.

81 25 **adeat**: after **mandat**, a command; cf. **6** 10 and note; § 565. *a* (331. *f.* R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.[2]; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *a*.

this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the *Seduni* are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

78 10 **Illyricum**: part of Cæsar's province.

78 12 **Crassus**: see **46** 24–27, **72** 24 ff.; for force of **adulescens**, see note on **46** 25.

78 13 **mare**: following **proximus** with the construction of *prope*; § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.[1]; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. *b*.

78 14 **praefectos**: *officers* of cavalry and auxiliaries.

78 15 **compluris** goes with **civitatis**.

78 19 CHAP. 8. **huius civitatis**: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.

78 20 **orae**: part. gen. — **regionum**: added to describe and limit **orae**.

78 21 **Britanniam**: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain. — **consuerunt**, *are accustomed*: § 476 (279. *e*); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. I. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. **59** 14.

78 23 **in magno . . . aperti**: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.

78 24 **omnis . . . habent vectigalis**: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; **vectigalis** is in pred. app. with **omnis**.

78 28 **subita . . . consilia**: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.

79 5 **quam acceperint**: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. I. *a*.

79 6 **quam perferre**, *than to endure*, following the comparative contained in **malint**.

79 9 **remittat**: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in **legationem mittunt**. The dir. disc. would be *si vis*, etc., *remitte*.

79 11 CHAP. 9. **aberat longius**, *was too far off*, i.e. to take command at once in person. — **navis longas**, *galleys*. See chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 48, 51. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see **84** 25–28.

79 12 **Ligeri**: the *Loire*, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. — **institui**, *to be organized*, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.

80 1 **cum primum**: *the first moment when* (lit. *when first*). Cæsar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.

80 3 [**certiores facti**]: omit in translation.

80 4 **admisissent**: indir. quest. — **legatos . . . coniectos** (the specific act): in app. with **facinus**, but the construction is determined by **intellegebant**; see note on **4** 17; **legatos**: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar's *legati* or lieutenants.

80 5 **quod nomen**: cf. **quarum rerum, 76** 29 and note.

80 8 **hoc**: abl. of degree of difference, approaching the idea of cause.

80 9 **pedestria itinera**, etc., *approaches by land.*

80 10 **concisa, impeditam**: with **esse**. They depend upon **sciebant.**

80 11 **inscientiam**: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — **neque . . . confidebant,** *and they trusted that our armies could not,* etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

80 13 **ut . . . acciderent**, etc., *granting that,* etc.: **ut** here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. *c*); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. *b*.

81 1 **posse** and the following infinitives depend upon **perspiciebant,** l. 5.

81 3 **gesturi essent**: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

81 4 **longe aliam . . . atque,** *very different . . . from;* cf. **aliter ac, 62** 6. — **concluso**: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

81 9 **socios**: pred. apposition; cf. **vectigalis, 78** 25. — **Osismos,** etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in *Lisieux;* Namnetes in *Nantes;* Diablintes in *Jablins.*

81 14 CHAP. 10. **iniuria retentorum equitum,** *the wrong done by detaining the knights:* § 497 (292. *a*); B. 337. 5; G. 664. R.[2]; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. N.[2]); H-B. 608. 2. — **rebellio,** *renewal of hostilities* (not *rebellion*).

81 16 **ne . . . arbitrarentur**: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose clause is under the same construction as the nominatives **iniuria, defectio,** etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar's action, and are all in apposition with **multa.**)

81 17 **idem**: subj. of licere.

81 19 **excitari**: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while **odisse** answers to *oderunt* taken as a pres., *all men naturally hate.*

81 20 **priusquam . . . conspirarent**: see note on **38** 27.

81 24 CHAP. 11. **flumini**: dat. with **proximi,** but cf. **78** 13.

81 25 **adeat**: after **mandat**, a command; cf. **6** 10 and note; § 565. *a* (331. *f.* R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.[2]; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *a*.

81 26 **auxilio**: dat. of service or end for which. — **arcessiti** [*esse*] **dicebantur,** *were reported to have been invited.*

82 2 **Crassum**: cf. **78** 12 and note.

82 3 **Aquitaniam**: in southwest Gaul; see **2** 7–10. These peoples were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Book vii.

82 6 **Venellos,** etc.: in Normandy.

82 7 **distinendam**: cf. **pontem faciendum curat, 11** 5 and note. — **Brutum**: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus.

82 8 **Pictonibus, Santonis**: on the coast south of the Loire (*Poitou* and *Saintonge*).

82 12 CHAP. 12. **eius modi . . . ut,** *of such sort that.*

82 13 **lingulis**: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea several miles.

82 14 **cum . . . incitavisset**: i.e. at high tide. — [**bis**]: apparently an error of the MSS. Some editors read XXIV instead of XII; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.

82 15 **quod . . . adflictarentur**: subjv. as an integral part of the result clause.

82 16 **minuente,** *at the ebb:* intransitive.

82 17 **utraque re,** *in either case.*

82 18 **superati,** agreeing with the subject of **coeperant.**

82 19 **his** (aggere ac molibus) . . . **adaequatis,** *when these were brought level with the walls.*

General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows: "A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an *agger* for approach to the town."

82 23 **haec . . . faciebant,** *this they continued to do:* repeated action.

82 24 **partem**: duration of time.

82 25 **summa**: with **difficultas**; note the emphasis. — **vasto mari,** etc.: in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words are abl. abs., which in expressions of time is closely related to the locative; see § 419 (255) ftn.; cf. H-B. 421. 4.

82 28 CHAP. 13. **namque**; introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, "(but the Veneti had less trouble) for." — **ipsorum**, *their own.*

82 29 **aliquanto**: abl. of degree of difference.

83 1 **navium**: depending on *carinae* understood. — **quo . . . possent**: cf. **7** 15, **60** 27.

83 2 **atque item puppes**, *and the sterns too:* **accommodatae** (*being adapted*) standing as an additional predicate.

83 4 **quamvis**: from *quivis.*

83 5 **transtra**, etc., *the cross benches* (for the rowers) *of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a* [man's] *thumb.*

83 7 **pelles**: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (*pelles*) or tanned (*alutae*).

83 11 **tanta onera navium**, *ships of so great weight.* — **non satis commode**, *not very well.*

83 12 **nostrae classi**: dat. of possession, but translate, *the encounter of our fleet with*, etc.

83 13 **praestaret**, *had the advantage* (i.e. our fleet).

83 14 **reliqua**: here a neut. plur. substantive, *everything else.*

83 15 **eis**: dat. with **nocere**; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 362.

83 16 **rostro**: see Figs. 48, 51.

84 2 **copulis**: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — **accedebat ut**, *there was this additional advantage that*, followed by the result clauses, **ferrent, consisterent**, and **timerent**; cf. **41** 15, **51** 6.

84 3 **se vento dedissent**, *ran before the wind.* The phrase is a nautical one; hence **ventus** is repeated to give the complete expression.

84 4 **consisterent**, *rode at anchor.*

84 5 **ab aestu relictae**: trans. *if* or *when*, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. 2. *a*, *b*; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — **nihil**: cf. **63** 13 and note.

84 8 CHAP. 14. **neque**: see note on **80** 11.

84 9 **eis noceri posse**, *they could be harmed.* Observe that the expression is impers., and cf. **56** 24 and note.

84 10 **quae ubi**: cf. note on **qui cum**, **58** 9.

84 11 **paratissimae**, *fully equipped;* **ornatissimae**, *thoroughly furnished.* The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Cæsar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of

the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar's camp. See Fig. 49.

84 13 **neque satis Bruto . . . constabat,** *and Brutus could not make out.* **agerent** and **insisterent** refer to Brutus and his officers.

84 14 **tribunis militum,** etc.: in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

84 16 **noceri,** etc.: cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

84 17 **excitatis,** *raised.* The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following **tamen.**

84 18 **ex barbaris navibus,** *on the enemy's ships;* for force of **ex,** cf. *una ex parte, ex itinere,* etc.

84 20 **magno usui,** *of great service* (cf. **auxilio, 81** 26), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint at possible defeat.

84 22 **muralium falcium,** *wall-hooks,* long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Fig. 126). The gen. limits *formae* understood, which would be dat., after **absimili.** — **cum** = *whenever, as often as,* and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs **comprehensi adductique erant** being in the protasis, and **praerumpebantur** in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic.; cf. **59** 13 and note.

84 24 **praerumpebantur,** etc., *they* [the halyards] *were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars.*

84 26 **Gallicis navibus**: dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

85 1 **paulo fortius factum**: one of Cæsar's mild expressions for *an act of remarkable daring.*

85 4 CHAP. 15. **cum,** etc.: another general condition; see note on **84** 22. — **singulas,** etc.: i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the enemy's.

85 6 **contendebant,** expressing repeated action; cf. with **contenderunt** below, which describes a single act; cf. **75** 10. — **quod postquam**: cf. **quae ubi, 84** 10 and note.

85 8 **cum . . . reperiretur**: a causal clause: cf. **2** 15, **57** 1.

85 9 **conversis . . . navibus**: i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast, — the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is

just what happened on the day of the battlė. The calm was probably just after midday.

85 14 **pervenerint,** *came to land;* for the tense, cf. **28** 6, **50** 22, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

85 15 **hora IIII** (*quarta*): about 10 A.M.

86 2 CHAP. 16. **cum . . . tum,** *while . . . at the same time.*

86 4 **convenerant, coegerant**: i.e. for this war. — **quod ubique,** *all that there were anywhere,* followed by the part. gen. **navium.**

86 5 **quo,** *whither:* i.e. any refuge.

86 8 **eo gravius . . . quo,** *the more severely,* etc., *in order that.* — **vindicandum** [*esse*] (impers.), *punishment should be inflicted.*

86 10 **sub corona vendidit,** *sold* [as slaves] *at public auction;* lit. *under the wreath,* since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

86 13 CHAP. 17. **Venellorum**: along the Channel coast of Normandy.

86 14 **his**: cf. **classi, 84** 13.

86 16 **magnas copias**: most likely meaning here irregular troops as opposed to **exercitum.** — **his paucis diebus**: i.e. about the same time.

86 17 **Eburovices**: this branch of the Aulerci lived on the south side of the lower Seine.

86 18 **nolebant**: i.e. the Senate. — **clauserunt**: i.e. against the Romans.

86 20 **perditorum,** *desperate:* there might well be many such, as it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

86 23 **loco, castris**: locative ablatives without a prep.; cf. **13** 6, **57** 5 and note.

86 24 **cum**: concessive.

87 1 **eo absente**: i.e. Cæsar. A *legatus* regularly had no *imperium*, or independent command, but served under that of his superior.

87 3 **dimicandum** [*esse*]: impers., with **legato** as dat. of apparent agent.

87 8 CHAP. 18. **pro perfuga,** *in the character of a deserter.*

87 10 **neque longius ab esse quin**: an idiomatic shorthand expression amounting to *that not later than the following night Sabinus would,* etc.

87 14 **iri**: depending on **oportere.**

87 15 **superiorum dierum,** *on the previous days:* see note on **belli,** below.

87 17 **spes . . . belli**: subj. gen. denoting the source; notice that the regular way to express the relation between two substantive ideas is by the genitive. One idea is conceived as belonging to the other in some sense. See note, **62** 20.

87 18 **fere . . . credunt,** *most men are glad to believe*, etc.

87 19 **non prius . . . quam,** *not . . . until:* cf. **81** 20.

87 21 **ut . . . victoria** (abl. abs.), *as if victory were already assured.*

87 22 **sarmentis,** *cuttings*, young growth trimmed off from trees. — **virgultis,** *brushwood.*

87 25 CHAP. 19. **mille**: an indecl. adj. in agreement with **passus.**

88 1 **quam . . . spati,** *as little time as possible*, subj. of **daretur.**

88 2 **que,** *and* (consequently), as often with **-que.**

88 7 Note the emphasis on **primum** and **statim.**

88 8 **quos**: the antecedent is **eorum.**

88 15 **animus,** etc.: cf. **78** 28 and note.

SOUTHERN GAUL. — The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on **82** 3) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

88 17 CHAP. 20. **P. Crassus,** etc.: cf. **82** 2–5.

88 18 **ante dictum est**: i.e. in **2** 7–10. Omit bracketed words in lines 18–20.

88 19 **tertia pars**: these statements show extreme ignorance, as would be natural (cf. the account of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 12–14).

88 21 **Praeconinus, Manlius**: these defeats were twenty-two years before (B.C. 78), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for six years against Rome. (See Plutarch's "Life of Sertorius.")

88 26 **Tolosa et Narbone**: Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a Roman colony established by the policy of Gaius Gracchus, B.C. 118. It became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name, Narbonensis.

88 27 **his regionibus**: dat. after **finitimae,** which agrees with **civitates.** Omit [**ex**].

88 28 **nominatim evocatis**: i.e. veterans who had served their term, but were willing to reënlist. See chapter on military affairs, IV. *a.* — **Sotiatium**: south of the Garonne, southeast of the modern Bordeaux; the name remains in the modern Sôs.

89 5 CHAP. 21. **superioribus victoriis**: i.e. those just related; § 431. *a* (254. *b.* 2); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N.[6]; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1. N.); **H-B.** 424.

89 7 **sine imperatore . . . adulescentulo duce**: an *imperator* is the chief commander of an army, holding the *imperium*, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; *dux* is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent and under the *imperium* of his superiors.

89 9 **perspici**: the subject is the indir. quest. **quid . . . possent.**

89 12 **vineas turrisque egit**: see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 33, 43, 92, 93, 120.

89 13 **cuniculis**, *mines* (lit. *rabbits*), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. The mine was intended to run under the Roman *agger*. The roof was carefully propped up with wooden posts, and these being set on fire, when they were burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

89 15 **aerariae secturaeque**: this seems to mean *copper mines and quarries* (not entirely underground); but the meaning of the words is not perfectly clear. — **diligentia**: the Romans doubtless met the attack with countermines.

89 18 **faciunt**, *they do* (it).

89 21 CHAP. 22. **soldurios**, *paid retainers* (hence *soldiers*), a Gallic word. It is related that these *soldurii* were dressed in royal garments like their chief.

89 22 **condicio**: the same condition of service was found among the Germans (Bk. vi. ch. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage. — **commodis**: abl. with **fruantur.**

89 23 **quorum amicitiae**, *to whose friendship*. — **si quid . . . accidat**: a euphemism, cf. **16** 14.

89 24 **sibi mortem**, etc.: cf. **4** 15.

89 26 **qui . . . recusaret**: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. **5** 6, **51** 4.

89 27 **cum his** (repeated from **cum devotis**; cf. repetition of **vidit**. **67** 7), *with these* (I say).

90 4 CHAP. 23. **Vocatium**, etc.: these were farther west.

90 7 **quibus**, *within which*.

90 8 **quoqueversus**, *in every direction* (**quoque**, the adverb of *place* formed from the distributive *quisque;* **versus**, the adverb of *direction* usually connected with prepositions, as *ad-versus*). It is often written *quoquoversum*.

90 10 **citerioris**: i.e. from the standpoint of Rome; now northern Spain. — **Hispaniae**: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (Bk. i. ch. 1). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at

independence, especially under Sertorius, who defied Rome for ten years, B.C. 82–72; see note on **88** 21. It was also the last stronghold of Pompey's party in the Civil War, till finally subdued at Munda, B.C. 45. — **finitimae**: pred. adj. agreeing with **quae**.

90 15 **consuetudine populi Romani**: a custom which they had learned in the service with Sertorius.

90 16 **loca capere**, etc.: i.e. to practise Roman tactics.

90 18 **suas . . . augeri**, etc.: these infin. clauses are in app. with **quod**. — **diduci**, *be stationed in various places*, to keep track of the enemy and prevent being surrounded.

90 22 **decertaret**: subjv. of result with **quin** after **cunctandum** [*esse*]; § 558 (319. *d*); B. 283. 4; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. *b*; cf. **29** 5, **50** 9, **50** 25.

90 25 CHAP. 24. **duplici**: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three (*triplex acies*).

90 26 **in mediam aciem**: i.e. where they would be kept steady by his legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.

90 27 **exspectabat**, *waited* (to see) *what*, etc.

91 1 **obsessis viis . . . potiri**, *to block the roads, cut off supplies, and win the victory without a wound.*

91 3 **sese recipere**: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

91 4 **infirmiores animo**, *dispirited:* § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441. — **adoriri cogitabant**, *had in mind to attack;* sc. *eos* for obj., and see note on **62** 16.

91 5 **productis copiis**: concessive (= *although*, etc.).

91 6 **sua**, their own.

91 7 **opinione timoris**, *the notion* (they had given) *of their own cowardice.*

91 9 **oportere**: depending on some word of *saying* implied in **voces**. — **iretur**: cf. note on **decertaret, 90** 22. Translate freely, *that they should go to the camp without further delay.*

91 10 **ad hostium castra**: this is the only instance in the Commentaries of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a level stretch between the hostile camps. The Romans always chose their battle-ground with great care.

91 11 CHAP. 25. **telis coniectis** (abl. abs.), *by hurling weapons.*

91 13 **quibus**: abl. with **confidebat**; § 431 (254. *b*); B. 219. 1. *a*; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 437.

91 14 **lapidibus . . . comportandis**: gerundive expression of means. — **aggerem**: i.e. Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the enemy's rampart, as in the siege of a city.

91 15 **opinionem pugnantium**: i.e. they made an impression as if actually engaged.

92 2 **ex loco**, etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

92 4 **ab decumana porta**: i.e. *in the rear*, where this gate was situated (see Fig. 119). The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps, probably under the instruction of the Sertorian officers.

92 9 CHAP. 26. **praesidio castris**: cf. **22** 6, **54** 3.

92 13 **prius . . . quam**: this is often used with the indic. to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by *postquam*. Here the subjv. subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, like the subjv. with *cum;* cf. also **57** 20 and note.

92 14 **videri**: sc. *possent* from the following **posset**. — **rei**: part. gen.

92 18 **per**, *over*.

92 20 **apertissimis campis** (see note on **62** 27): i.e. the broad, treeless plains which abound in this part of the country.

92 21 **quae**: acc. plur.; the antecedent is **milium**. — **Cantabris**: a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees.

92 26 CHAP. 27. **Tarbelli**, etc.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern *Tarbes*, *Bigorre*, *Garonne*.

92 28 **tempore**: cf. note on **91** 13.

93 2 CHAP. 28. **omni Gallia pacata**, *while all the rest of Gaul was subdued.* — **Morini**, etc.: on the islands and low coast lands of Flanders and further north.

93 3 **qui . . . essent**: cf. **89** 26 and note. — **neque**: cf. **80** 11.

93 4 **arbitratus**, *thinking:* the perf. part. of dep. verbs often has a present force.

93 5 **alia . . . ac**: cf. **62** 6.

93 8 **continentis**, *continuous:* i.e. far-stretching.

93 15 **longius**, *too far* (farther than was safe). — **locis**: loc. abl., as usual without a prep.

93 17 CHAP. 29. **deinceps**: i.e. in the days next following.

93 18 **inermibus . . . militibus**: abl. abs.

93 20 **conversam**, *fronting*, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy. — **pro vallo**, *as a palisade.*

93 23 **tenerentur**, etc.: i.e. were just being seized.

93 24 **eius modi . . . uti . . . intermitteretur**, *such that the work was constantly interrupted.*

93 26 **sub pellibus**: the tents were of leather.

93 28 **Aulercis**, etc.: along the Seine, near Evreux and Lisieux.

Book Fourth. — B.C. 55.

Campaign against the Germans. — The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Cæsar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

Reading References on the Campaign against the Germans.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 10.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 5.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 365-375.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 309-312.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 5.

94 1 **ea quae**, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — **Pompeio, Crasso**: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, "Life of Cæsar").

94 2 **Usipetes, Tencteri**: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.

94 4 **quo**: adv. = *in quod*.

94 5 **quod . . . prohibebantur**: Cæsar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. — **Suevis**: this people (the modern *Swabians*) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.

94 6 **premebantur, prohibebantur**: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, *they were being hard pressed*, etc.

94 8 **centum pagos** (see **10** 12): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the *Hundred*, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each *hundred* seems

to have sent 1000 men (**singula milia**) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

94 9 **bellandi causa**: gerund, expressing purpose with **causa**. Observe that **causa** in this use always follows its case; cf. above **causa transeundi**, with a totally different meaning.

94 11 **hi . . . illi**, *the latter . . . the former*. — **anno post**, *the following year*: § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.[4]; H. 488. 1 (430); cf. H-B. 424.

94 12 **ratio**, *theory* (theoretical knowledge); **usus**, *practice* (knowledge derived from experience).

94 13 **sed**: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, *but*, etc. — **privati . . . agri**: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

94 14 **longius anno**: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

94 15 **frumento** (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Ger. 27). — **maximam partem**: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. *c*, 397. *a* (240. *a*, *b*); B. 185. 1; G. 334. R.[2]; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.

94 17 **quae res**: cf. note on **30** 19.

95 1 **quod . . . faciunt**: this clause is a parenthesis; *because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will*, — a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

95 3 **alit**: the subject is **quae res**. — **homines** [*eos*] **efficit**, *makes* [them] *men*, etc.

95 4 **eam**: correl. with **ut**, introducing a clause of result. — **locis** (abl. abs., concessive) **frigidissimis**, *even in their extreme climate*.

95 5 **vestitus**: part. gen. with **quicquam**. — **haberent**, *have*; **lavarentur**, *bathe*: imperf. by sequence of tenses following **adduxerunt**; § 485. *a* (287. *a*); B. 268. 1; G. 511. R.[3]; H. 546 (495. i); H-B. 481.

95 8 CHAP. 2. **eo ut . . . habeant**, *so* (on this account) *that they may have* (some one) *to whom*, etc.

95 9 **quam quo . . . desiderent**, *than that they want*, etc. For the use of **quo** expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 592. N. (341. R.); B. 323; G. 541. N.[2]; H. 588. ii. 2 (516. 2); H-B. 535. 2. *b*.

95 11 **impenso pretio**, *at high cost*. — **importatis non utuntur**, *do not import for use* (lit. *do not use imported*).

95 13 **deformia,** *ill-shaped.* — **summi laboris,** (capable) *of great labor* (gen. of quality).

95 20 **quamvis pauci,** *however few.* — **vinum**: cf. the description of the Nervii, **59** 22–26. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.

95 23 CHAP. 3. **publice,** *as a community.*

95 26 **una . . . Suevis,** extending *from* (the territory of) *the Suevi in one direction.* — **sexcenta**: probably exaggerated. — **agri,** *their lands.*

95 27 **Ubii**: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.

96 1 **paulo . . . humaniores,** *somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race* (Germans).

96 4 **cum**: concessive, as shown by the following **tamen.**

96 5 **gravitatem,** *importance,* referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while **amplitudinem** refers to their great numbers.

96 7 **vectigalis**: sc. *eos* referring to the Ubii. — **humiliores** (pred.): in translating sc. *so as to be.*

96 9 CHAP. 4. **in eadem causa,** *in the same situation.*

96 12 **quas regiones**: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.

96 13 **ad utramque ripam,** *along both banks.*

96 14 **multitudinis**: see **102** 10.

96 16 **cis Rhenum**: i.e. the west side.

96 18 **vi contendere,** *to force a passage.*

96 22 **confecto**: with **itinere.**

96 23 **oppresserunt**: not *oppressed;* see note on **obtinere, 2** 1.

97 2 **priusquam . . . fieret**: § 551. *b* (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. *b*; see also note on **38** 27.

97 5 **partem**: acc. of time. — **eorum copiis,** *on their supplies* (cattle and grain).

97 6 CHAP. 5. **infirmitatem,** *weakness of purpose = fickleness.*

97 8 **nihil . . . committendum,** *no confidence should be placed in them.* Observe that **committendum** [*esse*] is impers. and **nihil** adv. acc.

97 9 **est . . . consuetudinis,** *it is* [a point] *of Gallic custom:* § 343. *c* (214. *d*); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.[1]; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340. — **uti . . . cogant,** etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with **hoc.**

97 14 **rebus atque auditionibus,** *facts and hearsays.*

97 15 **quorum eos . . . paenitere**: § 354. *b* (221. *b*); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); H-B. 352. — **in vestigio,** *on the spot:* cf. **95** 16.

97 16 **serviant,** *are slaves to.* — **plerique**: i.e. the travellers and traders.

97 17 **eorum**: i.e. the questioners.

97 18 CHAP. 6. **graviori bello,** *too serious a war* (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

97 19 **maturius,** *earlier,* i.e. in the season. — **ad exercitum**: the army was now in Normandy; see **93** 28.

97 20 **facta**: sc. *esse;* so with **missas** below.

97 21 **missas legationes,** etc.: these infin. clauses explain **ea.**

97 22 **uti . . . discederent**: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

97 23 **postulassent**: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, B); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftn.[1] — **fore parata,** *should be made ready* (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like *promiserunt,* implied in **invitatos.** Instead of **fore parata,** we might expect *fore ut pararentur.*

97 24 **Eburonum,** etc.: German tribes.

97 27 **permulsis,** *calmed* from their terror (lit. *soothed by stroking,* like a nervous horse).

98 1 CHAP. 7. **equitibus delectis**: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

98 3 **a quibus**: refers to **locis.**

98 5 **priores,** *first,* or, *as aggressors* (cf. the language of Ariovistus, Bk. i. ch. 36). — **neque recusare,** *they do not decline,* followed by **quin** and subjv.; cf. **50** 25.

98 7 [**haec**]: may be translated. — **quicumque**: the antecedent is *eis* (dat.) implied with **resistere.**

98 8 **neque deprecari,** *and ask no quarter* (lit. *and not beg off*). — **haec tamen dicere,** *this however they did say;* supply *se* for subj. of **dicere** and following infinitives. For similar instances, see **59** 23, **71** 6, **71** 23.

98 10 **eis**: i.e. to the Romans. — **attribuant,** subjv. in indir. disc. for imv. of the direct.

98 11 **eos**: sc. *agros.*

98 12 **concedere,** *yield,* as inferior.

98 13 **reliquum . . . neminem**: the position gives a force like, BESIDES THESE there was no one ELSE *on earth,* etc.

98 15 CHAP. 8. **quae visum est,** *what* (it) *seemed proper* (to answer). He probably answered somewhat as in Bk. i. chs. 14 and 43.

98 20 **Ubiorum**: see ch. 3.

98 21 **quorum sint,** etc., *whose envoys* (he informs them) *are now with him to* (lit. *and*) *complain,* etc.

98 25 CHAP. 9. **post diem tertium** (= *tertio die*), i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.

95 13 **deformia,** *ill-shaped.* — **summi laboris,** (capable) *of great labor* (gen. of quality).

95 20 **quamvis pauci,** *however few.* — **vinum**: cf. the description of the Nervii, **59** 22–26. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.

95 23 CHAP. 3. **publice,** *as a community.*

95 26 **una . . . Suevis,** extending *from* (the territory of) *the Suevi in one direction.* — **sexcenta**: probably exaggerated. — **agri,** *their lands.*

95 27 **Ubii**: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.

96 1 **paulo . . . humaniores,** *somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race* (Germans).

96 4 **cum**: concessive, as shown by the following **tamen.**

96 5 **gravitatem,** *importance,* referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while **amplitudinem** refers to their great numbers.

96 7 **vectigalis**: sc. *eos* referring to the Ubii. — **humiliores** (pred.): in translating sc. *so as to be.*

96 9 CHAP. 4. **in eadem causa,** *in the same situation.*

96 12 **quas regiones**: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.

96 13 **ad utramque ripam,** *along both banks.*

96 14 **multitudinis**: see **102** 10.

96 16 **cis Rhenum**: i.e. the west side.

96 18 **vi contendere,** *to force a passage.*

96 22 **confecto**: with **itinere.**

96 23 **oppresserunt**: not *oppressed;* see note on **obtinere, 2** 1.

97 2 **priusquam . . . fieret**: § 551. *b* (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. *b*; see also note on **38** 27.

97 5 **partem**: acc. of time. — **eorum copiis,** *on their supplies* (cattle and grain).

97 6 CHAP. 5. **infirmitatem,** *weakness of purpose* = *fickleness.*

97 8 **nihil . . . committendum,** *no confidence should be placed in them.* Observe that **committendum** [*esse*] is impers. and **nihil** adv. acc.

97 9 **est . . . consuetudinis,** *it is* [a point] *of Gallic custom:* § 343. *c* (214. *d*); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.[1]; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340. — **uti . . . cogant,** etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with **hoc.**

97 14 **rebus atque auditionibus,** *facts and hearsays.*

97 15 **quorum eos . . . paenitere**: § 354. *b* (221. *b*); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); H-B. 352. — **in vestigio,** *on the spot:* cf. **95** 16.

97 16 **serviant,** *are slaves to.* — **plerique**: i.e. the travellers and traders.

97 17 **eorum**: i.e. the questioners.

97 18 CHAP. 6. **graviori bello,** *too serious a war* (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

97 19 **maturius,** *earlier,* i.e. in the season. — **ad exercitum**: the army was now in Normandy; see **93** 28.

97 20 **facta**: sc. *esse;* so with **missas** below.

97 21 **missas legationes,** etc.: these infin. clauses explain **ea.**

97 22 **uti . . . discederent**: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

97 23 **postulassent**: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, B); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftn.[1] — **fore parata,** *should be made ready* (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like *promiserunt,* implied in **invitatos.** Instead of **fore parata,** we might expect *fore ut pararentur.*

97 24 **Eburonum,** etc.: German tribes.

97 27 **permulsis,** *calmed* from their terror (lit. *soothed by stroking,* like a nervous horse).

98 1 CHAP. 7. **equitibus delectis**: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

98 3 **a quibus**: refers to **locis.**

98 5 **priores,** *first,* or, *as aggressors* (cf. the language of Ariovistus, Bk. i. ch. 36). — **neque recusare,** *they do not decline,* followed by **quin** and subjv.; cf. **50** 25.

98 7 [**haec**]: may be translated. — **quicumque**: the antecedent is *eis* (dat.) implied with **resistere.**

98 8 **neque deprecari,** *and ask no quarter* (lit. *and not beg off*). — **haec tamen dicere,** *this however they did say;* supply *se* for subj. of **dicere** and following infinitives. For similar instances, see **59** 23, **71** 6, **71** 23.

98 10 **eis**: i.e. to the Romans. — **attribuant,** subjv. in indir. disc. for imv. of the direct.

98 11 **eos**: sc. *agros.*

98 12 **concedere,** *yield,* as inferior.

98 13 **reliquum . . . neminem**: the position gives a force like, BESIDES THESE there was no one ELSE *on earth,* etc.

98 15 CHAP. 8. **quae visum est,** *what* (it) *seemed proper* (to answer). He probably answered somewhat as in Bk. i. chs. 14 and 43.

98 20 **Ubiorum**: see ch. 3.

98 21 **quorum sint,** etc., *whose envoys* (he informs them) *are now with him to* (lit. *and*) *complain,* etc.

98 25 CHAP. 9. **post diem tertium** (= *tertio die*), i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.

98 26 **propius se**: cf. **41** 10. — **id**: i.e. the two days' delay (expressed by **ne . . . moveret**).

99 1 **trans**: i.e. westwardly.

99 2 **exspectari**: change the voice and translate as active, *they were waiting for.*

99 4 CHAP. 10. **Vosego**, the *Vosges:* in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.

99 5 **parte . . . recepta**: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (**Vacalus**, the modern *Waal*) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).

99 6 Omit the words in brackets.

99 9 **Nantuatium**: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.

99 12 **multis . . . effectis**: translate actively, *making many*, etc.

99 13 **feris . . . nationibus**: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."

99 15 **capitibus**, *mouths* (more commonly, *sources*).

99 17 CHAP. 11. **ut erat constitutum**, *as had been arranged* (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Cæsar's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.

99 19 **eos equites** (antecedent to **qui**), *the cavalry who*, etc.

99 20 **antecessissent**: attracted into the subjv. by the **ut**-clause; cf. **73** 5. — **praemitteret**: used without an object; translate *send word.*

99 21 **sibi**: i.e. the Germans. — **potestatem**: see note on **16** 7.

99 22 **quorum si**, *and if their:* cf. note on **qui cum**, **58** 9.

99 23 **condicione . . . usuros**, *would accept the terms:* see ch. 8.

99 25 **daret**: sc. **petebant uti** from l. 19. — **eodem illo pertinere**, *tended the same way* (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (**eodem** and **illo** are adverbs).

99 28 **aquationis causa**: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.

100 3 **accessisset**: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.

100 5 CHAP. 12. **amplius DCCC**, *more than eight hundred:* § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.[4]; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.[2]); H-B. 416. *d.* Tacitus in his "Germania" (chap. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.

100 9 **indutiis**: dat. of the end for which.

100 10 **resistentibus**: sc. *nostris.*

100 11 **subfossis**, etc.: *after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men;* observe again, as in **99** 12, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.

100 14 **venissent**: cf. **97** 2.

100 17 **genere**: abl. of source; § 403. *a* (244. *a*); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413.—**regnum obtinuerat**, *had held supreme power.*

100 20 **quoad**: cf. this use and construction with that in l. :.

100 25 CHAP. 13. **neque iam**, *no longer:* knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

100 26 **ab eis qui**, *from men who*, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

101 1 **exspectare**: subject of **esse**; note the emphasis of position.

101 2 **pementiae**: pred. gen.

101 3 **quantum . . . auctoritatis**, etc., *how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle.*

101 5 **quibus**: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of **dandum** [*esse*]); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, **40** 20.

101 7 **quaestore**: see Bk. i. ch. 52.—**ne quem**, etc.: cf. **71** 21.

101 8 **res**, in app. with **quod . . . venerunt**.

101 9 **eadem perfidia**: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

101 11 **simul . . . simul**, *partly . . . partly.*—**purgandi sui**: cf. **77** 3, and see § 504. *c* (298. *a*); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.[1]; H. 626. 3 (542. I. N.[1]); H-B. 614.

101 12 **contra atque**, *contrary to what;* see Vocab. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

101 13 **si quid . . . de indutiis**, *whatever* (lit. *if anything*) *they could in the way of truce.*

101 14 **fallendo**: i.e. by another trick.—**quos, illos**: both refer to the same subject.—**quos oblatos** [*esse*] **gavisus**, *delighted that they were put in his power* (**gavisus**, from *gaudeo*). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

101 17 **subsequi**, *to follow in the rear;* they usually went in advance (cf. **99** 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

101 18 CHAP. 14. **acie triplici**: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, VI and VII.

101 19 **quid ageretur**, *what was going on.*

101 20 **possent**: cf. **97** 2, **100** 14.

101 21 **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

101 23 **ne . . . an . . . an**: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to **praestaret**, *whether it was better.*

101 24 **quorum timor cum**: note the emphatic order.

101 29 **reliqua multitudo**: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.

102 1 **ad quos consectandos** (freq. of *sequor*), *to hunt them down.* Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his "Life of Cæsar," writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar's bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar's cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.

102 3 CHAP. 15. **Germani**: i.e. those who were fighting. — **clamore**: i.e. of those who were being massacred.

102 4 **signis**: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 11, 70, 127.

102 6 **reliqua fuga**, *further flight.*

This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.

102 9 **ex . . . timore**, (relieved) *from the apprehension of so great a war.*

102 12 **discedendi potestatem**, *permission to depart.* This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.

102 13 **veriti**: regularly pres. act. in force, *fearing.*

102 17 CHAP. 16. **illa**, *the following.*

102 19 **suis**: note the emphasis on this word.

102 20 **cum intellegerent**: here nearly equivalent to a participle.

102 21 **accessit quod**, *and besides*: see Vocab.

102 22 **quam . . . transisse**, *which, as I mentioned above, had crossed*: see **98** 27 ff. (the conj. *that* of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Cæsar the *writer* uses the first person (**commemoravi**); Cæsar the *actor* is always in the third.

102 25 **Sugambrorum**: living just north of the Ubii.

102 27 **intulissent**: cf. **antecessissent, 99** 20. — **dederent**: observe the omission of *ut;* § 565. *a* (331. *f.* R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.[2]; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *a.* ftn.[2].

102 28 **finire**: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

103 1 **aequum**: pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause **Germanos . . . transire.**

103 2 **sui . . . imperi**: pred. gen. of possession after **esse,** *under his power.*

103 7 **occupationibus rei publicae,** *by the demands of state affairs.*

103 8 **transportaret**: same construction as **ferret.**

103 9 **futurum** [*esse*]: sc. verb of saying from **orabant,** l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

103 17 CHAP. 17. **dignitatis**: cf. **103** 2.

103 19 **latitudinem,** etc.: Cæsar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.

103 21 **rationem,** *plan.* The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 59): —

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (*tigna bina sesquipedalia*), bracèd two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (*fistucis*) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (*trabs bipedalis*), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (*fibulis*) between the logs of each pair, — which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties, — this part of the structure must be taken for granted, — planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (*directa materia*), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (*longurii, crates*) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.

5. Piles (*sublicae*) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (*pro ariete*), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

103 22 **tigna**, probably unhewn logs.—**bina**, *two and two*, i.e. in pairs.

103 24 **pedum duorum**: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.—**cum . . . defixerat**, etc.: **cum** here equals *whenever* or *as often as* and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. **84** 22 and note.

103 26 **sublicae modo**, *like a pile.*

103 27 **ut . . . procumberent**, *so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.*

103 29 **ab inferiore parte**, *downstream.*—**contra . . . conversa**, *slanting against*, agrees with **duo** [*tigna*].

103 30 **haec utraque . . . distinebantur**, *these two sets* (or *pairs*) *were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal* [in thickness] *to the interval left by the fastening of the piles* (**quantum . . . distabat**), *with a pair of ties at each end.* For number of **utraque**, see Vocab.

104 2 **quibus** [*tignis*] **. . . revinctis**, *after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions:* i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (*tigna*) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.

104 4 **rerum**, *structure:* see note on **4** 4.—**quo maior . . . hoc artius**: *the greater . . . the more closely*, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in **fibulis**, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties (as in Fig. 80). But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the **fibula**.

104 5 **haec . . . contexebantur**, *these* (the framework of timber) *were covered with boards placed lengthwise.*

104 7 **sublicae . . . agebantur**, *piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction*, so as to prop the bridge against the current.

104 8 **pro ariete**, *as a buttress.*

104 10 **aliae item**: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not.—**spatio**: abl. of degree of difference.

104 11 **deiciendi operis**, *to throw down the work:* pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. *a.* N.[1] (298. R.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. R.[2]; H. 626. 5 (544. N.[2]); H-B. 616, last example.

104 12 **neu . . . nocerent,** *and that they* [**trunci,** etc.] *might not harm the bridge.*

104 14 CHAP. 18. **diebus X quibus,** *within ten days from the time when.* — **coepta erat**: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; cf. **53** 6; see also l. 20 below.

104 15 **traducitur**: the histor. pres., resumed from **102** 21.

104 16 **Sugambrorum**: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.

104 21 **hortantibus eis,** etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

104 23 **in solitudinem**: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of **abdiderant**; we say *hid in,* etc.

104 27. CHAP. 19. **pollicitus**: this word implies a main clause in the infin., *se daturum,* on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv. according to the ruie.

104 28 **premerentur**: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see note on **32** 21.

105 1 **per exploratores**: cf. note on **57** 3.

105 3 **uti . . . convenirent**: object clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase **nuntios . . . dimisisse,** which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

105 5 **hunc,** etc., *this had been selected about the middle,* etc.: **medium** is used as a pred. agreeing with **hunc** in preference to an adverbial phrase *in medio;* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 325. R.[6]; H. 497. 4 (440. N.[2]); H-B. 244.

105 7 **decertare**: not merely *fight,* but *fight the decisive* battle or *decide the issue.* This force of **de** is very common.

105 10 **ut . . . liberaret,** etc.: these clauses are in app. with **rebus,** and their form as result clauses is determined by **confectis**; see note on **4** 17. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, *having accomplished,* etc. (namely), *inspired, . . . chastised, . . . relieved.*

105 13 **arbitratus**: cf. **52** 7 and note.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. — What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Cæsar sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp

on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a "demonstration." Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97–106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 11.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 375–383.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 312, 313.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chap. 2.
Tacitus's Agricola.

105 15 CHAP. 20. **exigua . . . reliqua**: abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.

105 16 **ad septentriones,** *towards the north* (see Vocab.): cf. **1** 1 ff.

105 18 **omnibus bellis**: abl. of time.—**hostibus**: dat after **subministrata.**

105 19 **si . . . tamen,** *even if time should fail, still,* etc.

105 20 **fore**: the subject is practically the clause **si . . . cognovisset,** *he thought it would be of great advantage if,* etc. In all languages the proper subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is properly "that fact," "that result," implied in the conditional clause. The idiom is the same in English except that we supply "it."

105 21 **adisset,** etc.: the pluperf. represents the fut. perf. *adierit* of dir. disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar's *action* is given in the perf. (**contendit**), his *reasons* are in the imperf. (**intellegebat, arbitrabatur**); cf. note on **3** 5. The conditional clauses **si deficeret, si adisset,** etc., are strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. disc.

105 22 **quae omnia,** *all of which:* § 346. *e* (216. *e*); B. 201. 1. *b*; G. 370. R.[2]; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. N.); H-B. 346. *c*. For the order, cf. **94** 17, **30** 19 and note.

105 23 **Gallis . . . incognita**: probably they were not so uninformed as they seemed; cf. the relations of Commius, **106** 13–17, and of the Veneti, **78** 19.—**neque enim**: neg. of *etenim*, to be rendered with **quisquam,** *for no one;* § 324. *h* (156. *d*); cf. B. 341. 2. *d*; G. 498. N.[3]; cf. H-B. 311. 6. *a* and *b*.

105 24 **illo**: adv.; see Vocab. — **neque . . . quicquam**, *and nothing*: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective. — **eis**: dat. after **notum**; § 375 (232. *a*); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.

105 25 **Gallias**: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

105 26 **vocatis . . . mercatoribus**, etc., *he called the traders, but could not*, etc.

105 27 **quanta . . . portus**: these indir. questions follow **reperire poterat**. Notice that the imperf. **poterat** is used rather than *potuit*, referring to his *repeated* questions to the different traders.

105 28 **quem usum**, *what degree of skill*. — **belli**: cf. note on **41** 14.

106 1 CHAP. 21. **faceret**: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar's mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. *a*; see also **38** 27 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as "before making the attempt."

106 2 **idoneum**: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later. — **Volusenum**: one of Cæsar's tribunes; see **77** 11. — **navi longa**: see chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 48, 51.

106 5 **Morinos**, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

106 7 **quam . . . classem**: § 307. *b* (200. *b*); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6. — **Veneticum bellum**: see Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

106 9 **insulae**: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

106 10 **qui polliceantur**: a purpose clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. part.

106 11 **dare**: complem. infin., instead of *se daturos* [*esse*], a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. *c*. N. (330. *f*. N.); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. N.[4]; H. 618. 1 (537. N.); H-B. 593. *a*. — **imperio**: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.

106 14 **Atrebatibus** (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — **ibi**: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. *a* (207. *a*); G. 611. R.[1]; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).

106 16 **fidelem**, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.

106 17 **magni**: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. *a*); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1. — **huic**: indir. obj. of **imperat**; the order he gave is the whole clause down to **nuntiet**.

106 18 **fidem sequantur**, i.e. *accept the protection of.*

106 19 **se**: i.e. Cæsar, the main subject, as usual in indir. disc.

106 20 **quantum** (sc. *tantum*) . . . **auderet**, *so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture*, etc.

106 22 **auderet**: subjv. of characteristic.

106 23 **perspexisset**: for tense, see § 485. *e* (287. *e*); B. 268. 3; G. 511. R.[1]; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.

106 26 CHAP. 22. **superioris temporis**, *of the season before* (see Bk. iii. ch. 28).

106 27 **homines barbari**, *being* (as they were) *barbarians*. — **consuetudinis**: § 349. *a* (218. *a*); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

106 28 **fecissent**: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.

106 29 **pollicerentur**: the same construction as **excusarent**, above.

107 1 **arbitratus**: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.

107 2 **belli gerendi**: obj. gen.; connect with **facultatem**.

107 3 **has . . . anteponendas**, *that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of* [the invasion of] *Britain*. For the number of **occupationes**, see § 100. *c* (75. *c*); B. 55. 4. *c*; G. 204. N.[5]; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. *b*.

107 4 **iudicabat**: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on **3** 5.

107 6 **navibus**: see chapter on military affairs, IX. — **coactis**, *gathered* from various quarters; [**contractis**] (which may well be translated), *brought together* into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig. 56). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.

107 7 **duas legiones**: the seventh and tenth.

107 8 **quod . . . habebat**, *what galleys he had besides*.

107 10 **ex eo loco**, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — **tenebantur quo minus**, *were detained from*, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. *b*

(317. *b.* N.[1], 319. *c*); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499. 3. N.[2]); H-B. 502. 3. *b*.

107 12 **equitibus**: of these there were 450.

107 18 CHAP. 23. **tertia . . . vigilia,** *at midnight.* The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — **solvit,** *cast off* the ships: a technical phrase used like our *weighed anchor.* — **equites**: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

107 20 **paulo tardius**: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).

107 21 **hora . . . quarta**: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

107 24 **montibus anguste,** etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.

107 26 **dum . . . convenirent,** *until the other ships should come up:* § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is **dum** followed by the indic.? cf. **24** 24, **33** 20, **41** 9.

107 29 **Voluseno**: cf. **106** 2 and 19.

108 1 **ut . . . postularent,** *as military science and especially seamanship require:* rel. clause following **monuit** [*ut*] . . . **administrarentur,** *enjoined that everything should be done promptly.* *Ut* is omitted after **monuit,** as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

108 2 **ut quae . . . haberent,** *since they have,* etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and *b*.

108 4 **his dimissis,** *when they were sent to their posts* (observe the distributive effect of **di-**). — **aestum . . . secundum**: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

108 6 **progressus**: towards the north.

108 7 **aperto . . . litore**: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.

108 9 CHAP. 24. **essedariis**: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 123, 124. — **quo . . . genere**: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, **114** 5 ff.

108 10 **consuerunt**: to be translated by what tense? cf. **59** 14 and note. — **egredi**: infin. for the more usual *ne* or *quominus* with the subjv.; cf. **107** 10 and note.

108 12 **alto**: here a noun; see Vocab.

108 13 **militibus** (dat. after **desiliendum**), *the men had to leap down.*

108 14 **oppressis** (taken with **militibus**), *weighted as they were.* Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main

idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing directly with **militibus**.

108 16 **cum . . . conicerent,** *while they* (the Britons), etc.: a good example of **cum** and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. **11** 7, **62** 13.

108 18 **insuefactos,** *trained to it*, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.

108 20 **generis**: gen.; cf. **106** 27.

108 21 **pedestribus,** *on land*, where the main strength lay in infantry.

108 22 CHAP. 25. **navis**: subject of **removeri**; § 563. *a* (330. B. 2); B. 331. ii, 587. *b*; G. 423. N.[6]; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. *b*.

108 23 **inusitatior,** *quite strange*.

108 25 **latus apertum**: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — **inde**: connect with **propelli ac submoveri.**

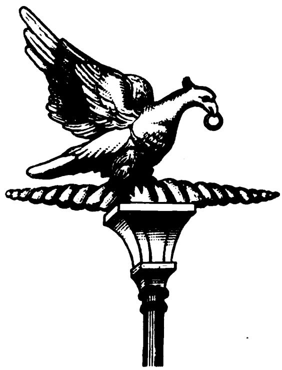


FIG. 122. — AQUILA.

108 26 **tormentis**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 61, 75, 95. — **ac**: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

108 27 **quae res,** *a manœuvre which:* cf. **94** 17 and see note on **30** 19.

109 2 **qui . . . ferebat,** *the one who carried:* the antecedent of **qui** is the understood subject of **inquit**. — **X legionis**: again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. **36** 24, **67** 26.

109 3 **obtestatus,** *appealing to.* Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like "God save the Commonwealth of Massachusetts." The words would be *Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite*, etc. — **legioni, imperatori**: dat. of reference.

109 4 **nisi voltis**: a present simple condition; § 515 and *a* (306 and *a*); B. 302 and 4; G. 595; H. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. I.

109 5 **ego certe . . . praestitero,** *I at any rate shall have done*, etc.: § 478. N. (281. R.); B. 264. *a*; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.

109 8 **inter se,** *one another:* § 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — **universi,** *in a body*.

109 9 **ex proximis navibus,** *from the nearest ships*. Omit [**primis**].

109 10 **adpropinquaverunt**: the subject is the soldiers, implied.

109 11 CHAP. 26. **ab utrisque,** *on both sides:* cf. **utraque**, **103** 30.

109 13 **poterant . . . submittebat**: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — **alius alia ex navi,** *men from different ships:* § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1

(459. i); H-B. 265. — **quibuscumque signis**: dat. after **occurrerat**; the antecedent noun and pronoun (*eis signis*), if expressed, would be dat. after **adgregabat**.

109 15 **ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur**, etc.: a general condition, *whenever they saw*, etc.; cf. **84** 22, **103** 24, and notes.

109 16 **singularis**, *scattered soldiers.*

109 17 **adoriebantur**, *would attack:* to express the repeated action. So, too, **circumsistebant** and **coniciebant**.

110 1 **ab latere aperto**: see **108** 25. — **in universos**, *upon the whole body*. This word means not merely *all*, but *all at once*, or *all together*, and the like; cf. **universi**, **109** 8.

110 3 **speculatoria navigia**: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — **quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebat**: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (**109** 15), **quos** equalling *whomsoever*, or *if any*.

110 5 **simul** [*atque*], *as soon as.* — **suis omnibus consecutis**, *and all their comrades had joined them.*

110 7 **longius**, *very far.* — **quod equites**, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, **107** 9–12.

110 9 **fortunam**: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in "his star," always an important factor in the greatness of a commander; cf. **36** 14 and note on **10** 17.

110 12 CHAP. 27. **quae imperasset**, *what he should require* (in dir. disc. *quae imperaveris*).

110 13 **quem . . . praemissum** [*esse*]: cf. **106** 13–19.

110 15 **hunc**, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence. — **oratoris modo**, *in the character of envoy* (or *spokesman*).

110 19 **ut ignosceretur**, *that their act might be pardoned: ignosco* may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. *f*); B. 187. i. *a*; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

110 20 **cum ultro**, etc.: cf. **106** 10.

110 21 **bellum . . . intulissent**: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Cæsar's expedition for an invasion. — **ignoscere**: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on **59** 23.

110 23 **arcessitam**, *after they had been fetched.*

110 24 **remigrare**, *to move back*, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

110 27 CHAP. 28. **post diem quartum quam**, *three days after* (according to English reckoning): § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.[4] *a*; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 550. *c*.

110 28 **naves**, etc.: see **107** 9.

111 3 **Britanniae**: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362. — **tempestas**: from the northeast.

111 4 **aliae . . . aliae**, *some . . . others.*

111 6 **propius . . . occasum**: cf. **98** 26.

111 7 **cum . . . complerentur**, *since they began to fill:* the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

111 8 **adversa nocte**, *in spite of the darkness.*

111 10 CHAP. 29. **eadem nocte**: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

111 11 **aestus maximos**, *very high tides.* The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

111 13 **navis**: obj. of **compleverat**. — **[quibus, etc.]**: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

111 15 **adflictabat** (intensive), *dashed about.*

111 16 **facultas**, etc.: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

112 1 **funibus . . . amissis**, etc., *from the loss of*, etc.

112 2 **id quod**: § 307. *d* (200. *e*); B. 247. I. *b*; G. 614. R.[2]; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. *a*. N.[2].

112 4 **quibus** = *ut eis:* result.

112 5 **quod . . . constabat**, *because it was understood:* the subject is **oportere**, of which the subject is **hiemari**, *that it was best to winter in Gaul.*



FIG. 123. — GALLIC COIN.

112 7 **provisum**: see note on **56** 16.

112 8 CHAP. 30. **principes**: subject of **duxerunt** in l. 14.

112 12 **hoc**: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on **2** 17.

112 13 **optimum**: in pred. agreement with **frumento . . . producere**.

112 14 **factu**: cf. **3** 23. — **duxerunt**: see Vocab. — **frumento commeatuque**, *corn and other supplies.*

112 15 **rem**, *the campaign.* — **his . . . interclusis**, *if these should be overcome*, etc.: abl. abs. expressing condition.

112 18 **rursus**: not *a second time*, which would be *iterum*, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.

112 19 **deducere**: i.e. from their farms; cf. **110** 24.

112 20 CHAP. 31. **at Caesar**: emphatic transition to Cæsar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. **68** 8.

112 21 **ex eventu navium,** *from what had befallen the ships.* — **ex eo quod,** *from the fact that.*

112 22 **suspicabatur,** *began to suspect.*

112 24 **quae . . . naves, earum,** etc., *the timber and the bronze of those ships which,* etc.: § 307. *b* (200. *b*); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

112 25 **aere:** the Romans used the word *aes* both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the *rostrum*, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.



FIG. 124. — GALLIC COIN.

112 26 **quae . . . usui:** the antecedent of **quae** is *ea*, the understood subject of **comportari**; see note on **qui . . . appellantur, 1** 2.

112 29 **reliquis . . . effecit,** *he managed so that they could sail* (**navigari**, impers.) *tolerably with the rest.*

113 1 CHAP. 32. **geruntur:** § 556 (276. *e*); B. 293. i; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with **dum** when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of **dum, 107** 26. — **frumentatum:** supine; cf. **26** 15.

113 3 **pars hominum,** *some of the people.*

113 4 **remaneret:** indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy. — **ventitaret,** *returned from time to time:* freq. or iter.; § 263. 2 (167. *b*); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.

113 5 **statione:** such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

113 6 **quam . . . ferret,** *than usual.*

113 7 **id quod erat,** *what was the fact.*

113 8 **aliquid . . . consili** (part. gen.), *that some new design was on foot;* infin. clause in app. with **id**.

113 11 **armari,** *to arm:* in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form. — **paulo longius,** *some little distance.*

113 12 **premi . . . sustinere,** *were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.*

113 13 **conferta legione** (abl. abs.), *the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled,* etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

113 15 **una,** *only one.* — **suspicati,** *supposing:* cf. **107** 1 and note.

114 2 **dispersos, occupatos:** agreeing with *nostros* understood from the preceding line.

114 3 **incertis ordinibus** (abl. abs.), *because the ranks were unsteady.*

114 5 CHAP. 33. **ex essedis**: these chariots held six men (*essedarii*) each besides the driver (*auriga*), and were drawn by two horses.

114 6 **terrore equorum**: obj. gen., *the terror that the horses arouse.*

114 8 **cum se . . . insinuaverunt**, *when they have worked their way between:* the protasis of a general condition, **ex essedis . . . proeliantur**, being the apodosis; cf. **103** 24. The perf. indic. with **cum** is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. — **equitum**, the cavalry of the Britons. When the *essedarii* had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.

114 10 **illi**: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.

114 11 **expeditum . . . receptum**, *a ready retreat.*

114 13 **praestant**, *exhibit.* Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry; cf. Cæsar's stratagem in **38** 1.

114 14 **uti . . . consuerint**: clause of result following **efficiunt**. — **declivi ac praecipiti loco**, *a steep downward slope.*

114 15 **incitatos equos sustinere**, *to check their horses in full gallop* (complem. infin. after **consuerint**). — **brevi**, *within a short space.*

114 16 **iugo**: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.

114 18 CHAP. 34. **quibus rebus**, *under these circumstances:* abl. of means. — **nostris**: dat. following **auxilium tulit**. — **novitate**: depends on **perturbatis**.

114 22 **alienum**: see note on **13** 6.

114 26 **quae . . . continerent**: note the subjv.

115 1 **quanta . . . facultas daretur**: indir. quest. following **demonstraverunt**.

115 2 **sui liberandi**: cf. **40** 15 and note.

115 7 CHAP. 35. **ut . . . effugerent**: a result clause in app. with **idem**, the subject of **fore**, *namely, that if*, etc.

115 8 **effugerent**, *would escape:* the future idea is given by **fore**. — **equites XXX**: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

115 9 **ante**: i.e. **106** 13–19, **110** 13–17.

115 12 **tanto spatio**, *over as much ground:* § 425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. H-B. 426. *c*.

115 19 CHAP. 36. **die aequinocti**, etc. (Sept. 24, always held to be a stormy season), *since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were*

unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred Sept. 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

115 23 **eosdem portus,** *the same ports with the others.*

115 24 **paulo infra**: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.

115 28 CHAP. 37. **primo**: adv.; see Vocab.

116 1 **orbe**: the circle was formed by a small body of troops when entirely surrounded by the enemy. It was generally hollow, with officers and baggage in the centre. See chapter on military affairs, VII, last part.

116 5 **horis**: abl. of comparison with **amplius**; the more common construction would be *horas;* cf. note on **54** 9.

116 6 **postea vero quam,** *but as soon as.*



FIG. 125. — CALIGA.

116 12 CHAP. 38. **siccitatis**: see § 100. *c* (75. *c*); B. 55. 4. *c*; G. 204. 5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. *b*; the **tempestates** of ch. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.

116 13 **reciperent**: a purpose clause. — **superiore anno**: see Bk. iii. ch. 28.

116 22 **supplicatio**: cf. end of Bk. ii. The crossing of the Rhine strongly impressed the minds of the Romans at home, and so, too, the passage into Britain, though the last was in fact a failure. But, though Cæsar had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.

BOOK FIFTH. — B.C. 54.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. — The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Cæsar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations. The ships were apparently built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain, which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization. It abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the *esparto*, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Cæsar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III) on the 20th of July from *Portus Itius*, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the northeast, then making his way to his former landing.

Reading References on the Second Invasion of Britain.

Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97–106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 12.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, pp. 199–206.
Froude's Cæsar, last part of chap. 16.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 384–389.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 313–315.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 8.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chaps. 2 and 3.
Tacitus's Agricola.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 6.

117 1 Chap. i. **L. Domitio,** etc.: cf. **94** 1 and note. The consuls entered on their office Jan. 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been Dec. 12. Cæsar's visit to Italy was therefore probably later.

117 2 **ut quotannis,** etc.: cf. **48** 28, **73** 7.

117 4 **navis**: see chapter on military affairs, ix. — **navis . . . curent,** *have as many vessels as possible built during the winter and the old ones repaired:* cf. **82** 7, **11** 5 and note.

117 5 **modum formamque,** *style of build.*

117 6 **subductionis**: the vessels of the ancients were usually "beached" and not left at anchor. — **humiliores**: agrees with *eas,* the understood object of **facit**; see note on **62** 16.

117 7 **nostro**: i.e. the Mediterranean.

117 8 **id**: sc. *facit;* § 319 (206. *c*); B. 166. 3; H. 388. 5 (368. 3. n.[1]); H-B. 222. *a.*

117 9 **minus magnos** seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry "chopping seas" of the Mediterranean.

117 10 **iumentorum**: not pack-animals so much as horses for his cavalry, the lack of which he felt so seriously the year before; see **110** 6–9.

117 11 **actuarias,** fitted with oars as well as sails. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not have oars. See Bk. iii. ch. 14.

117 12 **humilitas**: as compared with the high-banked galleys.

117 13 **armandas,** *fitting out:* see introductory note.

117 14 **conventibus,** proconsular or provincial *courts.* These courts were regularly held in the winter; cf. **48** 29.

117 15 **Illyricum**: cf. **73** 7. — **Pirustis**: a tribe long allied with Rome, inhabiting the valley of the Drina.

117 17 **imperat**: in the sense of *to levy, to make requisition for, impero* takes the acc. of the thing levied and the dat. of the person upon whom the levy is made.

118 5 **arbitros,** *arbitrators.*

118 6 **litem,** *amount of damages.*—**poenam**: i.e. the amount of compensation to be paid.

118 8 CHAP. 2. **Galliam revertitur**: Cæsar's activity during these winter months had been remarkable. He left his troops in Belgium about Jan. 1, travelled all through Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, crossed over to Illyricum, and returned to his army again early in the spring. The distance was at least 2000 miles.

118 9 **circumitis,** *having inspected:* see last note on **49** 6; § 388. *b* (237. *d*); B. 175. 2. *a*; G. 331; H. 406 (372); H-B. 391. 2. ftn.

118 10 **studio,** etc.: i.e. the energy of the soldiers in building the vessels under difficulties.

118 12 **neque . . . quin,** *and are not far from the condition that;* **eo** is antecedent to the vague relative idea in **quin**, etc.

118 15 **Itium**: Boulogne or Wissant, either of which agrees with the account (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23, and note on **107** 6).

118 17 **XXX**: a little less than 28 English miles.—[**transmissum**]: omit in translation.

118 18 **satis . . . militum,** *enough soldiers:* part. gen.

118 19 **Treverorum**: a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts, but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin. Their name appears in the modern *Trèves*. This, their principal town (*Augusta Treverorum*), was long the seat of Roman power in northern Gaul.

118 20 **concilia,** *assemblies*, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or law-making. Cæsar seems to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest.—**veniebant,** etc.: notice the force of the imperf. tense; § 471. *f* (277. *g*); G. 233.

118 22 **dicebantur**: the personal form is regularly used with the tenses of incomplete action.

118 23 CHAP. 3. **Galliae**: part. gen.; § 346. *a*. 2 (216. *a*. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

118 24 **ut supra demonstravimus**: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 11.

118 27 **alter,** *the latter*, Cingetorix, the son-in-law of Indutiomarus.

119 1 **suos**: i.e. clansmen, retainers, etc. Cingetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or friend of Rome.

119 3 **at**: marking the transition to the other man.

119 4 **cogere**: with **instituit**, l. 8.

119 5 **Arduennam**: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron mines.

119 11 **petere**: used absolutely (i.e. without an object); *ask* his decision or assistance. — **civitati**, etc.: they were prevented by Indutiomarus from taking any measures for the general good, and so asked favors of Cæsar for themselves individually.

119 12 **possent**: the reason given by these Gauls, hence the subjv.

119 16 **laberetur**, lit. *fall off* (from obedience).

119 17 **se . . . eius fidei permissurum**, *to put . . . under his protection.*

119 22 CHAP. 4. **omnibus . . . comparatis**, *now that*, etc.

119 28 **quod cum**, etc.: Cæsar seems to think this double dealing needs some excuse.

119 29 **cum . . . intellegebat**, *considered on the one hand.* — **cum . . . tum**: see Vocab.; **eius** refers to Cingetorix, **se** to Cæsar. — **merito eius**, *according to his deserts:* § 418. *a* (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 480 (424); cf. H-B. 414. — **magni interesse**: § 417 (252. *a*); cf. B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 356. 1.

120 2 [**suam . . . minui**]: in app. with **id factum**, and may be translated, though not necessary to the sense.

120 3 **qui . . . fuisset**, *while*, etc.: § 535. *e* (320. *e*); cf. B. 283. 3. *b*; G. 634; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 523.

120 4 **hoc dolore**, *this grievance;* properly, *indignation at this.*

120 6 CHAP. 5. **in Meldis**: these people were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (ch. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (ch. 10; cf. Bk. iii. ch. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).

120 8 **eodem** (adv.) = *in eundem locum.*

120 13 **loco**, *in the condition:* § 429. 3 (254. *a*); B. 228. 1. *b*; G. 385. N.[1]; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.

120 14 **cum . . . abesset**, *while he should be away:* a fut. idea (*cum abero*) thrown into the past by **verebatur**.

120 15 CHAP. 6. **Dumnorix**: as it appears, he had been kept four years under strict surveillance (**18** 11).

120 19 **accedebat huc quod**, *to this was added the fact that:* cf. **84** 2 for a different construction after **accedebat**.

120 20 **deferri**: the present expresses the action as in process of completion, i.e. that Cæsar was making arrangements, or intended, or the like.

120 21 **neque**, *and yet not*, a very common force of the word; cf. note on **80** 11.

120 25 **timeret, diceret**: cf. **possent**, **119** 12.

120 26 **religionibus**, *scruples*, perhaps in regard to leaving the country or crossing the sea; among superstitious peoples such ideas are common.

121 2 **territare**: histor. infin.; see **13** 18 and note.

121 3 **fieri ut**, etc., *it was coming to pass that*, etc.; or may be translated, *that Gaul was*, etc., compressing the two clauses into one.—**esse**: depending on a verb of saying implied in **metu territare**.

121 6 **interponere**: same constr. as **territare**.—**ex usu**, *to the advantage*.

121 7 **intellexissent**: here represents the fut. perf. of dir. disc.

121 8 **deferebantur**: note the force of the tense.

121 9 CHAP. 7. **quod . . . statuebat**: i.e. the severity shown to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted by Cæsar to his state.

121 11 **longius**, *too far*.

121 12 **prospiciendum** [*esse*], *that precautions must be taken*: depends on **statuebat**.

121 13 **quid . . . nocere**, *to do some harm to*: **quid** is cognate or adv. acc.; § 390. *d*. N.[2] (240. *a*. N.); B. 176. 3. *a*; G. 333; H. 409. 1 (371. ii, 378); cf. H-B. 396. 2, cf. 387. iii.

121 14 **commoratus**: i.e. during the delay; cf. **93** 4.—**Corus** (or *Caurus*), the northwest wind.

121 15 **omnis temporis**, *every season* of the year; the windmills on this coast are said to have had their sails set permanently to the northwest.

121 18 **milites**: i.e. the legionary infantry.

121 19 **at**: note its force and cf. **119** 3.—**omnium impeditis animis**, *while the attention of all was occupied*.

121 24 **si vim . . . iubet**: informal indir. disc. The direct would be *si vim facit neque paret, interficite* [*eum*].

121 25 **pro sano**, *rationally*.

121 26 **neglexisset**: the tense depends on **arbitratus**, which is, however, essentially present in meaning; see note on **commoratus**, l. 14.

121 28 **liberum**, etc.: Cæsar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.

122 7 CHAP. 8. **pro tempore et pro re**, *to suit the time and circumstance*.

122 8 **pari . . . quem**, *the same . . . as*, etc.: i.e. 2000, as in l. 5.

122 10 **Africo**: the southwest wind.

122 12 **sub sinistra**: i.e. he had drifted to the northeast (see map, Fig. 65).

The voyage has been carefully calculated as follows: Cæsar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 P.M.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the southwest; but at the same time a tidal current was setting *towards* the southwest. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a northwesterly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the current also began to set in the opposite direction (northeast).

With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by (*relictam*) the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 A.M.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the southwest. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking. Here they arrived at about noon. (von Göler.)

122 15 **superiore aestate**: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23.

122 16 **virtus,** *pluck, spirit.* — **gravibusque,** *and heavy-laden besides.* — **navigiis**: abl. of means.

122 18 **accessum est** (impers.): the landing was probably near Walmer Castle.

122 20 **cum**: concessive.

122 22 **quae . . . amplius DCCC,** *more than 800 of which:* subject of **visae erant.** — **annotinis,** *those built the year before.* — **sui commodi**: pred. gen.; § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.[1]; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340, here expressing purpose; cf. note on **deiciendi, 104** 11.

These were vessels that the rich members of Cæsar's staff had had built for their own use.

122 27 CHAP. 9. **cohortibus X**: i.e. two from a legion.

123 1 **navibus**: dat.

123 3 **noctu**: not **nocte**; see Vocab.

123 5 **equitatu atque essedis**: abl. of accomp. without *cum;* § 413. *a* (248. *a.* N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.[1]; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1. 1); H-B. 420. — **flumen**: the Stour, which flows northeasterly through Canterbury. — **superiore**: the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.

123 11 **ipsi . . . propugnabant,** *they themselves rushed out of the woods in small parties to fight.*

123 12 **testudine facta et aggere . . . adiecto**: from the rapidity with which this *agger* was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate structure required in attacking more formidable defences, but more like that described in Bk. iii. ch. 25. We may also infer that the British stronghold was only rudely fortified.

124 5 CHAP. 10. **tripartito**: i.e. following different roads.

124 7 **extremi**: i.e. the rear of the retreating enemy.

124 8 **Atrio**: who had been placed in command of the camp, **123** 3.

124 12 **concursu**: referring to the violent driving together of the ships after they had broken from their moorings.

124 15 CHAP. 11. **revocari**: i.e. those who were in advance and out of sight. — **resistere,** *to halt:* i.e. those who were near.

124 17 **coram perspicit**: i.e. after a careful and thorough personal examination. Cæsar did not leave important duties of this sort to subordinates. — **sic ut**, etc.: i.e. he sees that the account of the disaster is true *to the extent that*, etc.; **ut** and similar words often have a limiting meaning; cf. *tantum*, meaning *only so much.*

124 19 **fabros deligit**: a certain number of carpenters (*fabri lignarii*) was attached to the engineer corps of the army, but Cæsar seems to have had no regular engineer corps, except that a *praefectus fabrum* was on his staff. See chapter on military affairs, I. 4.

124 20 **legionibus**: abl. of means.

124 26 **easdem quas**, *the same as:* see **122** 27.

124 27 **eodem**: i.e. to the British defences on the Stour.; cf. note on **120** 8.

125 4 **a mari**: probably from Cæsar's place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.

125 5 **huic**, etc.: "The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus (*Caswallon*), who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district, — formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation." (Mommsen.) — **huic . . . cum reliquis civitatibus . . . intercesserant**, *had occurred between him and the other states;* note the idiomatic construction.

125 8 CHAP. 12. **natos in insula**: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.

125 9 **proditum** [*esse*]: the subject is **quos natos** [*esse*] **in insula.** — **pars**: sc. *incolitur.*

125 11 **eis nominibus**: for example, *Atrebates* and *Belgæ.*

126 3 **Gallicis**: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. v. ch. 43, and Bk. vi. ch. 30; see also introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

126 4 **[aut nummo aereo]**: omit in translation.

126 6 **plumbum album**: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin mines inland and iron on the coast; it was just the other way. The tin mines of Cornwall were known to the Phœnicians from the earliest times. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which, if true, would imply a pretty advanced civilization.

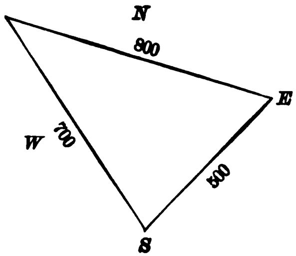
126 7 **exigua**: the great mineral wealth of England was then unknown.

126 9 **fagum atque abietem**: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.

126 10 **gallinam**, etc.: it is of interest to note that these domestic fowls were known to the savage Britons; see Fig. 113.

126 12 **frigoribus**, *seasons of cold.*

126 17 CHAP. 13. **ad Hispaniam,** etc.: i.e. he places Spain west of Britain on the same side as Ireland. For this crude geography, cf. Tacitus (Agric. 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. Cæsar conceives Britain as lying somewhat in the accompanying form.



126 20 **atque,** *as:* § 324. *c* (156. *a*); B. 341. I. *c*; G. 643; H. 657. I. N. (554. i. 2. N.); H-B. 307. 2. *a*; i.e. the distance from Ireland to Britain is the same as that from Britain to Gaul.

126 21 **Mona**: the Isle of Man, or confounded with it; but Tacitus evidently gives this name to Anglesea.

126 25 **ex aqua mensuris**: the *clepsydra,* or water-clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe or aperture something like a sand-glass. — **breviores**: naturally, as this was in the summer.

127 1 **hoc**: sc. *latus.*

127 6 CHAP. 14. **interiores**: the ruder barbarians here described are probably represented by the later *Picts,* whose name *Picti* (cf. *picti, painted*) has been thought to denote their woad-staining. The woad plant, *Isatis tinctoria,* akin to the common *shepherd's purse,* is still used somewhat for dyeing.

127 11 **parte**: § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. ii (419. ii); H-B. 443.

127 13 **sed qui sunt,** etc., *but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first espoused.*

127 14 **quo** (adv.) here stands for *ad quos:* § 321. *a* (207. *a*); G. 611. R.[1]; H. 307. 4 (304. ii. 3. N.); H-B. 284. 10.

127 16 CHAP. 15. **essedarii**: see Bk. iv. ch. 33.

127 18 **fuerint**: for tense, see **85** 14 and note.

127 25 **atque his,** *and these, too.* — **primis**: the first cohorts had the best soldier; see chapter on military affairs, I. 7 (last part).

127 27 **per medios**: i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

128 11 CHAP. 16. [**equestris,** etc.]: this parenthesis may be translated. — **cedentibus et insequentibus** (abl. abs.): with *eis* understood, referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

128 14 **proeliarentur**: this clause is conceived as a result, and hence is expressed by **ut** with the subjv. instead of the usual construction with *quod* and indic.; cf. **120** 19 and note. — **stationes,** *supports.* It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their

mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (*phalanges*) of the Gauls and Germans.

128 24 CHAP. 17. **quoad**: followed by the indic.; cf. **100** 2 and note.

128 25 **subsidio confisi**: cf. **91** 13.

128 27 **sui conligendi**: cf. **77** 3, **115** 2.

129 1 **facultatem**: cf. note on **16** 7. — **ex**, *directly after.*

129 5 CHAP. 18. **uno loco**: somewhere between Brentford and the mouth of the Wey. The details of Cæsar's march are here uncertain.

129 13 **capite solo**: a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Merivale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises of the Roman legionary. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress, while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land. Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

130 1 CHAP. 19. **supra**: i.e. **129** 1–3.

130 3 **servabat, excedebat**, etc.: note the imperfects, expressing customary and repeated action, *he used to* ; cf. **121** 8.

130 4 **locis, regionibus**: loc. abl. — **locisque impeditis ac silvestribus**: from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very narrow, to pass through the forest roads, and had high wheels, to go easily over rough ground.

130 7 **cum . . . eiecerat**: a general condition; see note on **cum, 84** 22. Other instances of general conditions occur in **103** 24, **109** 15, **110** 3.

130 9 **emittebat, confligebat, prohibebat**: the subj. is **Cassivellaunus.**

130 10 **hoc . . . prohibebat**, *by fear of this kept them* [sc. *eos*] *from roving too widely.*

130 11 **relinquebatur ut**, *the consequence was that.*

130 12 **discedi**: impersonal.

130 13 **tantum . . . quantum**: correlatives; see Vocab.

130 14 **noceretur**: impers., governs the dat. **hostibus**; cf. note on **56** 24.

130 16 CHAP. 20. **Trinobantes**: in Essex. Their chief place was *Camulodunum*, later *Colonia Castrum*, now Colchester. This defection was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.

130 18 **[Galliam]**: omit in translation.

130 23 **mittat**: sc. *aliquem.*

130 24 **his imperat obsides**: see note on **117** 17.

131 2 CHAP. 21. **Cenimagni**, etc.: these were petty populations of the vicinity.

131 4 **oppidum Cassivellauni**: thought to be the modern St. Albans.

131 6 **oppidum**, etc.: the Britons, like the Germans, did not live in towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack.

131 7 **cum**, *whenever*, another general condition: cf. **130** 7 and note. The preceding case refers to repeated action in past time, this to the present of a general truth. Notice the difference between these cases and the regular descriptive **cum** in narration.

131 9 **consuerunt**: what tense in translation?

131 14 **multi**: i.e. the people, not the cattle.

131 17 CHAP. 22. **supra**: see **127** 5.

131 18 **regionibus**: implying that Kent (*Cantium*) was divided into four recognized military commands.

131 20 **castra navalia**: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships; see **124** 21–25.

131 28 **neque multum aestatis**: Cæsar had now been in Britain about two months (cf. ch. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III for his sailing and return are July 20 and Sept. 21.

131 29 **extrahi**, *protracted*, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just learned of the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey's wife, which threatened the dissolution of the triumvirate and gave him strong reason for wishing to be nearer home.

132 1 **vectigalis** (part. gen.): this was mere form, as no means were left to enforce the tribute.

132 7 CHAP. 23. **commeatibus**: has its original meaning; see Vocab.

132 8 **accidit uti**, etc.: cf. **130** 11 for a similar construction.

132 10 **portaret, remitterentur**: subjv. of characteristic.

133 1 [et]: omit. — **prioris commeatus**, etc., *after the soldiers of the first trip had been landed.*

133 2 **quas**: refers back to **ex eis**. — **faciendas curaverat**, *had had made:* cf. **82** 7, **11** 5. Labienus had been ordered to build these directly after the big storm; see **124** 20.

133 3 **locum**: i.e. Britain. — **caperent, reicerentur**: in the same construction as **desideraretur**.

133 6 **aequinoctium**: cf. **115** 19 and note.

FRESH RISINGS OF THE GAULS. — The remaining events of this campaign are among the most critical of the entire Gallic War, and show to what extreme peril Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his expedition across the Channel. They serve, besides, to bring out in very marked relief the personal qualities of his several lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting of the eight. The Romans did not visit Britain again till A.D. 43, in the reign of Claudius.

READING REFERENCES ON THE GALLIC REBELLIONS.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 13.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13 (first part).
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 17.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 76–93.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 390–398.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 317–323.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 8 (last part); see also Appendix D, on Cæsar's Lieutenants.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 6 (last part).

133 10 CHAP. 24. **Samarobrivae** (locative): the chief town of the Ambiani, whose name is found in the modern *Amiens*.

133 12 **aliter ac**: i.e. distributing them where supplies were most abundant, not where there was most danger of disturbance, as in previous years. The location of these camps has been much disputed. The most common view puts Fabius at St. Pol, Cicero at Charleroi (or possibly Namur), Roscius at Séez in Normandy, Labienus on the Ourthe (in Luxembourg), Crassus, Plancus, and Trebonius not far from Amiens, Sabinus and Cotta at Tongres. These places do not quite agree with the description unless we take the hundred mile limit (**133** 29) as the radius of a circle, a meaning which seems improbable. But this division is perhaps near enough.

133 15 **ducendam**: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. **faciendas**, l. 2; § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.[2]); H-B. 605. 2. — **Q. Ciceroni**: the younger brother of the orator, and a man of tougher fibre and of great military and executive ability. He had joined Cæsar's army that very year and had taken part in the expedition to Britain. Quintus, like his brother Marcus, sided with Pompey in the Civil War, and met a similar fate in the same year (B.C. 43) at the command of the triumvirs.

133 20 **proxime**, *latest*. This was the 14th legion, enrolled in B.C. 57.

133 21 **cohortis**: these must have been troops not organized into a legion, probably provincials.

133 25 **inopiae**: dat. with **mederi**; § 367. *b* (227. *b*); G. 346. N.[4]; H. 385. ii. N.[3]; H-B. 364. 5.

133 29 **quoad . . . cognovisset**: cf. **128** 24. Why is the indic. used there and the subjv. here?

134 3 CHAP. 25. **Carnutibus**: in the vicinity of Chartres.

134 4 **huic**: indir. obj. of **restituerat**.

134 7 **restituerat**: this act of restoring chiefs exiled by the democracy of the tribes was peculiarly odious to the Gauls, as here appears.

134 8 **auctoribus** (abl. abs.): i.e. either at their instigation, or, at any rate, with their consent.

134 12 **quorum**: the antecedent is **hos**.

134 13 **comprehensos . . . mittere**: cf. **5** 5, **55** 3, and notes.

134 14 **[legatis quaestoribusque]**: omit in translation.

134 17 CHAP. 26. **diebus . . . quibus,** *within a fortnight after*, etc.

134 19 **cum**: concessive; cf. **122** 20. — **Sabino**: § 367. *a*. N.[2] (227. N.[2]); H-B. 362. ftn.[3] *b*.

134 20 **praesto,** *in attendance upon*, as obedient subjects.

135 1 **Indutiomari**: for the bitter offence given him by Cæsar, see above, ch. 4.

135 2 **subitoque,** etc., *and after suddenly surprising the wood-cutters.*

135 7 **aliqui**: the usual form is *aliquis;* § 151. *e* (105. *d*); B. 252. 2: G. 107; H. 187. N.[1] (190. N.[2]); H-B. 142.

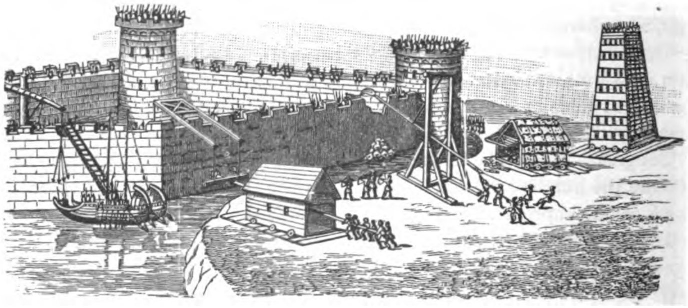


FIG. 126. — OPPUGNATIO.

NOTE. — This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no *agger* is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

135 12 CHAP. 27. **eques,** *a knight*, a member of the equestrian order, the commercial aristocracy of Rome.

135 19 **Aduatuci**: subject of **tenuissent**.

135 20 **fecerit**: by sequence of tense we should have *fecisset*, but see note on **51** 11. Note several similar cases in this speech.

135 22 **imperia,** *sovereignty*. The word is used in English abstractly, referring to all cases; while in Latin each act of sovereignty is regarded as a separate *imperium*. Observe the emphasis on **sua**, *that* HIS OWN *sovereignty was of such a nature.*

135 26 **humilitate,** *weakness.*

135 27 **rerum**: § 349. *a* (218. *a*); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

135 28 **omnibus . . . oppugnandis**: dat. of gerundive expressing purpose; see **76** 21 and note.

136 1 **non . . . potuisse,** *that Gauls could not easily say "no" to Gauls.*

136 4 **pro pietate**: *pietas* implies the love of a child to a parent; here, of course, to his native land, *patriotism.*

136 5 **rationem offici,** *regard to his duty.*

136 8 **hanc**: i.e. **manum.** — **ipsorum,** etc.: i.e. it was for themselves to consider.

136 13 **quod cum faciat,** *in so doing*, subjv. merely because of indir. disc.

136 14 **hibernis**: i.e. the burden of providing grain for the soldiers.

136 21 CHAP. 28. **ausam** [*esse*], with **civitatem.** — **consilium**: as the two legates had one and one-half legions under their command, the council of war contained, besides the legates, nine military tribunes, and either nine or six centurions, according as the half legion did or did not include the first cohort. Thus there were in the council either twenty or seventeen persons.

136 26 [**magnas**]: may be omitted.

136 27 **quod . . . sustinuerint**: in apposition with **rem.**

137 2 **quid esse,** etc.: see note on **12** 8. — **auctore hoste,** *on the advice of the enemy.*

137 6 CHAP. 29. **proximis,** *nearest.* This camp was farthest off from the main body, and hence if the nearest camps should be taken, the forces could not easily withdraw in safety.

137 7 **se**: i.e. Titurius.

137 9 **fuisse capturos**: in direct, *cepissent*, a contrary-to-fact apodosis; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

137 10 **nostri**: obj. gen.; § 295. *b* (194. *b*); B. 242. 2; G. 304. 2; H. 500. 4 (446. N.[3]); H-B. 254. *a.* — **venturos esse**: for *venirent* of the direct, the apodosis of a pres. condition contrary to fact. We should expect *venturos fuisse:* § 589. N.[3] (337. *b.* N.[3]); B. 321. 1. *a*; G. 659; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581. *b.* 1.

137 11 **auctorem**: cf. **auctore hoste,** l. 2.

137 12 **Ariovisti mortem**: he had, however, escaped after the battle (Bk. i. ch. 53).

137 13 **ardere,** *is in a blaze.*

137 16 **persuaderet**: direct, *persuadeat*, a deliberative question.

137 18 **esset**: direct, *erit*, a fut. protasis; § 516. *a* (307. *a*); B. 302. 1; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. *a.*

137 20 **consentiret**: pres. ind. in direct, a simple condition. — **esse . . positam**: direct, *est posita*, a past apodosis with a pres. protasis.

137 22 **habere**: cf. **esse,** l. 2.

137 23 **esset**: direct, *est*.

137 26 CHAP. 30. **primis ordinibus** = *primorum ordinum centurionibus*.

137 27 **id**: sc. *he said* from preceding **inquit**.

138 2 **ex vobis**: instead of a part. gen. after **gravissime**. — **hi**: i.e. the **magna pars militum** who were listening.

138 3 **acciderit**, etc.: a more vivid fut. condition; for the tense, see § 516. *c* (307. *c*); B. 303; G. 244; H. 540. 2 (473); cf. H-B. 577. *a*.

138 4 **liceat**, etc.: a less vivid fut. condition.

138 8 CHAP. 31. **comprehendunt**: i.e. the centurions. — **utrumque**: i.e. Sabinus and Cotta.

138 12 **res disputatione perducitur**, *the question is debated at length*.

138 13 **dat manus** (a formal sign of surrender), *gives in*.

138 14 **pronuntiatur**, *word is given out*.

138 15 **ituros** [*esse*]: sc. *eos*; see second note on **59** 23.

138 18 [**omnia**, etc.]: this passage has been questioned, but it seems to mean that all the measures taken were devised as if on purpose to make it dangerous to remain, and to increase the danger of departure through the fatigue and demoralization of the men.

138 20 **ut quibus**, etc., *as if they were convinced that*: § 535. *e*, 372 (320. *e*, 230); B. 283. 3. *a*, 187. ii. *b*; G. 634, 217; H. 586. ii, 426. 3 (515. iii, 384. 5); H-B. 523, 364. 2.

138 22 [**Ambiorige**]: omit in translation. — **longissimo**: the line of march was very long, as it might well be under a guaranteed safe conduct, and consequently very weak.

138 24 CHAP. 32. **at**: note the force and cf. **119** 3, **121** 19. — **fremitu vigiliisque**: almost a hendiadys, i.e. the noise caused by the soldiers who took no rest; cf. **28** 25 and note.

138 26 **a milibus**, etc., *about two miles off*. On this use of **a**, cf. **54** 9.

138 28 **convallem**: a valley inclosed on all sides. In such a place of course the Romans were at a disadvantage.

139 1 **ex utraque**, etc.: at each end, attacking the advance which was coming up out of the glen, and the rear from the heights at the other end.

139 5 CHAP. 33. **tum demum**: implying, as always, "not till then"; here with the further idea that he ought to have roused himself before. — **providisset**: a rel. clause of cause; § 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523. — **trepidare**: histor. infin.; for use, cf. note on **flagitare**, **13** 18.

139 9 **cogitasset**: cf. **providisset**, l. 5.

139 14 **quoque**: from *quisque*.

139 15 **possent**: the subj. is Cotta and Titurius.

139 16 **in orbem**: see note on **116** 1. A modern army would form a hollow square. The *orbis* also was hollow, having room within for the higher officers, the non-combatants, the wounded, etc.

140 5 **accidit . . . ut**, etc. (cf. **132** 8): this clause is divided into three parts with the verbs **discederent, properaret, complerentur**, the first two being connected by **-que (quaeque)**.

140 8 **fletu**: not from cowardice. These men fought with splendid courage. It was their way of showing their feelings.

140 9 CHAP. 34. **at barbaris**, etc.: showing the contrast with the behavior of the Romans about their valuables.

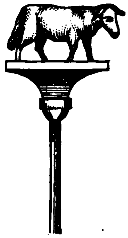


FIG. 127.—SIGNUM.

140 13 **existimarent**: for imv. of dir. disc.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538.—[**erant**, etc.]: these bracketed words may be omitted, as also in the passage below.

140 14 **a fortuna**: i.e. the goddess fortune, as is shown by the preposition.

140 15 **quotiens . . . procurrerat, . . . cadebat**: a general condition referring to past time; cf. **130** 7, **131** 7.

140 21 **ad signa recipientis**: the standards remained fixed during these sorties, thus indicating the alignment of the circle.

140 22 CHAP. 35. **cum . . . excesserat**, *as often as*, etc., equivalent to a general condition; cf. note on l. 15 above: § 518. *b* (309. *c*); B. 288. 3; G. 584; H. 601. 4 (521. ii. 1), with last example.

140 24 **eam partem**, etc.: when the soldiers from one side of the *orbis* made a sally, that side, of course, had no defenders.

140 27 **proximi**, etc.: only those immediately opposite the sally had fled, and so the party on its return was attacked at once by the enemy remaining on both flanks and also by the late fugitives.

141 1 **vellent**: not contrary to fact, but a future condition thrown into the past; § 516. *f* (307. *f*); H-B. 580. *b*.

141 4 **resistebant**, *they kept on fighting*. Note the force of the tense.

141 6 **esset**: characteristic subjv.

141 7 **Balventio**: connect with **femur**; dat. of reference where we might have expected a gen. of possession.—**qui . . . duxerat**: as he *had been* chief centurion the year before, we infer that he was now serving in the corps of veterans called *evocati*; see chapter on military affairs, IV. *a*.

141 15 CHAP. 36. **rogatum**: supine; cf. **26** 15.

142 18 **ipsi vero**, etc., *that to him, certainly, no harm will be done;* **nihil** is acc. of specif. and **nocitum iri** impers. Instead of the latter we should expect *fore ut noceatur*.

141 21 **sperare se**, etc., *that he hopes to be able to obtain a request from him so far as pertains to their own safety and that of the soldiers.*

141 24 CHAP. 37. **quos . . . tribunos militum** = *eos tribunos militum quos.*

141 26 **Ambiorigem**: cf. **41** 10 and note.

142 1 **condicionibus**: i.e. of surrender.

142 8 **aquilam**: he thus saved the standard from disgrace, — a characteristic and truly heroic act.

142 11 **se interficiunt**: a death worthy of Roman soldiers.

This was the most serious loss that Cæsar sustained during the Gallic War. There must have been at least 5000 men in the ill-fated command of Cotta and Sabinus. From this time on Cæsar makes it his duty to avenge his massacred legion, and he carries on a relentless warfare against the Eburones and Ambiorix, until the former are exterminated and the latter becomes a hunted fugitive.

142 17 CHAP. 38. **neque noctem neque diem intermittit**: Ambiorix marched only one night and one day. More than that would have been expressed by *nocturnis diurnisque itineribus*: cf. **33** 16.

142 19 **in Nervios**: see introductory note to Bk. ii and note on **68** 18.

142 23 **nihil esse negoti**, *that it was a matter of no difficulty.* — **oppressam . . . interfici**: render by two verbs, *to be surprised and slain*; § 496. N.[2] (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R.[1]; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1.

142 27 CHAP. 39. **qui omnes**: why not *omnes qui?* See note on **30** 19.

143 1 **advolant**: note the speed expressed in this verb.

143 3 **ut non nulli**, etc.: cf. **135** 2.

143 13 CHAP. 40. **pertulissent**: for the fut. perf. implied indir. disc.

144 2 **turres**: these were open at the sides and behind, solidly timbered towards the enemy, and their object was, like that of the modern bastion, to shorten the length of wall to be occupied by the defence as well as to give the soldiers a still higher position from which to throw their missiles. In this case they were probably not more than three stories, or perhaps thirty feet, high. Each story was floored with a platform on which the soldiers stood. The front and sides of each platform were protected by a parapet (*loricae*) of hurdles, to the height of about four feet. Above this projected a sort of battlement of stakes (*pinnae*), or of hurdles standing erect, with spaces at intervals, through which the spears were hurled. The structure was square, of about ten feet on a side. Of these towers it appears that on the first night only the framework was erected. On succeeding nights they were completed. Cf. Fig. 103.

144 10 **praeustae sudes**: heavy stakes or piles of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the *tormenta;* see Fig. 61. — **muralium pilorum**: javelins heavier than usual for the defence of the wall.

144 11 **contabulantur,** *were floored with plank.* Possibly also the towers were connected by galleries, one for each story.

144 12 **cum**: concessive.

144 14 **concursu ac vocibus,** *by the spontaneous movement and entreaties.*

144 18 CHAP. 41. **potestate**: see note on **16** 7.

144 23 **errare . . . si . . . sperent**: simple condition, indir. disc.; cf. **137** 19. — **qui**: referring to **eis**.

144 24 **hoc**: with **animo**.

144 25 **ut**, etc.: i.e. they will be friends, but not subjects; they only refuse to admit a standing military force.

145 2 **se adiutore utantur** (for the imv. of dir. disc.), *they may use him as an advocate.*

145 5 CHAP. 42. **hac spe**: i.e. of betraying Cicero as they had betrayed Sabinus. — **fossa pedum quindecim**: a ditch 15 ft. wide would be 11 ft. deep.

145 8 **ab his**: i.e. the captives. — **nulla . . . copia,** *having no supply,* etc. (a sort of abl. abs.). "They were not yet used, like the Romans, to fight with the spade."

145 10 **manibus sagulisque . . . exhaurire,** *to dig out with their hands, and* [carry] *in their cloaks.* A kind of *zeugma*, § 640 (385); B. 374. 2. *a*; G. 690; H. 751. 2. N. (636. ii. 1); H-B. 631. 7; but, as usual in such cases, the meaning of the verb really covers the thought by implication.

145 13 **XV**: probably an error, as a circuit of fifteen miles seems out of the question; perhaps *pedum*, or else **V**, instead of **XV**.

145 14 **falcis,** *hooks:* see note on **84** 22. — **testudines**: wooden galleries or sheds, to protect the undermining (see Figs. 33, 126).

145 16 CHAP. 43. **ferventis . . . glandis,** *red-hot balls of clay.*

145 18 **casas**: the *huts* of the encampment, thatched with straw.

145 20 **distulerunt**: sc. *ignem.*

145 21 **clamore**: see **142** 4.

145 26 **non modo**, etc.: needs a "pulpit" paraphrase, which, after all, would be, like many, less forcible than the original. Omit the bracketed words.

146 2 **pugnarent**: same construction as **respiceret** and **decederet.**

146 5 **ut**, etc.: this use of **ut**, *as*, is almost precisely parallel to the English causal, *as*, *inasmuch as*. In fact, the expressions have really the same origin.

146 6 **intermissa**, etc.: while the flames were raging, such exploits of attack and defence were of course impossible.

146 7 **turri**: this advance of a tower was quite in the manner of Roman attack.

146 10 **vellent**: implied indir. disc.; in their words, *si . . . vultis*, cf. **121** 24; § 592. 2 (341. *c*); B. 323; G. 662; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 536. *a*.

146 11 **deturbati**: i.e. the enemy.

146 13 CHAP. 44. **erant**, etc.: this superb bit of narrative, marvellous for its matter and its manner, shows the kind of soldiers with which the Romans conquered the world. Everywhere, where great deeds are done in personal prowess, you will find this mixture of rivalry and common spirit. These are the conditions of the great feats of the world.

146 14 **primis ordinibus**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

147 1 **habebant**, *used to have.*

147 2 **de loco**, *for promotion* or *rank.*

147 5 **locum**, *opportunity.*

147 8 **sese vallo continet**, *remain within the wall.*

147 15 **hic casus**, etc.: i.e. the javelin, piercing his sword belt, twisted the scabbard of his sword out of his reach.

147 18 Translate the bracketed words.

147 21 **in locum deiectus**, etc., *slipping into a hollow, he fell.*

147 24 **in contentione**, *in their rivalry.*

147 28 CHAP. 45. **quanto . . . gravior . . . tanto crebriores**, *the more severe . . . the more frequent.*

148 5 **a prima obsidione**, *at the beginning of the siege.*

148 8 **in iaculo**: i.e. the shaft of the spear was probably hollow and the letter was inserted in it.

148 9 **versatus**, *going about.*

148 12 CHAP. 46. **hora XI**: i.e. about five or six o'clock. In this chapter and the following note the wonderful celerity of Cæsar's movements and the quick obedience of his officers.

148 14 **milia passuum XXV**: i.e. from Amiens to (probably) Montdidier.

148 18 **rei publicae**, etc.: cf. **31** 24 and last note.

148 19 **reliquam partem**: the detachments under Roscius and Plancus were too far away.

148 23 CHAP. 47. **antecursoribus**: the vanguard of Crassus's cavalry, or his scouts.

149 1 **non ita**, etc., *not delaying for a moment.*

149 4 **veritus ne**: § 564 (331. *f*); B. 296. 2; G. 550. 2; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4.

149 5 **quos . . . sciret** = *cum eos sciret:* a causal clause.

149 6 **quanto . . . esset**: indir. quest. depending on the verb of *telling* implied in **litteras remittit.**

149 7 **rem**: i.e. the loss of Sabinus and Cotta.

149 12 CHAP. 48. **duas**: Cæsar thus had only his own legion and that of Fabius, — a very small force to face the multitude of the enemy.

149 17 **Graecis litteris**: i.e. *in Greek letters.* The Gauls were well acquainted with the Greek characters (**26** 4–6, **167** 6). According to Polyænus, the despatch contained merely the words, "Cæsar to Cicero. Be of good courage. Expect aid."

149 20 **amentum**: the *amentum* was a small strap fastened to the middle of a light spear, in some cases, at any rate, giving it a whirling motion, like the rifle-ball of modern times. By its use the spear could be thrown twice as far and with better aim than without it, as has been proved by experiment.

149 25 **biduo**, *for two days:* § 424. *c* (259. *c*); cf. B. 231. 1; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.

149 26 **perlectam . . . recitat**, *having read it through* (to himself), he then *recited it aloud* in the assembly of the soldiers.

150 3 CHAP. 49. **Gallum . . . repetit**, *asks again for the Gaul.*

150 4 **supra**: see **148** 4–6.

150 6 **faciat**: *ut* omitted; cf. note on **108** 1. — **se . . . eum**: notice the difference in meaning.

150 9 **animo**: abl. of specification.

150 14 **aequo animo**, etc., *he thought that he might well be content to slacken his speed.*

150 16 **haec**: referring to **castra**, and obj. of **contrahit**. — **hominum**: a pred. gen. after **erant**.

150 17 **milium VII**: these legions averaged, then, 3500 men each, and this was somewhat less than the normal strength; see chapter on military affairs, I. 1.

150 18 **angustiis viarum**: i.e. narrow paths or streets within the camp; **angustiis**, a loose use of abl. of means, a very elastic construction. The abl. in Latin contains three different cases, *from*, *with* or *by*, and *at*, so that its range of meaning is very wide.

150 19 **hostibus**: dat. of reference.

150 23 CHAP. 50. **Galli**: sc. *sese continent.*

150 24 **Caesar**, etc.: translate as if *Caesar sese continet ut*, *si*, etc. — **si . . . posset**: future protasis of **ut . . . contenderet**, which, expressing a purpose, has a future force; § 516. *d* (307. *d*); G. 595; cf. H-B. 582. 2. The same construction is repeated in the next sentence.

151 3 **equites . . . castra**: notice that with *iubeo* and *veto* either the person or the thing may be the subject of the dependent infin., or the verb may even be used impersonally, as in **concursari**.

151 12 CHAP. 51. **velit**: direct, *volet*.

151 16 **ea**: an adverb.

151 21 **exuit**: i.e. by forcing them to throw their arms away as they fled.

151 23 CHAP. 52. Omit the bracketed words.

151 27 **decimum quemque,** *one man in ten.*

152 6 **certius**: the letter of Labienus had given him the first news of this calamity; see **149** 7.

152 7 **rem gestam** [*esse*]: i.e. the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.

152 8 **quod detrimentum** = *detrimentum quod;* observe that a rel. clause standing first usually incorporates its antecedent.

152 9 **hoc**: the usual abl. of cause (properly degree of difference) with comparatives.

152 10 **beneficio deorum**: see **10** 17 and note.

152 15 CHAP. 53. **eo**: i.e. at Cicero's camp. Cæsar arrived there about three o'clock, and the news of his victory reached Labienus, sixty miles away, before midnight. See **187** 24–27 for the Gallic method of sending news across the country.

152 19 **Indutiomarus**: see **120** 2–4, **135** 1.

153 2 **trinis**: § 137. *b* (95. *b*); B. 81. 4. *b*; G. 97. R.[3]; H. 164. 3 (174. 2. 3); H-B. 247. 1. *a*.

153 4 **ad exercitum manere**: contrary to his usual course, which was, for political reasons, to keep in near communication with Italy

153 7 **quid . . . caperent**: *what future plan they should adopt.*

153 10 **quin . . . acciperet**: result clause after **neque . . . intercessit**; § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 570 (500. ii); cf. H-B. 521. 2.

153 11 **in his**: i.e. **consiliis** or **nuntiis**.

153 12 **L. Roscio**: see **133** 16.

153 13 [**Gallorum**]: may be translated.

153 14 **Aremoricae**: i.e. the natives along the coast of the Atlantic.

153 15 **afuisse**: notice the tense, *they had been, but*, etc.

153 19 CHAP. 54. **alias . . . alias**: see Vocab.—**cum . . . denuntiaret,** *by announcing*, etc. The descriptive **cum**-clause admits a great variety of translations.

153 22 **Cavarinum**: obj. of **interficere**.

153 23 **Moritasgus**: sc. *regnum obtinebat*, from **regnum obtinuerant in** the next line.

153 24 **adventu** (abl. of time), *at the time of*, etc.

153 25 **publico consilio,** *by general consent,* or *on the authority of the people,* not a private act of revenge, or the like. — **conati**: agreeing with **Senones**. — **ille**: i.e. Cavarinus.

153 26 **regno domoque**: i.e. as a king and as a citizen as well.

154 1 **valuit . . . attulit**: these verbs have for their subject **esse**, etc.; *and such an influence did it have that some had been found,* etc. . . . *and such a change did this fact produce that,* etc.

154 4 **alteros . . . alteros**: see Vocab.

154 6 **adeo** (emphatic), *in fact.*

154 7 **cum . . . tum maxime quod,** *not only for several other reasons, but especially because.*

154 8 **praeferebantur,** *used to be held superior.*

154 12 CHAP. 55. **quin . . . mitterent,** etc.: cf. **153** 10.

154 15 **ulli civitati,** etc.: cf. **56** 24.

154 16 **cum . . . dicerent**: a common periphrasis for our pres. part. — **bis**: see Bk. i. chs. 31–54; Bk. iv. chs. 1–15.

154 20 **tota Gallia,** *throughout Gaul:* see note on **150** 18.

154 25 CHAP. 56. **ultro veniri**: i.e. that there was a spontaneous rising for his support.

154 26 **Senones, Carnutes**: about *Sens* and *Chartres.* The latter are not mentioned before, but seem to have taken part against Cavarinus (ch. 54).

154 28 **defore si . . . coepisset**: a fut. condition. What would it be in direct discourse?

155 1 **hoc**: subj. of **est**.

155 2 **quo,** *at which* (lit. *whither*).

155 6 **supra**: see **118** 25 ff.

155 10 **huc**: i.e. on his way to the Senones and Carnutes he will go through the territory of the Remi.

155 26 CHAP. 58. **in dies**: see Vocab.

156 1 **arcessendos curaverat**: cf. **117** 4.

156 10 **praecipit**: refers to **petant**; **interdicit** to **neu volneret**. — **proterritis hostibus,** etc.: translate by a temporal clause, *when,* etc.

156 13 **mora reliquorum**: lit. *the delay of the others.* The regular way of expressing the relation between two nouns is by the use of the genitive. Here the delay caused by the pursuit of the others is characteristically looked upon as belonging to them. Translate, *by waiting to attack the others.*

156 14 **spatium nactum,** *gaining time.*

156 18 **redeuntis**: i.e. from the pursuit of Indutiomarus.

BOOK SIXTH. — B.C. 53.

SECOND PASSAGE OF THE RHINE. — The last campaign had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results; Cæsar's return found the Gauls in a state of unrest, which culminated in open revolt and in the annihilation of the division of Sabinus and the attacks upon the winter quarters of Quintus Cicero and of Labienus. Cæsar, to be sure, rescued Cicero in the nick of time and Labienus was successful against Indutiomarus; but, on the whole, the advantage had been with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their desperate struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine, — a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check by a daring blow; hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as it followed closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

READING REFERENCES ON CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 17 (last part).
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 6.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I, pp. 398–405.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II, chap. 9.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Taylor's Hist. of Germany, chaps. 1 and 2.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 7.

157 1 CHAP. I. **multis de causis**: viz. the profitless expedition to Britain, the desertion of Dumnorix, the loss of Cotta and Sabinus, and the sudden revolt led by Indutiomarus (see Bk. v. chs. 55–58).

157 2 **per Silanum**: the regular construction of the means when it is a person; cf. **57** 3 and note.

157 3 **delectum**: i.e. in Italy.

157 4 **proconsule**: Pompey had been consul B.C. 55. He was now *nominally* proconsul of Spain, with six legions; but he remained in Italy, ruling his province through *legati*. — **ad urbem** (not *in urbe*): as long as he was in military command (*cum imperio*) he could not enter the city.

157 5 **rei publicae causa**: this business was the superintending of the corn supply (*cura annonae*). — **quos . . . rogavisset,** *whom he had enlisted from Cisalpine Gaul when consul;* the verb *rogare* is used of a commander

who exacts an oath of allegiance from his men; hence *sacramento rogare* means *to enlist;* **quos**: sc. the antecedent **eos** as obj. of **iuberet** and subj. of **convenire** and **proficisci.** — **Cisalpina Gallia**: this was Cæsar's own province. But Pompey and Crassus had received authority to raise troops where they pleased, and in whatever number.

157 7 **iuberet**: subjv. of purpose, with **ut** omitted, following **petit**; cf. **108** 1. — **magni**: cf. **52** 11 and note. — **etiam**, etc.: i.e. not merely for this campaign, but for the Roman prestige in future.

157 8 **opinionem Galliae**: subj. gen.

158 2 **augeri**: does not refer to **detrimentum**, but to Cæsar's forces (implied). This linking of different ideas with a word that properly belongs only to one is called *zeugma*.

158 3 **quod**: i.e. the loan of the legion. — **amicitiae**: Cæsar and Pompey were still openly friends, though by the recent death of Julia, Cæsar's daughter and Pompey's wife, as well as by the death of Crassus, the political coalition which united them had been dissolved, and an open rupture soon followed. The legion now forwarded to Cæsar was demanded back two or three years later.

158 5 **constitutis et adductis**: i.e. two levied and one borrowed.

158 6 **duplicato**: fifteen cohorts had been lost under Sabinus (Bk. v. chs. 26–37). The three legions now received had of course thirty cohorts. The new legions were known as I, III, and XIV, the last taking the place of the legion and a half that had been lost under Sabinus at Aduatuca. Cæsar now led ten legions.

CHAP. 2. In the details of this chapter, notice the formidable appearance, but the really long, weak, and broken line of the Gallic confederacy.

158 9 **ut docuimus**: see Bk. v. ch. 58.

158 13 **civitatibus**: i.e. of the Germans. — **inter se**, *each other*, a common use of the phrase in any reciprocal relation.

158 14 **obsidibus . . . cavent**, *by hostages give security for the money*, i.e. the money promised the Germans for their help. — **Ambiorigem**: the clever chief of the Eburones, who had entrapped and destroyed Sabinus.

158 20 **maturius**: i.e. earlier than usual.

158 22 CHAP. 3. **nondum**, etc.: notice that it is the promptness and dash of Cæsar's operations that win the victory in almost every case.

158 23 **Nerviorum**: see note on **68** 18.

158 24 **possent**: for mood, see § 551. *b* (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); H-B. 507. 4. *b*; cf. **38** 27 and note. Here, as with *cum*, there is an inner connection between the two clauses. It is not merely before they *were in a position* to gather, but before they *could get a chance* to gather.

158 25 **praeda,** *as booty;* **ea** (referring to **magno . . . numero)** agrees by attraction with the appositive: § 296. *a* (195. *d*); B. 250. 3; G. 211. R.[5]; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

158 27 **coegit:** sc. *eos.*

159 2 **ut . . . videretur:** i.e. to show that he was determined to put down the rising at once.

159 3 **Lutetiam:** the first mention in history of *Paris*, which was a place of no great importance until its occupation as a royal town by the Franks in A.D. 502. The original place of meeting had perhaps been Samarobriva (Amiens). Cæsar apparently considered Lutetia a point nearer the scene of operations, and proceeded at once to the affected district.

159 4 **civitatem . . . coniunxerant:** i.e. with the Senones. This was a close political union, not a mere military league (*foedus*).

159 5 **hoc consilio:** the new confederacy (cf. Bk. vii. ch. 75). — **hac re:** the removal to Lutetia. — **pro suggestu,** *in front of the platform;* i.e. by public announcement, not special notification to the commanders. See chapter on military affairs, v.

159 9 CHAP. 4. **conantibus** (sc. *eis*, abl. abs.), *while they were attempting* to effect the gathering.

159 12 **quorum in fide,** *under whose protection;* i.e. of the Hædui, whose supremacy had once extended over the greater part of Gaul.

159 13 **libenter,** etc.: but Acco was afterwards put to death; see ch. 44.

159 15 **instantis belli** (pred. gen.): i.e. the war against the Treveri and Ambiorix.

159 16 **custodiendos:** gerundive expressing purpose; § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.[2]); H-B. 605. 2; cf. also **117** 4, **156** 1.

159 19 **equites:** the cavalry of the Roman armies was wholly furnished by the subject-allies.

159 22 CHAP. 5. **Cavarinum:** a chief appointed at Cæsar's dictation, and odious to his tribe (**153** 21–29). Hence came his animosity (*iracundia*) against the state which had driven him into exile.

159 24 **meruerat:** implying a harsh and tyrannical rule, which had aroused the hatred of the state. Either the old odium of Cavarinus or his new animosity against the state might cause a disturbance.

159 25 **pro explorato habebat,** *he considered certain.*

159 26 **reliqua,** etc.: i.e. what else Ambiorix would be likely to do.

160 4 **venisse:** understand *eum* (Ambiorix).

160 5 **haec . . . auxilia:** i.e. both the Menapii and the Germans. — **prius,** with **quam.** Notice that the parts of this word are very often

separated. — **illi**, a dat. rendered by *from*, instead of the abl. of separation: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 345. R.[1]; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.

160 6 **lacesseret**: subjv. in indir. disc., following **existimabat.**

160 7 **congredi**, *to form an alliance with.*

160 14 CHAP. 6. **tripartito**: in three columns, on different roads.

160 20 **Commium**: appointed king of the Atrebates by Cæsar (**106** 13–17). He served as Cæsar's friend and ally in Britain and elsewhere, but finally joined in the great revolt against him (Bk. vii. ch. 76). — **custodis loco**, *as a guard.*

160 23 CHAP. 7. **dum geruntur**: the regular construction with **dum**; cf. **113** 1 and note.

160 25 **in eorum finibus**: see Bk. v. ch. 24.

160 26 **via**: abl. after **longius.** — **cum . . . cognoscunt**: not like the descriptive *cum*, but really the main proposition; § 546. *a* (325. *b*); B. 288. 2; G. 581; H. 600. i. 1; H-B. 566. *a*.

160 27 **a** (adverbial), *away.*

161 1 **impedimentis**: i.e. the greater part of the heavy baggage. He took a small baggage-train with him (see **161** 28); but probably only what was necessary.

161 4 **flumen**: probably some stream flowing into the Meuse (*Mosa*).

161 5 **transire, transituros**: notice the regular use of these two constructions side by side; the first verb (**habebat in animo**) expresses intention and has the simple complem. infin.; the second (**existimabat**) is a verb of thinking and takes the indir. disc. This is one of the most important distinctions in Latin grammar.

161 6 **augebatur**: i.e. in the minds of the Treveri.

161 7 **spes**, *their* (the Treveri) *hope.* — **loquitur**: i.e. Labienus. — **palam**, *freely* or *openly*, on purpose to be heard, but not in a set speech.

161 10 **castra moturum**: of course to withdraw.

161 12 **natura**: i.e. their natural attachment to their own land.

161 13 **consili**: pred. gen.; cf. **18** 19.

161 20 CHAP. 8. **cum**: see note on **160** 26.

161 21 **longum esse**, *it would be tedious*: § 437. *a* (264. *b*); B. 271. 1. *b*; G. 254. R.[1]; H. 525. 2 (476. 5); H-B. 582. 3 and *b*.

162 4 **imperatori**: Cæsar, who alone had the *imperium*, or military authority. Labienus was only *dux*.

162 6 **derigi**: i.e. *to be formed and aligned;* the verb properly has only the latter meaning, the former is only implied.

162 8 **celeriter**, etc.: see chapter on military affairs, VII.

162 14 **recepit**, *recovered* to obedience. — **auxilio**: dat. of service.

162 16 **comitati eos,** *in company with them* (the Germans).

162 18 **demonstravimus:** see Bk. v. chs. 3, 4, and 56.

162 24 CHAP. 9. **paulo supra,** *a little above*, or to the south.

162 25 **nota . . . ratione,** *on the plan already tried and approved* (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 17).

163 1 **purgandi sui:** § 504. *c* (298. *a*); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.[1]; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.[1]); H-B. 614; cf. **77** 3, **115** 2.

163 5 **cognita,** *having inquired into.*

163 9 CHAP. 10. **paucis post diebus:** § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.[4]; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 424.

163 10 **eis . . . imperio:** subject tribes, not confederate allies. Tacitus, however (Ger. 38), represents the Suevi as a confederacy; its former subjects may, after Cæsar's time, have been admitted to alliance.

163 18 **quaeque: -que** connects **mittant** and **cognoscant.**

163 22 **silvam:** this was the natural frontier and defence (*pro nativo muro*) of the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cherusci held the valleys of the Weser and Elbe.

164 1 CHAP. 11. **locum,** etc.: here there is really nothing to tell, as Cæsar found the country deserted (ch. 29), and returned at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnographic knowledge of the time. See the introductory chapters on Gaul and Germany.

164 7 **existimantur:** is only explanatory, hence the indicative.

164 8 **quorum:** the antecedent is **principes.**

164 9 **redeat:** is characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1. The idea seems to be: It is the chief men of these factions (those namely who are regarded as most influential) who have the supreme authority. Hence the effort of each of the chieftains to look out for his dependents.

164 10 **ne . . . egeret:** in app. with **eius rei,** the past tense (**egeret**) taking its time from **institutum** [*esse*]: § 485. *j*, 585. *a* (287. *i*, 336. B. N.[2]); B. 268. 7. *b*, 268. 2; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 483.

164 13 **haec . . . Galliae,** *this same state of things exists in general throughout entire Gaul.*

164 14 **divisae:** adj. use of the participle; cf. **divisa, 1** 1.

164 15 CHAP. 12. **cum . . . venit:** notice the difference between this and the *cum* in descriptive clauses (cf. **11** 7, **49** 1). Here it means merely "at the time when," and there is no inner connection with the main clause.

164 16 **Sequani:** these succeeded to the domination of the Arverni (see Bk. i. ch. 31). —**hi,** *the latter.*

164 17 **antiquitus:** really only a little while before, as the Hædui had risen by favor of the Romans.

164 18 **clientelae,** *dependencies.* These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.

164 24 **iurare:** i.e. the Hædui.

164 25 **nihil . . . consili,** *no plans,* part. gen. — **et:** connects **cogerent** and **possiderent.**

164 27 **Diviciacus:** cf. **27** 13.

165 1 **infecta re,** *without effecting his object.*

165 2 **adventu Caesaris . . . dimiserant:** this long Latin periodic sentence should in our idiom be rendered by several coördinate sentences (cf. note on **66** 5). — **facta commutatione:** i.e. by his friendship to the Hædui and the defeat of Ariovistus (Bk. i. chs. 31–53).

165 4 **ei:** subj. of **videbant.**

165 6 **reliquis rebus:** abl. of specification.

165 8 **adaequare,** *were equal;* i.e. to the Hædui. (The infin. clause **quos adaequare** is the subj. of **intellegebatur,** which is used impersonally.)

165 9 **gratia:** abl. of specification.

165 11 **dĭcabant:** distinguish from *dīcebant.*

165 13 **statu:** loc. abl.

165 16 CHAP. 13. **plebes:** here a noun of the fifth declen.; cf. *plebs.*

165 18 **cum . . . premuntur:** a general condition expressing repeated action, **cum** meaning *whenever* or *as often as.* The perf. indic. would be more usual; cf. **59** 13, **131** 7.

165 21 **quae dominis** (dat. of poss.), *as masters have.*

165 22 **druidum** (pred. gen.), *that of the druids.* — **illi:** *the former.*

165 25 **hi:** i.e. the druids.

165 26 **eos:** i.e. the Gauls.

165 27 **quod facinus,** *any crime.*

166 1 **idem:** nom. plural.

166 2 **qui:** why not **quis**? Observe also **si qui** in l. 10 below.

166 3 **sacrificiis:** abl. of separation; understand *eos* with **interdicunt.** — **poena:** like an excommunication, taboo, or boycott.

166 5 **decedunt** (with dat.): sc. *de via* (i.e. "make way for" them in the street).

166 6 **incommodi:** part. gen. following **quid.**

166 13 **Carnutum:** this central spot was at or near the modern town of Dreux, where, it is said, traces of these assemblies may still be found.

166 16 **disciplina,** *system of doctrine;* cf. meaning of the same word in **165** 25. — **Britannia:** many think that druidism originated in Gaul and

was carried thence to Britain, where it still flourished, but that it had declined for various political reasons in the mother country.

166 21 CHAP. 14. The bracketed words merely repeat the thought of the preceding sentence and may be omitted.

167 2 **numerum versuum**: i.e. their lore was put into verse to assist the memory.

167 4 **fas**: the words *fas* and *nefas* refer to what is *religiously* right and wrong; *ius* and *iniuria* refer to *human* obligations only.

167 8 **litteris confisos**, *by trusting to written words*, a useful hint to teachers.

167 11 **hoc** (acc.), more usually *illud*, refers to what follows; *hoc* (abl.) to what has just been said.

167 12 **transire**: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions, especially of the Buddhists.

167 15 **mundi**, *the universe* (system of things); **terrarum** (cf. *orbis terrarum*), *the world*.

167 17 CHAP. 15. **equitum**: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two "upper classes" here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal *noblesse* of France before the Revolution. — **cum est**: notice the force of the indicative. See note on **cum . . . premuntur, 165** 18. — **usus**: a noun; see Vocab.

167 21 **ut quisque . . . amplissimus, ita plurimos**, *the more powerful . . . the greater number*: § 313. *b* (93. *c*, at end); G. 642. R.[2]; H. 515. 5 (458. 2).

167 22 **ambactos**: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of *servus*, "slave," as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before. Cf. **165** 16–21.

167 27 CHAP. 16. **homines immolant**: it is not certain that the practice of human sacrifice existed so late as this in Gaul. Cæsar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.

168 3 **plācārī**: distinguished from *placēre*. — **publice**: as opposed to the private ones just referred to.

168 4 **habent instituta**: cf. **40** 20, **51** 8, and notes.

168 9 **cum . . . deficit**: cf. **cum est, 167** 17.

168 12 CHAP. 17. **Mercurium**: the gods had no such names, nor were they, in fact, the same gods; but they were identified with similar Roman divinities as nearly as possible. The name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (*Teutates?*); but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear

under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic *Taranis*, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet, like the Scandinavian *Thor*.

168 20 **cum,** etc.: see **165** 18 and note.

168 21 **ceperint:** subjv. of informal indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct.

169 2 **neglecta religione:** i.e. in violation of his vow.—**capta,** *taken as spoil.*—**apud se,** *at his house.*

169 3 **posita,** *consecrated as a gift.*

169 5 CHAP. 18. **Dite,** *Pluto*, the god of Darkness, or of the Under-world, meaning that they believe themselves to have sprung from the soil, the world below them: see § 403. *a.* N.[1] (244. *a.* R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. *b.*

169 7 **noctium,** etc.: this usage is common to many primitive peoples; e.g. the Germans (Tac. Ger. 11). Our word "fortnight" is a relic of it. It doubtless had its origin in keeping time by the changes of the moon.

169 9 **ut . . . subsequatur:** i.e. the calendar day began at sunset.

169 10 **fere** (with **hoc**): i.e. speaking loosely.—**suos liberos,** etc. The Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life, and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. Again *cum* with the perf. ind. expressing repeated or customary action; cf. **168** 20. Observe that this perf. becomes a present in our idiom, expressing repeated action or a general truth.

169 13 **turpe ducunt,** *they consider it disgraceful,* **turpe** being pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause.

169 14 CHAP. 19. **quantas . . . communicant:** i.e. the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife's marriage portion.

169 16 **ratio habetur,** *a reckoning is kept.*

169 17 **fructus,** *revenues* or *profits.*—**vita:** abl. of specification.

169 19 **viri in uxores,** etc.: cf. the Roman *patria potestas;* the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans.

169 22 **de uxoribus:** this would seem to imply polygamy among the Gauls. Probably it was limited to the chiefs, as among the Germans; see note on **48** 6.—**in servilem modum,** *after the manner of slaves*, i.e. by torture.

169 23 **compertum est:** i.e. that there has been foul play.

169 24 **excruciatas interficiunt:** cf. **5** 5, **55** 3, and notes.—**pro cultu,** *considering the degree of civilization.*

169 27 **hanc** = *nostram* (cf. **51** 17), i.e. a generation ago.

170 1 **dilectos**: distinguish from *delectos*. — **iustis**, *regular*, by conventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice of dependents was added. These usages are in accordance with the belief of the Gauls in immortality, which is fully attested.

170 3 CHAP. 20. **quae civitates** = *eae civitates quae;* a relative clause standing first generally incorporates its antecedent.

170 4 **legibus sanctum**, *established by law*, agreeing with the sentence **si . . . communicet** (obj. of **habent**); cf. **40** 20, **51** 8.

170 6 **neve**, *and that not*, the regular connective for a negative purpose clause. — **quo**: indef., *any one*.

170 7 **quod saepe**, etc.: cf. the lively account **97** 9–17.

170 9 **quae visa sunt**, *what they think fit* to conceal (understand *occultanda*).

170 11 **per concilium**, *by means* (or, *in the proceedings*) *of the public assembly*.

170 14 CHAP. 21. **neque druides habent**: i.e. this particular hierarchy. They had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms public and private.

170 15 **deorum numero**, etc. In this, Cæsar's testimony is directly contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (Ger. 9) of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction between these writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions there is a striking agreement. This is all the more remarkable when we bear in mind that Cæsar went but little beyond the German frontier and had relatively little to do with them. This description of the Germans may be profitably compared with Cæsar's account of the Suevi in the opening chapters of Bk. iv.

170 19 **a parvis**, *from childhood*. — **qui . . . permanserunt**: i.e. "who are slowest to outgrow" their boyhood. Cf. Tacitus: *sera juvenum venus, eoque inexhausta pubertas;* and contrast the premature debaucheries of the Roman youth.

170 20 **hoc**: abl. of cause.

170 23 **nulla occultatio**: like the English *there is no hiding*.

170 25 **renonum**: i.e. small cloaks of hide. — **magna . . . nuda**: abl. abs.

170 26 CHAP. 22. **agri culturae**: as to this chapter, cf. what is said in the general Introduction to the volume and in Bk. iv. ch. I, where it is shown that the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or slaves, but by that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans were, though "barbarians," not (in one sense) a barbarous people.

170 27 **neque quisquam**, etc.: this temporary and shifting occupation

of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (*cognationibus*), is characteristic of a primitive society. Cf. the Introduction, as above.

171 1 **finis proprios,** *private lands.*

171 2 **gentibus,** etc.: in the general gathering for this assignment each clan must have met by itself, and have been represented by its chief.

171 3 **quantum agri,** *as much land;* **agri** is part. gen.

171 6 **agri cultura:** notice the use of the abl. here to be rendered *for;* § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478. 4 (422. N.[2]); H-B. 427. 1, cf. 431.—**ne . . . expellant:** this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Cæsar in his own consulship had attempted to check, following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the *potentiores* had already succeeded in ousting the *humiliores*, and enormous plantations, cultivated by slaves, had taken the place of the earlier peasant freeholds.

171 11 **cum . . . videat:** this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike. But on this question there are many and various opinions, and, at any rate, the words do not prove a division to each man as a freehold.

171 13 CHAP. 23. **maxima laus:** so in Bk. iv. ch. 3.

171 14 **virtutis:** § 385. *c* (234. *d*); B. 204. 2; G. 359. R.[1]; H. 435. 4 (391. ii. 4); H-B. 339. *c*.

171 16 **prope,** *near;* **consistere,** *to stay* or *settle.* The infin. clauses are in app. with **hoc.**

171 17 **cum . . . infert:** note the force of pres. indic. with **cum**; cf. **165** 18 and note.

171 18 **magistratus . . . deliguntur:** by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks, and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.

171 19 **praesint, habeant:** subjv. of characteristic.

171 21 **principes . . . pagorum:** these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the natural leaders each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tac. Ger. 12).

171 22 **latrocinia . . . extra finis:** as with the "cattle-lifting raids" of the Scottish Borderers.

171 25 **ubi quis,** etc., *whenever any one,* equivalent to the protasis of a general condition. This is the manner in which volunteers were mustered for the raids in question.

171 26 **profiteantur:** representing an imv. form in the dir. disc.

172 2 **omnium rerum fides,** *confidence in anything.*

172 3 **qui . . . venerunt:** again the perf. indic. in the protasis of a general condition,—*whoever comes to them for any reason whatsoever.*

172 6 CHAP. 24. **cum . . . superarent**: a clause of characteristic, *such that*, etc.; see § 535. *a.* N.[3] (322. R.); G. 631. 2; H. 591. 4 (503. i. N.[2]); H-B. 521. 1.

172 7 **superarent, inferrent, mitterent**: asyndeton, i.e. omission of connectives.

172 10 **Hercyniam silvam**: the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. — **Graecis**: i.e. other Greeks, as Eratosthenes was a Greek, though not of Greece proper.

172 11 **Volcae Tectosages,** etc.: occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion only had migrated to Germany; or, perhaps, had stayed behind from an early Celtic migration westward.

172 16 **Gallis**: indir. obj. of **largitur, multa** being the dir. obj.

172 22 CHAP. 25. **iter**: acc. of extent; cf. **98** 3. — **expedito** (dat.): i.e. to a man unencumbered with baggage. — **non . . . noverunt**: i.e. the Germans who live there. So at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (*stunden*) instead of miles.

172 24 **Nemetum,** etc.: along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle. — **recta regione**: i.e. parallel.

172 25 **Dacorum,** etc.: occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary.

172 26 **sinistrorsus**: in reality it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward.

173 1 **huius**: that familiar to the Romans, viz. *western.*

173 2 [**aut audisse**]: may be omitted in translation. — **initium**: as we should say *the end*, eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles.

173 3 **processerit**: subjv. as an intermediate clause in ind. disc. for perf. indic.

173 4 **acceperit**: subjv. of characteristic.

173 5 **quae,** *such as*, followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

173 6 **differant**: subjv. of characteristic.

173 8 CHAP. 26. **bos**: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, and even to the elephant; here it is perhaps the *reindeer*, which had anciently a wide-scattered range.

173 9 **unum cornu**: this description is unintelligible.

173 10 **palmae ramique** (hendiadys; cf. note on **28** 25), *branching antlers*, evidently comparing the horns to a flat hand with branches like fingers.

173 13 CHAP. 27. **alces**: this name is undoubtedly *elks*, but the description is widely unlike and quite unrecognizable.

173 15 **crura . . . habent**; for the same story, cf. Pliny, H. N. viii. 16, 39.

173 17 **si . . . conciderunt:** cf. **172** 3 and note. By what tense should this perfect be rendered? The same construction occurs below in l. 20, **cum est animadversum,** and in l. 23, **cum reclinaverunt.**

173 21 **omnes:** with **arbores.**

173 22 **ab radicibus,** *at the roots.* — **accīdunt,** *cut into.* — **tantum ut,** etc.: lit. *so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left;* translate, *so that to all appearances they are standing firmly.*

173 26 CHAP. 28. **uri:** this name is generally understood to refer to the German *Urochs* (the primitive or wild ox, probably *buffalo*), said still to be found in the forests of Lithuania. Cæsar evidently describes a very different animal, with spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

174 6 **quae sint testimonio,** *to serve as evidence,* a purpose clause.

174 7 **ne . . . excepti,** *not even when caught quite young.*

174 12 CHAP. 29. **Caesar,** etc. This chapter directly follows ch. 10 in the narrative, the intervening passage being a digression.

174 14 **supra:** see **170** 26.

174 16 **ne . . . tolleret:** as would be done by completely destroying the bridge. — **barbaris:** dat.; § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 345. R.[1]; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — **atque,** *and at the same time.* — **ut tardaret:** which he did by making the bridge practically useless.

174 17 **auxilia:** i.e. which the Germans might send to aid the Gauls.

174 19 **in extremo ponte.** There seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the east bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (**extremo**), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland; see Fig. 59.

174 20 **cohortium:** these were auxiliaries, as it appears in ch. 33 that he took all his legions with him.

174 23 **cum maturescere,** etc.: i.e. early in August.

174 24 **Arduennam:** the modern Ardennes.

174 27 **D:** an obvious mistake, possibly of some copyist. The distance is about 150 miles. — **Basilum:** afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar.

174 28 **si . . . possit,** (to see) *whether he can,* etc.: see § 576. *a* (334. *f*); B. 300. 3; G. 460. (*b*); H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.[1]); H-B. 582. 2 and *a*.

175 1 **qua:** why not *quae?*

175 2 **subsequi:** notice the pres. for the fut.

175 7 CHAP. 30. **multum potest,** *has great power;* see note on **10** 17.

175 8 **nam ut,** etc., *for as it happened by a remarkable chance that,* etc.; the following clause being subj. of **accidit.**—**ipsum:** referring to Ambiorix; so too in l. 12.

175 9 **prius . . . quam:** render as one word, *before;* in English we omit the relative particle.—**eius:** i.e. *Basili.*

175 10 **videretur:** in the same construction as **incideret.**—**adferretur:** cf. **158** 24 and note.

175 11 **magnae fortunae** (pred. gen.), *a great piece of luck.*

175 13 **hoc:** abl. of means, explained by **quod,** etc.

175 14 **sunt fere,** *generally are.*

175 16 **propinquitatis:** use the singular in English; § 100. *c* (75. *c*); B. 55. 4. *c*; G. 204. N.[5]; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. *b*.

175 18 **his pugnantibus:** notice the force of the Latin order. *While these were fighting,* time was given for the chief to be placed on horseback by some of his followers, and, *as soon as he actually got away,* he was covered by the woods.

175 21 CHAP. 31. **iudicione . . . an,** *whether by design . . . or,* etc.

176 2 **quas aestus:** i.e. islands only at high tide.

176 3 **alienissimis,** *entire strangers.*

176 4 **Catuvolcus:** see **133** 20–23, **134** 17–19.

176 6 **precibus detestatus,** *cursing with* formal *imprecations,* which, from a dying man, were thought to have efficacy with the gods.

176 7 **fuisset:** informal indir. disc.—**taxo:** perhaps with a decoction of yew leaves, as the berries are said to be harmless.

176 12 CHAP. 32. **neve:** see note on **170** 6.

176 13 **unam esse causam,** *that the case was the same;* i.e. that they were all included in the league.

176 16 **convenissent, reducerentur:** in dir. disc. *convenerint, reducantur.*

176 19 **id castelli nomen est,** *that is the* (German) *name of a stronghold.* It will be remembered that the Aduatuci were of German descent, and it is thought that *Aduatuca* is an old German word, meaning *a stronghold.* Then the *Aduatuci* would be the people who held such a place of safety. There were several towns of this name, which fact adds force to the conjecture.

176 21 **Titurius,** etc. (Sabinus and Cotta): see **133** 20–24.

176 24 **laborem:** i.e. of making a new fortified camp.

176 25 **unam ex his,** etc.: see **158** 4 ff.

176 26 **Q. Ciceronem:** see Bk. v. chs. 39–52.

177 2 CHAP. 33. **ad . . . versus,** *towards.*

177 5 **Scaldim,** *the Scheldt.* There seems to be some confused

geography here, but the many and confused mouths of these rivers doubtless gave rise to this idea.

177 8 **vii = septimum.** Cf. a different idiom, **163** 9. — **quam ad diem**: cf. **179** 2 (*quem ad diem*). Observe that *dies* is often fem. when it means *time*.

177 9 **frumentum deberi**: see chapter on military affairs, IV. *f.*

177 11 **commodo** (abl.), *to* (properly *in accordance with*) *the advantage*, etc. — **rei publicae**: gen.; cf. **31** 24, **148** 18.

177 14 CHAP. 34. **supra**: in ch. 31.

177 15 **quod se defenderet,** *capable of*, etc. (subjv. of characteristic).

177 16 **cuique,** *to each*; notice the Latin idiom. We should put the distributive with the leading verb (**consederat**), *each had taken position where*, etc.

177 21 **universis,** *to men gathered in one body.*

177 23 **ex parte,** *in a measure.*

177 26 **hominum sceleratorum,** *those scoundrels*; an expression of temper which Cæsar does not often permit himself towards his foes. It shows his bitter hatred against the hapless Eburones, who had destroyed his officers and legion.

177 27 **vellet**: not contrary to fact, but in both cases a future protasis thrown back into past time; cf. note on **141** 1.

178 4 **ut in,** etc., *considering that it was in*, etc.; a not uncommon use of *ut*.

178 6 **ut potius,** etc.: we may translate *so that some opportunities for doing injury were neglected*, though the clause is properly one of purpose. Connect **potius** with **quam**. The thought is that Cæsar's plan was to save the lives of his soldiers, even at the expense of neglecting to punish the enemy, and to employ others to carry out his vengeance.

178 7 **ulciscendum**: i.e. to avenge the destruction of the force of Sabinus and Cotta (Bk. v. chs. 27–38).

178 8 **noceretur** (impers.), *harm should be done* to the enemy.

179 4 CHAP. 35. **fortuna**: cf. **175** 7. — **possit, adferat**: present tense to express a general truth; though usually in Latin such expressions follow the sequence of tenses.

179 8 **ultro,** *freely*; i.e. any that would; as a general invitation, extending beyond those immediately concerned.

179 10 **supra docuimus**: see **102** 21–25.

179 13 **primos finis,** *the nearest limits.*

179 16 **paludes**: subj. of **morantur.**

179 18 **profectum**: i.e. *eum profectum esse.*

179 22 **Aduatucam:** i.e. where Cicero with a single legion was guarding the baggage of the whole army; see ch. 32.

179 23 **tantum,** *only so much*, really, *so feeble.*

179 24 **cingi,** *surrounded;* i.e. *manned* (with a line of defenders).

179 27 **duce,** *as guide* (pred. app.).

180 1 CHAP. 36. **Cicero:** up to this time he had shown himself to be an unusually discreet and courageous officer.

180 2 **continuisset** (concessive subjv.), *though he had*, etc.

180 4 **vii = septimo. — de numero:** construe with **fidem servaturum.**

180 5 **progressum:** cf. **profectum, 179** 18.

180 7 **illius,** etc., *who called his quiet waiting a blockade.*

180 8 **si quidem,** *since:* with subjv., indicating the ground of their complaint.

180 9 **quo** (following **eius modi,** *of such sort that*), with **posset** as subjv. of result. — **oppositis,** *had gone to meet the enemy;* the abl. abs. expresses cause.

180 10 **in milibus passuum tribus:** i.e. within three miles of his camp.

180 11 **offendi** (impers.), *an attack could be made.*

180 12 **quas inter:** several prepositions sometimes follow their cases.

180 14 **hoc spatio:** i.e. since Cæsar's departure.

180 15 **sub vexillo:** here the *vexillum* was a little scarlet flag (quite distinct from the metal *signum*), used by small bodies detached for some special service. The name *vexillarii* was given to the soldiers of such a corps; see chapter on military affairs, II, and Figs. 121, 127.

180 16 **calonum:** i.e. officers' servants and grooms for the horses. These were slaves. — **iumentorum:** to bring in the expected supplies.

180 17 **subsederat,** *had remained behind* when Cæsar left. — **facta potestate,** *obtaining leave.*

180 18 CHAP. 37. **[et]:** omit in translation.

180 19 **ab decumana porta,** *at the rear gate* (see Fig. 119). The camp fronted in the direction where the enemy were supposed to be, i.e. towards the Gallic tribes, so that its more exposed part lay nearest the German attack.

180 20 **nec prius . . . quam,** *and not till;* for the mood following, see **158** 24 and note.

180 21 **silvis:** it was considered bad generalship to place a camp so near the woods as to conceal the approach of the enemy. The pickets, too, must have been either very carelessly stationed or very negligent.

180 22 **usque eo,** *so close.* — **qui . . . mercatores,** *the traders who spread their booths (tentoria) under the shelter of the wall.* — **recipiendi sui:** for construction, see § 504. *c* (298. *a*); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.[1]; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.[1]); H-B. 614; cf. **40** 15, **77** 3, **77** 20.

180 24 **in statione:** i.e. before the gate.

180 25 **circumfunduntur:** the middle or reflexive use of the passive, rendered in English by the active intransitive form; *pour in* or *about.*

180 26 **si:** interrog., [to see] *whether;* cf. **174** 28.

181 1 **signa,** etc.: i.e. as the whole camp was in confusion the soldiers could not tell in which direction the line was to be formed (*signa ferantur*) nor where each man should rally (*quisque conveniat*). It is noticeable that Cicero is not spoken of after the beginning of ch. 36. Ordinarily this would be just the moment when a commander would be most active. It seems to show that he shared in the general panic.

181 3 **imperatore:** Cæsar. Observe the force of **atque:** *and the general, too!*

181 4 **novas religiones,** *a sudden superstition,* as if the spot itself were unlucky to the Romans (see **176** 20–22).

181 5 **qui occiderint,** *who* (as they recalled; hence subjv.) *had fallen.*

181 7 **barbaris:** dat. of reference.

181 12 CHAP. 38. **apud Caesarem,** *with Cæsar.*

181 13 **proeliis** (abl. of time): see Bk. ii. ch. 25; Bk. iii. ch. 5.

181 17 **consequuntur hunc:** as *primus pilus,* he had authority to command all other centurions; although generally, as here, he really only formed a rallying point. See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

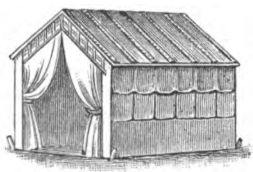


FIG. 128.—TABERNACULUM.

181 18 **cohortis:** cf. **180** 23–25.

181 19 **relinquit animus,** *his breath* (or consciousness) *fails him* (he faints).

181 20 **per manus traditus,** *passed along from hand to hand* by his comrades.—**hoc spatio:** i.e. the time gained by this short resistance.

181 25 CHAP. 39. **hic:** i.e. in the open field.

181 26 **modo . . . exspectant:** the Roman discipline was so perfect that, in general, every man knew just what to do in any emergency (as in the fight with the Nervii, Bk. ii. ch. 21); but these new levies (see **176** 24–27) were helpless till the exact order had been given, even the boldest of them (**nemo est tam fortis,** etc.).

182 2 **legiones:** those of Cæsar and his *legati;* see ch. 33.

182 4 **paucitate:** i.e. five cohorts and the 300 convalescent veterans.

182 6 CHAP. 40. **in signa manipulosque,** *among the cohorts and maniples.* In their panic the servants rushed among the ranks of the cohorts (*signa*) and the maniples.

182 7 **alii . . . alii:** these seem to have had some presence of mind, as is implied in the expression **censent,** the regular expression for voting in a public assembly.

182 8 **quoniam . . . sint,** *since* [as they say], etc.

182 10 [**confidunt**]: may be omitted in translation, the infin. **posse** depending on the idea of saying involved in **censent.** — **alii**: sc. *censent.*

182 11 **hoc**: the latter counsel, which was that of the raw recruits. — **docuimus**: cf. **180** 13–15.

182 13 **C. Trebonio**: this can hardly be the man referred to in ch. 33. He was away with the three legions intrusted to him, as there recorded.

183 2 **militum virtute**: i.e. of the infantry; the cavalry, it will be remembered, were not Romans, but Gauls and other allies.

183 3 **nullo usu percepto,** *having gained no experience;* i.e. even after seeing the successful action of the veterans.

183 4 **eo consilio**: with **ut . . . defenderent** in app. — **permanere**: compl. infin. with **potuerunt.**

183 5 **quam**: the antecedent is **eam vim celeritatemque.**

183 7 **demiserunt**: **se** has already been expressed with **recipere.**

183 8 **ex inferioribus ordinibus**: the officers of a new legion were usually obtained in this way, being promoted from the lower grades of veteran cohorts.

183 10 **ne ante partam,** etc.: notice again the *esprit de corps* of the Roman soldier; cf. **109** 1–9, **142** 7–11, **146** 13 ff.

183 13 **pars periit**: two cohorts; see **184** 26.

183 16 CHAP. 41. **constitisse,** etc., *had now gained a position.*

183 17 **praeda**: see **179** 26.

183 20 **fidem non faceret,** *could not make them believe.*

183 22 **alienata mente,** *beside themselves* with terror. — **deletis . . . recepisse**: after **dicerent.**

183 23 **neque**: the negative belonging with **oppugnaturos fuisse** is, as often in Latin, combined with the general connective of the sentence. — **incolumi exercitu** (abl. abs. denoting condition), *in case the army were safe.*

183 24 **oppugnaturos fuisse**: the regular form in indir. disc. for *oppugnavissent,* a contrary-to-fact apodosis.

"Brave as they were, the Roman soldiers seem to have been curiously liable to panics of this kind. The faith with which they relied upon their general avenged itself through the completeness with which they were accustomed to depend upon him. He returned on the day which he had fixed, and not unnaturally was displeased at the disregard of his orders. He did not, or does not in his Commentaries, professedly blame Cicero. But the Ciceros perhaps resented the loss of confidence which one of them had brought upon himself. Quintus Cicero cooled in his zeal, and afterwards amused the leisure of his winter quarters with composing worthless dramas." — *Froude's* "Cæsar."

183 26 CHAP. 42. **eventus** (acc. plur.) **belli,** *the fortune of war* (in general). — **unum,** *only one thing.*

183 28 **casui**: dat. with **relinqui.** — **relinqui debuisse**: § 486. *a* (288. *a*); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. *a.* ftn.[2]; as usual added without any other word of saying beyond that involved in **questus.**

183 29 **multum fortunam . . . potuisse**: cf. **175** 7 ff.

184 1 **avertisset**: sc. *fortuna.*

184 2 **rerum**: part. gen. with **maxime.** — **videbatur**: the subj. is **quod . . . obtulerunt.**

184 5 **beneficium**: i.e. by giving him opportunity to escape. He was never captured. In honor of his splendid resistance to the invader a colossal statue has lately been erected to him at Tongres; see Fig. 83.

184 10 CHAP. 43. **agebatur**: i.e. especially cattle. — **frumenta**: distinguish from *frumentum.*

184 11 **anni tempore**: it was now late in the fall, but the unfortunate people had not been able to harvest their crops.

184 13 **his . . . pereundum** [esse], *that these must needs perish;* **his** is dat. of agent.

184 14 **in eum locum ventum est,** *matters were brought to such a pass,* i.e. they were so close upon him.

184 16 **ut** ([**non**] omit) . . . **contenderent,** *that prisoners* who were brought in *looked round* among their number *for Ambiorix, whom they had just seen in flight* — supposing that he must have been taken also — *and insisted that he was not yet quite out of sight.*

184 20 **paene . . . vincerent**: i.e. almost surpassed the bounds of nature in their eagerness.

184 21 **summam felicitatem**: i.e. complete success. — **atque**: almost equals *but.*

184 22 **eriperet, peteret**: in the same construction as the preceding verbs depending on **ut.**

184 26 CHAP. 44. **damno**: abl. of manner. The reference is to those killed by the German raid, chs. 37–40.

184 27 **coniuratione**: see chs. 3 and 4.

185 1 **more maiorum**: the ancient Roman mode of punishment was to flog the criminal to death, after which he was beheaded, — an extraordinary sentence to pronounce on a prisoner of war. It was this mode of punishment that was symbolized directly by the lictors' *fasces.* Concerted resistance (*coniuratio*) had come to be regarded as a flagrant crime, and its penalty was more and more bloody as time went on — as we see in the two succeeding Books.

185 2 **aqua . . . interdixisset**: i.e. *banished them,* forbade them to return to Gaul.

185 4 **Agedinci:** locative.
185 6 **ad conventus agendos:** cf. **48** 28.

Book Seventh. — B.C. 52.

War of Vercingetorix. — The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the execution of Acco (Bk. vi. ch. 44), which had aroused the spirit of all the Gallic nobility, and the news from Rome, where the hostile aristocracy had long been waiting for some opportunity to check Cæsar in his career of conquest and call him home.

This opportunity seemed to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Cæsar's communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Cæsar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

N. B. — In this book the editors have purposely abstained from grammatical comment except such as seemed necessary for the interpretation of the text, in order that the student might have one book of Cæsar's Commentaries, and that one of the finest pieces of simple narrative in literature, to enjoy without trying to see how the words were parsed. Grammar is absolutely necessary for Latin, but there is much in Latin besides grammar. Intelligent reading presupposes that, but does not always have it uppermost.

READING REFERENCES ON THE UPRISING OF GAUL UNDER VERCINGETORIX.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 15–20.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 19.
Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I, pp. 56–65.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 7.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. II, chap, 12.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV, pp. 323–340.
Napoleon's Cæsar, chap. 10.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 8.

186 1 CHAP. 1. **quieta Gallia**: cf. **73** 3, **93** 2.—**in Italiam**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

186 3 **Clodi**: see note above.—**ut . . . coniurarent** (clause depending on *senatus consulto*): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy *in mass*, in which the entire population of Italy of military age took the oath. In addition, Cæsar orders a levy throughout his own province, in which were included *Gallia Cisalpina*, *Gallia Transalpina*, and *Illyricum*.

186 7 **quod videbatur**: it naturally seemed to them impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis (**urbano motu**).

186 9 **qui dolerent**: trans. by pres. part., *being indignant*, etc.; the characteristic subjv. constantly has this meaning; cf. the use of *cum*. It approaches a causal relation, but has properly no notion of cause.—**ante**: adv. modifying **dolerent**.

186 11 **principes Galliae**: subj. of **queruntur**.—**locis**: loc. abl., without a prep., as usual.

186 13 **Acconis**: see Bk. vi. ch. 44.

186 15 **qui**: sc. *eos*, i.e. some state to begin hostilities.

187 1 **capitis,** of *their lives;* the sing. is idiomatic in Latin.

187 3 **ut . . . intercludatur** (see introductory note): depends on **rationem,** *a plan* (of campaign).

187 9 CHAP. 2. **Carnutes**: this name is represented by *Chartres*.

187 12 **cavere inter se,** *take security from each other*.—**ne res efferatur**: as the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

187 13 **conlatis,** etc.: an armed or symbolically armed council seems to have been the most binding form of public ratification of concerted measures. Here the standards were gathered in a sheaf and the oath was taken by this symbol of unity.

187 15 **deserantur**: it seems to have needed the most solemn forms of agreement to bind the discordant and jealous Gauls.

187 19 CHAP. 3. **Cenabum**: now Orléans, on the Loire.

187 20 **negotiandi**: their business was money-lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were wholly controlled by Roman citizens.

187 21 **constiterant,** *had settled.*

187 24 **maior atque inlustrior**: i.e. than usual.

187 25 **clamore**: a sort of vocal telegraph, by which, as also by signal-fires, messages were conveyed, it is said, from towers 500 yards apart.

187 27 **Cenabi**: locative.

187 28 **ante . . . vigiliam**: between nine and ten at night; the sending of the message thus occupying about sixteen hours. — **Arvernorum**: i.e. the country now called Auvergne, a region always noted for the vigor and hardihood of its people, who now became leaders in the great revolt, and furnished its dauntless chief Vercingetorix.

188 1 CHAP. 4. **Vercingetorix**: a name or title explained as meaning "very brave lord," and well calculated (says the historian Florus) to inspire terror.

188 2 **principatum,** etc.: see **27** 14 and last note on **2** 1.

188 3 **totius Galliae**: i.e. all Celtic Gaul.

188 5 **incendit**: sc. *eos.*

188 6 **prohibetur**: conative present; i.e. they try to prevent him. This discouragement of the elders was of evil omen to his enterprise from the start.

188 8 **Gergovia**: the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.

188 9 **perditorum**: men *of ruined fortunes,* desperate. This is the usual course of things and the usual accusation. The well-to-do are rarely ardent patriots. When trouble comes, they either make terms or flee to the provinces.

188 15 **Senones,** etc.: several of these names are preserved in the modern *Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges.* The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Hædui and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.

188 19 **imperat,** *he levies,* with acc. and dat.

188 20 **quantum armorum,** *how many arms.*

188 21 **quod** (interrog.): agrees with **tempus,** *and before what time.*

188 25 **necat**: i.e. the offenders.

189 3 CHAP. 5. **Rutenos**: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.

189 6 **de consilio,** *by the advice.*

189 8 **qui**: agrees with the persons implied in **equitatus peditatusque**; § 280. *a* (182. *a*); B. 235. B. 2. *c*; G. 211. R.[1]; H. 397 (445. 5); H-B. 325.

189 11 **veritos**: translate by a causal clause.

189 12 **quibus id**, etc., *who they knew had this plan.*

189 13 **ipsi**: i.e. the Bituriges.—**id eane**, etc., *whether they did this for the reason which*, etc.

189 15 **quod** (adv. acc.), *because* (the reason for **non videtur**, etc.). This is a bit which goes to show that the commentaries, notwithstanding their aim at political effect, are substantially true. Cæsar was too great a man to deceive others except when he deceived himself.

189 19 CHAP. 6. **virtute** = *vigor.* This word is in Latin often used in a vague sense equivalent to our 'thanks to' or the like.

189 21 **qua . . . posset**: indir. quest. following **difficultate**, which implies doubt.

189 23 **se absente**: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army. See also introductory notes.—**dimicaturas** [esse]: sc. *eas*, i.e. the legions.

189 24 **ipse**, etc.: the most submissive Gauls at such a time were not to be depended upon, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.—**eis**: indir. obj. of **committi**, the subj. of which is **suam salutem.**

190 1 CHAP. 7. **Lucterius**, etc.: an officer of Vercingetorix; see **189** 1. He endeavored to rouse the border tribes against the Romans, but was checked by the promptness and farsightedness of Cæsar.

190 2 **Nitiobriges et Gabalos**: these completed the Arvernian frontier, the *Volcae* and *Helvii* being within the limits of the Province.

190 4 **Narbonem**, *Narbonne*, the chief town of *Gallia Narbonensis*, founded by C. Gracchus.

190 5 **antevertendum** [esse] has for its subj. **ut . . . proficisceretur**, and is followed by the dat. **consiliis.**

190 7 **provincialibus**: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

190 14 CHAP. 8. **quod . . . putabat**: referring to Lucterius.

190 15 **Cevenna**: the pass crossing this range is about 4000 feet high.

190 16 **durissimo**, etc.: Pompey was put in authority February 25 (by the *old calendar*, which was now about six weeks ahead of the actual time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes about the middle of January.

190 18 **summo labore**: "these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief," but such men as Cæsar and Napoleon make that kind of soldiers.

190 21 **singulari homini**, *a solitary wayfarer*, to say nothing of an army.

191 1 CHAP. 9. **at**: marks a transition as usual; translate *meanwhile.*

191 2 **usu . . . praeceperat,** *had suspected would come to pass.*—**per causam,** *on the pretext* (so elsewhere in Cæsar): his real motive was to join his force.

191 4 **Brutum**: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar's assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti; see **82** 7–10.

191 6 **triduo**: this was a pretence, and was given out to conceal his real design.

191 8 **Viennam,** *Vienne,* a little below Lyons on the Rhone.—**recentem**: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

191 11 **hiemabant**: see Bk. vi. ch. 44. His route would lie due north up the Saône along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was above 300 miles.—**quid**: with **consili.**

191 12 **de sua salute,** *affecting his own safety;* opposed to any design on his forces.

191 13 **reliquas,** etc.: two of them were somewhere near Luxembourg, and six at Sens, about 140 miles apart.

191 14 **prius**: with **quam.**—**unum locum**: evidently Sens.

191 17 **Gorgobinam**: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.

191 18 **Haeduis attribuerat**: see **25** 19 ff.

191 20 **difficultatem**: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, **si . . . contineret, ne . . . deficeret,** and **si . . . educeret, ne . . . laboraret.**

192 1 CHAP. 10. **stipendiariis**: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

192 2 **amicis,** etc., *since his friends would find there was no help for them in him.*

192 4 **ab,** *in respect to* his supply of corn.

192 10 **Agedinci**: now Sens, the chief town of the Senones.

192 12 CHAP. 11. **altero die,** *on the second day* of the march.—**Vellaunodunum**: the position of this town is somewhat uncertain, but Cæsar apparently did not march directly towards Gorgobina, but made a detour towards the north in order to cross the Loire at Orléans.

192 13 **quo,** *in order that.*

192 15 **circumvallavit**: the circumvallation consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.

192 18 **iter**: i.e. to the relief of the Boii at Gorgobina.

192 19 **qui tum primum,** etc.: i.e. they had just heard of the invest-

ment of Vellaunodunum and, thinking the siege would last longer, were raising a force to defend their chief town about 120 miles off.

192 20 **eam rem**: i.e. the siege.

192 21 **quod mitterent,** *to send,* giving the purpose of **comparabant.**

192 24 **in posterum**: sc. *diem.*

192 25 **militibus imperat,** *he orders the soldiers to prepare.* The dir. obj. of **imperat** being a demonstrative antecedent of **quae,** not expressed in Latin, and in Eng. absorbed in 'what.'

192 26 **contingebat,** *touched:* i.e. led directly to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would allow its defenders to cross to the friendly Bituriges.

193 3 **desideratis quin,** etc.: a loose use of the *quin*-construction; *all, with very few exceptions, were captured.*

193 5 **diripit**: cf. the fate of Avaricum, ch. 28.

193 8 CHAP. 12. **ille**: i.e. Cæsar.

193 9 **Noviodunum**: the position is uncertain. Cæsar's march, however, was certainly to the south up the Loire. This town is to be distinguished from Noviodunum of ch. 55, a city of the Hædui.

193 11 **celeritate**: we may supply in Eng. a demon. as antecedent to **qua.**

193 20 **novi aliquid consili,** *some new design.*

193 22 **omnis incolumis**: see l. 15 above; construe with **receperunt,** *got their men all back safe* to Cæsar's camp.

193 24 CHAP. 13. **Germanos**: this force was much superior to the Gallic cavalry, and was destined to turn the battle in Cæsar's favor at many critical times; see chs. 67, 70, 80. The tactics of the German cavalry are described **43** 4 ff.

193 25 **ab initio**: the meaning of this is not clear. He had no German cavalry at the beginning of his campaigns. He may have obtained them after his struggle with Ariovistus.

194 2 **quibus,** *and these* (the Gallic horse).

194 3 **eos** (obj. of **perduxerunt**): i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, ch. 12.

194 5 **Avaricum**: the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.

195 3 CHAP. 14. **longe alia ratione atque,** *in a way quite different from,* etc.; by purely defensive or guerilla war.

195 6 **anni tempore**: i.e. scarcely yet spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (**aedificia**), which might easily be destroyed.

195 8 **hos omnis**: i.e. *hostis.*

195 10 **incendi**: cf. the course of the Helvetians, Bk. i. ch. 5.

195 11 **hoc spatio**: explained by **quo,** etc., i.e. the range of the Roman foraging parties. — [**a Boia**]: omit.

195 13 **quorum**: the antecedent **is eorum.**

195 15 **neque interesse,** *and it makes no difference* [he says]. — **ne . . . an,** *whether . . . or.*

195 19 **sint receptacula,** *serve as retreats.*

195 20 **neu,** *and lest,* sc. *sint* from preceding clause. — **proposita,** *offered* to be captured by the Romans. The method of warfare here advised by Vercingetorix and afterwards consistently followed by him stamps him as a general of first-rate ability. We may fitly compare Fabius Maximus harassing and weakening the army of Hannibal, and the burning of Moscow by the Russians to drive out Napoleon.

195 26 CHAP. 15. **urbes**: Cæsar more commonly calls them *oppida.* Rome alone is always *urbs.*

196 2 **solaci**: part. gen. with **hoc.**

196 3 **amissa,** *all they had lost* (obj. of **recuperaturos**).

196 4 **incendi,** etc.: a double indir. quest., *whether . . . or.*

196 9 **flumine**: the city was just above the junction of the Auron with the Yèvre.

196 12 **volgi**: obj. gen.; i.e. his compassion *for the poor people,* who would be turned out of house and home in the winter, if the town should be burned.

196 16 CHAP. 16. **longe,** *distant.* — **certos** (*cerno*), *regular.*

196 17 **in . . . tempora,** *from hour to hour.*

196 21 **etsi,** etc., *although so far as skilful planning* (**ratione**) *could provide* (against this danger), *our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.*

196 22 **ut . . . iretur**: a clause of purpose, taking its construction from **provideri,** though not immediately connected with it. The verbs are used impersonally.

196 24 CHAP. 17. **quae . . . habebat**: i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (**196** 8 ff.).

196 25 **intermissa,** *left free.* — [**a**]: omit.

196 26 **aggerem,** etc.: see chapter on military affairs, VIII.

Between the Yèvre and the Auron was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 feet high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 feet wide, with the Auron on one side and a swampy brook, the Yévrette, on the other. From the Yévrette to the Yèvre extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 feet from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 feet deep (see plan, Fig. 90). Cæsar pitched his camp on the

plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from Avaricum. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the *agger*.

196 29 **alteri**: the Hædui, already wavering in their allegiance; **alteri** (next line): the Boii, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians (Bk. i. ch. 28).

197 8 **ab eis**: the source of **vox**, not the agent of **audita.** Notice again in this passage the invincible endurance of these soldiers.

197 14 **ignominiae loco,** *in the place of* (i.e. *as*) *a disgrace.*

197 16 **Cenabi**: locative.

197 17 **parentarent** = *ut parentarent*, the natural construction. As one might say irregularly in English, "It is better to suffer anything than not avenge our comrades," omitting "to."

197 23 CHAP. 18. **qui . . . consuessent**: see Bk. i. ch. 48.

198 2 **sarcinas,** etc.: the regular preparation for battle.

198 5 CHAP. 19. **difficilis,** *hard to cross;* **impedita,** *embarrassing.*

198 7 **fiducia loci,** *trusting to the strength of the position.*

198 8 [**in civitatis**]: omit. — **vada** [**ac saltus**], *fords and open spaces,* where the way seemed practicable.

198 10 **haesitantis,** *struggling* in the mud or bushes. — **premerent**: a purpose clause, taking its construction from **sic animo parati,** *determined;* cf. **199** 3, where the same words take a result clause. The two constructions approach each other, but the first refers to future time, the last to present.

198 11 **propinquitatem**: i.e. the armies were separated only by the swamp. — **videret**: the contrast is between the casual observer and the careful inspector (**qui . . . perspiceret**). — **prope,** etc., *on nearly equal terms;* **iniquitatem** (next line), *unfair advantage,* showing that their offering battle was *inanis simulatio.*

198 14 **quod . . . possent**: follows **indignantis,** *chafing that,* etc. — **conspectum suum,** *the sight of them.*

199 2 **necesse sit,** etc., *a victory must needs cost,* with the abl. of price.

199 4 **iniquitatis**: § 352 (220); B. 208. 2. *a*; G. 378; H. 456 (409. ii); H-B. 342.

199 8 CHAP. 20. **proditionis**: see last note.

199 10 **discessisset** and **venissent** refer to the action in ch. 18. — **imperio** = *imperatore.*

199 12 **non haec,** etc., *all these things could not* [they said].

200 1 **illum**: connect with **malle . . . habere.**

200 2 **ipsorum**: sc. *concessu.*

200 5 **persuasum** [*esse*]: impers., *that it had been recommended.* — **qui se . . . defenderet,** *which was its own defence* (ch. 19).

200 12 **fortunae** (dat.): as well as **huic** (referring to **alicuius**), to be construed with **habendam gratiam,** *thanks were due.*

200 16 **imperium**: the same as **regnum Galliae** above.

200 18 **quin etiam,** *nay even.* Distinguish carefully from *quin* introducing a neg. result. — **remittere,** *is ready to resign;* in dir. disc., *remitto, I resign.* — **si** = [*to see*] *whether* (indir. quest.).

200 27 **nec iam viris,** etc., *that no one any longer has sufficient strength;* **viris** is from *vis.*

200 28 **posse**: sc. *quemquam,* supplied from **cuiusquam.**

200 30 **[Vercingetorix]**: may be omitted.

201 2 **quem**: construe with **ne . . . recipiat,** subj. of **provisum est,** *and as it basely flees from this spot, I have provided that no state shall receive it within its boundaries.*

201 4 CHAP. 21. **suo more**: cf. Tacitus (Ger. 11), *si placuit sententia, frameas concutiunt.*

201 5 **in eo,** *in the case of him.*

201 6 **summum**: this word is often used where we should say "a great."

201 7 **maiore ratione,** *with better generalship.*

201 11 **si . . . retinuissent**: in app. with **eo** (*that condition*).

201 14 CHAP. 22. **genus**: i.e. the Gauls.

201 15 **atque . . . aptissimum**: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 5; **atque** connects the descriptive gen. **summae sollertiae** and the descriptive adj. **aptissimum.**

201 16 **laqueis,** etc.: see Fig. 126.

201 17 **cum destinaverant, . . . reducebant**: a general condition expressing repeated action in past time; cf. **130** 7.

201 19 **ferrariae**: so of the copper mines of the Aquitani; see **89** 11–18.

201 25 **cotidianus agger**: i.e. the daily increase in the height of the *agger.* — **commissis malis,** *by splicing the upright timbers;* these were the high corner beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences. The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered galleries, one for each story.

201 26 **apertos cuniculos . . . morabantur,** etc.: this refers to the obstructions put by the Gauls in the way of the *open passage ways* which ran through the *agger,* and which the soldiers used in carrying material for its advance and completion; **morabantur** has the force of *blocked* or *obstructed.* See Figs. 92, 93, 120, and chapter on military affairs, VIII.

202 2 CHAP. 23. **directae,** *at right angles* with the course of the wall. — **perpetuae in longitudinem,** *along the whole length.*

202 4 **revinciuntur,** *are fastened* by beams some forty feet in length, running lengthwise of the wall.

202 5 **intervalla:** i.e. the two feet between each two of the beams in the lower tier (*ordo*).

202 7 **ut idem,** etc., *in such a way that the same space* (between the beams) *is preserved, and that the beams do not touch each other; but, placed at equal intervals, the individual beams are firmly bound together by the corresponding stones placed between them;* i.e. so alternating in the successive layers that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.

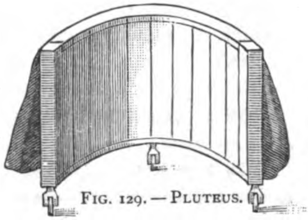


FIG. 129. — PLUTEUS.

202 11 **cum:** correlative with **tum** below.

202 15 **quadragenum:** note the distributive, *forty each.*

203 1 **introrsus revincta:** i.e. the beams were mortised together at some distance from the exposed ends, making it next to impossible to force them apart; see Fig. 94.

203 4 CHAP. 24. **frigore:** it was still very early in the year, scarcely spring; see **208** 10.

203 6 **latum:** as a width of over 300 feet is incredible, some have supposed that this is an error for *longum;* others, that the numeral should be **xxxx**. — **altum pedes lxxx:** it must be remembered that the height of the *agger* had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been thirty feet.

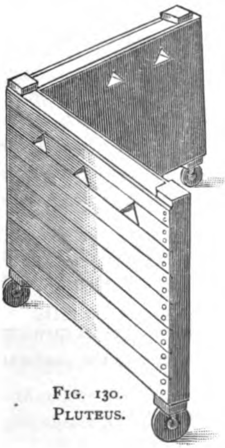


FIG. 130. PLUTEUS.

203 11 **cuniculo:** i.e. a mine running under the *agger*. It should be remembered that the *agger* was built largely of wood.

203 13 **turrium:** the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here referring to those flanking the *agger;* see Figs. 43, 92, 126.

203 19 **partitis temporibus:** i.e. *in their turn.*

203 20 **reducerent:** i.e. out of reach of the fire.

203 21 **interscinderent:** i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the *agger*, which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.

203 25 CHAP. 25. **pluteos:** here the high wooden bulwarks (*loricae*) protecting each story of the tower; see note on **144** 2.

203 26 **nec . . . animadvertebant,** *and noticed that the exposed men did not readily approach to give assistance.*

204 2 **accidit,** etc., *an incident occurred before my eyes, which, seem-*

ing worthy of record, I thought ought not to be omitted. Observe the use of the plural pronoun, the 'editorial *we*,' extremely common in Latin.

204 4 **per manus traditas**: i.e. his companions passed them to him to throw.

204 5 **scorpione**: this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or bolts; see chapter on military affairs, I. 5 and Fig. 95.

204 18 **palus**: probably the watery valley of the Auron.

205 3 CHAP. 26. **suorum,** *their husbands.*

205 5 **quos**: refers to **se** as well as to **liberos**.

205 8 **quo timore**: the regular Latin idiom where we should expect *cuius rei timore.*

205 16 CHAP. 27. [**intra vineas**] : it would be impossible for *legions* to find room *inside* the *vineae.* Either **legiones** here refers to the storming columns, or **intra vineas** means within the line of the sheds, and so out of sight. Many editors omit the words altogether. — **expeditis,** *put in fighting order.*

205 18 **adscendissent**: informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. of the direct.

205 22 CHAP. 28. **cuneatim,** *in a compact body;* (lit. *wedge-fashion*) implying tactics like those of the Romans.

205 23 **si qua . . . veniretur,** *if an attack should be made from any side ;* [**contra**] may be omitted; **veniretur** is impersonal.

205 25 **circumfundi** (impers. pass.) = *that men were pouring in.*

205 27 **continenti impetu,** *without stopping.*

206 1 **exitu**: abl. of cause.

206 3 **quisquam**: i.e. *Romanorum.* — **Cenabensi caede**: see ch. 3.

206 10 [**ut**] : omit. — **procul in via,** etc., *placing his friends and the chiefs of the states at intervals for some distance along the road, he took care that they* [the fugitives] *should be separated and conducted to their own people.*

206 12 **quae . . . pars** = *ad eam partem . . . quae* and refers to the persons implied by **suos,** and is explained by **198** 7, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged *generatim.*

206 14 CHAP. 29. **consolatus cohortatusque**: the fall of Avaricum must have been a crushing blow to Vercingetorix, but he meets the disaster with a magnificent courage.

206 18 **errare si qui** = *that those were mistaken who,* etc.

206 19 **sibi numquam placuisse**: see **196** 3–13.

206 23 **quae . . . dissentirent**: i.e. the states that had not yet joined the rebellion.

206 27 **effectum habere**: see notes on **13** 4, **40** 20, **51** 8.

206 28 **impetrari,** etc.: i.e. he had a right to ask them to proceed to fortify, etc.; notice the modesty of these words, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.

207 5 CHAP. 30. **re integra,** *before anything had happened* (see ch. 15).

207 6 **ut . . . sic**: correlatives.

207 9 **de reliquis,** etc.: follows **in spem,** *hope of*, etc.

207 11 **homines insueti**: an appositive expressing concession; translate by *although*.

207 18 CHAP. 31. **capere,** *gain over* (the neutral states).

207 19 **armandos vestiendosque**: gerundives expressing purpose, agreeing with the understood obj. [*eos*] of **curat**; cf. **11** 5, **82** 7.

207 21 **quem**: sc. **numerum.**

208 1 **sagittarios**: apparently the Gauls had trusted too much, especially during the siege, to hand-to-hand fighting.

208 6 **quos conduxerat,** *whom he had hired;* i.e. mercenaries.

208 11 CHAP. 32. **confecta**: it was now about the end of March, or a little later. — **tempore**: i.e. the time was suitable for campaigning.

208 12 **sive . . . sive**: understand *to try*, or some such phrase to introduce these clauses which are treated as indir. questions.

208 15 **maxime necessario tempore,** *in an extreme emergency.*

208 23 **proximo anno,** *the year before.*

208 24 **suas . . . clientelas,** *that each of them had his own* [armed] *followers* (see Bk. vi. ch. 15).

208 25 **quod si,** *but if;* see second note on **40** 20.

208 27 **positum** [esse], *depended on.*

209 6 CHAP. 33. **minus** [sibi] **confideret,** *felt itself weakest.*

209 8 **eis**: dat. with **liceret.**

209 11 **quos inter** = *eos inter quos.*

209 14 **atque,** *than*, as often after *alius.* — **oportuerit**: for *oportuit* of the direct, implying the nonfulfilment of the duty, see § 522. *a* (311. *c*); B. 304. 3. *a*; G. 597. R.[3]; H. 583 (511. I. N.[3]); H-B. 582. 3. *a.*

209 15 **renuntiatum**: *renuntiare* is the technical term for the act of a magistrate who, after an election, formally declares the result, and thus "creates" the new official. In this case one brother had declared the other elected after a sham election by an illegal convention. —**vivo utroque,** *when both are living.*

209 18 **intermissis magistratibus,** *there being a vacancy in the magistracy;* this phrase signifies that an interval occurred between the term of one magistrate and the due election of his successor. Valetiacus (**208** 22) had illegally appointed his brother Cotus to be his successor. The priests

promptly declared the office vacant and appointed Convictolitavis to fill the position until a regular election could again be held. In such a case at Rome (as had recently occurred twice, B.C. 55 and 52), the patrician senators appointed an *interrex* by virtue of the sacred authority residing in them. Cæsar here, accordingly, recognizes the likeness to a Roman precedent.

209 19 **obtinere,** *to hold against* (**ob**) the rival claimant. See note on **2** 1.

209 22 CHAP. 34. [**his**]: makes sense and may be translated.

209 25 **quae** = *ut ea:* purpose.

209 27 **ducendas:** cf. **206** 12.

210 1 **secundum flumen,** *along the stream* (construe with **duxit**).

210 4 **ab altera parte:** Cæsar being on the right or eastern bank, Vercingetorix on the western, on which the town of Gergovia lay.

210 6 CHAP. 35. **e regione:** see vocab.; cf. **204** 5. — **castris:** dat. of reference.

210 9 **partem:** acc. of extent of time.

210 12 **rescindendos:** cf. **209** 27.

210 14 **distractis,** etc.: this means that Cæsar made up two sham legions by taking cohorts from the others, so that there might appear to be six full legions as before.

210 18 **perventum** [esse] (impers.): i.e. that the four legions that had gone on ahead had reached their camping ground. — **pars inferior:** *the lower end* of the piles, which (being under water) was not burned or cut away, served as a support to the new bridge hastily constructed for the crossing.

210 22 **magnis itineribus:** see note on **8** 22.

210 24 CHAP. 36. **quintis castris,** *at the fifth encampment,* or end of the fifth day's march.

210 26 **situ:** see plan, Fig. 97.

210 27 **oppugnatione,** *taking* (it) *by storm,* without a formal siege. — **de obsessione,** etc.: i.e. he concluded not to invest it regularly until supplies had been provided.

211 5 **qua despici poterat,** *where a view could be had from above.*

211 8 **seu quid,** etc., *in case any communication or orders should seem necessary.*

211 10 **quid:** with **animi ac virtutis** (part. gen.).

211 12 **collis:** the so-called Roche Blanche (White Rock), at whose foot flows the only sufficient stream of water (see plan, Fig. 97). Cæsar's larger camp, it will be observed, lay toward the southeast of the town, and the smaller towards the south; while the forces of the Gauls lay on the

gentler southern slopes of the hill (measuring nearly a mile from east to west, and a third as much from north to south) on which the town was built (see ch. 46).

211 13 **quem si,** etc.: fut. condition, indir. disc.

211 14 **et . . . et:** correlatives.

211 16 **tamen:** opposed to the whole description, not to the last part merely.

211 17 **posset:** see note on **158** 24. The verb is here impersonal.

211 23 CHAP. 37. **demonstravimus:** see **209** 17–19.

211 27 **praemium communicat:** i.e. the money from the Arverni.

211 28 **imperio natos,** *born for command* (dat.). — **unam,** etc., *was the only thing*, etc., though **unam** as usual agrees with the pred.

212 1 **traducta,** *carried over* to the patriotic party.

212 3 **beneficio,** *a friendly act;* i.e. deciding the magistracy in his favor. — **sic . . . obtinuerit:** i.e. this (he claimed) was only his due and not a special favor.

212 8 **vel principes,** *even leaders,* not mere followers or adherents.

212 11 **placuit,** *it was decided.* — **milibus:** this refers to the troops that Cæsar had asked for against Vercingetorix; see **209** 23–25.

212 12 **ea ducenda curaret,** *that he should have charge of their march.*

212 13 **reliqua:** subj. of **agi,** the whole clause being the obj. of **constituunt.**

212 18 CHAP. 38. **principes civitatis:** see ch. 39.

213 1 **consili res,** *a matter for deliberation.* — **sit:** for mood and tense, see § 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3.

213 4 **concurrant:** § 558. *a* (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *b*.

213 8 **una** (adv.), *with him.* — **frumenti:** i.e. which these Romans were taking to Cæsar under the protection of the Hæduan guard.

213 15 CHAP. 39. **genere dispari,** *of lower birth.*

213 16 **traditum:** here equivalent to *commendatum,* — *presented* as suited for public service.

213 17 **nominatim,** etc.: i.e. he had sent them a personal summons.

213 23 **quod . . . provideat,** *which he foresees will be the consequence.*

213 25 **levi momento,** *of light account; momentum* (from *moveo*) is strictly the weight which "moves" the balance scale.

214 3 CHAP. 40. **contrahenda:** as only two legions were left behind, the camp should have been "contracted," so that these few might be equal to the task of keeping and relieving guard. The danger to which the situation exposed them is related in the next chapter, — **propter magnitudinem castrorum,** l. 26.

214 5 **fratres**: these had gone to Cæsar in advance of the Hæduan force; see **212** 13. They seem to have suspected, or to have been warned, that the plot had been betrayed.

214 7 **necessario . . . labore,** *by the hardship of a forced march.* It is worth while to notice the frank terms on which Cæsar stands with his citizen-soldiers. This was an essential element of his success.

214 12 **quos . . . existimabant**: owing to the falsehoods of Litavicus, **212** 17–20.

214 16 **quibus nefas est,** *for whom it is wrong;* see Bk. iii. ch. 22.

214 21 CHAP. 41. **[noctis]**: if this word is authentic, it must refer to the early part of the night, for Cæsar marches back to his camp, a distance of twenty-five miles, before sunrise.

214 26 **quibus isdem**: dat. of apparent agent after **permanendum esset.** The thought is that the soldiers were so few that the same men had to do all the fighting and could not be relieved.

214 29 **tormenta**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5. — **discessu eorum**: at the suspension of their attack when night came on; his messengers had apparently set out about midnight.

215 1 **obstruere,** etc.: these pres. infinitives show that his preparations were still going on. — **pluteos vallo addere**: to make a defence behind which the soldiers could stand while manning the wall.

215 4 **ante ortum solis,** etc.: Cæsar left his camp a little after midnight, marched twenty-five miles, gave his soldiers a rest of three hours, and marched back twenty-five miles, reaching camp before sunrise, having been away but little more than twenty-four hours; truly a remarkable display of energy.

215 9 CHAP. 42. **levem auditionem**: see **97** 6–9. — **pro re comperta,** *as an ascertained fact.*

215 11 **proclinatam**: "leaning forward" like a wall just ready to fall =*perilous as it was* (in itself).

215 14 **fide data,** *giving pledges* of security.

215 15 **idem facere**: i.e. to come out and put themselves in their power.

215 19 CHAP. 43. **omnis eorum milites**: i.e. the contingent sent under Litavicus, ch. 38.

215 24 **suorum**: i.e. their soldiers.

215 25 **capti,** etc., *tempted* (as they had been) *by the profit of the plunder.* — **ea res**: i.e. responsibility for it.

216 2 **nihil se gravius de civitate iudicare,** *that he thought none the worse of the state.*

216 6 **a,** *away from* (the neighborhood of).

216 7 **contraheret:** i.e. join his forces with the four legions of Labienus, **209** 26.

217 8 CHAP. 44. **dorsum,** etc. : the hill (*collis*) was southwest of the town and northwest of Cæsar's smaller camp (see plan) ; while from it a narrow wooded ridge (*dorsum*), nearly level, gave easy access to the town at its western side. Most of the Gallic force had been transferred to that side from the eastern and southern defences. This left the Gallic camps and the part of the city opposite the Romans bare of defenders.

217 11 **uno . . . occupato:** see **211** 11–21.

217 12 **quin . . . viderentur:** after **aliter sentire** (= *dubitare*) ; cf. **213** 3.

217 13 **hunc:** i.e. **alterum collem.**

217 18 CHAP. 45. **impedimentorum** (= *iumentorum*) *beasts of burden.*

217 19 **stramenta,** *the pack-saddles,* which would prevent the animal from being ridden conveniently.

217 20 **collibus** (loc. abl.) **circumvehi:** i.e. towards the westerly side. All these movements were designed to make the Gauls fear an attack from the west or northwest. Cæsar's real design was to make a sudden dash from the south and east and surprise their camps.

217 22 **easdem regiones:** i.e. in the vicinity of the hill which the Gauls were fortifying.

218 5 **ut contineant,** etc. : i.e. the design was not to hold the camp, but simply to sweep through it by a sudden and daring raid.

218 9 **ab dextra parte:** i.e. from the larger camp to the east.

218 11 CHAP. 46. **recta regione,** *in a straight line.*

218 12 **si . . . intercederet . . . aberat:** cf. § 517. *c* and N.[2] (308. *c* and N.[2]) ; B. 304. 3. *a* ; G. 597. 3 ; H. 583 (511. I. N.[3]) ; H-B. 581, 582. 3. *a.* N.[1].

218 13 **huc,** *to this amount.*

218 14 **in longitudinem ut . . . ferebat,** *lengthwise of the hill.*

218 16 **murum:** traces of this wall are still found, at some distance down the slope, parallel with the town wall.

218 17 **inferiore omni,** etc. : i.e. the space below the six-foot wall to the bottom of the ascent, a distance of about half a mile, was vacant ; an equal space above to the city wall was filled with the Gallic encampments.

218 18 **castris:** the separate camps of the several Gallic states, set close together, of which three (*trinis*) were taken.

218 19 **ad munitionem:** i.e. *ad murum a medio colle.*

218 20 **trinis:** § 137. *b* (95. *b*) ; B. 81. 4. *b* ; G. 97. R.[8] ; H. 164. 3 (174. 2. 3) ; H-B. 247. I. *a.*

218 26 CHAP. 47. **legionis:** with **signa.** Observe that Cæsar is found, as usual, with his favorite legion ; cf. **36** 21–25. This legion, it will

be remembered (**217** 25), was first stationed some distance away from the others. It seems to have returned and taken a prominent part in the assault.

218 27 **reliquarum**: i.e. those engaged in the assault just described.

219 3 **retinebantur**: conative; the officers tried to hold them back.

219 13 **Avarici**: see **206** 3–5.

219 16 **quem . . . constabat,** *who, it was certain, said that day in the presence of his soldiers.* The subj. of **constabat** is **quem . . . dixisse.**

219 17 **prius quisquam,** *any body before him.*

219 21 CHAP. 48. **supra**: see **217** 26 ff.

219 23 **oppidum . . . teneri**: depends on **nuntiis** as a word of *telling.*

219 25 **sub muro**: i.e. below and outside of the city wall.

220 2 **cursu**: they had run about a mile up a steep ascent.

220 8 CHAP. 49. **sub infimo colle**: at the foot of the hill on which was the smaller Roman camp (**211** 11–21), see Fig. 97 (Sextius, 1st position). — **ab . . . hostium**: i.e. on the Roman left; Cæsar, meanwhile, was posted considerably to the right (eastward).

220 10 **hostes**: translate as if the obj. of **terreret.** — **quo . . . insequerentur**: expresses the purpose of **terreret.**

220 11 **progressus**: it was rather a retreat than an advance; see plan, Fig. 97 (Leg. X, 2d position).

220 15 CHAP. 50. **latere aperto,** *the exposed flank* of the Romans; i.e. the right flank.

220 16 **manus distinendae causa**: i.e. to make a diversion.

220 18 **insigne pactum,** *the signal agreed upon.* The Hædui had their Gallic arms and standards, so that the mistake was a natural one, especially at such a time of excitement.

220 23 **excīdere,** *to cut away;* i.e. from within, to gain his escape.

221 9 CHAP. 51. **aequiore loco,** *on more level ground,* farther back from the town; see plan, Fig. 97 (Leg. X, 3d position).

221 12 **locum superiorem,** *higher ground,* in the direction of the larger camp; see plan, Fig. 97 (2d position of Sextius). The retreat was made in good order, as is shown by what immediately follows.

221 18 CHAP. 52. **cupiditatem,** *eagerness* for battle.

221 22 **ad Avaricum**: referring to the operations in that neighborhood described in ch. 19.

221 25 **quanto opere . . . tanto opere**: correlatives.

222 9 CHAP. 53. **eadem,** etc.: i.e. that the wisest course would be to join his forces with those of Labienus, in view of all the troubles that were threatening; cf. **216** 4–8.

222 11 **nihilo magis**: Vercingetorix was far too wary and skilful to

put himself at such disadvantage. He knew that he was no match for Cæsar on level ground. A parallel might be drawn between the tactics of Vercingetorix and those of Fabius the Delayer against Hannibal.

222 12 **secundo,** *favorable* to the Romans. By this slight success and the refusal of Vercingetorix to meet him in the plain on even terms, Cæsar avoids the appearance of a compulsory retreat. Still, it is evident that Cæsar's operations against Gergovia were far from being as successful as he himself had hoped or wished. It was the only city that successfully defied his assault, and its victoricus resistance must have been a great encouragement to the Gallic patriots.

222 18 CHAP. 54. **Viridomaro,** etc.: see **213** 13–17. These young Hæduan nobles had decided to desert Cæsar, and so, as soon as they reached the frontier of their country, on the east side of the Allier, they invented an excuse for leaving him.

222 21 **perfidiam . . . habebat:** see note on **coactum habebat, 13** 4.

222 25 **discedentibus** (dat.), *as they were setting out.*

222 26 **quos et quam humilis,** *in what a state* (lit. *whom*) *and how humbled;* shortly before Cæsar's arrival in Gaul the Sequani with the Germans as their allies had conquered the Hædui and imposed heavy conditions on them. See Bk. i. ch. 31.

223 6 **mandatis:** this word implies that what he has just said to them is to be repeated to their countrymen at home.

223 8 CHAP. 55. **Noviodunum:** the modern Nevers, on the right bank of the Loire (*Liger*), just above its junction with the Allier (*Elaver*). The Noviodunum of ch. 12 is probably Sancerre.

223 14 **civitatis:** the Hæduan commonwealth. The *status* is described in the clause which follows, down to **missos.**

223 15 **Bibracte:** loc. abl.

223 19 **tantum commodum:** i.e. of taking the town, seizing the Roman stores, and especially of capturing the hostages, whose possession was all important to Cæsar for keeping the tribes in subjection.

223 23 **deducendos:** § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.[2]); H-B. 612. iii.

223 24 **cui:** indef. pron. with **usui.**

224 2 **in provinciam:** Cæsar was now on the western or further bank of the Loire, which he would thus be obliged to follow up towards its source, thence crossing over to the province. The bracketed words may be translated.

224 4 **nivibus:** it was still spring, perhaps about May.

224 7 CHAP. 56. **si esset,** etc., *in case* (i.e. *lest*) *he might have to risk a battle while the bridge-building was under way.*

224 8 **eo**: i.e. on the Loire. Cæsar felt that to effect a union with Labienus as soon as possible was vitally important.

224 9 **ne . . . converteret**: depending on **impediebat.**

224 10 **ut non nemo,** *as many a one.*

224 11 **cum**: correl. with **tum.**

224 13 **Labieno, legionibus**: datives following **timebat.** For the facts, see **209** 26 ff. The situation was extremely critical, and it is not strange that many thought Cæsar would have to desert Labienus and seek safety for himself in the province. Most men would have done so, but Cæsar was a man apart, an extraordinary military genius.

224 14 **admodum,** etc.: these marches must have been extraordinary, to judge from the expression.

224 16 **pro rei necessitate,** *considering the emergency,* difficult and hazardous as it was.

224 18 **disposito equitatu**: i.e. just above the ford a line of cavalry was formed in the water, reaching across the river. By this barrier the violence of the current was checked. Another line also was stationed below the ford to catch any that were swept away.

224 23 CHAP. 57. **eo supplemento**: see **186** 3–5, **190** 9–12.

224 26 **Lutetiam**: see **159** 3 and note.

225 2 **Aulerco**: this tribe was the next westerly, south of the Seine (see map, Fig. 88).

225 4 **is**: i.e. Camulogenus.

225 5 **perpetuam paludem**: the marsh ground along the little river Essonne, which flows into the Seine on the south a little above Paris. Labienus was proceeding on the left or southerly bank of the Seine. See plan, Fig. 99.

226 1 CHAP. 58. **aggere,** *a mass of earth* for a causeway.

226 4 **Metiosedum** (or Melodunum) Melun: here Labienus crosses to the north or right bank.

226 7 **eo,** *aboard* (= *in eas*).

226 11 **secundo flumine,** *following the river-course down* the right bank. Having boats or pontoons, he would easily cross the Marne just above Paris.

226 14 **palude**: a marshy ground south of the river.

226 20 CHAP. 59. **confirmabant,** *kept asserting.*

226 21 **qui** refers to **Bellovaci.**—**per se**: i.e. without this example of the Hædui.

226 24 **neque**: connects **intellegebat** and **cogitabat.** The latter verb is here followed by two clauses of purpose. The infin. would be more usual.

227 1 **altera, alteram:** the Bellovaci were on the north of the Seine; Camulogenus (ch. 57) was on the south.—**quae civitas:** the defection of this tribe might well cause Labienus uneasiness. They were a nation of warriors and could put 100,000 men in the field. When the tribes of Belgic Gaul conspired against Cæsar, the Bellovaci, because of their importance, were placed at the head of the league; see **51** 11–15.

227 4 **praesidio:** at Agedincum (Sens) on the other side of the Seine; see **224** 23–26.

227 6 **ab animi virtute:** a truly Roman quality, of which, fortunately, Labienus had a good supply.

227 9 CHAP. 60. **equitibus:** not *cavalrymen*, but unattached officers of equestrian rank (*tribuni militum, comites imperatoris*, etc.) put in charge each of a single vessel.

227 15 **adverso flumine:** a feint, the real attack being made below.—**imperat,** *gives orders* (followed by the acc. and infin. instead of the usual *ut*-clause).

227 21 CHAP. 61. **exercitus equitatusque:** thought of as one body, hence with a sing. verb.

227 25 **tumultuari:** the **magno tumultu** of l. 15.

227 27 **paulo infra:** about four miles below.

228 2 Omit the bracketed words.

228 4 **castrorum:** the Roman camp.

228 6 **naves:** i.e. the **lintris** of **227** 16, not the ships, for they had gone the other way.

228 22 CHAP. 62. **ostenderunt:** sc. *tribuni*.

228 27 **neque potuerunt,** *but could not.* Much of Cæsar's success was due to the excellence of his officers. In this case, for example, Labienus does not supinely wait for Cæsar to come and extricate him from his difficulties, but by a military exploit of the first rank rescues himself and goes to the help of his chief.

229 5 CHAP. 63. **circummittuntur,** etc.: these are the acts of the Hædui.

229 7 **quos Caesar,** etc.: see **223** 9, 22.—**supplicio:** i.e. by threats; cf. **188** 22–28.

229 9 **rationes communicet:** not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.

229 15 **illi:** i.e. the Remi (see Bk. ii. ch. 5; **154** 3–5) and the Lingones.

229 20 **requirunt** = *recall with regret.*

229 21 **summae spei,** *of high ambition* (**213** 13–20).

229 24 CHAP. 64. **ipse:** i.e. Vercingetorix.

229 25 **huc:** at Bibracte, the capital of the Hædui.

230 2 **factu**: supine after **perfacile**; § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1 (547); H-B. 619. 1.

230 3 **aequo animo,** *without complaint.* — **modo . . . corrumpant,** *only let them*, etc.: a hortatory subjv. expressing a kind of proviso.

230 6 **finitimi**: see map, Fig. 2.

230 7 [ei] may be omitted.

230 9 **Allobrogibus**: these and the peoples mentioned in the next sentence were allies or subjects of Rome, and would look to Cæsar for protection if attacked; see **231** 5 ff. — **altera ex parte**: as the Roman frontier was bent into an irregular curve by the line of the Cévennes, the Gauls would strike the Province in two directions, the Hædui from the north, the Ruteni, etc., from the west; see map, Fig. 2.

230 13 **superiore bello**: the war of eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued by Pomptinus (Bk. i. ch. 6).

230 16 CHAP. 65. **cohortium**: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.

230 17 **L. Caesare**: a cousin of Julius, consul B.C. 64.

230 18 **ad omnis,** etc., *were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.*

230 20 **Donnotauro**: a brother of Procillus (**42** 10); the Roman name (*C. Valerius*) is regularly taken in compliment to his Roman *patronus* (see also **17** 9, **48** 10–20).

230 21 **muros,** *strongholds* — not simply the walls of the *oppida.*

230 24 **interclusis,** etc.: from this we see how much Cæsar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingetorix employed against him.

230 27 **equites**: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic; see **193** 23 ff. and note.

230 28 **inter eos proeliari**: see **43** 4 ff., **95** 15–20.

230 29 **equis**: for a description of these, see **95** 10–14.

231 1 [**sed et**]: these words should probably be omitted.

231 4 CHAP. 66. **equites**: see **229** 25.

231 6 **per . . . finis**: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, ch. 62) toward the east, and so leaving the hostile Hædui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see map, Fig. 88).

231 13 **parum profici,** *that little advantage was gained.* — **reversuros** [*esse*]: i.e. *Romanos.*

231 15 **adoriantur**: for *adoriamur* in dir. disc., *let us charge upon them.* — **si pedites,** etc.: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry.

Vercingetorix knew Cæsar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reinforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (**suis**) the march would be delayed.

231 16 **magis futurum,** *is more likely.*

231 18 **dignitate,** etc. : i.e. the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage. —**nam de equitibus,** etc. : i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.

231 19 **quin . . . audeat** follows **ne . . . dubitare** : i.e. even they themselves would admit that, etc.

231 20 **id quo . . . animo,** *that they* (i.e. the Gauls) *may do so* (i.e. attack the Romans) *with greater courage.*

231 21 **pro castris,** *in front of the camp,* by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.

231 23 **confirmari oportere,** *that they ought to bind themselves.*

232 1 CHAP. 67. **a primo agmine,** *at the front of the* (Roman) *line of march.*

232 7 **aciem converti** : by a change of front, turning the line of march to a line of battle.

232 9 **Germani** : it is evident that the victory was due to them; cf. ch. 13.

232 10 **flumen** : the Vingeanne, and its tributary the Badin, about which many ornaments, weapons, etc., have been found.

232 15 **Cotus,** etc. : see **208** 14–23, **209** 12–19.

232 16 **proximis comitiis** : i.e. of the Hædui for chief magistrate.

232 18 **quo duce,** etc. (see Bk. i. ch. 31) : this was seemingly another Eporedórix, not the rival of Viridomarus.

232 21 CHAP. 68. **Alesiam** : this famous fortress (now called Alise Ste. Reine) was on the territory lying just north of the Hæduan frontier. Its natural advantages — summed up in the succeeding chapters — are thus described :

"Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with 80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Ver-

cingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible." — *Froude's* "Cæsar." See plan, Fig. 103.

233 2 CHAP. 69. **loco**: in app. with **colle**; cf. § 282. *d* (184. *c*); B. 169. 4; G. 411. 3; H. 393. 7 (363. 4. 2); H-B. 319. i.

233 7 **sub muro**, etc.: this sentence is an excellent example, at the same time, both of the natural precedence of the relative in Latin and of the freedom of all real language from grammatical trammels. The student should first translate it literally thus: *Under the wall, which side of the hill* (i.e. the side which) *faced the east, all this space the forces of the Gauls had filled, and had carried along a ditch*, etc. The meaning of this is obvious, but it is not at all in accordance with our English idiom. Indeed, it is not strictly *grammatical* in any language. After the student has seen what it means, he should try to put it into some form that is allowable in English idiom, say: *Under the wall, the side . . ., all this space the forces . . ., and had made there*, etc.

233 10 **munitionis**: Cæsar constructed a line of *contravallation;* i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie.

233 11 **milia**: acc. of extent; **tenebat** having here the force of *pertinebat.* — **castra**, etc.: in the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see plan, Fig. 102).

233 13 **stationes**, etc.: in the daytime a mere picket-guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (**excubitoribus**) on their walls.

233 18 CHAP. 70. **supra**: i.e. l. 4.

233 19 **Germanos**: cf. **232** 9 and note.

233 20 **pro castris**: these were on the high ground south of the city (see plan, Fig. 102); **castris** is plural, = *camps.*

233 23 **angustioribus**, *too narrow*, either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the enemy's entrance. The gates referred to were in the stone wall (**maceria**); see plan.

233 24 **acrius**, *with all the more vigor.*

234 1 **veniri . . . existimantes**, *thinking that an immediate attack is to be made upon them.*

234 4 **portas**, *town gates;* these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the **fossa** and **maceria**) should rush into the town in a panic.

234 7 CHAP. 71. **perficiantur**: for mood, cf. **57** 20 and note.

234 11 **suae, se**: i.e. Vercingetorix. — **neu**, *and not*, the regular way

of continuing a negative purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of **neu.**

234 14 **ratione inita,** *having made a calculation.*

234 17 **opus**: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.

234 21 **copias omnis**: not those that held the fortification east of the town (**233** 7–10), but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.

234 26 CHAP. 72. **pedum viginti**: i.e. in breadth.

234 27 **directis,** *vertical,* the bottom (**solum**) being as broad as the top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was (as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. This was the interior line of defence against the town. — **sŏlum**: notice the quantity of the first syllable.

235 2 [id] may be omitted. — **hoc consilio,** *with this design,* followed by the app. clauses of purpose, **ne . . . possent.**

235 3 **quoniam . . . ne,** *that, since,* etc., *not,* etc. — **esset complexus** and **cingeretur** are subjv. because integral parts of his purpose, **ne . . . possent.**

235 4 **nec** = *et non,* as usual. — **totum opus,** *the entire work,* eleven miles in extent, according to **233** 11.

235 6 **operi**: take with **destinatos.**

235 8 **eadem altitudine,** *of equal depth.* — **quarum interiorem**: i.e. the one nearer the town. — **campestribus . . . locis**: loc. abl. describing the situation.

235 10 **aggerem**: here not the technical approach used in a siege, but a *bank of earth* serving as a rampart, on top of which was placed the **vallum** of stakes, twelve feet in height.

235 11 **loricam, pinnas**: see Bk. v. ch. 40. These were to raise higher the defence of the **vallum.** — **cervis**: stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting like stags' horns. — **ad commissuras,** *at the joining,* i.e. the place where these *plutei* were fixed in the *agger,* which would be at their lowest part.

235 12 **pluteorum**: the *lorica* was really a series of *plutei,* arranged side by side on a wall and bound together.

235 13 **turris**: if these were ten feet wide at the base, there must have been at least 400. — **quae . . . distarent**: not *which were distant* (this would be indic.), but *so placed as to be,* etc., hence subjv.

235 15 CHAP. 73. **erat**: with **necesse**; its subj. is the infinitives. — **materiari**: i.e. to get timber; *lignari* would mean to get firewood.

235 16 **copiis**: Cæsar had about 50,000 men.

235 20 **quo,** *in order that.*

235 21 **truncis arborum,** etc.: trunks of trees or very stiff boughs

were cut down; then the boughs were trimmed and sharpened at the ends, and then planted in five rows in trenches each five feet deep (**quinos pedes**), and perhaps one and a half feet wide.

235 24 **huc . . . eminebant,** *those boughs being sunk in these* (**huc,** i.e. the trenches) *and being securely fastened at the bottom so that they could not be torn up, projected from the ground only with their branches.*

235 25 **quini . . . ordines:** these five rows of *chevaux-de-frise,* intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps twenty-five feet wide, so that, even with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them.

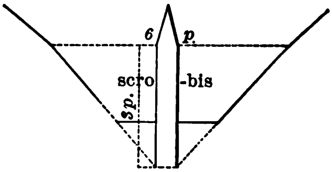


Fig. 131. — Lilium.

235 26 **quo qui intraverant,** *whoever entered within them;* protasis of a past general condition.

235 27 **cippos:** i.e. boundary-stones, so called jestingly by the troops; see Fig. 103.

235 29 **scrobes,** *little pits,* with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (*in quincuncem*), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a "lily-cup" (*lilium*); see Fig. 131. — **paulatim . . . fastigio,** *sloping gradually towards the bottom.*

235 30 **teretes,** *round,* like a cylinder, while the word **rotundus** means round like a ball. — **huc,** *in these;* cf. same word in l. 24.


Fig. 132. Stimulus.

235 31 **praeusti:** to harden the point.

236 2 **singuli . . . exculcabantur,** *a foot of each* [stake] *was packed down with earth at the bottom.*

236 7 **taleae:** blocks of wood or stakes with iron barbed points fixed in them. Several of these hooks have been found in excavations on this site; see Fig. 132. — **totae,** *their whole length,* so that only the hooks projected.

236 10 Chap. 74. **regiones . . . aequissimas:** the line of circumvallation (see plan, Fig. 102) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 feet. It was protected by a single ditch.

236 11 **xiv milia:** of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see **233** 11).

236 12 **diversas,** *facing the other way.*

236 14 Omit the bracketed words.

236 16 **habere . . . convectum:** see note on **compertum habere,** Bk. i. ch. 44.

236 19 CHAP. 75. **omnis:** subj. of **convocandos** [*esse*].

236 24 **[Blannoviis]:** this name is doubtful.

236 25 **milia:** dir. obj. of **imperant,** the datives being the indir. obj. The same construction is continued in the next sentences, where *imperant* is to be supplied.

237 4 The bracketed words may be omitted.

237 6 **quo in numero:** cf. Bk. iii. ch. 7.

237 12 **pro,** *in consideration of.*

237 13 CHAP. 76. **Commi:** cf. **106** 13–19, **110** 13–14, **115** 9, **131** 26.

237 15 **civitatem:** i.e. the Atrebates. — **immunem,** *free from tribute.*

237 16 **attribuerat,** *had assigned* to him as a prince.

237 19 **moveretur:** i.e. *Gallia.*

237 23 **Viridomaro et Eporedorigi:** these Hæduan nobles had been among Cæsar's most faithful friends; see chs. 38, 39, 40, 54.

237 24 **Vercassivellauno:** in this word, as in *Vercingetorix*, the prefix *Ver* is probably a title, like the modern "Sir" or "Lord."

237 25 **his:** indir. obj. of **attribuuntur.**

237 29 **ancipiti,** *with double front,* having to be fought behind and before.

237 30 **cum . . . foris,** etc., [in a case] *where they would fight in a sally from the town, and on the outside,* etc.

238 1 CHAP. 77. **at:** to mark the change of scene.

238 7 **crudelitatem:** perhaps so in a Gaul, but in a Roman it would be *constantiam.*

238 10 **deditionis:** a mere "laying down of arms."

238 12 **cum . . . est,** *I have to do with those.*

238 14 **animi est,** etc.: the infin. clause following is in app. with **ista.** From the English idiom we should expect *istud*, but in Latin such pronouns agree with the predicate.

238 16 **offerant, ferant:** subjv. of characteristic.

238 17 **atque,** *and yet.* — **probarem . . . viderem:** apodosis and protasis in a contrary-to-fact supposition; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

238 18 **tantum potest:** see Vocab. — **dignitas:** i.e. of those who advocate making a sally.

238 19 **vitae nostrae:** depending on *iacturam*, to be supplied according to the Latin idiom.

238 21 **quid animi,** *what heart.*

238 22 **propinquis, consanguineis:** dat. of poss. after **fore.**

238 27 **prosternere, subicere:** connected by **nec** with **exspoliare.**

239 2 **animi causa,** *for the pleasure of it.* — **illorum:** the Gauls; **his:** the Romans. — **exerceri,** *are toiling.*

239 4 **testibus,** *as witnesses,* pred. app.

239 6 **consili:** pred. gen. — **facere:** sc. *meum consilium est,* from the preceding.

239 7 **Cimbrorum:** see note on **7** 1. They did great damage in laying waste Gaul and Spain before they turned to Italy.

239 12 **pulcherrimum:** in pred. agreement with the two preceding infinitives. — **quid,** etc., *what was there in that war like this?*

239 17 **quos:** the antecedent is **horum.**

239 21 **finitimam:** "over the border,"— the Province.

239 22 **securibus:** the lictor's axes, the sign not simply of military rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).

239 27 CHAP. 78. **illo:** observe the emphasis. — **potius,** with **quam.** — **utendum** [esse]: impers., governing the abl.; § 500. 3 (294. *c.* N.); B. 337. 7. *b.* 1; G. 427. N.[4]; H. 623. 1 (544. N.[5]); H-B. 600. 3. *a.*

240 4 **prohibebat:** one of the cruel necessities of war. The wretched creatures must have perished miserably between the city walls and the Roman lines.

240 7 CHAP. 79. **colle:** this hill is southwest from Alesia, beyond the Brenne; see plan, Fig. 102.

240 10 **demonstravimus:** see **233** 4.

240 13 **concurrunt:** i.e. the Gauls in Alesia.

240 16 **fossam:** see **234** 26 ff., and plan, Fig. 102.

240 23 CHAP. 80. **Galli,** etc.: the Gauls here adopt the German cavalry tactics; see Bk. i. ch. 26.

240 26 **complures:** i.e. of the Roman cavalry.

241 5 **neque . . . ac,** etc. (perhaps a misreading for *neque . . . nec*), *and because neither a brave nor a cowardly action,* etc.

241 8 **Germani:** for the fourth time in this campaign the Germans decide the day for Cæsar; cf. **232** 9 and note.

241 12 **at:** what is its force here? Cf. **240** 4, **238** 1, and note.

242 3 CHAP. 81. **atque,** *and even.*

242 4 **harpagonum:** iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down the defences; see Fig. 126.

242 5 **campestris munitiones:** *the works in the plain;* i.e. the line of circumvallation in the Plain of the Laumes, southwest from Alesia; see plan, Fig. 102.

242 6 **qua = ut ea**: introducing a clause of purpose.

242 8 **cratis,** *hurdles* of woven twigs, to cover the trenches.

242 13 **fundis librilibus**: heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force.

242 14 **glandibus**: leaden bullets.

242 18 **his auxilio**: two datives.

242 19 **deductos**: sc. *milites*. The thought is that men were withdrawn from the more distant redoubts to defend those that were in greatest danger.

242 22 CHAP. 82. **stimulis**: cf. **236** 7–9. — **scrobis**: cf. **235** 28 ff.

242 23 **pilis muralibus**: large darts perhaps hurled by the engines.

242 26 **superioribus**: on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).

242 29 **fossas**: this word should probably be *fossam*. It seems to refer to the ditch twenty feet wide; see **234** 26 ff. and plan. — **explent**: coördinate with **proferunt**.

243 6 CHAP. 83. **collis**: see plan; the camp of these two legions was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.

243 13 **quoque pacto,** *and in what manner*.

243 15 **Vercassivellaunum**: see **237** 23–25.

243 29 CHAP. 84. **multum valet,** *tends greatly*.

244 1 **quod . . . constare**: as the attack is both from without and within, the Romans in their fortifications have enemies both in front and in the rear, and the shouting of those in their rear tends to disconcert them. As they face the enemy they feel that their safety depends on the valor of those who are defending their rear.

244 4 CHAP. 85. **idoneum locum**: i.e. where he can see everything.

244 5 **utrisque, etc.,** *the thought is present to the minds of both parties that this is the time of all others best suited for the greatest exertion*.

244 8 **si rem obtinuerint,** *if they* (*shall*) *gain the day*.

244 11 **iniquum . . . fastigium,** *the unfavorable downward slope* of the ground (see **243** 8). The Romans always aimed to have their camp where no higher ground could command it.

244 13 **agger**: i.e. earth, stones, or anything else handy.

244 15 **occultaverant**: i.e. the *stimuli*, *scrobes*, etc., described in ch. 73.

244 17 CHAP. 86. **Labienum**: he was encamped on the heights of Bussy. See plan.

244 19 **deductis . . . pugnet,** *to draw off his cohorts and make a sally*.

244 22 **interiores**: i.e. the Gauls within the town.

244 23 **loca praerupta**: probably the Heights of Flavigny.

244 24 [**ex**]: may be omitted.

244 26 **vallum ac loricam:** see **235** 10 ff.

245 1 CHAP. 87. **integros:** i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.

245 2 **eo,** etc.: i.e. to the works on Mont Rea.

245 10 CHAP. 88. **ex colore:** the purple or scarlet *paludamentum.* The bracketed words may be omitted.

245 12 **de locis superioribus,** *from the high ground* occupied by the Gauls.

245 13 **declivia,** *the downward slopes.* — **cernebantur,** *were in plain sight.*

245 14 **excipit clamor:** i.e. the shout of the combatants is taken up and re-echoed all along the lines. Notice the vividness and power of the following description, the short quick sentences, the absence of connectives, and the rapidity of the whole.

245 16 **equitatus:** who had been sent for that purpose as told above.

245 22 **conspicati:** agrees with the subj. of **reducunt**; sc. *Galli.*

245 24 **quod:** lit. *as to which,* referring to the preceding sentence; § 397. *a* (240. *b*); B. 185. 2; G. 610. R.[2]; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); cf. H-B. 388. *a.* N.; translate *and.*

245 25 **crebris subsidiis,** *constant service in relief parties.*

246 8 CHAP. 89. **Vercingetorix deditur:** the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. Plutarch in his "Life of Cæsar" describes the surrender as follows: "Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, and adorning his horse, came out of the gate, and rode round Cæsar as he sat, then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

246 9 **si** [to try], *whether,* indir. quest.

246 10 **capita singula,** *one apiece.*

246 17 CHAP. 90. **huic:** i.e. Labienus.

246 25 **Bibracte:** loc. abl.

246 26 Cf. the close of Bks. ii and iv.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Cæsar's four infantry camps and of his four cavalry camps. Of the twenty-three redoubts, remains of only five could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they had crumbled entirely away.

The trench twenty feet wide remains in its entirety. Of the pits (*scrobes*) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than fifty were discovered. They are all three feet deep, two feet wide at the top, and one foot wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original dimensions. In the trenches were found a great number of coins, Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spear-heads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Cæsar's narrative.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN. — If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he uses his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (*si per eos*, etc.). His aim was "not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the undegenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence."

Cæsar's own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked by the Bellovaci under Commius, but the latter were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxellodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar's record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then "invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established, — a unique experience in political history."

GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B.—These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1

acer, *sharp, violent.*
acriter, *violently.*
acerbus, *bitter, cruel.*
acerbe, *bitterly.*
acerbe ferre, *take hard.*
acerbitas, *bitterness, suffering.*
acervus, *heap.*
acies, *sharp edge, line.*
[acus, *needle.*]
acuo, *sharpen.*
acutus, *sharp.*

2

alacer, *lively.*
alacriter, *promptly.*
alacritas, *readiness.*

3

aedes, *fireplace, house.*
aedificium, *building.*
aedifico, *build.*
aestas, *heat.*
aestivus, *hot.*
aestus (boiling), *tide.*
aestuarium, *tideway.*

4

aequus, *even, level.*
iniquus, *uneven, unfavorable.*
iniquitas, *unfavorableness.*
aequitas, *fairness.*
aequalis, *equal.*
aequaliter, *evenly.*
aequinoctium, *equinox.*
aequo, *equalize.*
adaequo, *make equal.*

5

ago, *drive.*
actuarius, *fast sailing.*
agmen, *line of march.*
ager, *field.*
cogo, *compel.*
cogito, *think.*
adigo, *force.*
agito, *pursue.*
examino, *weigh.*

6

alo, *foster.*
altus, *grown high.*
altitudo, *height.*

7

alius, *other.*
alienus, *of another.*
alieno, *alienate.*
alias, *elsewhere.*
aliter, *otherwise.*
alio, *elsewhither.*

8

animus (breath), *soul, mind.*
anima, *breath.*
animal, *animal.*
exanimis, *out of breath.*

9

ante, *before.*
antea, *before.*
antiquus, *ancient.*
antiquitus, *anciently.*

10

ars, *art.*
articulus, *joint.*
arma, *arms.*
armo, *equip.*
armamentum, *rigging.*
armatura, *equipment.*

11

arx, *citadel.*
arceo, *keep off.*
co-erceo, *restrain.*
exerceo, *exercise.*
exercitus, *training, army.*
exercitatio, *exercise.*

12

augeo, *increase.*
auctor, *responsible party.*
auctoritas, *influence.*
autumnus, *harvest season.*
auxilium, *help.*
auxiliaris, *helping.*
auxilior, *assist.*

13

cado, *fall.*
casus, *fall, chance.*
cadaver, *body.*
caedo, *fell.*
caedes, *murder.*
accido, *befall.*
accīdo, *cut into.*
concido, *fall down.*
concīdo, *cut down.*
incido, *happen.*
incīdo, *cut into.*
occido, *fall.*
occasio, *occasion.*

14

capio, *take.*
captus, *capacity.*
captivus, *captive.*
accipio, *receive.*
decipio, *deceive.*
excipio, *take up.*
excepto, *catch up.*

15

caput, *head.*
capillus, *hair.*
anceps, *double-headed.*
praeceps, *head-foremost.*

16

cerno, *separate, distinguish.*
certus, *fixed, certain.*
crimen, *charge.*
certe, *surely.*
[**certo**, *decide by contest.*]
certamen, *contest.*
concerto, *contend.*
decerno, *decide.*
decerto, *decide by contest.*
decretum, *decision, decree.*
discerno, *decide.*
discrimen, *decision.*

17

circum, *around.*
circa, circiter, *about.*
circinus, *compasses.*
circuitus, *circuit.*

18

colo, *till.*
cultus, *cultivation.*
cultura, *cultivation*, *culture.*
[**colonus**, *husbandman.*]
colonia, *colony.*
incolo, *inhabit.*
incola, *inhabitant.*

19

conscius, *conscious.*
[**consciens**, *being conscious.*]
conscientia, *conscience.*
conscisco, *resolve.*
inscius, *not knowing.*
insciens, *unknowing.*

20

consto, *be established* (stand firm).
constans, *firm.*
constanter, *firmly.*
constantia, *firmness.*
consisto, *take a stand.*
constituo, *establish.*

21

consul, *consul.*
consulatus, *consulship.*
consulo, *consult.*
consilium, *plan.*
consultum, *decree.*
consulto, *by determination*, *designedly.*
consulto, *consult.*

22

cresco, *grow.*
creber, *thick.*
crebro, *frequently.*
creo, *make to grow*, *create.*
[**Ceres**, *goddess of growth.*]

23

curro, *run.*
currus, *chariot.*
cursus, *course.*
concurro, *run together.*
concursus, *rush.*
concurso, *rush together.*
decurro, *run down.*
excursio, *sally.*
incurro, *rush upon.*
incursio, *attack.*
incursus, *rush.*
percurro, *run along.*
succurro, *run to help.*

24

de, *down from.*
desuper, *from above.*
deinde, *then.*
demum, *at last* (farthest down).
denique, *at last.*
deterior, *worse.*

25

defatiscor, *give out* (cf. '*busted*').
defessus, *tired out.*
defatigo, *wear out.*
defatigatio, *exhaustion.*

26

dīco, *say.*
indīco, *ordain.*
index, *informer.*
indicium, *information.*
indico, *give information.*
iudex, *judge.*
iudicium, *trial.*
[**vindex**, *avenger.*]
vindico, *avenge.*
dictum, *thing said.*
dictio, *pleading.*
dĭco, *adjudge.*
dĭcio, *sway* ('*say so*').
condicio, *terms.*

27

dies, *day.*
diu, *long, all day.*
interdiu, *by day.*
diutinus, *long continued.*
diurnus, *by day, daily.*
diuturnus, *long.*
diuturnitas, *length of time.*
biduum, *two days.*
triduum, *three days.*

28

dies, *day.*
cotidie, *every day.*
cotidianus, *daily.*
hodie, *to-day.*
pridie, *the day before.*
postero die, *the next day.*
postridie, *the day after.*
[**perendie**, *day after to-morrow.*]
perendinus (adjective).

29

do, *give.*
dedo, *give over.*
deditus, *devotion.*
deditio, *surrender.*
dediticius, *surrendered.*
reddo, *give back.*
trado, *hand over.*
donum, *gift.*
dono, *present.*

30

duo, *two.*
bis, *twice.*
bini, *two apiece.*
bellum, for **duellum**, *war.*
dubius, *doubtful.*
dubium, *doubt.*
dubito, *doubt.*
dubitatio, *doubt.*
duplex, *double.*
duplico, *double.*

31

emo (*take*), *buy.*
eximius, *exceptional.*
exemplum, *specimen.*

32

equus, *horse.*
eques, *horseman.*
equester, *of cavalry.*
equitatus, *cavalry.*
[**equito**], *ride.*
adequito, *ride up.*
perequito, *ride over.*

33

ex, *out.*
exter, *outer.*
extra, *outside.*
extremus, *last.*

34

facio, *make, do.*
beneficus, *well doing, beneficent.*
facilis, *easy* (to do).
facultas, *facility.*
difficilis, *difficult.*
difficultas, *difficulty.*
difficulter, *with difficulty.*
factio, *employment, party.*
facies, *face* (the 'make').
factum, *deed.*
facinus, *deed* (usually *evil*).
artifex, *artist.*
conficio, *make up.*
perficio, *accomplish.*

35

fides, *faith.*
fidelis, *faithful.*
perfidus, *faithless*
perfidia, *perfidy.*

fiducia, *confidence.*
foedus, *treaty.*
infidelis, *unfaithful.*
confido, *trust.*

36

finis, *bound, boundary.*
fines, *country.*
finio, *set bounds.*
finitimus, *neighboring.*
adfinis, *connection.*
adfinitas, *connection* (by marriage).
confinis, *adjacent.*
confinium, *neighborhood.*
definio, *set limits, fix.*

37

fors, *chance.*
fortuito, *accidentally.*
fortuna, *fortune.*
fortunatus, *fortunate.*

38

fruor, *enjoy.*
fructus, *enjoyment.*
fructuosus, *fruitful.*
fruges, *grain.*
frumentum, *grain.*
frumentor, *forage.*
frumentatio, *foraging.*
frumentarius, *of grain.*

39

fugio, *fly.*
fuga, *flight.*
fugo, *put to flight.*
fugitivus, *a runaway.*
effugio, *escape.*
perfuga, *refugee.*
perfugio, *escape to.*
perfugium, *refuge.*
profugio, *flee forth.*
refugio, *run away.*

40

gero, *carry, carry on.*
res gestae, *exploits.*
[**aggero**, *heap up.*]
agger, *earthworks.*
congero, *heap together.*
suggestus, *raised mound.*

41

iacio, *throw.*
iaculum, *javelin.*
iaceo, *lie.*
iactura, *loss.*
iacto, *toss about.*

42

is, *this.*
item, *likewise.*
ita, *so.*
itaque, *therefore.*
iterum, *again.*
idem, *the same.*
ideo, *therefore.*
ipse, *himself.*
eo, *thither.*
ea, *that way.*

43

iubeo, *order.*
iussu, *by order.*
iniussu, *without orders.*

44

ius, *right.*
iudex, *judge.*
iudicium, *judgment.*
iudico, *judge.*
adiudico, *assign.*
deiudico, *decide* (between).
iniuria, *wrong.*
iustus, *just.*
iustitia, *justice.*
iuro, *swear.*

coniuro, *conspire.*
coniuratio, *conspiracy.*

45

[lego, *choose.*]
legio, *levy, legion.*
delectus, *levy.*
legionarius, *soldier.*
lex, *law.*
[lēgo, *assign by law.*]
legatus, *lieutenant.*
legatio, *embassy.*
deligo, *select.*
diligo, *love.*
intellego, *understand.*

46

[libet], *it pleases.*
libenter, *willingly.*
liber, *free.*
liberi, *children.*
libertas, *freedom.*
liberalis, *generous.*
liberaliter, *generously.*
liberalitas, *generosity.*
libero, *set free.*

47

mane, *in the morning.*
maturus, *early, ripe.*
mature, *early.*
maturo, *make haste.*
maturesco, *ripen.*

48

memini, *remember.*
mens, *mind.*
[demens], *mad.*
dementia, *madness.*
mentio, *mention.*
[memor], *mindful.*
memoria, *memory.*
moneo, *remind.*
reminiscor, *remember.*
commemoro, *mention.*

49

moveo, *move.*
motus, *motion.*
mobilis, *mobile.*
mobiliter, *easily.*
mobilitas, *mobility.*
momentum, *means of motion.*
commuto, *change.*

50

nascor, *be born.*
natus, *birth.*
natalis, *of birth.*
nativus, *native.*
natura, *nature.*
natio, *race.*

51

navis, *ship.*
navicula, *boat.*
navalis, *naval.*
nauta, *sailor.*
nauticus, *of a sailor.*
navigo, *sail.*
navigium, *vessel.*
navigatio, *voyage.*

52

nosco, *learn.*
novi, *be acquainted with.*
notus, *known.*
notitia, *acquaintance.*
ignotus, *unknown.*
nobilis, *famous.*
ignobilis, *ignoble.*
nobilitas, *nobility.*
nomen, *name.*
nomino, *name.*
nominatim, *by name.*
ignominia, *disgrace.*

cognosco, *investigate.*
ignosco, *pardon.*

53

nuntius, *messenger, news.*
nuntio, *announce.*
denuntio, *warn.*
enuntio, *report.*
renuntio, *bring back word.*
pronuntio, *make known.*

54

obses, *hostage.*
obsideo, *blockade.*
obsidio, *blockade.*
obsessio, *blockade.*

55

[Ops], *goddess of abundance.*
opes, *resources.*
copia, *abundance.*
copiae, *resources.*
copiosus, *well supplied.*
inops, *poor.*
inopia, *want.*

56

[paciscor, *agree.*]
pango, *join.*
pactum, *agreement.*
pax, *peace.*
paco, *pacify.*
pacatus, *subject.*

57

pario, *acquire.*
parens, *parent.*
parento, *sacrifice to ancestors.*

58

ex-perior, *try.*
peritus, *experienced.*
periculum, *danger* (trial).
periculosus, *dangerous.*
periclitor, *be in peril.*
aperio, *open.*
reperio, *find.*

59

paro, *prepare.*
impero, *order.*
imperium, *power.*
pareo, *be on hand, obey.*

60

parum, *too little.*
parvus, *small.*
parvulus, *very small.*
paucus, *few.*
paucitas, *small number.*
paulus, *small.*
paulatim, *little by little.*
paulum, *a little.*
paululum, *a very little.*
paulo, *a little.*
paulisper, *a little while.*

61

[pasco, *feed.*]
pabulum, *forage.*
pabulor, *forage.*
pabulatio, *foraging.*
pabulator, *forager.*
pater, *father.*
patrius, *belonging to a father.*
patronus, *patron, protector.*
patruus, *uncle* (on the father's side)

62

pes, *foot.*
pedes, *footman* (man on foot).
peditatus, *infantry.*
pedester, *of men on foot.*
pedalis, *a foot long,* etc.
impedio, *entangle.*
impedimentum, *hindrance.*

impeditus, *hampered.*
expedio, *disentangle.*
expeditus, *unincumbered.*
expeditio, *expedition.*

63

pleo, *fill.*
compleo, *fill up.*
expleo, *fill out.*
plenus, *full.*
plene, *fully.*
plerique, *most of.*
plerumque, *for the most part.*
completus, *filled up.*
expletus, *filled out.*
plus, *more.*
plurimus, *most.*
complures, *very many.*

also

plebs, *the populace.*
populus, *people.*
publicus, *of the people.*
publice, *publicly.*
publico, *confiscate.*

64

porta, *gate.*
porto, *carry.*
adporto, *bring in.*
comporto, *bring together.*
deporto, *carry away.*
exporto, *carry off.*
reporto, *bring back.*
supporto, *bring up.*
transporto, *carry over.*
portus, *harbor.*
portorium, *customs.*

65

[**putus**], *clean.*
puto, *clean up, reckon, think.*
[**purus**, *clean.*]
purgo, *clear, excuse.*
computo, *reckon.*
disputo, *discuss.*
disputatio, *discussion.*

66

pro, *before.*
probus, *good.*
improbus, *bad.*
prope, *near.*
propinquus, *neighboring.*
propinquitas, *nearness.*
protinus, *straight away, 'right away.'*
propter, *near by, on account of.*
propterea, *for this reason.*

67

prae, *in front.*
praeustus, *burnt at the end.*
praeter, *along side, beside.*
praeterea, *besides.*
praeterita, *bygones.*
prior, *before.*
primus, *first.*
pridie, *the day before.*

68

rego, *direct, rule.*
rectus, *straight.*
regio, *direction.*
regnum, *kingdom.*
regno, *reign.*
rex, *king.*
regius, *royal.*
[**regula**, *rule.*]
dirigo, *direct.*
directus, *straight.*
directe, *straight.*
pergo, *keep on.*

69

sancio, *bind.*
sacer, sanctus, *sacred.*

sacerdos, *priest.*
sacramentum, *oath.*
sacrificium, *sacrifice.*

70

seco, *cut.*
sectio, *a cutting, a lot.*
sectura, *mine.*
securis, *axe.*

71

sequor, *follow.*
secundus, *second.*
secus, *otherwise.*
secius, *less.*
sector, *pursue.*
socius, *companion.*
societas, *society.*

72

[**sero,** *bind.*]
servus, *bondman.*
servio, *be a slave.*
servo, *guard.*
conservo, *preserve.*
servilis, *servile.*
servitus, *slavery.*
sermo, *speech* (connected discourse).
praesertim, *especially* (at the head of the row).

73

similis, *like.*
simul, *at the same time.*
simultas, *quarrel.*
simulo, *pretend.*
dissimulo, *pretend not.*
simulatio, *pretence.*
similitudo, *likeness.*
simulacrum, *image.*

74

species, *appearance.*
conspicio, *behold.*
conspectus, *sight.*
conspicor, *espy.*
adspectus, *view.*
specto, *gaze at.*
exspecto, *expect.*
speculor, *watch.*
speculator, *spy.*

75

sto, *stand.*
statio, *station.*
statim, *forthwith.*
status, *position.*
statuo, *set up.*
constituo, *establish.*
stabilis, *stable.*
stabilitas, *steadiness.*
stabilio, *make firm.*

76

sub, *under, up.*
superus, *above.*
super, *over.*
superior, *superior.*
supero, *overtop.*
supra, *over.*
summus, } *highest.*
supremus, }
summa, *total.*
superbus, *proud.*
superbe, *arrogantly.*

77

tam, *so.*
tamen, *nevertheless.*
tametsi, *although.*
tandem, *at last.*
tantus, *so great.*
tantulus, *so little.*
tantum, } *only* (so much and
tantummodo, } no more).

78

tango, *touch.*
contingo, *touch, happen.*

contagio, *contact.*
contamino, *taint.*
integer, *untouched, whole.*
redintegro, *renew.*

79

tempus, *time.*
tempestas, *weather.*
tempero, *control.*
temperantia, *self-control.*

80

teneo, *hold.*
tener, *tender.*
tenuis, *thin.*
tenuitas, *scantiness.*
tenuiter, *scantily.*
contineo, *hold together.*
continens, *continuous* (*a continent*).
continenter, *without stopping.*
continentia, *self-control.*
continuus, *continuous.*
continuo, *forthwith.*
continuo, *continue.*
continuatio, *continuance.*

also

tendo, *stretch.*
tento, *try.*
contendo, *contend.*
contentio, *contest.*
intendo, *strain.*
ostendo, *show.*
ostentatio, *ostentation.*

81

[**tribus**, *tribe.*]
tribunus, *tribune.*
tribuo, *assign.*
tributum, *tribute.*
distribuo, *distribute.*
attribuo, *assign.*

82

utor, *use.*
utilis, *useful.*
utilitas, *advantage.*
usus, *use.*
usitor, *use.*
usitatus, *customary.*

83

verto, *turn.*
versus, *towards.*
versus, *verse.*
universus, *all together.*
verso, *deal with.*
versor, *engage in.*
averto, *turn aside.*
adverto, *turn to.*
adversus, *turned towards, opposed.*
adversarius, *opponent.*
animadverto, *attend to.*
converto, *turn about.*
reverto, *turn back.*
rursus, *back, again.*
transversus, *across.*

84

vetus, *old.*
veteranus, *veteran.*
inveterasco, *grow old in.*

85

vir, *man.*
virgo, *maiden.*
virtus, *manliness.*
viritim, *man by man.*

86

volo, *wish.*
voluntas, *will.*
voluntarius, *volunteer.*
voltus, *countenance.*
voluptas, *pleasure.*
malo, *wish more.*
nolo, *not wish, wish not.*

ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS.

ā as in fāte	ē as in mēte	ĭ as in ĭt	ū as in ūnite
ȧ " senȧte	ė " ėvent	ō " ōld	ŭ " ŭp
ă " făt	ĕ " mĕt	ȯ " ȯbey	û " fûr
ä " ärm	ẽ " hẽr	ŏ " nŏt	ṳ " rṳle
a̤ " a̤ll		ô " côrk	ụ " pụll
ȧ " ȧsk	ī " īce		
ạ " whạt	ı̇ " ı̇dea	ū " ūse	y̆ " baby̆

c as in call	g as in go	qu as in quit
ç " çity	ġ " caġe	ş " hiş
ch " school	n̲ " in̲k	

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Ăc′ *c*ȯ
Ăd′ĭ ȧ tŭn′*n*ŭs
Ăd′ū ăt′ū cȧ
Ăd′ū ăt′ū çī
*A*ė mĭl′ĭ ŭs
Ăf′rĭ cŭs
Ăġ′ė dĭn̲′cŭm
Ā lē′sĭ ȧ (sh)
Ăl *l*ŏb′rȯ ġēş
Ăm băr′*r*ī
Ăm′bĭ ā′nī
Ăm′bĭ bā′rĭ ī
Ăm′bĭl ĭ ā′tī
Ăm bĭ′ȯ rĭx
Ăm′bĭ văr′ė tī
Ăm′bĭ văr′ĭ tī
Ā när′tēş
Ăn̲ căl′ĭ tēş
Ăn′dēş
Ăn′dī
Ăn′dȯ cŏm bō′ġĭ ŭs
Ăn tĭs′tĭ ŭs
Ăn tō′nĭ ŭs
Ā pŏl′*l*ȯ
Ăp′*p*ĭ ŭs
Ăq′uĭ lē′iȧ (y)
Ăq′uĭ tā′nĭ ȧ
Ā′rär
Är′dū ĕn′*n*ȧ
Ăr′ė cŏm′ĭ çī
Ăr′ĭ ȯ vĭs′tŭs
Ā rĭs′tĭ ŭs
Är′pĭ nē′iŭs (y)
Är vẽr′nī
Ăt′rė bā′tēş
Ā′trĭ ŭs
A̤*u* lẽr′çī
A̤*u*′lŭs
A̤*u* rŭn̲′cū lē′iŭs (y)
A̤*u*′scī
Ā văr′ĭ çĕn′sēş
Ā văr′ĭ cŭm
Ăx′ȯ nȧ

Bȧ çē′nĭs
Băc′ū lŭs
Băl vĕn′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Băs′ĭ lŭs

Băt′ȧ vī
Bĕl′ġ*aē*
Bĕl′ġī ŭm
Bĕl *lŏ*v′ȧ çī
Bī brăc′tē
Bī′ brăx
Bĭb′rȯ çī
Bī ġĕr′rī ō′nēs̱
Bĭt′ū rī′ġēs̱
Bŏd′ū ŏg nā′tŭs
Bō′iȧ
(y)
Bō′iī
(y)
Brăn′*n*ȯ vī′çēs̱
Brăn nō′vī ī
Brăt′ū spăn′tī ŭm
(sh)
Brī tăn′*n*ī
Brī tăn′*n*ī ȧ
Brụ′tŭs

Căb′īl *lō*′nŭm
Cȧ bū′rŭs
Cȧ dûr′çī
Ç*aē* rō′sī
Ç*aē*′s̱ar
Căl′ē tēs̱
Căl′ē tī
Căm′ū lŏġ′ē nŭs
Cȧ nĭn′ī ŭs
Căn′tȧ brī
Căn′tī ŭm
(sh)
Cär′nū tēs̱
Cär vĭl′ī ŭs
Căs′*s*ī
Căs′sī ŭs
(sh)
Căs′*s*ī vĕl *lạu*′nŭs
Căs′tī cŭs
Căt′ȧ măn′tȧ lo*ē*′dēs̱
Căt′ū rī′ġēs̱

Căt′ū vŏl′cŭs
Căv′ȧ rĭl′*l*ŭs
Căv′ȧ rī′nŭs
Çĕl′t*aē*
Çĕl tĭl′*l*ŭs
Çĕn′ȧ bĕn′sēs̱
Çĕn′ȧ bŭm
Çĕn′ī măg′nī
Çĕn′ȯ mā′nī
Çeū′trȯ nēs̱
Çē vĕn′*n*ȧ
Chē rŭs′cī
Çĭç′ē rȯ
Çĭm bē′rī ŭs
Çĭm′brī
Çĭn ġĕt′ȯ rĭx
Çĭs′r*h*ē nā′nī
Çĭ′tȧ
Cl*ạu*′dī ŭs
Clō′dī ŭs
Cŏc′ȯ sā′tēs̱
Cŏm′*m*ī ŭs
Cŏn cŏn′*n*ē tȯ dŭm′nŭs
Cŏn drụ′sī
Cŏn sĭd′ī ŭs
Cŏn vĭc′tȯ lĭt′ȧ vĭs
Cŏr′ī ȯ sŏl′ī tēs̱
Cō′rŭs
Cŏt′*t*ȧ
Cŏt′ū ā′tŭs
Cō′tŭs
Crăs′*s*ŭs
Crĭt′ŏg nā′tŭs

Dā′çī
Dȧ nū′vī ŭs
Dē çē′tī ȧ
(sh)
Dī′ȧ blĭn′tēs̱
Dĭv′ī cī ā′cŭs
(sh)
Dĭv′ī cȯ

Dȯ mĭ′tī ŭs
(sh)
Dŏn′*n*ȯ t*ạu*′rŭs
Dū′bĭs
Dŭm′nȯ rĭx
Dū′rȯ cŏr′tȯ rŭm
Dū′rŭs

Ĕb′ū rō′nēs̱
Ĕb′ū rȯ vī′çēs̱
Ĕl′ȧ vĕr
Ė leū′tē tī
Ĕl′ū sā′tēs̱
Ĕp′ȯ rĕd′ȯ rĭx
Ĕr′ȧ tŏs′thē nēs̱
Ė sū′vī ī

Fā′bī ŭs
Flăc′cŭs
Fū′fī ŭs

Găb′ȧ lī
Gȧ bĭn′ī ŭs
Gā′iŭs
(y)
Găl′bȧ
Găl′*l*ī
Găl′*l*ī ȧ
Găl′lŭs
Gȧ rŭm′nȧ
Gȧ rŭm′nī
Gā′tēs̱
Ġeī dŭm′nī
Ġĕr gō′vī ȧ
Ġĕr mā′nī ȧ
*Gn*aē′ŭs
Gȯ′băn *n*ĭ′tī ȯ
(sh)
Gôr gŏb′ī nȧ
Grȧ iŏç′ē lī
(y)
Grụ′dī ī

Ha̤ĕd′ṳ̇ ī
Hȧ ru̧′dēş
Hĕl vē′tĭ ī (sh)
Hĕl′vĭ ī
Hī bẽr′nĭ ȧ
Hĭs pā′nĭ ȧ

Ĭc′cĭ ŭs (sh)
Ĭl lȳr′ĭ cŭm
Ĭn dū′tĭ ō̇ mā′rŭs (sh)
Ĭ′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Iū′nĭ ŭs (j)
Iūp′*pĭ* tẽr (j)
Iū′rȧ (j)

Lȧ bē′rĭ ŭs
Lā′bĭ ē′nŭs
Lăt′ō̇ brī′ġī
Lĕm′ō̇ vī′çēş
Lė pŏn′tĭ ī (sh)
Leū′çī
Lĕv′ȧ çī
Lĕx ō′vĭ ī
Lī′ġẽr
Lĭn′gō̇ nēş
Lĭs′cŭs
Lĭt′ȧ vī′cŭs
Lṳ̇ cā′nĭ ŭs
Lū′cĭ ŭs (sh)
Lŭc tē′rĭ ŭs
Lṳ̇ gŏt′ō̇ rĭx
Lṳ̇ tē′tĭ ȧ (sh)

Măġ′ė tŏb′rĭ gȧ
Măn dū′bĭ ī
Măn′dṳ̇ brā′cĭ ŭs (sh)
Măn′lĭ ŭs
Mär′cō̇ măn′nī
Mär′cŭs
Mā′rĭ ŭs
Märş
Mȧ tĭs′cō̇
Măt′rō̇ nȧ
Măx′ĭ mŭs
Mĕd′ĭ ō̇ măt′rĭ çī
Mĕl′dī
Mė nā′pĭ ī
Mĕs sā′lȧ
Mĕ′tĭ ō̇ sē′dŭm (sh)
Mē′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Mĭ nẽr′vȧ
Mĭ nū′cĭ ŭs (sh)
Mō′nȧ
Mŏr′ĭ nī
Mŏr′ĭ tăs′gŭs
Mō′sȧ
Mṳ̇ nā′tĭ ŭs (sh)

Năm mē′iŭs (y)
Năm′nė tēş
Năn′tṳ̇ ā′tēş
När′bō̇
Năs′ṳ̇ ȧ (sh)
Nĕm′ė tēş
Nẽr′vĭ ī
Nĭ′tĭ ŏb′rĭ ġēş (sh)
Nō̇ rē′iȧ (y)
Nō′vĭ ō̇ dū′nŭm

Ŏç′ė lŭm
Ŏc′tō̇ dū′rŭs
Ŏl *lŏ*v′ĭ cō̇
Ôr çȳn′ĭ ȧ
Ôr ġĕt′ō̇ rĭx
Ō sĭs′mī

Pā′dŭs
Pa̤ė mā′nī
Pȧ rĭs′ĭ ī (sh)
Pē′dĭ ŭs
Pĕt′rō̇ cō′rĭ ī
Pė trō′nĭ ŭs
Pĕt′rō̇ sĭd′ĭ ŭs
Pĭc′tō̇ nēş
Pī rŭs′*ta*ē
Pī′sō̇
Plăn′cŭs
Pleṳ̇ mŏx′ĭ ī (ksh)
Pŏm pē′iŭs (y)
Pra̤ė′cō̇ nī′nŭs
Prō̇ çĕl′*l*ŭs
*Pt*ĭ ā′nĭ ī
Pŭb′lĭ ŭs
Pu̧l′*l*ō̇

Qua̤d rā′tŭs
Quĭn′tŭs

Ra̤*u*′rȧ çī
Rĕb′ĭ lŭs
Rĕd′ō̇ nēş
Rė ġī′nŭs
Rē′mī
Rē′mŭs
Rŏs′cĭ ŭs (sh)
Ru̧′fŭs
Ru̧ tē′nī
Ru̧′tĭ lŭs

Sȧ bī′nŭs
Sā′bĭs

Săm′ȧ rŏ brī′vȧ
Săn′tŏ nēş
Săn′tŏ nī
Scăl′dĭs
Sė dū′lĭ ŭs
Sė dū′nī
Sė dū′sĭ ī (sh)
Sĕg′nī
Sĕg′ŏ năx
Sė gŏn′tĭ ā′sī (sh)
Sė gŭ′sĭ ā′vī (sh)
Sĕm prō′nī ŭs
Sĕn′ŏ nēş
Sĕq′uȧ nȧ
Sĕq′uȧ nī
Sẽr tō′rĭ ŭs
Sẽr′vĭ ŭs
Sĕx′tĭ ŭs
Sĭb′ŭ sā′tēş
Sī lā′nŭs
Sĭl′ĭ ŭs
Sŏ′tĭ ā′tēş (sh)
Suĕs′sĭ ō′nēş (w)(sh)
Suē′vī (w)
Sŭ găm′brī
Sŭl′lȧ
Sŭl pĭ′cĭ ŭs (sh)
Tär bĕl′lī
Tär′ŭ sā′tēş
Tăs ġē′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Tăx′ĭ măg′ŭ lŭs
Tĕc tŏs′ȧ ġēş
Tĕnc′tė rī
Tẽr′rȧ sĭd′ĭ ŭs
Teŭ tŏm′ȧ tŭs
Teū′tŏ nēş
Tĭg′ŭ rī′nī
Tī tū′rĭ ŭs
Tĭ′tŭs
Tŏ lō′sȧ
Tŏ lŏs′ȧ tēş
Trăns rhė nā′nī
Trē′bĭ ŭs
Trė bō′nĭ ŭs
Trĕv′ė rī
Trĭb′ŏ çēş
Trĭn′ŏ băn′tēş
Tŭ lĭn′ġī
Tŭl′lĭ ŭs
Tŭl′lŭs
Tū′rŏ nēş
Ū′bĭ ī
Ū sĭp′ė tēş
Văc′ȧ lŭs
Vȧ lē′rĭ ŭs
Văl′ė tĭ ā′cŭs (sh)
Văn ġī′ŏ nēş
Vė lā′nĭ ŭs
Vĕl′ĭ ŏ căs′sēş
Vĕl *lau*′nŏ dū′nŭm
Vĕl *lā*′vĭ ī
Vė nĕl′*lī*
Vĕn′ė tī
Vė nē′tĭ ȧ (sh)
Vĕr′ȧ grī
Vẽr bĭġ′ė nŭs
Vẽr căs′sĭ vĕl *lau*′nŭs
Vẽr′çĭn ġĕt′ŏ rĭx
Vẽr′tĭ cŏ
Vẽr′ŭ dŏc′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Vė sŏn′tĭ ŏ (sh)
Vī ĕn′nȧ
Vĭr′ĭ dŏ mā′rŭs
Vī rĭd′ŏ vĭx
Vĭr′ŏ măn′dŭ ī
Vŏ cā′tēş
Vŏc′cĭ ŏ (sh)
Vŏ cŏn′tĭ ī (sh)
Vŏl′çaē
Vŏl cā′nŭs
Vŏl cā′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Vŏl′ŭ sē′nŭs
Vŏ rē′nŭs
Vŏs′ė gŭs

VOCABULARY

TO

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

COVERING SEVEN BOOKS.

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	*active.*
abs.	*absolute(ly).*
act.	*active.*
borr.	*borrowed.*
cf.	*compare.*
cog.	*cognate.*
comp.	*composition.*
comp., compar.	*comparative.*
concr.	*concretely.*
conn.	*connection.*
decl.	*declined.*
def.	*definite, defective.*
dep.	*deponent.*
dim., dimin.	*diminutive.*
distrib.	*distributive.*
emph.	*emphatic.*
end.	*ending.*
Eng.	*English.*
esp.	*especially.*
F., fem.	*feminine.*
fig.	*figurative(ly).*
fr.	*from.*
freq.	*frequentative.*
Gr.	*Greek.*
imp., impers.	*impersonal.*
imv.	*imperative.*
increased	indicates the addition of a letter or letters.
ind., indecl.	*indeclinable.*
indef.	*indefinite.*
insep.	*inseparable.*
instr.	*instrumental.*
inter., interrog.	*interrogative.*
intens.	*intensive.*
irr.	*irregular.*
lit.	*literal(ly).*
loc.	*locative.*
M., masc.	*masculine.*
neg.	*negative(ly).*
n.	*neuter (intransitive)*
N., neut.	*neuter.*
num.	*numeral.*
opp.	*opposed.*
orig.	*originally.*
p.	*present participle.*
pass.	*passive.*
perf.	*perfect.*
perh.	*perhaps.*
pl., plur.	*plural.*
poss.	*possibly.*
p. p.	*perfect participle.*
prob.	*probably.*
pron.	*pronoun, pronominal.*
reduced	indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.
reflex.	*reflexive(ly).*
rel.	*relative.*
sc.	*supply.*
sing.	*singular.*
Sk.	*Sanskrit.*
st.	*stem.*
subjv.	*subjunctive.*
subst.	*substantive(ly).*
sup., superl.	*superlative.*
term.	*termination.*
transf.	*transferred* (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).
unc.	*uncertain.*
v.	*verb.*
wh.	*which, whence.*
weakened	indicates a change of vowel.

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

(†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to conjugations of verbs.

VOCABULARY.

A

A., Aulus (wh. see).

ā, see **ab.**

ab (**ā, abs**), [akin to Eng. *off, of*], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with abl., *away from, from* (cf. **ex,** *out of*). — Of place, with idea of motion, *from:* **ab Arari iter convertere.** — Of time, **ab hora quarta.** — Fig., *from,* with more or less feeling of motion: **ab cohortatione profectus ; temperare ab iniuriis ; tutus ab ; ab ramis** (*from the branches,* as far as where they begin). — With expressions of measure, *off, away, at a distance of:* **a milibus passuum duobus,** *two miles off.* — With different notion in Eng.: **ortum est ab,** *began with;* **vacuum ab,** *destitute of;* **capit initium a,** *begin at;* **ab tanto spatio,** *so far off;* **ab officio discedere** (*forsake,* etc.); **a quibus decedere** (*abandon,* etc.); **gratiam inire ab,** *secure gratitude from, win favor with;* **postulare ab,** *ask of.* — Esp. with passives and similar notions, *by:* **accidere a Caesare** (*at the hands of,* showing the origin of this meaning). — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), *on the side of, on, at, on the part of:* **a fronte ; a tergo ; ab infimo ; a dextro cornu ; a re frumentaria** (*in respect to*) ; **intritus ab labore** (*by*). — In comp. *off, away, apart ; not, dis-, un-.*

abditus, p. p. of **abdo.**

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ab-do (*put*)], 3. v. a., *put away, remove, hide.* — With reflex., *conceal one's self, hide.* — With **in** and acc., *hide in, withdraw to* (*take refuge among*), *withdraw and hide away.* — **abditus,** -a, -um, p. p., *hidden, remote, removed:* **abditi in tabernaculis** (*secluding themselves,* etc.).

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ab-duco], 3. v. a., *lead away, draw away, take away, lead off, carry away* (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abeō, -īre -iī, -itūrus, [ab-eo], irr. v. n., *go away, go off, retire, go* (out of sight or away).

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ab-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw away, throw down, throw* (away from one's self).

abiēs, -ietis, [?], F., *fir* or *spruce* (tree or wood).

abiectus, p. p. of **abicio.**

abiūnctus, p. p. of **abiungo.**

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [ab-iungo], 3. v. a., *disjoin, detach:* **abiuncto Labieno.**

Săm'ȧ rŏ brī'vȧ
Săn'tŏ nēş
Săn'tŏ nī
Scăl'dĭs
Sė dū'lĭ ŭs
Sė dū'nī
Sė dū'sĭ ī
(sh)
Sĕg'nī
Sĕg'ŏ năx
Sė gŏn'tĭ ā'sī
(sh)
Sė gŭ'sĭ ā'vī
(sh)
Sĕm prō'nĭ ŭs
Sĕn'ŏ nēş
Sĕq'uȧ nȧ
Sĕq'uȧ nī
Sẽr tō'rĭ ŭs
Sẽr'vĭ ŭs
Sĕx'tĭ ŭs
Sĭb'ŭ sā'tēş
Sī lā'nŭs
Sĭl'ĭ ŭs
Sŏ'tĭ ā'tēş
(sh)
Suĕs'sĭ ō'nēş
(w)(sh)
Suē'vī
(w)
Sŭ găm'brī
Sŭl'lȧ
Sŭl pĭ'cĭ ŭs
(sh)

Tär bĕl'lī
Tăr'ŭ sā'tēş
Tăs ġē'tĭ ŭs
(sh)
Tăx'ĭ măg'ŭ lŭs
Tĕc tŏs'ȧ ġēş
Tĕnc'tė rī
Tĕr'rȧ sĭd'ĭ ŭs
Teŭ tŏm'ȧ tŭs
Teū'tŏ nēş
Tĭg'ŭ rī'nī
Tī tū'rĭ ŭs
Tĭ'tŭs
Tŏ lō'sȧ
Tŏ lŏs'ȧ tēş
Trăns *rhė* nā'nī
Trē'bĭ ŭs
Trė bō'nĭ ŭs
Trĕv'ė rī
Trĭb'ŏ çēş
Trĭn'ŏ băn'tēş
Tŭ lĭn'ġī
Tŭl'lĭ ŭs
Tŭl'lŭs
Tū'rŏ nēş
Ū'bĭ ī
Ū sĭp'ė tēş
Văc'ȧ lŭs
Vȧ lē'rĭ ŭs
Văl'ė tĭ ā'cŭs
(sh)

Văn ġī'ŏ nēş
Vė lā'nĭ ŭs
Vĕl'ĭ ŏ căs'sēş
Vĕl *lau*'nŏ dū'nŭm
Vĕl *lā*'vĭ ī
Vė nĕl'*lī*
Vĕn'ė tī
Vė nē'tĭ ȧ
(sh)
Vĕr'ȧ grī
Vẽr bĭġ'ė nŭs
Vẽr căs'sĭ vĕl *lau*'nŭs
Vẽr'çĭn ġĕt'ŏ rĭx
Vẽr'tĭ cŏ
Vĕr'ŭ dŏc'tĭ ŭs
(sh)
Vė sŏn'tĭ ŏ
(sh)
Vī ĕn'nȧ
Vĭr'ĭ dŏ mā'rŭs
Vī rĭd'ŏ vĭx
Vĭr'ŏ măn'dŭ ī
Vŏ cā'tēş
Vŏc'cĭ ŏ
(sh)
Vŏ cŏn'tĭ ī
(sh)
Vŏl'*çaē*
Vŏl cā'nŭs
Vŏl cā'tĭ ŭs
(sh)
Vŏl'ŭ sē'nŭs
Vŏ rē'nŭs
Vŏs'ė gŭs

VOCABULARY

TO

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

COVERING SEVEN BOOKS.

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	*active.*
abs.	*absolute(ly).*
act.	*active.*
borr.	*borrowed.*
cf.	*compare.*
cog.	*cognate.*
comp.	*composition.*
comp., compar.	*comparative.*
concr.	*concretely.*
conn.	*connection.*
decl.	*declined.*
def.	*definite, defective.*
dep.	*deponent.*
dim., dimin.	*diminutive.*
distrib.	*distributive.*
emph.	*emphatic.*
end.	*ending.*
Eng.	*English.*
esp.	*especially.*
F., fem.	*feminine.*
fig.	*figurative(ly).*
fr.	*from.*
freq.	*frequentative.*
Gr.	*Greek.*
imp., impers.	*impersonal.*
imv.	*imperative.*
increased	indicates the addition of a letter or letters.
ind., indecl.	*indeclinable.*
indef.	*indefinite.*
insep.	*inseparable.*
instr.	*instrumental.*
inter., interrog.	*interrogative.*
intens.	*intensive.*
irr.	*irregular.*
lit.	*literal(ly).*
loc.	*locative.*
M., masc.	*masculine.*
neg.	*negative(ly).*
n.	*neuter (intransitive)*
N., neut.	*neuter.*
num.	*numeral.*
opp.	*opposed.*
orig.	*originally.*
p.	*present participle.*
pass.	*passive.*
perf.	*perfect.*
perh.	*perhaps.*
pl., plur.	*plural.*
poss.	*possibly.*
p. p.	*perfect participle.*
prob.	*probably.*
pron.	*pronoun, pronominal.*
reduced	indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.
reflex.	*reflexive(ly).*
rel.	*relative.*
sc.	*supply.*
sing.	*singular.*
Sk.	*Sanskrit.*
st.	*stem.*
subjv.	*subjunctive.*
subst.	*substantive(ly).*
sup., superl.	*superlative.*
term.	*termination.*
transf.	*transferred* (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).
unc.	*uncertain.*
v.	*verb.*
wh.	*which, whence.*
weakened	indicates a change of vowel.

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

(†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to conjugations of verbs.

VOCABULARY.

A

A., Aulus (wh. see).

ā, see **ab**.

ab (**ā, abs**), [akin to Eng. *off*, *of*], adv. (in comp.).— Prep. with abl., *away from*, *from* (cf. **ex**, *out of*).— Of place, with idea of motion, *from:* **ab Arari iter convertere.** — Of time, **ab hora quarta.** — Fig., *from*, with more or less feeling of motion: **ab cohortatione profectus ; temperare ab iniuriis ; tutus ab ; ab ramis** (*from the branches*, as far as where they begin). — With expressions of measure, *off*, *away*, *at a distance of:* **a milibus passuum duobus**, *two miles off.* — With different notion in Eng.: **ortum est ab**, *began with ;* **vacuum ab**, *destitute of;* **capit initium a**, *begin at;* **ab tanto spatio**, *so far off;* **ab officio discedere** (*forsake*, etc.); **a quibus decedere** (*abandon*, etc.); **gratiam inire ab**, *secure gratitude from*, *win favor with;* **postulare ab**, *ask of.* — Esp. with passives and similar notions, *by:* **accidere a Caesare** (*at the hands of*, showing the origin of this meaning). — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), *on the side of*, *on*, *at*, *on the part of:* **a fronte; a tergo; ab infimo; a dextro cornu ; a re frumentaria** (*in respect to*) ; **intritus ab labore** (*by*). — In comp. *off*, *away*, *apart ; not*, *dis-*, *un-*.

abditus, p. p. of **abdo**.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**ab-do** (*put*)], 3. v. a., *put away*, *remove*, *hide.* — With reflex., *conceal one's self*, *hide.* — With **in** and acc., *hide in*, *withdraw to* (*take refuge among*), *withdraw and hide away.* —**abditus**, -a, -um, p. p., *hidden*, *remote*, *removed:* **abditi in tabernaculis** (*secluding themselves*, etc.).

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ab-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead away*, *draw away*, *take away*, *lead off*, *carry away* (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abeō, -īre -iī, -itūrus, [**ab-eo**], irr. v. n., *go away*, *go off*, *retire*, *go* (out of sight or away).

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**ab-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw away*, *throw down*, *throw* (away from one's self).

abiēs, -ietis, [?], F., *fir* or *spruce* (tree or wood).

abiectus, p. p. of **abicio.**

abiūnctus, p. p. of **abiungo.**

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [**ab-iungo**], 3. v. a., *disjoin*, *detach:* **abiuncto Labieno.**

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [**ab-rapio,** *seize*], 3. v. a., *carry off* (with violence), *drag away.*

abs, see **ab.**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**abs-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away.*

abscīsus, p. p. of **abscīdo.**

absēns, -entis, see **absum.**

absimilis, -e, [**ab-similis,** *like*], adj., *unlike.*

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**ab-sisto**], 3. v. n., *stand off, stand away, withdraw.* — Fig., *leave off, keep aloof.*

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**abs-teneo**], 2. v. n., *hold* (one's self) *off.* — Fig., *refrain, spare:* **proelio** (*refrain from giving*); **mulieribus** (*spare*).

abstrāctus, p. p. of **abstraho.**

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**abs-traho**], 3. v. a., *drag off, drag away.*

absum, -esse, -fuī (āfuī), -futūrus, [**ab-sum**], irr. v. n., *be away, be absent, be off* (at a distance). — Fig., **suspicio** (*be wanting*); **nomen** (*be far from helping*); **ab eo quin** (*be far from being*); **multum quin** (*lack much of,* etc.); **longius quin** (*be farther off than that*); **a bello** (*keep aloof, take no part in*); **ab hoc consilio** (*not be concerned in*). — **absens,** p. as adj., *absent, in one's absence.*

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [† **ab-undŏ-,** lost adj. st., *abounding;* cf. **abunde,** *abundantly*], 1. v. n., *overflow.* — Fig., *abound.* — Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), *be strong in, be rich in, abound in.*

ac, see **atque.**

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**ad-cedo,** *go* or *come*], 3. v. n., *move towards, draw near, approach, come up, come* (to), *advance to, advance.* — Fig., *come to:* **Remis studium** (*be inspired in,* cf. **discedo**).—Esp., *be added,* where often an explanatory word is necessary in Eng.: **huc accedere,** *be in addition to this;* **huc accedebat ut,** *there was also this* (disadvantage) *that;* so with **quod,** *there was also the fact that, there was also the reason that,* or simply *moreover, then again.*

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-celero,** *hasten;* cf. **celer,** *swift*], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten.*

acceptus, p. p. of **accipio.**

accessus, p. p. of **accedo.**

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p., [**ad-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall to, fall upon, fall.* **tela gravius** (*strike*). — Fig., *happen, befall, occur, present itself, turn out, arise.* — Often euphemistically for death, defeat, etc.: **si quid Romanis; gravius a Caesare** (*be done, severe measures be taken*).

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ad-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut into, partly cut.*

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**ad-capio**] 3. v. a., *take, receive:* **exercitum** (*take command of*). — Less exactly, **volnus; incommodum** (*suffer, meet with*).— Fig., *accept, learn, hear, get, take:* **excusationem; usus** (*acquire*); **aliquid fama** (*hear of*). — **acceptus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *acceptable.*

acclīvis, -e, [**ad-clivus,** *slope* (weakened)], adj., *sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending:* **collis; aditus.**

acclīvitās, -tātis, [**acclivi-** + **tas**], F., *slope* (*upward*), *inclination*, *steepness*.

Accō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodātus, p. p. of **accommodo.**

accommodō, (**adc-**) -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**accommodŏ-** *fitting*, or **ad-commodo**], 1. v. a., *fit on, fit:* **insignia** (*put on, adjust*). — **accommodātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *fitted, adapted.*

accūrātē, [old case-form of **accuratus**, *done with care*], adv., *with care, carefully.*

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), no p. p. [**ad-curro**], 3. v. n., *run to, run up* (on foot), *rush up* (on horseback), *ride up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-†causo**, *assign as a reason* or *charge*], 1. v. a., *accuse, blame, find fault with.*

ācer, -cris, -cre, [AC, *sharp* (cf. **acus**, *needle*), + ris], adj., *sharp.* — Fig., *keen, active, violent.* See **acriter.**

acerbē [**acerbus**], adv., *bitterly.* — Fig. (of the mind), **ferre inopiam** (*suffer severely from*, etc.).

acerbitās, -tātis, [**acerbŏ-** + **tas**], F., *bitterness.* — Concrete in plur., *sufferings* (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um, [**acer** (treated as st.) + **bus** (cf. **superbus**)], adj., *bitter* (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), *bitter, hard to bear, cruel.*

ācerrimē, superl. of **ācriter.**

acervus, -ī, [**acer** (shortened as st.) + **vus**], M., (*pointed* ?), *a heap, a pile.*

aciēs, -ēī, [AC (*sharp*) + **ies** (cf. **materies**)], F., *point, sharp edge. edge:* **oculorum** (*keen glance, glare*). — Esp., *line, battle line, array, army* (in battle array, cf. **agmen**), *rank* (of an army in several ranks): **acie instructa depugnare**, *fight a pitched battle.*

acquīrō, see **adquiro.**

ācriter [acri- + ter], adv., *sharply.* — Fig., *fiercely, violently, hotly* (of fighting), *with spirit:* **acriter pugnatum est**, *a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.*

āctuārius, -a, -um, [**actu-**, *movement* (AG in **ago**) + **arius**], adj., *fast sailing* (provided with both sails and oars).

āctus, p. p. of **ago.**

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [**acu-**, *sharp* (in **acus**, *needle*)], 3. v. a., *sharpen.* — **acūtus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *sharpened, sharp.*

acūtus, p. p. of **acuo.**

ad [?], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with acc. With idea of motion, *to, towards, against.* — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, *to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, in regard to.* — Of time, *till, at, on;* **ad diem**, *on the day.* — With numerals, *about.* — Esp., **deferre ad**, *lay before;* **recepti ad se** (*among*); **ad fortunam Caesari defuit** (*Cæsar lacked to complete*, etc.); **contendere ad occupandam** (*to, for*), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; **ad certum pondus** (*up to*, i.e. *of*); **ad modum** (*in*); **commeare ad**, *visit;* **ad impedimenta** (*by*); **ad auxilium**

(*to give assistance*); **ad arbitrium** (*according to*); **proficisci ad** (*for*); **ad unum**, *to a man;* **ad celeritatem** (*for, in the way of*); **ad speciem**, *for show;* **ad extremum**, *at last, finally.* — In comp., *to, towards, up to, up against, in, by, in addition*, and the like.

a. d., see **ante.**

adāctus, p. p. of **adigo.**

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**adaequo-**, *make equal;* cf. **aequus**], 1. v. a., *make equal to:* **moles moenibus** (*make as high as*). — More commonly with the verb neuter and the acc. or dat. depending on the combined idea, *become equal to, equal:* **altitudinem muri** (*reach up to*); **cursum** (*keep up with*).

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-amo**, *love*], 1. v. a., *take a fancy to, fall in love with, covet, become attached to.*

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**ad-do** (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., *give to.* — Also, *place to, add* (with acc. or absolutely).

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ad-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead to, draw to, bring in* (of persons), *bring, draw in* (towards one), *drive, force.* — Fig., *induce, drive.*

adductus, p. p. of **adduco.**

adēmptus, p. p. of **adimo.**

adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, [**ad-eō**], irr. v. a. and n., *go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to* (a place), *get in* (to a place), *advance* (somewhere), *attack, approach* (speak with), *accost:* with **ad**, *come into the presence of.*

adeō [**ad-eō** (*thither*)], adv., *to that point.* — Less exactly, *to that degree, so much so:* **discessisse adeo ut** (*so speedily that*). — Still weaker, *in fact, at all, exactly.*

adeptus, p. p. of **adipiscor.**

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p., [**ad-equito**, *ride*, cf. **eques**], 1. v. a. and n., *ride up, ride against, skirmish with* (of cavalry).

adfectus, p. p. of **adficio.**

adferō (**aff-**), -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**ad-fero**], irr. v. a., *bring to, bring:* **litteras.** — Fig., *cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce:* **fortuna casus** (*bring about, give*).

adficiō (**aff-**), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**ad-facio**], 3. v. a., *do to, affect.* — With acc. and abl., *affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, fill with.* — In passive, *suffer, receive, be in* (a condition), *be afflicted by, suffer from:* **beneficio adfectus**, *having received favors;* **magno dolore adfici**, *be greatly distressed.*

adfīgō (**aff-**), -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**ad-figo**, *fix, fasten*], 3. v. a., *fasten to* (by insertion or the like).

adfingō (**aff-**), -fingere, -fīnxī, -fīctus, [**ad-fingo**], 3. v. a., *make up in addition.* — Of rumors, *invent more, add.*

adfīnitās (**aff-**), -tātis, [**adfini-** (*close to*, fr. **finis**, *boundary*) + **tas**], F., *nearness.* — Esp. of relation by marriage, *relationship, alliance, connection.* — Concretely, *a connection:* **adfinitatibus coniuncti** (*marriages*).

adfīrmātiō (**aff-**), -ōnis, [**adfirmatio**, cf. **adfirmo**, *assert*], F., *assurance.* — Concretely, *an assertion.*

adfīxus (**aff-**), p. p. of **adfigo.**

adflīctō (**aff-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-**

flicto, cf. **adfligo**], 1. v. a., *dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground.* Hence, *overthrow, overwhelm, wreck.*

adflīctus (aff-), p. p. of **adfligo.**

adflīgō (aff-), -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, [**ad-fligo**], 3. v. a., *dash upon.* Hence, *overthrow, wreck, overturn:* **navis** (*shatter, damage*); **arbores** (*throw down*).

adfore (aff-), see **adsum.**

adgredior (agg-), -gredī, -gressus, [**ad-gradior,** *step, go*], 3. v. dep., *go towards, go to, march against, attack.*

adgregō (agg-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-grego,** *flock*, cf. **grex,** *flock*], 1. v. a., *unite in a flock, gather:* **se** (*gather around, flock to*); **se ad amicitiam** (*attach one's self to*).

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, [**ad-haereo**], 2. v. n., *stick* (to), *cling* (to), *get caught* (in).

adhaerēscō, -ere, [**ad-haeresco**], 3. v. n., same meaning as **adhaereo.**

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**ad-habeo**], 2. v. a., *have in.* Hence, *call in, admit, bring with* (one). — Fig., *employ, use.*

adhibitus, p. p. of **adhibeo.**

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, [**ad-hortor**], 1. v. dep., *encourage, address, urge, rally* (soldiers).

adhūc [**ad-huc,** *hither*], adv., *hitherto* (of place). — Of time, *up to this time, till now, to this day.*

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, no p. p., [**ad-iaceo**], 2. v. n., *lie near, border on, be adjacent.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, [Celtic], M., chief of the Sotiates.

adiciō (adiic-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**ad-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw to, hurl, fling:* **telum adici** (*be thrown to,* i.e. *reach*); **aggerem** (*throw up*). — Fig., *join to, add:* **adiecta planities** (*with the addition of*).

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**ad-ago**], 3. v. a., *drive to, drive up* (of cattle, etc.). — Less exactly, *drive in, drive home* (of piles), *move up* (of towers), *shoot* (of weapons). — Fig., *force, bind* (by oath.)

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**ad-emo,** *take*], 3. v. a., *take away* (the action being looked upon as done *to* somebody, usually in the dat.). — Fig., *destroy, cut off,* **spem; prospectum** (*intercept, cut off*).

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus, [**ad-apiscor,** *lay hold of*], 3. v. dep., *obtain, secure:* **victoriam** (*win, gain*).

aditus, -ūs, [**ad-itus,** cf. **adeo,** *go to*], M., *approach, arrival, coming, access:* **defugere** (*contact, intercourse*). — Concretely, *an avenue* (of approach), *access* (excuse for approaching), *admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach* (in military sense); **sermonis** (*occasion for intercourse*); **ad uxorem** (*intercourse*).

adiectus, p. p. of **adicio.**

adiūdicātus, p. p. of **adiudico.**

adiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-iudico,** cf. **iudex,** *judge*], 1. v. a., *adjudge, assign* (by deliberation).

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [**ad-iungo**], 3. v. a., *join to, unite to, attach, unite with.*

adiūtor, -tōris, [**ad-†iutor,** cf. **adiuvo,** *help*], M., *helper, assistant, abettor.*

adiūtus, p. p. of **adiuvo.**

adiuvō, -iuvare, -iūvī, -iūtus, [**ad-iuvo,** *help*], 1. v. a., *assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to;* **ad spem** (*encourage*).

adlātus (**all-**), p. p. of **adfero.**

adliciō (**all-**), -licere, -lēxī, -lectus, [**ad-lacio**], 3. v. a., *allure to, invite, entice, attract.*

admātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-maturo,** fr. **maturus,** *early*], 1. v. a., *hasten:* **defectionem** (*bring to a head more quickly*).

administer, -trī, [**ad-minister,** *servant*], M., *servant, minister:* **ad sacrificia** (*priest, celebrant*).

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-ministro,** *serve*], 1. v. a., *carry into execution, perform, execute, carry out, carry on* (war), *attend to* (duties): **imperia** (*give, carry out* the duties of a commander).

admīrātus, p. p. of **admiror.**

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, [**ad-miror,** *wonder*], 1. v. dep., *be surprised, wonder at, admire.* — **admīrandus,** -a, -um, as adj., *surprising.* — **admīrātus,** -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *being surprised, wondering.*

admissus, p. p. of **admitto.**

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**ad-mitto**], 3. v. a., (*let go to*), *let go:* **admisso equo,** *at full speed.* — Fig., *allow* (cf. **com-** and **per-mitto**): **in se facinus** (*commit a crime*); **dedecus** (*permit to be incurred, incur*). — Also pass. without **in se,** *be committed.*

admodum [**ad-modum,** *measure, limit*], adv., *to a degree.* Hence, *very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so* (very) *much.*

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**ad-moneo**], 2. v. a., *warn, urge.*

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, [**ad-olesco,** *grow*], 3. v. n., *grow up* (to maturity), *mature.* See also **adulescens.**

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, [**ad-orior**], 4. v. dep., (*rise up against*), *attack, assail.*

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adorior.**

adparō (**app-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-paro,** *make ready,* cf. **pareo,** *be on hand*], 1. v. a. and n., *prepare, get ready, make preparations.*

adpellō (**app-**), -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [**ad-pello,** *drive*], 3. v. a. and n., *land* (ships), *bring to land.*

adpetō (**app-**), -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [**ad-peto,** *aim at*], 3. v. a. and n., *seek to gain, desire, aim at.* — Abs., *approach.*

adplicō (**app-**), -plicāre, -āvī (-uī), -plicātus (-plicitus), [**ad-plico,** *fold*], 1. v. a., (*bend towards*). With reflex., *lean against.*

adportō (**app-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-porto,** *carry*], 1. v. a., *bring in, bring* (to some place).

adprobō (**app-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad-probo,** *esteem good,* cf. **probus,** *good*], 1. v. a., *approve of, agree with* (an opinion or action).

adpropinquō (**app-**), -āre, -āvī, no p. p., [**ad-propinquo,** cf. **propinquus,** *near*], 1. v. n., *approach, come nearer, come near.*

adpulsus (**app-**), p. p. of **adpello.**

adquīrō (**acq-**), -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [**ad-quaero,** *seek*], 3. v. a. (*get in addition*), *acquire:* **aliquid** (*gain some advantage*).

adripiō (**arr-**), -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [**ad-rapio**], 3. v. a., *snatch up, seize.*

adroganter (**arr-**), [**adrogant-** (st. of p. of **adrogo**, *assume*) + ter], adv., *with presumption, presumingly, with insolence.*

adrogantia (**arr-**), -ae, [**adrogant-** (see preceding) + **ia**], F., *insolence, insolent conduct, presumption.*

adscendō, see **ascendo.**

adscēnsus, see **ascensus.**

adscīscō (**asc-**), -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [**ad-scisco**, *approve*, fr. **scio**], 3. v. a., *attach* (by formal decree). — Less exactly, *attach to* (one's self), *unite with* (one's self).

adsiduus (**ass-**), -a, -um, [**ad-†siduus** (SED in **sedeo**, *sit*) + **uus**], adj., (*sitting by*), *constant, continued, incessant.*

adsistō (**ass-**), -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**ad-sisto**, *place* (one's self)], 3. v. n., *stand by, attend, assist:* **in conspectu patris** (*appear*).

adspectus (**asp-**), -ūs, [**ad-†spectus**, cf. **adspicio**, *look at*], M., *a looking at.* — Transf., *an appearance, aspect.*

adsuēfaciō (**ass-**), -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [**†adsuē-** (cf. **suesco**, *become accustomed*) **-facio**, *make*], 3. v. a., *accustom, train.* — Pass., *be accustomed.*

adsuēfactus (**ass-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **adsuefacio.**

adsuēscō (**ass-**), -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [**ad-suesco**, *become accustomed*], 3. v. a. and n., *accustom, become accustomed, become wonted* (of **animals**).

adsuētus (**ass-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **adsuesco.**

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [**ad-sum**], irr. v. n., *be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be there, appear.*

Aduatuca, -ae [Celtic, *a fortress ?*], F., a fortress of the Eburones (prob. *Tongres*), near the Meuse.

Aduatucī, -ōrum [Celtic], M., pl., a tribe of the Belgæ (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later, *Tongri*).

adulēscēns (**adol-**), -entis [p. of **adolesco**, *grow up*], adj., *young.* — As noun, *a youth, young man.* — With proper names, *the younger* (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscentia (**adol-**), -ae, [**adulescent-** + **ia**], F., *youth.*

adulēscentulus (**adol-**), -ī, [**adulescent-** + **ulus**, dim. end.], M. (often as adj.), *a mere boy, very young.*

adventus, -ūs, [**ad-†ventus**, cf. **advenio**, *come to*], M., *a coming, arrival, approach.*

adversārius, -a, -um, [**adversŏ-** (reduced) + **arius**], adj., (*turned towards*), *opposed.* — As noun, *opponent, adversary, foe, enemy.*

adversus, p. p. of **adverto**, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see **adverto.**

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [**ad-verto**], 3. v. a., *turn towards:* **animum** (*turn the attention, notice*, see **animadverto**), *turn against, turn* (to anything). — **adversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, un-*

favorable, in the face of: **proelium** (*unsuccessful*); **hostibus adversus occurrebant** (*right against, in their front*); **in adversum os,** *right in the face;* **flumine** (*up*, cf. **secundo**); **res adversae,** *adversity, want of success.* — **adversus** [petrified as adv., cf. **versus**], prep. with acc., *against.*

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-voco], I. v. a., *call* (to one), *summon.*

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ad-volo], I. v. n., *fly to, fly at.* — Less exactly, of cavalry, *rush at, fly at, charge upon.*

aedificium, -ī, [†aedific- (cf. **aedifico**) + **ium**], N., *building.* — Esp. buildings standing singly, opposed to villages, *farm houses.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†aedific- (**aedes,** *house,* FAC in **facio**)], I. v. a., *build* (of houses). — Less exactly, of ships.

aeger, -gra, -grum, [?], adj., *sick, disabled.*

aegerrimē, superl. of **aegre.**

aegrē [old case-form of **aeger**], adv., *feebly.* Hence, *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.*

Aemilius, -ī, [?], M., (Lucius), a Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar's Gallic cavalry. Probably named from some Roman Aemilius from whom he had received the citizenship.

aequāliter [aequali- (fr. **aequus,** *even*) + ter], adv., *evenly, uniformly.*

aequinoctium, -ī, [as if **aequinoct-**, indirectly fr. **aequo-,** *equal,* **nox** (*night*) + **ium**], N., *the time of the equinox, the equinox.*

aequitās, -tātis, [aequŏ- (*even, equal*) + **tas**], F., *evenness.* Hence (cf. **aequus**), *fairness, justice.* — Esp., **aequitas animi,** *evenness of mind, contentment, resignation.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aequŏ-, *equal*], I. v. a., *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, -a, -um, [?, perh. akin to **unus,** formed with **-cus** instead of **-nus**], adj., *even, level, equal.* Hence, *fair, just, equitable.* — Esp., **aequus animus,** *equanimity, contentment, resignation;* **aequo animo aliquid facere** (*be resigned to, be satisfied to, be content to*); **contentio** (*on equal terms*); **aequo Marte,** *on equal terms, with equal success.*

aerārius, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of **aes,** *copper*) + **arius**], adj., (*having to do with copper*). — Fem. as noun, *a mine.*

aereus, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of **aes,** *copper*) + **eus**], adj., *of copper, copper* (as adj.).

aes, aeris, [?], N., *copper* (as metal for ships, or as money). Hence, *money.*— Esp., **alienum** (*debt,* another man's money).

aestās, -tātis, [st. akin to **aedes** (*hearth*) + **tas**], F., (*heat*), *summer* (the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimā- (st. of **aestimo,** *value*) + **tio**], F., *valuation, estimation, value.*

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aestimŏ-, *assayer*], I. v. a., *value, estimate.* — Less exactly, *regard:* **gravius** (*consider more serious,* of calamities).

aestīvus, -a, -um, [†aestu- (cf. **aestus,** *heat*) + **ivus**], adj., *hot.* Hence, *summer* (as adj.): **tempus.**

aestuārius, -a, -um, [**aestu-** (cf. **aestus,** *tide*) + **arius**], adj., (*relating to the tide*). — Only in neut., as noun, *creek, estuary, marsh.*

aestus, -tūs, [AID (in **aedes,** *hearth*) + **tus**], M., *heat* (plur. in same sense). Hence, *boiling, tide.*

aetās, -tātis, [for **aevitas,** fr. **aevo-** (st. of **aevum,** *age*) + **tas**], F., *age* (of old or young): **aetate confectus,** *oppressed with years.*

aeternus, -a, -um, [**aevo-** (st. of **aevum,** *age*) + **ternus**], adj., (*relating to age*), *eternal, lasting.*

aff-, see **adf-.**

Āfricus, -a, -um, [**Afro-** (st. of **Afer,** *African*) + **cus**], adj., *of Africa.* — Esp., sc. **ventus,** *the S.W. wind* (blowing from Africa to Italy).

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see **absum.**

Agēdincum, -ī, [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now *Sens.*

ager, agrī, [AG in **ago** (*drive?*) + **rus**, akin to Eng. *acre*], M., *land* (cultivated), *fields, country* (opposed to city), *territory* (country), *cultivated lands, fields* (as opposed to woods).

agger, -eris, [**ad-ger** (for GES in **gero,** as st.], M., (*that which is carried to a place*), *earth* (for a wall), *earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike* (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): **cotidianus** (*daily addition to the dike or walls*).

agg- (except **agger**), see **adg-.**

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**agitō-** (freq. of **ago,** *put in motion*)], I. v. a., *drive, chase.* Hence, *vex, trouble.* — Fig., *turn over* (in mind), *propose, discuss, purpose.*

agmen, -minis, [AG (in **ago,** *put in motion*) + **men**], N., *a moving, a march.* — Concretely (of bodies in motion), *a body in motion, a column, an army, a line* (of troops in march), *a train, a fleet.* — Less exactly, *an army* (not in march). Phrases: **primum** (*the van*); **novissimum** (*the rear*); **claudere** (*bring up the rear*); **conferto agmine,** *in close order;* **agmine,** *on the march;* **agmen legionum** (*the main column*); **extremo agmine,** *in the rear.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, [AG, *put in motion*], 3. v. a., *drive* (apparently from behind, cf. **duco,** *lead*): **sublicas** (*drive down*); **vineas, turres,** etc. (*set in motion, move on, advance*); **cuniculos** (*extend*); **ac portare** (of live stock as booty, *drive off*). — Loosely, *do* (cf. "carry on"), *act, treat, discuss, plead.* — Phrases: **conventum** (*hold*); **gratias** (*render, give, express,* cf. **habere** and **referre**); **quid agit,** *what is one about?;* **quid agitur,** *what is going on?;* **de obsessione agere** (*do anything about, engage in*).

agricultūra, see **cultura.**

alacer, -cris, -cre, [?], adj., *active, eager, spirited.*

alacritās, -tātis, [**alacri-** (*eager*) + **tas**], F., *eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness.*

ālārius, -a, -um, [**alāri-** (st. of

ala, *wing*, + **ris**) + **ius**], adj. (*belonging to the wings*). Hence, *of the allies* (who held the wings of the army). — M. plur. as noun, *allies, auxiliaries.*

albus, -a, -um, [?, cf. **Alpes**], adj., *white* (pale, opp. to **ater**, cf. **candidus**, *shining white*, opp. to **niger**): **plumbum album**, *tin.*

alcēs, -is, [Teutonic, cf. *elk*], F., *the elk* (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

Alesia, -ae, [Gallic], F., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now *Alise Ste. Reine.*

aliās [unc. case-form of **alius**, but cf. **foras**], adv., *elsewhere.* — Of time, *at another time:* **alias . . . alias**, *now . . . now* (cf. **alius . . . alius**).

aliēnātus, p. p. of **alieno**.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**alienō-**, *another's*], I. v. a., *make another's.* — Also, *make strange, alienate, estrange:* **alienata mente**, *in a frenzy.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. akin to **alius**, *other*, (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + **nus**], adj., *another's, of others, other people's:* **fines** (*others'*); **aes** (*debt*). Hence, *strange, foreign, unfavorable* (cf. **suus**), *foreign to the purpose.* — Superl., M. plur. as noun, *perfect strangers.*

aliō [old case-form of **alius**], adv., *elsewhither, elsewhere* (of end of motion).

aliquamdiū [**aliquam-diu**, cf. **quam diu**], adv., *for some time, some time, a considerable time.*

aliquandō [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) **-quando**, *when*], *at some time.* — Emphatically, *at last* (at *some* time, though not before).

aliquantō, see **aliquantus**.

aliquantus, -a, -um, [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) **-quantus**, *how great* (cf. **aliquis**)], adj., *considerable.* — Neut., as noun, *a good deal, a considerable part.* — **aliquantō** (as abl. of measure), *by considerable, considerably, a good deal.*

aliquis (**-quī**), -qua, -quid (-quod), [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) **-quis**, *any*], indef. pron. (more forcible than **quis**; not universal, like **quisquam**), *some, any.* — Emph., *some* (considerable), *any* (important). — As noun, *some one, any one, something, anything.*

aliquot [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) **-quot**, *how many*], indecl. adj., *several, some* (more than one, but not conceived as many).

aliter [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) + **ter**], adv., *otherwise, differently.* — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context, **aliter se habere ac**, *be different from what*, etc.; **nec aliter sentire quin**, *have no other idea but that.*

alius, -a, -ud, [unc. root (cf. *else*) + **ius**], adj. pron., *another* (any one, not all), *other, different, else, another* (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), *one . . . another, one another, one one* (thing), *another another:* **alius alia causa illata**, *alleging different reasons;* **alius ex alio** (*from different*, etc., *one from one, another from another*). — Esp. in a partitive use, **ex aliis** (with superl., *most of all others*, cf. "the

fairest of her daughters, Eve"); alius **atque** (see **atque**).

all-, see **adl-**.

Allobroges, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic people (of Gaul), living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps (in *Dauphiny* and *Savoy*). They were conquered in B.C. 121 by Fabius Maximus.

alō, alere, aluī, altus, [AL, *nourish*], 3. v. a., *cause to grow, feed, nurse, support* (supply with food), *foster, raise, keep* (of animals): **staturam** (*increase*).— Fig. *foster, foment, feed.*

Alpēs, -ium, [Celtic form, (cf. **albus**) + **is**], F. pl., *the Alps*, more or less loosely used of the whole mass of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

alter, -era, -erum, [AL- (in **alius**, *other*) + **ter** (for **-terus**, compar. suffix)], adj. pron., *the other* (of two). — In plur., *the other party.* — Repeated (cf. **alius**), *one the other, one another* (of two), *one . . . the other.* — In plur., *one party . . . the other.* — Also, *the second* (of more than two), *another* (the second of three): **dies** (*the second*).— Also (esp. with negatives), *another* (beside one's self, where all are conceived as two parties, one's self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um, [alter- (as st.) + nus], adj., *alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating.*

altitūdō, -inis, [altŏ- (*high*) + tudo], F., *height, depth* (cf. **altus**), *thickness* (of a timber).

altus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **alo** (*nourish*), as adj.] (*grown high by nourishing*), *high.*— From opposite point of view, *deep.*— Neut., as noun, *the sea, the deep:* **in alto**, *in deep water;* **ex alto**, *from the sea.*

alūta, -ae, [? cf. **alumen**, *alum*], F., *leather* (of a fine sort, like morocco ?).

amb- [akin to **ambo**, *both*], prep. only in comp., *about, round about.*

ambactus, -ī, [prob. German], M., *a retainer, a vassal.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, [Celtic], plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Haedui Ambarri.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called from their name, *Amiens.*

Ambibariī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj , an Aremorican tribe living in a part of Normandy.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the preceding).

Ambiorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

Ambivaretī (**Ambila-**), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.

ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum), [akin to **amb-**, *round about*], num. adj., *both* (together, cf. **uterque**, *both separately*).

āmēns, -entis, [**ab-mens**], adj. (*having the mind away*), *mad*, *crazy*.

āmentia, -ae, [**ament-** (*mad*) + **ia**], F., *madness*, *frenzy*, (mad) *folly*.

āmentum, -i, [? unc. root + **mentum**], N., *a thong* (attached to a javelin, and wound around it to give it a twisting motion in throwing, as with rifle balls).

amīcitia, -ae, [**amicŏ-** (*friendly*) + **tia**], F., *friendship*, *friendly relations*, *alliance*. — Opp. to **hospitium**, *personal friendship*.

amīcus, -a, -um, [unc. st. fr. AM (in **amo**, *love*) + **cus**], adj., *friendly*, *well disposed*: **praesidium** (*devoted*). — As noun, M., *a friend*, *an ally*.

āmissus, p. p. of **amitto**.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**ab-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go* (away), *let slip*, *let pass*. Hence, *lose* (esp. of military losses).

amor, -ōris, [AM (in **amo**, *love*) + **or** (for **os**)], M., *love*, *affection*.

amplē [old case-form of **amplus**], adv., *widely*, *largely*. — **amplius**, compar., *farther*, *more*, *longer*: **amplius quingenti**, *five hundred and more*; **ne quis, . . . amplius** (*any more*); **amplius obsidum** (see **amplus**); **munera amplissime missa** (*generous gifts*).

amplificātus, p. p. of **amplifico**.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**amplificŏ-**, (**amplŏ-**) with FAC, *make*], 1. v. a., *increase*, *enlarge*, *extend*, *heighten*.

amplitūdō, -inis, [**amplŏ-** (*large*) + **tudo**], F., *size*, *extent*, *greatness*: **cornuum** (*spread*).

amplus, -a, -um, [?, perh. **amb-** (*about*) + st. akin to **plus**, **plenus**], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., *large*, *wide*, *great*. — Esp., *prominent*, *of consequence*, *splendid*, *noble*, *distinguished*: **munera** (*lavish*, *valuable*); **dimissis amplioribus copiis** (*the greater part of*). — **amplius**, neut. comp. as noun (cf. **plus**), *more*, *a greater number*: **amplius obsidum**.

an, [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, *or*, *or rather*. — Often with the first member only implied, *or*: **quid venirent, an speculandi causa** ((*or*) *was it*).

Anartēs, -ium, [?], M. plur., a people in Dacia (*Transylvania*), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalites, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, [**amb-**, *about*, **caput**, *head*], adj., (*having a head on both sides*), *double-headed*. — Less exactly, *twofold*, *double*: **proelium** (*on both fronts*, of an army facing in two ways).

ancora, -ae, [Gr.], F., *anchor*: **in ancoris**, *at anchor*.

Andēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern *Anjou*.

Andī, -ōrum, the same as the **Andes**.

Andocombogius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief man of the Remi.

ānfrāctus (**āmf-**), -ūs, [**am(b)-**,

†fractus, fr. FRAG (in **frangō**, *break*)], M., *a bending round.* Hence, *a winding, a circuit, a deviation* (from a straight line).

angulus, -ī, [prob. **ancŏ-** (st. of **ancus**, *bent*) + **lus**], M., (a little hook), *a corner.*

angustē [old case-form of **angustus**], adv., *narrowly, in narrow quarters* (closely). — Fig., *sparingly* (cf. **ample**), *in small quantity.*

angustiae, -ārum, [**angustŏ-** (*narrow*) + ia], F. plur., *narrowness* (prop. concrete, *narrows*); **itinerum** (*a narrow pass*); **propter angustias** (*narrowness of the passage*). — Fig., *straits* (difficult position, etc.), *hard straits, difficulties:* **angustiis premi**, *to be hard pushed.*

angustus, -a, -um, [angor (*squeezing*) + **tus**], adj., *narrow, confined:* **angustiora castra** (*less extensive*); **angustiore fastigio** (*narrowing, sloping, drawing in*). — Fig., **in angusto res est**, *the position is critical* (cf. '*in a tight place*').

anima, -ae, [ani- (treated as root, fr. AN, *blow*) + **ma** (F. of **mus**), cf. **animus**], F., *breath.* Hence, *soul.* — Plur., *the soul* (of man, abstractly).

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, (also **animum adverto**), [**animum adverto**], 3. v. a., *turn the mind to, attend to:* **in aliquem** (*punish*, cf. the domestic "attend to"). — Less exactly, *observe, notice, learn.*

animal, -ālis, [**anima-** + **lis**, N. of adj.], N., (*a creature endowed with life*), *an animal* (including man), *a living creature* (opp. to booty).

animus, -ī, [**ani-** (st. as root, fr. AN, *blow*) + **mus**], M., *breath, life, soul* (vital). — Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to **anima**, wh. see), *soul* (as thinking, feeling), *mind, feelings, feeling, intellect* (but cf. **mens**), *spirit:* **effeminare**; **levitas animi** (*disposition, nature*, or together, *want of constancy*); **animus relinquit aliquem**, *one faints, loses consciousness;* **animi mollitia**, *want of energy* or *endurance;* **animo paratus**, *resolute;* **animum advertere** (see **animadverto**). — Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), *spirit, constancy, courage, resolution:* **confirmare** (*encourage any one*); **relanguescere**; **promptus**; **paratus ad aliquid.** — Also (as opp. to **mens**, wh. see), *the moral powers, will, desires, affections*, etc., *the heart, the feelings, the disposition:* **bono animo esse**, *be well disposed, be of good cheer;* **esse in animo alicui**, *to have in mind*, as a purpose; **offendere** or **avertere** (*feelings*); **magni animi**, *of great ambition.* — Also, **animus magnus**, *courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit;* **animi magnitudo**, *lofty spirit;* **permulcere** (*angry spirit*); **mentes animosque perturbare** (*minds*, as thinking, and *hearts*, as feeling, etc.); **animi virtus**, *nobleness of soul;* **animi causa**, *for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy.*

annōtinus, -a, -um, [some form of **annŏ-** (*year*) + **tinus** (cf. **diutinus**)], adj., *last year's, old* (of ships made the year before).

annus, -ī, [?], M., *a year* (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).

annuus, -a, -um, [**annŏ-** (*year*) + **us**], adj., *annual:* **magistratus creatur** (*annually*).

ānser, -eris, [for **hanser**, akin to *goose*], M., *a goose.*

ante [old case-form], adv., *before* (of place and time), *in front:* **ante dictum** (*above, before, previously*); **ante habuerat** (*formerly, once*); **iam ante**, *already before, already;* **paucis ante diebus**, *a few days before.* — Prep. with acc., *before* (of place or time): **ante se mittit** (*in advance of*). — In dates, **ante diem** (**a. d.**) (*on* such *a day before*). — In comp., *before* (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [**ante eā**, case-form of **is**], adv. (of time), *before, previously, once.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [**ante-cedo**], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), *go forward, advance, surpass* (in size, etc.), *exceed, precede, go in advance of.*

antecursor, -ōris, [**ante-cursor**, *runner*], M. (*a forerunner*). — Esp. of the army, *a scout, pioneer.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**ante-fero**], irr. v. a., *place in advance, prefer.* — Pass., *be preferred, be the first, have the superiority.*

antemna, -ae, [?], F., *a yard* (for sails).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**ante-pono**], 3. v. a., (*place in advance*, cf. **antefero**), *think of more importance.*

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [**ante-verto**], 3. v. a., (*turn in front*, cf. **antepono**), *prefer.*

antīquitus [**antiquŏ-** + **tus**], adv., *from ancient times, from early times.* — Less exactly, *long ago, in early times, anciently.*

antīquus, -a, -um, [**anti-** (cf. **ante**) + **cus**], adj., *old* (existing from early times, not so much in reference to present age as to former origin, cf. **vetus**), *ancient.*

Antistius, -ī, [**antisti-** (**antistes**, *overseer*) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antōnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus*, Mark Antony, the famous triumvir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; also 2, his brother, *Gaius*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Ap., for **Appius.**

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus, [**ab-pario**, *get off*, cf. **operio**, *cover*], 4. v. a., *uncover, open.* — **apertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected:* **latus** (*the right side*, not covered by the shield); **collis** (*without trees*); **loca** (*open country*); **impetus maris** (*unbroken*).

apertē [old case-form of **apertus**], adv., *openly.*

Apollō, -inis, [?], M., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

apparō, see **adparo.**

1. **appellō**, see **adpello.**

2. **appellō (adp-)**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**ad-pellŏ-**, cf. **compello**], 1. v. a., *call, name, address, call upon, style* (declare one something or address in a certain character).

app-, see **adp-**.

Appius, -ī, [?, a Sabine word?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Apr., for **Aprilis**.

Aprīlis, -e, [prob. akin to **aperio**, *open*], (*the month which opens the ground*), adj., *of April*.

aptus, -a, -um, [AP (in **apiscor**, *lay hold of*) + **tus**], adj., (*fitted to*), *suited, adapted, fit, apt*.

apud [akin to **ab**], prep. with acc., *at, among, with, before, on one's part, in relation to* (a person); *in one's house* (company, possession).

aqua, -ae, [?], F., *water, a water-course:* **aqua atque igni interdicere** (a form of banishment among the Romans); **mensurae ex aqua**, *by the water-clock* (a contrivance like an hour-glass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātiō, -ōnis, [**aquā-** (st. of **aquor**, *fetch water*) + **tio**], F., *getting water* (cf. **pabulatio**).

aquila, -ae, [F. of **aquilus**, *dark gray*, perh. remotely akin to **aqua**], F., *an eagle.*—Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, [**Aquila-** + **eius**], F., a city of Cisalpine Gaul (*Venetia*), founded by a Roman colony in B.C. 182 as an outpost on the northeast.

aquilifer, -erī, [**aquila-fer** (reduced fr. **-ferus**, FER (in **fero**, *bear*) + **us**)], M., *a standard bearer* (of the eagle).

Aquītānia, -ae, [F. of adj. developed fr. **Aquitanus**], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean (see I. 1).

Aquītānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *of Aquitania.*— Plur., as noun, *the people of Aquitania.*—Sing., *a man of Aquitania, an Aquitanian.*

Arar, -aris, [?], M., *the Saône*, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

arbiter, -trī, [**ad-bito** (*go*) + **trus**, cf. **-trum**], M., (*a bystander*), *a witness.*— Less exactly, *a referee, an arbitrator.*

arbitrium, -ī, [**arbitrŏ-** (*umpire, judge*) + **ium** (cf. **iudicium**)], N., *judgment, will, pleasure* (what one sees fit to do).

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, [**arbitrŏ-**, *umpire, judge*], 1. v. a. and n., *think, suppose* (judge).

arbor, -oris, [?], F., *a tree.*

arcessō, -sere, -sīvī, -sītus, [akin to **accedo**, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., *summon, invite, send for* (persons), *call in:* **aliquem mercede** (*call in to serve for pay*).

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus, [prob. **aridŏ-**, *dry*], 2. v. n., *be hot, be on fire.* — Fig., *be excited, be in a blaze, burn.*

Arduenna, -ae, [?], F., *the Ardennes* (a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul).

arduus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *high, steep, difficult* (of ascent).

Arecomicī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a branch of the **Volcae**.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um, [Celtic **are**, *near*, and **mor**, *the sea*],

adj., only F. plur., *Aremorican* (of the states of Gaul near the ocean in Normandy and Brittany).

argentum, -ī, [akin to **arguo**, *make bright*], N., (*the shining metal*), *silver*. Also, of things made of the metal, *silverware*, *silver*.

argilla, -ae, [dim. akin to **arguo**, *make bright*, F., (*white clay*)], *clay*: **fusilis** (some vitrifying earth, such as porcelain is made of).

āridus, a-, -um, [†arŏ- (wh. **areo**, *be dry*) + **dus**], adj., *dry*. — Neut. as noun, *dry land*.

ariēs, -ietis, [?], M., *a ram*. — Fig., *a battering ram* (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, *a buttress* (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -ī, [?], M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

Aristius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Marcus*, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.

arma, -ōrum, [AR, *fit* (cf. **armus**, *the shoulder joint*) + **mus**], N. plur., *arms*, *equipment*: **armis ius exsequi** (*by force of arms*); **in armis esse**, *to be under arms*, *to be ready for service*, *to be in service*; **parati in armis**, *armed for war*; **ab armis discedere**, *to abandon hostilities*; **in armis**, *in battle*; **armis congressi** (*in battle*), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum, [armā- (st. of **armo**) + **mentum**], N. plur., *implements*. — Esp., *rigging*, *tackle*.

armātūra, -ae, [armā- (st. of **armo**) + **tura**], F., *equipment*: **levis armaturae Numidae** (*light armed*, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary).

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **armo**.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [armŏ- (st. of **arma**)], I. v. a., *equip*, *arm*. — Pass., *arm* (one's self). — **armātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *armed*, *in arms*, *equipped*.

Arpīnēius, -ī, [Arpinŏ- (st. of **Arpinum**) + **eius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius*, a Roman knight in Cæsar's army, possibly of Gallic origin, of a family enfranchised by Marius, who came from Arpinum.

arr-, see **adr-**.

ars, artis, [AR (*fit*) + **tis** (reduced)], F., (*skill in fitting*), *skill*, *art*. — Plur., *the arts*, *the useful arts*.

artē [old case-form of **artus**], adv., *closely*, *tightly*.

articulus, -ī, [artu- (*joint*) + **culus**], M., *a little joint*. — Less exactly, *a joint*.

artificium, -ī, [artific- (*artificer*) + **ium**], N., *a skilful contrivance*, *an artifice*, *a trick*. Also, *a trade* (opp. to **ars**, *a higher art*).

artus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **arceo** (*shut up*)], as adj., *tightly bound*, *close*: **silva** (*thick*).

Arvernus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Arverni* (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — M. plur., *the Arverni*.

arx, arcis, [ARC (in **arceo**, *shut up*), + **is** (reduced)], F., *a stronghold*, *a fortress*, *a citadel*.

ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [**ad-scando**, *climb*], 3. v. a. and n., *climb up, climb, ascend:* **vallum** (*mount, scale*).

ascēnsus (ads-), -ūs [**ad-†scansus**, cf. **ascendo**], M., *a climbing up, an ascent, a going up.* — Concr., *a way up, a means of ascent:* **prohibere ascensu** (*from climbing up*).

ascīscō, see **adscisco**.

aspectus, see **adspectus**.

asper, -era, -erum, [?], adj., *rough, harsh.* — Fig., *fierce, violent.*

ass-, see **ads-**.

at [prob. form of **ad**], conj., *but, but yet, at least.*

atque (**ac**), [**ad-que**], conj., *and* (generally introducing some more important idea), *and even, and especially.* — Also, *as, than:* **par atque, idem atque**, *the same as;* **simul atque**, *as soon as;* **similis atque**, *just like;* **aliter ac**, *otherwise than, different from what*, etc.; **aliud atque**, *different from*, etc.

Atrebās, -ātis, [Celtic], adj., *Atrebatian, of the Atrebates* (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one. — Plur., *the Atrebates.*

Ātrius, -ī, [**atrŏ-** (st. of **ater**, *black*) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus*, a soldier in Cæsar's army.

attexō (adt-), -texere, -texuī, -textus, [**ad-texo**], 3. v. a., *weave on, make on* (by weaving).

attingō (adt-), -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [**ad-tango**], 3. v. a., *touch upon, touch, reach, join* (of a nation's boundaries).

attribuō (adt-), -buere, -buī, -būtus, [**ad-tribuo**], 3. v. a., *allot to, assign.*

attulī, see **adfero**.

auctor, -ōris, [AUG (in **augeo**, *increase*) + **tor**], M., *a voucher* (for any act or statement), *an authority, an adviser:* **defectionis** (*leader*); **auctor esse**, *approve, advise;* **eis auctoribus**, *with their approval;* **auctore hoste**, *on the authority of the enemy.*

auctōritās, -tātis, [**auctor-** (as if i-st.) + **tas**], F., *influence, prestige, authority* (not military or political, cf. **imperium** and **potestas**).

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **augeo**.

audācia, -ae, [**audac-** (*bold*) + **ia**], F., *daring, boldness, effrontery.*

audācter, [**audac-** (*bold*) + **ter**], adv., *with daring, boldly, fearlessly* (but of an enemy): **audacissime**, *with the greatest daring.*

audāx, -ācis, [**audā-** (as if st. of **audeo**) + **cus** (reduced)], adj., *daring, bold.*—See **audacia** and **audacter**.

audeō, audēre, ausus, [prob. **avido-**, *eager*], 2. v. a. and n., *dare, venture, risk, dare to try* (or *do*). — **ausus**, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *daring.*

audiō, -dīre, -dīvī, -dītus, [prob. akin to **auris**, *ear*], 4. v. a., *hear, hear of.* — **audiēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *obedient* (with **dicto**).

audītiō, -ōnis, [**audī-** (st. of **audio**) + **tio**], F., *a hearing, hearsay, report.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-stem)], 2. v. a., *increase, magnify, enhance, add to* (something). — Pass., *increase.*

Aulercus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj.,

of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — Plur., *the Aulerci.*

Aulus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

aurīga, -ae, [poss. akin to **auris** and **ago**, cf. **aurea**, *headstall*], C., *a charioteer, a driver.*

auris, -is, [akin to *ear*, st. †**auri-** (cf. **audio**)], F., *an ear.*

Aurunculēius, -ī, [**Aurunculŏ-** (dim. of **Auruncus**, name of an Italian tribe) + **eius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Auscī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of **audeo.**

aut [?, but cf. **autem**], conj., *or* (regularly exclusive, cf. **vel**). — Repeated, *either . . . or.*

autem [?, akin to **aut**], conj., *but* (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. **sed**), *on the other hand, then again, now* (explanatory), *whereas* (in slight opposition to something preceding).

autumnus (**auct-**), -ī, [for †**auctominus**, †**auctŏ-** (cf. **augeo**) + **minus**], M., *autumn* (the season of increase).

auxiliāris, -e, [**auxiliŏ-**, *help* (as if **auxiliā**) + **ris**], adj., *auxiliary.* — Plur. as noun, *auxiliaries, auxiliary troops* (not Roman legionaries).

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, [†**auxiliŏ-**, *help*], I. v. dep., *give assistance.*

auxilium, -ī, [†**auxili-** (akin to **augeo**, *increase*) + **ium**], N., *assistance, aid, remedy, relief:* **extremum** (*the last resource*); **ferre** (*to assist, to aid*); **auxilio** (*as a reënforcement*); **quos auxili causa habebat** (*as auxiliaries*, etc.). — Plur., *auxiliaries* (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry); *reënforcements:* **auxilia tardare**, *hinder from rendering assistance.*

Avaricēnsis, -e, [**Avaricŏ-** + **ensis**], adj., *of Avaricum.* — Plur., *the people of Avaricum.*

Avaricum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges.*

avāritia, -ae, [**avarŏ-** (*greedy*) + **tia**], F., *covetousness, greed, avarice.*

āvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [**ab-veho**], 3. v. a., *carry off, carry away.*

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **averto.**

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [**ab-verto**], 3. v. a., *turn aside, turn off, push aside.* — Fig., *alienate, estrange.* — **āversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *turned away.* Hence, *flying*, or, with a change of point of view in translation, *in the rear* (of that to which the word is applied): **ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur** (*by the enemy getting in their rear*, etc.).

avis, -is, [unc. root + **is**], F., *a bird.*

avus, -ī, [?], M., *a grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now *Aisne*), a tributary of the Isara (*Oise*).

B

Bācenis, -is, [Teutonic], F., with **silva,** a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

Baculus, -ī, [**baculus** = **baculum,** *staff*], M., agnomen of Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Baleāris, -e, [?], adj., *Balearic* (belonging to the *Baleares insulæ* in the Mediterranean, now *Iviza, Majorca,* and *Minorca,* famous for their slingers).

balteus, -ī, [?], M., *a belt, a baldric* (for the sword, passing over the shoulder, but sometimes also, *a belt* encircling the waist).

Balventius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name, only with *Titus,* a centurion in Cæsar's army.

barbarus, -a, -um, [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. **balbus,** *stammering*], adj., *foreign* (not Greek or Latin), *uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians.* — Plur., *the barbarians* or *savages* (used of the Gauls).

Basilus, -ī, [?], M., agnomen of *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* an officer in Cæsar's army.

Batavī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., the *Batavi* or *Batavians,* a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, [?], M. plur., *the Belgæ* or *Belgians,* a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -ī, [**Belga-** + **ium**], N., the country of the Belgæ.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, [**bellicŏ-** (*of war*) + **osus**], adj., *warlike.*

bellicus, -a, -um, [**bellŏ-** (*war*) + **cus**], adj., *of war, in war.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**bellŏ-,** *war*], I. v. n., *fight, make war:* **studium bellandi,** *a passion for war.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -ī, [old **duellum,** (fr. **duo**), *a strife between two*], N., *war, a war:* **bello persequi,** etc. (*in arms*); **bellum inferre,** *make war* (offensive); **bellum defendere,** *defend one's self from war;* **parare bellum,** *make warlike preparations.*

bene [old case-form of **bonus,** *good*], adv., *well:* **bene gerere negotium,** *be successful in,* etc.

beneficium, -ī, [**benefico-** (reduced) (cf. **bene,** FAC in **facio**) + **ium**], N., *well-doing, a service, a favor,* often rendered by Eng. plur., *services, favors shown, services rendered:* **sortium beneficio,** *thanks to the lot;* **beneficio suo adductus,** *by gratitude for his favors.*

benevolentia, -ae, [**benevolent-** (cf. **bene,** VOL in **volo**) + **ia**], F., *goodwill, kindness.*

Bibracte, -is, [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Hædui (Mont Beuvray) near Autun, which was founded later.

Bibrax, -ctis, [cf. last word], F., a town of the Remi.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

bīduum, -ī, [bi- (= dvi-, akin to duo, -duum (akin to dies)], N., *two days' time, two days.*

biennium, -ī, [bienni- (bi, akin to duo, -annŏ-, *year*) + ium], N., *two years' time, the space of two years, two years.*

Bigerriōnes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees (cf. *Bigorre*).

bīnī, -ae, -a, [bi- (= †dvi, akin to duo) + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., *two each, two sets of, two* (of things in pairs or sets).

bipartītō, [abl. of **bipartitus,** *parted in two*], adv., *in two divisions:* **bipartito conlocatis insidiis** (*in two places*).

bipedālis, -e, [biped- (bi-ped-, in **pes,** *foot*) + alis], adj., *of two feet* (in measure), *two feet* (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for **dvis,** unc. case-form of **duo**], adv., *twice.*

Bitur̄iges, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Boduōgnātus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōia, F. sing. of **Bōii,** *Boia.*

Bōiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

bonitās, -tātis, [†bonŏ- (*good*) + tas], F., *goodness:* **agrorum** (*fertility*).

bonus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *good:* **bono animo esse,** *to be well disposed;* **optimum est,** *it is best;* **optimum iudicium facere,** *express so high an opinion.* — Neut. as noun, *good, advantage;* plur., *goods, property, estate.*

bōs, bovis, [akin to *cow*], C., *a bull, a cow, an ox.* — Plur., *cattle.*

bracchium (brāch-), -ī, [?], N., *an arm.*

Brannovīces, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hædui.

Brannoviī (Bl-), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Bratuspantium, -ī, [Celtic], N., a fortified town of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e, [for **bregus,** (BRAGH, *break*) + us], adj., *short* (of space or time): **brevi,** *in a short space.*

brevitās, -tātis, [brevi- (*short*) + tas], F., *shortness, short stature:* **brevitas temporis,** *want of time.*

breviter [†brevi- (*short*) + ter], adv., *briefly.*

Britannī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., *the Britons* (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae, [†Britannŏ- + ia (F. of ius)], F., *Britain.*

Britannicus, -a, -um, [†Britannŏ- + cus], adj., *of Britain, Briton:* **bellum** (*with Britain*).

brūma, -ae, [†brevi- (*short*) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], F., *the winter solstice.*

Brūtus, -ī, [**brutus**, *heavy*], a family name at Rome. — Esp., *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the civil war on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.

C

C, for **centum**, *hundred*.

C., for **Gaius**.

Cabillōnum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Hædui on the Saone (*Chalon-sur-Saône*).

Caburus, -ī, [Celtic], M., the personal name of *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus.

cacūmen, -inis, [?], N., *the top* (of trees, mountains, etc.).

cadāver, -eris, [akin to **cado**, *fall*], N., *a corpse, a body* (dead).

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, [CAD, *fall*], 3. v. n., *fall, be killed*.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Cadurci* (a tribe of Aquitania). — Plur., *the Cadurci*.

caedēs, -is, [†**caed** (as if root of **caedo**, *kill*) + **is** or **es**], F., *a murder, massacre, slaughter, killing*.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus, [prob. causative of **cado**, cf. *fall, fell*], 3. v. a., *strike, strike down, cut, fell, cut down, slay*.

caelestis, -e, [†**caelit-** (st. of **caeles**, fr. **caelum**) + **tis**], adj., *heavenly*. — Plur., *the gods*.

caelum, -ī, [?], N., *the sky, the heavens, heaven*. — See **caelestis**.

caerimōnia, -ae, [?], F., *a rite, a ceremony*.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

caeruleus, -a, -um, [perh. akin to **caesius**, *bluish*], adj., *dark blue*.

Caesar, -aris, [?], M., a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp.: 1. *C. Iulius Caesar*, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the *Commentaries*. — 2. *L. Iulius Caesar*, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul.

caespes, -itis, [?], M., *a sod* (used in fortification).

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of **caedo**.

calamitās, -tātis, [?], F., *disaster* (orig. to crops?), *defeat, misfortune* (also euphemistically for death): **ejus** (*any accident to him*).

Caletes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.

Caletī, -ōrum, same as the preceding.

callidus, -a, -um, [†**callŏ-** (cf. **callum**, *thick skin*) + **dus**], adj., (*tough?*), *shrewd, cunning, skilful*.

cālō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a servant* (of a soldier), *a camp follower*.

campester, -tris, -tre, [**campŏ-** (*plain*) + **ster**, **as if †campet + tris**

(cf. **equestris**)], adj., *of the plain:* **loca** (*level plains*).

campus, -i, [?], M., *a plain.*

Camulogenus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Aulerci.

Canīnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.— Esp., *C. Caninius Rebilus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus, [CAN], 3. v. a. and n., *sing, sound* (with voice or instrument).

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, [Celtic], adj., *of the Cantabri* (a warlike people in the north of Spain, allied with the Gauls of Aquitania).— Plur., *the Cantabri, the Cantabrians.*

Cantium, -ī, [Celtic], N., *Kent* (the southeast corner of Great Britain).

caper, -prī, [?], M., *a goat*, F., **capra**, -ae, *a she-goat.*

capillus, -ī, [adj. form akin to **caput**, *head*], M., *the hair* (collectively).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, [CAP], 3 v. a., *take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize:* **stipendium**; **nomen**; **arma** (*take up*); **montem** (*occupy*).— Less exactly, *choose, select:* **locum**.— So also (esp. of ships, etc.), *reach:* **portus** (*arrive at, make*).— Fig., *take in* (*deceive*), *captivate, beguile*, also *experience:* **dolorem**; **coniecturam** (*make*); **quietem** (*take, enjoy*); **fugam** (*take to flight*).

caprea, -ae, [†caprŏ- (reduced) (cf. **caper**, *goat*) + **ea** (F. of **-eus**)], F., *a roe* (a small animal of the deer kind). Another reading for **capra** in VI, 27.

captīvus, -a, -um, [as if †capti- (imaginary st. of **capto**, fr. **capio**) + **vus**], adj., *captive.*— Masc. as noun, *a captive, a prisoner.*

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of **capio**.

captus, -ūs, [CAP (in **capio**) + **tus**], M., *a seizing.* Hence, *what one can grasp.*— Fig., *capacity, character, nature.*

caput, -itis, [?, akin to *head*], N., *the head:* **capite demisso**; **capite solo ex aqua exstare**, *have only the head above water.*— Less exactly, *person* (cf. "head of cattle"); *mouth* (of a river).— Fig., *life:* **poenam capitis** (*of death*); **capitis periculo** (*of life*).

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, [?], 2. v. n., *be without, go without.*

carīna, -ae, [?], F., *keel, bottom* (of a ship).

Carnutes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orléans.

carō, carnis, [akin to **crudus** and *raw*], F., *flesh, meat.*

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus, [akin to *harvest*], 3. v. a., *pluck.*— Fig., *find fault with* (cf. "pick at").

carrum, -ī, [Celtic], N., *a cart* (of the Gauls).

carrus, -ī, M., another form for **carrum**.

cārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *dear, precious, valuable.*

Carvilius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.— Also, a king of part of Kent.

casa, -ae, [?], F., *a cottage, a hut.*

cāseus, -ī, [?], M., *cheese.*

Cassī, -ōrum, [Celtic, cf. **Velio-**

casses and **Cassivellaunus**], . M. plur., a British tribe.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, [†Cassiŏ- (reduced) + **ānus**], adj., *of Cassius:* **bellum** (the war in B.C. 107, in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near Lake Geneva, and killed).

cassis, -idis, [?], F., *a helmet* (of metal, for horsemen, cf. **galea**).

Cassius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *L. Cassius Longinus,* consul B.C. 107 (see **Cassianus**).

Cassivellaunus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cæsar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -ī, [†**castrŏ-** (*fortress*) + **lum** (N. of **-lus**)], N., *a fortress, a fort, an outwork, a redoubt.*

Casticus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Sequani.

castrum, -ī, [SKAD (*cover*) + **trum**], N., *a fortress.* — Plur., *a camp* (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): **in castris,** *in camp,* also *in service;* **castra ponere,** *pitch a camp;* **castra movere,** *break camp, move;* **quintis castris,** *after five days' journey,* as the Romans encamped every night.

cāsus, -ūs, [CAD (in **cado,** *fall*) + **tus**], M., (*what befalls*), *an accident, a chance* (good or bad), *a mischance:* **hoc ipso tempore et casu** (*emergency*); **casu,** *by accident, by chance;* **casu devenit,** *chanced to,* etc.; **quarum rerum casus** (*the occurrence, the happening, the possibility*); **eundem casum ferre** (*fate*); **belli casum sustinere** (*take the chances*); **in eiusmodi casu** (*a case*); **ad extremum casum,** *to the most critical position;* **ad omnes casus,** *against all accidents;* **in eum casum deduci** (*that pass*).

Catamantāloedēs, -is, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, [?], F., *a chain* (for prisoners), *a cable:* **in catenas coniecit** (*into prison*); **in catenis tenere.**

Caturīges, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Roman Gaul (Provincia).

Catuvolcus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, [?], F., *a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, a motive* (for an act), *a right* (to anything): **satis causae,** *sufficient reason.* Abl. after a gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of:* **libertatis causa; potentiae causa** (*to gain*); **praedandi causa** (*to,* etc.); **insidiarum causa,** *for an ambuscade;* **animi causa,** *for amusement, for fancy.* — Also, *a cause* (in law), *a case:* **causa cognita,** *after trial;* **causa indicta** (*unheard*); **causam dicere,** *plead one's cause, stand a trial, be tried;* **causae dictio** (*a trial*). Hence, also, *a situation, a case:* **Germanorum unam esse causam** (*the case . . . the same*); **in eadem causa,** *in the same situation,* also, *on the same side.*

cautē [old case-form of **cautus**], adv., *with caution, cautiously.*

cautēs, -is, [akin to **cos,** *whetstone*], F., *a rock* (sharp or jagged), *a reef.*

cautus, p. p. of caveo.

Cavarillus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Hædui.

Cavarinus, -ī, [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, made their king by Cæsar.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, [perh. SKV, *cover*], 2. v. n. and a., *be on one's guard, guard against* (something), *take* or *give security.*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [?], 3. v. n., *make way* (in any direction). — Esp., *give way, retreat, retire:* **cedentes,** *the flying;* **cedere loco,** *abandon a position,* a military term. — Fig., *yield:* **fortunae.**

celer, -eris, -ere, [CEL (in **cello,** *rush*) + **ris**], adj., *swift, quick, speedy, fast:* **motus** (*sudden*).

celeritās, -tātis, [celeri- (in **celer**) + **tas**], F., *swiftness, activity, speed, promptness:* **ad celeritatem onerandi,** *to secure quick loading;* **itineris** (*quick marching*).

celeriter [celeri- (in **celer**) + **ter**], adv., *quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, akin to **clam,** *secretly,* and **caligo,** *mist*], 1. v. a., *conceal, hide:* **arma.** — Pass., *pass unnoticed.*

Celtae, -ārum, [Celtic], M. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, *the Celts* (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -ī, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, [**Cenabŏ-** + **ensis**], adj., *of Cenabum, of the Cenabenses,* the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -ī, [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Carnutes, now *Orléans* (from its later name, **urbs Aurelianensis**).

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a British tribe.

Cēnomānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerci.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, [?], 2. v. a., (perh. *fine*), *reckon, estimate.* — Less exactly, *give one's opinion, advise, decree* (of the Senate), *determine.*

cēnsus, -ūs, [akin to **censeo**], M., *a numbering, a count, a census.*

centum (C), [akin to **hund-red**], indecl. num. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, [†**centuria-** (*century*) + o], M., *a centurion.* A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a *century,* originally a hundred men.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, (*sifted*), certus, (*determined*), [CER-, *separate*], 3. v. a., *separate.* Hence, *distinguish, see, behold, descry.* — Also, *determine.*

certāmen, -inis, [†**certā-** (in **certo,** fr. **cerno**) + **men**], N., *a struggle, a contest, rivalry.*

certē [old case-form of **certus**], adv., *certainly, surely, at least* (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cerno** as adj., *determined, fixed, certain* (of the thing as well as the person), *sure, established, regular:* **certiorem facere,** *inform, order;* **certissimae res,** *absolutely certain facts;* **dies certa,** *an appointed day;* **certa subsidia** (*regular,* as organized beforehand); **certum in locum** (*particular*).

cervus, -ī, [root of **cornu** (*horn*) + **vus**], M., *a stag;* plur., in military language, *a structure of forked stakes* (like *stags' horns*), *chevaux-de-frise.*

(**cēterus**), -a, -um, [CE (in **ecce**, *behold*, **hic**, *this*) + **terus** (cf. **alter**)], adj., *the rest of* (cf. **alius**, *other*, not including all). — Usually plur., *the rest*, *the remaining*, *the others;* **frumento ceterisque rebus** (*everything else* necessary, where **aliis** would mean *some other things*).

Ceutrones (**Cent-**), -um, [Celtic], M. plur.: 1. A tribe in the Graian Alps (in modern Savoy). — 2. A Belgic tribe.

Cevenna, -ae, [Celtic], F., *the Cévennes* (a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley).

Chēruscī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

cibārius, -a, -um, [**cibŏ-**, *food* (reduced) + **arius**], adj., *pertaining to food.* — Neut. plur. as noun, *provisions:* **molita** (*ground corn*).

cibus, -ī, [?], M., *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicer (*chickpea*) + **o**, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], M., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus Tullius*, the great orator. — 2. *Quintus* (*Tullius*), his brother, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimberius, -ī, [akin to **Cimbri**], M., a prince of the Suevi.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aquæ Sextiæ and Vercellæ by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 102 and 101.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M.: 1. A leader of the Treveri, brother-in-law of his rival, Indutiomarus. — 2. A British prince in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, [?], 3. v. a., *surround, encircle:* **flumen oppidum** (*run around*). — Less exactly, *man* (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

cippus, -i, [?], M., *a stake, a pillar, a post.* — Plur., apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, *boundary-posts* (?), *chevaux-de-frise.*

circā [case-form (instr.?) of **circus** (cf. **circum**)], adv. and prep. with acc., *about, around.* — See **circiter**.

circinus, -ī, [**circŏ-** (cf. **circum**) + **nus**], M., *a pair of compasses, a compass.*

circiter [**circŏ-** (*around*) + **ter**], adv. and prep. with acc., *about.* — Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), *about* (in the neighborhood of), *near, not far from.*

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumeo**.

circuitus, -tūs, [**circum-itus**], M., *a circuit* (a going round), *a circuitous route, a circumference:* **in circuitu**, *all around.*

circum [acc. of **circŏ-**, *around* (cf. **curvus**)], adv. and prep. with acc., *about, around.*

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**circum-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut around,*

cut (the idea of *around* being implied in the context). — **circumcīsus**, -a, -um, p. p. — Fig., *isolated:* **collis.**

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [circum-claudo], 3. v. a., *enclose around, encircle, place a band around.*

circumdatus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumdo.**

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, [circum-do], 1. v. a., *put around:* **murus circumdatus** (*encircling, thrown around*). — By a confusion of ideas, *surround, encircle:* **aciem rhedis.**

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [circum-duco], 3. v. a., *lead around.* — Less exactly, of a line, *draw around.*

circumductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumduco.**

circu(m)eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [circum-eo], irr. v. n., *go around.* — Becoming active, *visit, make a tour of:* **hiberna.**

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., *pour around.* — Pass. (as reflexive), *pour in, rush around, rush in on all sides.* — Also (cf. **circumdo**), *surround:* **multitudine praesidia** (*surround with a swarming multitude*).

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw around.* — Esp. in a military sense, *hurl around, throw around:* **circumiecta multitudine** (*assailing on all sides*).

circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumicio.**

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., *send around.*

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [circum-munio], 4. v. a., *fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect* (by a fortification).

circummūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circummunio.**

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus, [circum-plecto, *twine*], 3. v. dep., *embrace, surround.*

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, no p. p., [circum-sisto, *place* (*one's self*)], 3. v. a., *stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in, beset.*

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus, [circum-specio], 3. v. a., *look about for.* — Fig., *think over, consider, cast about for:* **animo consilia** (by way of investigating or divining).

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, no p. p., [circum-sto, *stand*], 1. v. a., *surround.*

circumvāllātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumvallo.**

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [circum-vallo, *intrench*], 1. v. a., *surround with walls, blockade, invest.*

circumvectus, p. p. of **circumveho.**

circumvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [circum-veho], 3. v. a., *carry around.* — Esp. pass. as dep., *ride around, sail around.*

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [circum-venio, *come*], 4. v. a., *surround.* — Fig. (cf. 'get round'), *impose upon, defraud, betray, circumvent.*

circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumvenio.**

cis [case-form of **ce** (cf. **ec-ce, cetera**)], adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, [**cis Alpes** (as if **cisalpi-**) + **nus**], adj., *being this side the Alps, Cisalpine.* **Gallia** (that part of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps).

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, [**cis Rhenum** (as if **cisrhenā-**) + **nus**], adj., *being this side the Rhine, this side the Rhine* (as adj. phrase). — Plur. as noun, *the people this side the Rhine* (i.e. towards Gaul).

Cita, -ae, [perh. CI (in **cieo**) + **ta** (cf. **nauta**)], M., a Roman family name. — Only, *C. Fufius*, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.

citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cito.**

citer, -ra, -rum, [CE (cf. **cis**) + **terus** (reduced, cf. **alter**)], adj., *on this side* (rare and antiquated). — Usually **citerior** (compar.), *nearer, hither* (as adj.): **provincia, Gallia** (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul, cf. **Cisalpinus**); **Hispania** (the eastern part of Spain).

citō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [**citŏ-** (fr. **cieo,** *put in motion*)], I. v. a., *urge on, hurry.* — **citātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *in haste:* **citatus fertur,** *runs very rapidly.*

citō [abl. of **citus** (fr. **cieo,** *put in motion*)], adv., *quickly:* **citissimē** (*very rapidly*).

citrā [case-form F. of **citer**], adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, within* (as opp. to beyond).

citrō [dat. of **citer**], adv., *to this side:* **ultro citroque,** *back and forth, to and fro.*

cīvis, -is, [CI (in **quies,** *rest*) + **vis** (weakening of **-vus**)], C., *a citizen, a fellow-citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, [**civi-** + **tas**], F., *the state of being a citizen, citizenship.* — Esp., *Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise.* — Less exactly, *a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens* (as a body), *one's fellow-citizens, a state* (composed of citizens), *a city* (because the city was the state), *a nation, a tribe* (politically): **expellit ex civitate** (*from the country*).

clam [case of st. akin to **caligo,** *mist*, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of **clamo**], I. v. a., *keep crying out, vociferate, cry out.*

clāmor, -ōris, [**clam** (as if root of **clamo**) + **or**], M., *a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.*

clandestīnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from **clam**) + **tinus**], adj., *secret, clandestine.*

clārus, -a, -um, [CLA (in **clamo,** *cry out*) + **rus**], adj., *bright, clear.* — Fig., *famous.* — Also (of sound), *loud, distinct.*

classis, -is, [CLA (in **clamo,** *cry out*) + **tis**], F., (*a summoning*). — Less exactly, *the army* (called out). — Esp., *an army* (called out for duty at sea), *a fleet* (the most common later meaning).

Claudius, -ī, [**claudŏ-** (*lame*) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — **Esp.,**

Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, [of unc. form., akin to **clavis**, *key*], 3. v. a., *close, shut, fasten.* — Esp., **claudere agmen**, *close the line of march, bring up the rear.*

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of **claudo**.

clāvus, -i, [CLAU- (cf. **claudo**) + **us**], M., *a nail, spike.*

clēmēns, -entis, [perh. CLA (in **clarus**, *bright*) + **mens** (cf. **vehemens**)], adj., (*bright?*), *gentle* (of weather). — Fig., *gentle, kind, merciful.* — See **clementia**.

clēmentia, -ae, [clement- + ia], F., *kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency.*

cliēns, -entis, [= **cluens**, p. of **clueo**, *hear, obey*], C., (*a hearer*), *a dependant, a vassal, a retainer.*

clientēla, -ae, [client- + ēla (imitating **suadela**, etc.)], F., *vassalage* (as condition of a **cliens**). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), *protection.* — Phrases: **magnae clientelae**, *many vassals* (extensive relations of "clientage"); **Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt** (*surrendered themselves as vassals to*, etc.).

clīvus, -ī, [CLI (*lean*) + **vus**], M., *a slope, a declivity, an acclivity;* **ad molliendum clivum**, *to make the ascent easier.*

Clōdius, -ī, [the popular form of **Claudius**], M., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian branch of the gens Claudia. — Esp., *P. Clodius*, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for **Gnaeus**.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-acervo**], 1. v. a., *heap up, mass together, heap on top* (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cogo**.

coāctus, -tūs, [**con-actus** (cf. **cogo**, *force*)], M., *compulsion.*

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**coagmentŏ-**, *joint*], 1. v. a., *fasten together.*

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-arto**], 1. v. a., *press together, confine.*

Cocosātes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**con-emo**], 3. v. a., *buy up.*

coeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), no p. p., [**con-eo**], irr. v. n., *come together, unite, meet.*

coepī, -isse, coeptus, [**con-†api** (perf. of †apo, cf. **apiscor**)], def. v. a., (*have taken hold of*), *began, undertook, started.* — **coeptus**, -a, -um, p. p. used in same sense as the active with pass. infinitives.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coepi**.

coerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [**con-arceo**], 2. v. a., *confine, keep in check.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-agito** (in sense of *revolve, discuss*)], 1. v. a., *consider, think over.* — Esp. (as to some plan of action), *think about, discuss* (what to do), *have an idea of, intend, consider* (that something may happen), *expect* (contemplate the possibility): **cogitare ne**, *see that not, think how not, plan to prevent;* **nihil cogitare de bello** (*have no thought of*, etc.).

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, [**con-(g)natio**, *birth*], F., *connection by birth.* — Concretely, *a family, a clan:* **magnae cognationis**, *having connections* (by blood).

cōgnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cognosco.**

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, [**con-(g)nosco**, *learn*], 3. v. a., *learn, find out, find, become aware.* — Esp., *investigate, inquire into, learn about, study.* — In perf. tenses (cf. **nosco**), *know, be aware:* **cognitum est de aliqua re** (*something was known*); **causa cognita**, *upon a full investigation, after trial;* **egregia virtute erant cogniti** (*had been found to be of*, etc.); **ad cognoscendum**, *for inquiry.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, [**con-ago**], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, assemble, get together.* Hence, *force, compel, oblige:* **coactus**, *by compulsion.*

cohors, -hortis, [**con-†hortis** (reduced), akin to **hortus**, *garden*] F., *an enclosure.* Hence, *a body of troops, a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [**con-hortatio** (cf. **cohortor**)], F., *an encouraging, encouragement.* — Esp. (to soldiers), *an address* (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, [**con-hortor**], 1. v. dep., *encourage, rally, address* (esp. of a commander): **cohortati inter se**, *encouraging, urging one another.*

coll- (except collis), see **conl-.**

collis, -is, [?], M., *a hill.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, [?], 3. v. a., *till, cultivate.* — Fig., *attend upon, court, cultivate* (as a friend), *pay court to, worship* (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae, [**colonŏ-** (cf. **colo**) + **ia**], F., (*state of a colonist*). — Concretely, *a colony* (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

color, -ōris, [prob. akin to **cāligo**, as opp. to *white*], M., *color.*

com- (**con-**, **co-**) [the same as **cum**], adv. in comp., *with, together, up.* Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [**con-†buro** (?), relation to **uro** very uncertain, cf. **bustum**, *funeral pyre*], 3. v. a., *burn up, consume.*

comes, -itis, [**con-†mitis** (MA in **meo**, *go*) + **tis**], C., *a companion* (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower).

cōminus [formed by some false analogy from **con manus**], adv., *hand to hand* (cf. **ēminus**, *at a distance*), *in close combat, at short range.*

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **comitor.**

comitium, -ī, [?, perh. **comit-** (see **comes**) + **ium**, *the assemblage of followers* (cf. **servitium**)], N., a part of the Forum at Rome. — Plur., *an election* (assembly of the people for voting).

comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [**comit-,** *companion*], 1. v. dep., *accompany.* — **comitātus,** -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *accompanying.*

commeātus, -tūs, [**con-meatus,** cf. **commeo,** *go to and fro*], M., *a going to and fro, an expedition* (back and forth), *a trip.* Hence, *communications* (of an army). — So also, *supplies* (of an army), *provisions.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-memoro,** *call to mind*], 1. v. a., *remind one of.* Hence, *speak of, mention, state* (in a narrative).

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-mando,** *commit*], 1. v. a., *intrust, commend, recommend, surrender.*

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**con-meo**], 1. v. n., *go back and forth.* — With **ad,** *visit, resort to.*

commīlitō, -ōnis, [**con-mīlit-** (*soldier*) + o], M., *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

comminus, see **cominus.**

commissūra, -ae, [**con-†missura** (cf. **committo**)], F., *a joint, a seam.*

commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **committo.**

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, missus, [**con-mitto**], 3. v. a., (*let go* (send) *together* or *altogether*). Hence, *join, unite, attach:* **proelium** (*engage, begin the engagement*). — Also, *trust:* **se barbaris committere** (*put one's self in the hands of,* etc.); **nihil his committere** (*place no confidence in,* etc.). — Also, *admit, allow* (to happen), *commit* (suffer to be done, cf. **admitto**), *perpetrate:* **neque commissum a se,** *nothing had been done by them;* **committere ut posset,** *leave it possible;* **nihil committebant,** *did nothing.*

Commius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Atrebates.

commodē [old case-form of **commodus**], adv., *advantageously, conveniently, fitly, readily, to advantage:* **satis commode,** *to much advantage;* **non satis commode,** *not very easily.*

commodum, see **commodus.**

commodus, -a, -um, [**con-modus,** *measure,* adj., (*having the same measure with*), *fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous:* **commodissimum est,** *it is the best thing, most advantageous.* — Neut. as noun, *convenience, comfort, advantage, interest:* **commodo rei publicae,** *without prejudice to the public interests;* **omnibus in vita commodis,** *all the blessings of life;* **rei familiaris commodum,** *the interests of one's property;* **quas sui quisque commodi fecerat** (*for his own convenience*).

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [unc. case-form (of st. akin to **moneo,** *warn*) **-facio**], 3. v. a., *remind.*

commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **commoror.**

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, [**con-moror**], 1. v. dep., *delay, stay, linger.*

commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **commoveo.**

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [**con-moveo**], 2. v. a., *move, stir, agitate.* — With reflex., or in pass., *be moved, move* (intrans.), *stir.* — Fig., *disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, influence* (with idea of violent feeling).

commūnicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **communico.**

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**communicō-** (st. of †**communicus, communi-** + **cus**)], 1. v. a., (*make common*), *share, communicate, consult* (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), *add* (a thing to another), *put in along with* (something else).

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [**con-munio**], 4. v. a., *strongly fortify, fortify, intrench, build* (make by fortification).

commūnis, -e, [**con-** + **munis** (cf. **munia**, *duties*)], adj., (*having shares together*), *common, general, in common:* **ex communi consensu**, *by general agreement;* **consilium** (*general plan, concerted action*); **res** (*the common interest*).

commūtātiō, -ōnis, [**con-mutatio** (cf. **commuto**)], F., *change:* **aestus** (*turn*).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **commuto.**

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-muto**], 1. v. a., *change, exchange:* **studium belli agricultura** (*exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture*).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of 1 **comparo.**

1. **comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-paro**], 1. v. a., *get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for* (with a different view of the object in English): **omnibus rebus comparatis**, *having made all arrangements.*

2. **comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-paro**], 1. v. a., (*pair together*), *compare.*

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [**con-pello**], 3. v. a., *drive together* (or *altogether*), *drive in, force, drive.*

compendium, -ī, [**com** + **pendium**], N., (*a weighing in*, cf. **expendo**, *weigh out*), *a saving, profit.*

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, [**con-pario**], 4. v. a., (*get together*), *find out* (by inquiry), *ascertain, discover.* — **compertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *certain* (cf. **exploratus**).

compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **comperio.**

complector, -plectī, -plexus, [**con-plecto**, *fold*], 3. v. dep., *embrace, include, enclose.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [**con-pleo**], 2. v. a., *fill up, fill.* — With a different conception of the action from Eng., *cover, man* (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of **complector.**

complūrēs, -plūra (-ia), [**con-plus**], adj. plur., *very many, a great many, a great number of.*

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-porto**], 1. v. a., *bring together, collect.*

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [**con-prehendo**], 3. v. a., *seize, catch, arrest, capture, grasp* (one by the hand or clothing). — Fig., *take, catch* (of fire).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **comprehendo.**

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-probo**], 1. v. a., *prove, approve:* **consilium fortuna** (*justify*).

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **compello.**

cōnātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **conor** as pass.], N., *an attempt, an undertaking.*

cōnātus, -tūs, [**conā-** (st. of **conor**) + **tus**], M., *an attempt, an effort.*

cōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conor.**

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [**con-cedo**], 3. v. a. and n., (*give up a thing to one*), *allow, grant, assign* (leave, where the rest is taken away), *permit, yield the palm* (to a superior), *yield, make a concession.*

concertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**con-certo**], I. v. n., *contend.*

concessus, -sūs, [**con-†cessus** (cf. **concedo**)], M., *a concession, a permission.*

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [**con-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall down, fall.*

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**con-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut to pieces, cut down* (kill), *cut up* (land by estuaries).

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**conciliŏ-**, *assembly*], I. v. a., *bring together.* Hence, *win over, secure* (even by force), *win, gain.*

concilium, -ī, [**con-†cilium** (CAL (*call*) + **ium**, cf. **Kalendae**)], N., *a meeting.* — Esp., *an assembly* (of war or state), *a council, a conference:* **per concilium,** *in council.*

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concīdo.**

concitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concito.**

concitō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [**con-cito,** freq. of **cieo,** *stir*], I. v. a., *arouse, stir up, call out* (and so set in motion).

conclāmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conclamo.**

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-clamo,** *cry out*], I. v. n., *cry out, shout:* **victoriam** (cogn. acc.), *shout victory.*

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**con-claudo**], 3. v. a., *shut up, enclose:* **mare conclusum** (*enclosed, inland*).

conclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concludo.**

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Carnutes.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitūrus, [**con-crepo**], I. v. n., *rattle, clash:* **armis** (*clash their arms,* of soldiers).

concurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), cursus, [**con-curro**], 3. v. n., *run together, rush up, rush in, rush* (advance), *flock to, hasten in:* **concursum est,** *there was a rush.*

concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**con-curso,** freq. of **curro,** *run*], I. v. n., *rush to and fro:* **concursari iubet,** *orders a noise of running to and fro to be made.*

concursus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concurro.**

concursus, -sūs, [**con-cursus** (cf. **concurro**)], M., *a rushing to and fro, a dashing together* (collision). — Esp., *a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.*

condemnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **condemno.**

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-damno,** *condemn*], I. v. a., *condemn, find guilty.*

condiciō, -ōnis, [**con-**DIC, *say* (cf.

condīco, *agree*)], F., *terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms* (of fighting), *state* (of slavery): **ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi,** *to fight on unequal terms.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [**con-dono**], I. v. a., *give up, pardon for the sake of.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**con-duco,** *lead*], 3. v. a., *bring together, bring up* (soldiers), *hire:* **manus conducta,** *a band of mercenaries.*

cōnfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conficio.**

cōnferciō, -fercīre, -fersī, -fertus, [**con-farcio**], 4. v. a., *crowd together.* — **cōnfertus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**con-fero**], irr. v. a., *bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect.* — With or without **culpam,** *lay the blame on, charge.* — With reflexive, *betake one's self, remove, take refuge.* — So with other words, **fortunas,** (*remove, transfer*). — Also, *postpone, delay.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **confercio.**

cōnfestim [acc. of †**con-festis** (cf. **festino,** *hasten*)], adv., *in haste, immediately, at once.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**con-facio**], 3. v. a., (*do up*), *accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform.* — Also, *make up, write up* (of a document), *work up, dress* (of skins). — Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), *finish up, exhaust, wear out:* **nondum confecta hieme,** *when the winter was not yet spent, before the end of,* etc. — See also **confio.**

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [**con-fido,** *trust*], 3. v. n., (*trust fully*), *be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured.* — **cōnfīsus,** -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, *trusting in.*

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**con-figo,** *fix*], 3. v. a., *fasten together, fasten.*

cōnfīnis, -e, [**con-finis**], adj., *having boundaries together, adjacent:* **confines Senonibus,** *neighbors of the Senones.*

cōnfīnium, -ī, [**confini- + ium**], N., *neighborhood, confines, common boundaries.*

cōnfīō, -fierī, -fectus, [**con-fio**], irr. v. n. (used rarely as pass. of **conficio**), *be accomplished,* etc. (see **conficio**).

cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis, [**con-firmatio,** cf. **confirmo**], F., (*positive*) *assurance, confirmation.*

cōnfīrmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **confirmo.**

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-firmo,** *make firm*], I. v. a., *strengthen.* — Fig., *strengthen, establish* (**pacem**), *reassure, encourage, confirm, assure* (by oath): **se** (*resolve*). Hence (of things and statements), *confirm, declare.*

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **confido.**

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [**con-**

fateor, *confess*], 2. v. dep., *confess, acknowledge, admit.*

cōnfīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of **configo.**

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-flagro,** *blaze*], 1. v. n., *be on fire, burn.*

cōnflīctātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conflicto.**

cōnflīctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-†flicto,** cf. **confligo**], 1. v. a., *dash against* (one thing against another), *assail, harass.*

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, [**con-fligo,** *strike*], 3. v. a. and n., *dash against, contend, fight.*

cōnfluēns, -entis, [pres. p. of **confluo**], M., *a meeting of two rivers, confluence.*

cōnfluō, -ere, -fluxī, no p. p. [**con-fluo**], 3. v. n., *flow together.* — Less exactly (of persons), *flock together.*

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [**con-fugio**], 3. v. n., *flee, take refuge.*

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [**con-fundo**], 3. v. a., *pour together.* — Less exactly, *mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine.*

congredior, -gredī, -gressus, [**con-gradior,** *step*], 3. v. dep., *come together.* — In peace, *unite with.* — Esp. in war, *come in contact with, engage, fight.*

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **congredior.**

congressus, -sūs, [**con-gressus,** cf. **congredior**], M., *an engagement, encounter.*

coniciō (-iicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**con-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw together, hurl, cast, discharge:* **se conicere,** *throw one's self, rush.* — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), *throw* (into prison), *put* (to flight), *place, station* (cf. military *throw* troops into, etc.), *force.* — Fig., *put together* (of ideas).

coniectūra, -ae, [**con-iactura,** cf. **conicio**], F., *a guess* ("putting two and two together"), *a conjecture:* **coniecturam capere,** *form a conjecture, infer.*

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conicio.**

coniūnctim [acc. of **†coniunctis** (**iung** (as root) + **tis,** cf. **coniungo**)], adv., *unitedly, in common, altogether.*

coniūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coniungo.**

coniungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [**con-iungo,** *join*], 3. v. a., *unite, connect, fasten together.* — In pass., or with reflexive, *unite* (neut.), *connect one's self, join.* — **coniūnctus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *united, closely connected.*

coniūnx, -iugis, [**con-†iux** (IUG, *yoke*, as st., with intrusive **n** from **iungo**)], C., *a spouse.* — Esp., F., *a wife.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, [**con-iuratio,** cf. **coniuro**], F., *conspiracy, a confederacy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-iuro**], 1. v. n., *swear together, take an oath* (together), *swear mutual oaths.* Hence, *conspire, plot.*

conlātus (**coll-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **confero.**

conlaudātus (**coll-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **conlaudo.**

conlaudō (**coll-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus,

[**con–laudo**], I. v. a., *praise* (in set terms).

conlēctus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of **conligo.**

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [**con-lego**], 3. v. a., *gather together*, *gather*, *collect*, *acquire* (by accumulation). — With reflexive, *collect one's self*, *recover*.

conligō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-ligo**], I. v. a., *bind together*, *fasten together:* **scuta** (*lock together*).

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of **conloco.**

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-loco**, *place*], I. v. a., *place*, *set*, *station* (of troops, etc.): **angustius milites** (*stow*, in a vessel). — Esp. (with or without **nuptum**), *give in marriage*, *marry* (of a father or guardian). — Fig., *settle:* **rebus conlocandis**, *making dispositions*.

conloquium (coll-), -ī, [**con-†loquium**, cf. **conloquor**], N., *a conference*, *an interview*, *a parley*.

conloquor (coll-), -loquī, -locūtus, [**con-loquor**], 3. v. dep., (*talk together*), *confer*, *hold an interview* (or *parley*), *parley*, *converse*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, [? **con-**, st. akin to **onus**, *burden*], I. v. dep., *attempt*, *try*, *endeavor:* **idem conari**, *make the same attempt*.

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētūrus, [**con-quiesco**, *rest*], 3. v. n., *rest*, *repose*.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [**con-quaero**, *seek*], 3. v. a., *search for*, *seek for*, *hunt up*.

conquīsītus, p. p. of **conquiro.**

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [**con-sanguin-** (*blood*) + **eus**], adj., *akin* (by blood). — As noun, *a kinsman*.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [**con-scando**, *climb*], 3. v. a., *climb*, *climb upon:* **navis** (**in navis**) (*go on board*); **vallum** (*man*, *mount*).

cōnscientia, -ae, [**con-scientia**, cf. **conscius**], F., *consciousness*, *privity*, *conscience*, *knowledge*.

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [**con-scisco**, *decree*], 3. v. a., *resolve*. Less exactly, with dat. of reflex., *take to one's self:* **mortem** (*commit suicide*).

cōnscius, -a, -um, [**con-†scius**, SCI (in **scio**, *know*) + **us**], adj., *knowing* (with one's self or another), *conscious*, *aware of*.

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [**con-scribo**], 3. v. a., *write down*. — Esp., *enrol*, *conscribe*, *levy*, *enlist*.

conscrīptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conscribo.**

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consecro.**

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-sacro**, *make sacred*], I. v. a., *hallow*, *consecrate*. — **cōnsecrātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *consecrated*, *sacred*.

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus, [**con-sector**, freq. of **consequor**], I. v. dep., *overtake*, *follow up*.

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, [**con-†sensio**, cf. **consentio**], F., *agreement*, *unanimity*.

cōnsēnsus, -sūs, [**con-sensus**, cf. **consentio**], M., *agreement*, *consent*, *harmonious* (or *concerted*) *action*.

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēn-

sūrus, [**con-sentio,** *feel*], 4. v. n., *agree, conspire, make common cause, act with* (some one).

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [**con-sequor**], 3. v. dep., *follow* (and stay with), *overtake.* Hence, *obtain, secure, attain, succeed in* (some purpose). — Also, *follow close upon, succeed, ensue.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [**con-servo,** *save*], 1. v. a., *save, preserve, spare.* — Also, *observe* (law, right), *regard.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, [**con-†sidius** (akin to **sedeo,** *sit*)], a Roman name. — Esp., *Publius,* a Roman soldier.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [**con-sido**], 3. v. n., *sit down* (in a place). — Less exactly, *take a position, halt, encamp, settle.*

cōnsilium, -ī, [**con-†silium** (cf. **consul,** akin to **salio,** in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., *deliberation, a council* (of war, more commonly **concilium**). — Esp., *wise counsel, prudence, discretion.* Hence, *a plan, counsel, design, purpose.* — And so (design carried out), *course, measure, conduct.* — Phrases: **ipsorum esse consilium** (*a matter for them to decide*); **quasi consili sit res,** *as if it were a matter for consultation;* **commune consilium,** *concerted action;* **publicum consilium,** *action of the state, official action;* **barbaris consilium non defuit** (*an intelligent plan of action*).

cōnsimilis, -e, [**con-similis**], adj., *very like, just like.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**con-sisto,** *place* (*one's self*)], 3. v. n., *take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form* (of troops). — In perf. tenses, *have a position, stand.* Hence, *stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground* (of ships), *remain, stay.* — With **in,** *occupy, rest on.* — Fig., *depend on, rest on.*

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, [**con-sobrinus,** cf. **soror,** *sister*], M., *first cousin* (on the mother's side). — Less exactly, (any) *cousin german.*

cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consolor.**

cōnsōlor, -ārī, ātus, [**con-solor,** *comfort*], 1. v. dep., *console, cheer.* — **cōnsōlātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as pres., *consoling.*

cōnspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conspicio.**

cōnspectus, -tūs, [**con-spectus,** cf. **conspicio**], M., *sight.* — **in conspectu,** *in one's presence;* **in conspectum proferre** (*display*).

cōnspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conspicor.**

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [**con-specio,** *look at*], 3. v. a., *catch sight of, espy, see.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, ātus, [**†conspic-,** cf. SPEC, *see*], 1. v. dep., *catch sight of, espy, see.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-spiro,** *breathe*], 1. v. n., *sound together.* — Fig., *harmonize, agree.* — Also, *conspire, league together.*

cōnstanter, [**constant-** (*standing firm*) + **ter**], adv., *consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.*

cōnstantia, -ae, [**constant-** (*stand-*

ing firm) + ia], F., *firmness, constancy, undaunted courage.*

cōnsternātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consterno.**

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-†sternō (cf. **sternax,** *prostrating*)], 1. v. a., *overwhelm.* — Fig., *dismay, alarm.* — **cōnsternātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *stricken with fear.*

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, strātus, [**con-sterno**], 3. v. a., *strew over* (both of the thing thrown and that over which): **navis constrata** (*decked, full decked,* as opposed to ships only covered at the ends).

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-stipo,** *press*], 1. v. a., *crowd, cram.* — In pass. or with reflexive, *crowd together.*

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [**con-statuo**], 3. v. a. and n., *set up, raise, put together, make up.* Hence, *establish, station, arrange, draw up* (**aciem**). — Fig., *determine, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon:* **praemia** (*offer*).

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [**con-sto**], 1. v. n., *stand together.* — Fig., *agree* (esp. of accounts): **numerus** (*be complete*). Hence, *be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident.* (Esp. **constat,** *it appears,* etc.) — Also (from accounts), *cost.* — Also (with **in**), *depend upon.*

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consterno.**

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [**con-suesco**], 3. v. n., *become accustomed.* — In perf. tenses, *be accustomed, be wont.* — **cōnsuētus**, -a, -um, p. p., *accustomed, wont, used.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [**con-†suetudo** (prob. **†suetu- + do**), cf. **consuesco**], F., *habit, custom, habits* (collectively), *manners, customs, practice:* **victus** (*customary mode of living*); **itineris** (*usual manner of marching*).

cōnsuētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consuesco.**

cōnsul, -ulis, [**con-sul** (cf. **praesul, exsul**), root of **salio** in some earlier unc. meaning], M., *a consul* (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. **consilium**). — With proper names in abl., the usual way of indicating dates: **M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus,** *in the consulship of,* etc.; **se consule,** *in his consulship,* as a date or occasion.

cōnsulātus, -tūs, [**†consulā-** (cf. **consul**) + **tus**], M., *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultus, [prob. **consul,** though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., *deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide.* — With acc., *consult, take the advice of.* — With dat., *take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to:* **vitae** (*spare*). — Phrase: **sortibus consultum (est),** *lots were drawn to decide.*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**consultŏ-,** *decision*], 1. v. n., *consult:* **de bello** (*take measures for*).

cōnsultō, [prob. like abl. abs. used impersonally], adv., *with deliberation, purposely, designedly.*

cōnsultum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **consulo**], N., *a decision, an order, a decree.* — Esp., **senatus consultum,** *an order of the senate.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, [**con-sumo**], 3. v. a., (*take out of the general store*). Hence, *waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.*

cōnsūmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consumo.**

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus, [**con-surgo**, *rise*]. 3. v. n., *rise, rise up.* — Esp. of a session, *break up.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**contabulo**, cf. **tabula**, *board*], 1. v. a., *build up* (with floors in stories), *floor with planks.* — Also, *build up* (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contāgiō, -ōnis, [**con-†tagio**, fr. TAG in **tango**, *touch*, cf. **contingo**], F., *contact.* — Esp. with something noxious, implying *contagion.*

contāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **contamino.**

contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**contamin-** (st. of **con-tāmen**, i.e. TAG (*touch*) + **men**)], 1. v. a., *bring into contact, unite.* — Esp. with notion of contagion (cf. **contagio**), *contaminate:* **facinore contaminatus** (*implicated in*).

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [**con-tego**], 3. v. a., *cover up, cover.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus, [**con-temno**, *slight*], 3. v. a., *despise, disregard, hold in contempt.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, [**con-†temptio**, cf. **contemno**], F., *contempt, scorn:* **in contemptionem venire**, *incur the contempt*, etc.

contemptus, -tūs, [**con-†temptus**, cf. **contemno**], M., *contempt, scorn:* **contemptui est**, *is a matter of ridicule.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [**con-tendo**, *stretch*], 3. v. n., *strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self, attempt, be zealous:* **id contendere et laborare**, *strive and exert one's self for*, etc. — Esp. with verbs of motion, *press on, hasten.* — Also, *fight, contend, wage war.* — With **ad** and **in** like constructions, *hasten, march, start to go* (in haste): **vi contendere**, *to force a passage;* **petere contendit**, *seek earnestly.*

contentiō, -ōnis, [**con-†tentio**, cf. **contendo**], F., *struggle, efforts.*—Esp., *contest, fighting, dispute.*

contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **contendo** and **contineo.**

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [**con-texo**], 3. v. a., *interweave, weave together.* — Also, *weave* (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of **contexo.**

continēns, -entis, pres. p. of **contineo**, wh. see.

continenter [**continent-** (*holding together*) + **ter**], adv., *continually, without stopping, continuously, incessantly.*

continentia, -ae, [**continent-** (*holding together*) + **ia**], F., *self-restraint, moderation.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**con-teneo**], 2. v. a., *hold together, hold in.* Hence, in many fig. meanings, *restrain, hold in check, keep* (within bounds), *hem in, retain* (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., *keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in* (be contained in). — Also, *hold on to, join.* — **con-**

tinēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (*holding together*), *continual, contiguous, continuous.* — Also, *restraining one's self, continent.* — As noun, *the continuous land, the continent.*—**contentus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *satisfied, content.*

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [**con-tango,** *touch*], 3. v. a. and n., *touch, reach, join.* — With dat., *happen.*

continuātiō, -ōnis, [**continuā-** (cf. **continuō**) + **tio**], F., *continuation:* **continuatio imbrium,** *incessant rains.*

continuō [abl. of **continuus**], adv., *immediately, straightway, forthwith.*

continuus, -a, -um, [**con-†tenuus** (TEN in **teneo** (*hold*) + **uus**)], adj., *continuous, successive:* **dies** (*successive*).

contiō, -ōnis, [prob. for **conventio**], F., *an assembly.* — Less exactly, *an address, a harangue* (to an assembly or to soldiers).

contiōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **contionor.**

contiōnor, -ārī, ātus, [**contion-,** *address*], 1. v. dep., *harangue, address* (an assembly or an army).

contrā [unc. case-form (instr.?) of **†conterus** (**con-** + **terus,** comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., *opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand:* **contrā atque,** *contrary to what,* etc.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**con-traho**], 3. v. a., *draw together, draw in, bring together, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass.*

contrārius, -a, -um, [**†conterŏ-** (see **contra**) + **arius**], adj., *opposite* (lit. and fig.), *contrary:* **ex contrario,** *on the contrary;* **in contrariam partem,** *in the opposite direction.*

contrōversia, -ae, [**controversŏ-** (*opposite*) + **ia**], F., *a dispute, a quarrel.* — Plur., *grounds of quarrel.*

contumēlia, -ae, [unc. form., akin to **contumax** and **tumeo,** *swell*], F., (*swelling pride?*), *an outrage, an insult, an affront.* — Fig., *violence* (of waves), *buffeting.*

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no p. p., [**con-†valesco,** cf. **valeo,** *be well*], 3. v. n., *recover, get well.*

convallis, -is, [**con-vallis**], F., *a valley* (enclosed on all sides). — Less exactly, *a defile, a valley* (of any kind).

convēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conveho.**

convehō, -vehere, vēxī, vectus, [**con-veho**], 3. v. a., *bring together, bring in, collect.*

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [**con-venio**], 4. v. a. and n., *come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree.* — With acc., *meet, come to.* — Also, of things, *be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary* (in a loose sense in Eng.).

conventus, -tūs, [**con-†ventus** (cf. **convenio** and **adventus**)], M., *an assembly, a meeting.* — Esp., *an assize, court* (the regular assembly of Roman citizens in a provincial town on stated occasions, at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **converto.**

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [**con-verto**], 3. v. a., *turn about, turn*

— Fig., *change:* **signa** (*change front, wheel*); **conversa signa bipartito intulerunt,** *wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions;* **conversa signa in hostes inferre,** *face about and charge,* etc.; **in fugam conversa,** *put to flight;* **conversam** [**materiam**] **ad hostem collocabat,** *placed* [*fallen trees*] *with their tops towards the enemy;* **contra vim fluminis,** *against the current;* **itinere converso,** *altering his course;* **mentes conversae sunt,** *their state of mind was changed.*

Convictolitavis, -is, [Celtic], M., a young Hæduan nobleman.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **convinco.**

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [**con-vinco,** *conquer*], 3. v. a., *prove, make good* (a charge, etc.): **avaritia convicta,** *found guilty of avarice* (changing the point of view for the Eng. idiom).

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**con-voco**], 1. v. a., *call together, summon, call* (a council).

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus, [**con-orior,** *rise*], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., *arise, spring up, break out* (of a war).

coörtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coorior.**

cōpia, -ae, [†**cōpi-** (**con-ops,** *aid*) + **ia,** cf. **inopia, inops**], F., *abundance, plenty, supply* (both great and small), *quantity, number.* — Esp., *luxury* (abundance of everything). — Plur. (esp. of forces), *forces, resources, supplies.* — Phrases: **copiam facere,** *afford a supply, give an opportunity;* **magna copia locorum** (*choice*); **copia atque usus,** *necessary supplies.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [**copia** (reduced) + **osus**], adj., (*abounding in wealth*), *well supplied, wealthy.*

cōpula, -ae, [**con-**†**apula** (from AP, *lay hold of*)], F., (*holding together*), *a grappling-hook.*

cor, cordis, [root as st. (akin to Eng. *heart*)], N., *the heart.* — Phrase: **cordi esse,** *be dear.*

cōram [unc. case, formed from **con** and **os,** *face*], adv. and prep. with abl., *face to face, present, in person.*

Coriosolites, -tum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aremoric Gaul.

corium, -ī, [?], N., *a hide, a skin.*

cornū, -ūs, [?], N., *a horn.* — Fig., *a wing* (of an army).

corōna, -ae, [?], F., *a garland.* — Fig., *a circle* (*line,* of soldiers). — Phrase: **sub corona,** *at auction* (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -oris, [unc. root + **us**], N., *the body, the person.* — Also, *a body* (dead). — Less exactly, *extent* (of a camp). — Phrase: **magnitudo corporis,** *size, stature.*

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**con-rumpo,** *break*], 3. v. a., *spoil, ruin.*

cortex, -icis, [?], M. (also F.), *bark.*

Cōrus (**Caurus**), -ī, [?], M., *the northwest wind.*

cōtēs, -is, (**cau-**) [akin to **cos,** *whetstone*], F., *a rock* (sharp or jagged), *a reef.*

cotīdiānus (**quo-**), -a, -um, [**cotidie** + **anus**], adj., *daily:* **cotidiano labore.**

cotīdiē (**quo-**), [**quot** (*how many*)

-die, loc. of dies], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* a legatus of Cæsar.

Cotuātus, -ī, [?], M., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a young Hæduan nobleman.

crassitūdō, -inis, [crassŏ- + tudo (as if crassitu- + do)], F., *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, [crassus, *fat*], M., a Roman family name.— Esp.: 1. *Marcus (Licinius) Crassus,* consul with Pompey, B.C. 55; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. *Publius Crassus* (called Adulescens, *the Younger,* only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. *Marcus Crassus,* another son of the Triumvir, quæstor, B.C. 54, in Cæsar's army.

crātēs, -is, [?], F., *a hurdle, a fascine* (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, *wicker* (for hurdles).

creātus, -a, -um, p. p. of creo.

crēber, -bra, -brum, [crē- (in creo, *bring forth*) + ber], adj., *thick, close, numerous, frequent:* arbores (*thickly growing*); praesidia (*continuous, not far apart, at short intervals*).

crēbrō, [prob. abl. of creber], adv., *frequently, constantly, in rapid succession, at short intervals.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, [†cred-, *faith* (of unc. formation) + do, *place*], 3. v. a. and n., *trust, entrust, believe, suppose.*

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a., *burn, consume:* igni cremari, *be burned alive, be burned to death.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [unc. form., akin to cresco], 1. v. a., (*cause to grow*), *create.* — Esp., *elect, choose, appoint.*

Crēs, Crētis, [Gr.], M., *a Cretan.* — As adj., *Cretan.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, [st. crē- (also in creo, *bring forth*) with -sco], 3. v. n., *grow, increase, swell* (of a river), *be swelled, increase in influence* (of a man), *grow great, grow powerful.*

Critōgnātus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, -tūs, [cruciā- (st. of crucio, *torture*) + tus], M., *crucifying.* Hence, *torture.* — With a change of relation, *suffering* (of the person tortured).

crūdēlis, -e, [†crudē- (in crudesco, akin to crudus, *bloody*) + lis, cf. Aprīlis, animālis], adj., (*bloody* ?), *cruel.* — See the following.

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crudeli- + tas], F., *cruelty.*

crūdēliter [crudeli- + ter], adv., *cruelly, with cruelty.*

crūs, crūris, [?], N., *the leg.*

cubīle, -is, [†cubī- (st. akin to cumbo) + lis (cf. crudelis), N. of adj.], N., *a couch, a resting-place, a bed, a lair.*

culmen, -inis, [unc. root (in cello ?, *rise*) + men], N., *a height, a top, a summit, a roof.*

culpa, -ae, [?], F., *a fault, blame, guilt.*

cultūra, -ae, [cultu- (cf. colo, *till*)

+ ra (F., of rus)], F., *cultivation, culture:* **agri cultura,** or **agricultura,** *the cultivation of the soil, agriculture.*

cultus, -tūs, [COL (in **colo,** *till*) + tus], M., *cultivation.* — Esp. of one's self, *care.* Hence, *civilization, manner of life, state of civilization.*

cum [?], prep. with abl., *with.*

cum (quom), [case-form of **qui**], conj., *when, while, whenever.* — Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: **cum non possent,** *not being able;* **cum prohibent,** *while defending.* — Of logical relations (usually with subjv.), *when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although:* **cum . . . tum,** *while . . . so also;* **cum . . . tum maxime,** *not only . . . but especially;* **cum primum,** *as soon as.*

cumulus, -ī, [†cumŏ + lus], M., *a mass, a heap, a pile.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctā- (st. of **cunctor**) + tio], F., *hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. dep., *hesitate, hang back, be reluctant:* **non quin** (*have no hesitation in,* etc.).

cūnctus, -a, -um, [for **coniūnctus** ?], adj., *all, all together.*

cuneātim [cuneŏ-, *wedge* (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of †cuneatis], adv., *in the shape of a wedge.* — Esp. of soldiers, *in* (a peculiar wedge-shaped) *column of attack.*

cuneus, -ī, [akin to **conus,** *cone*], M., *a wedge.*

cunīculus, -ī, [Gr.], M., (*a cony*). — Transf., *a burrow.* Hence, *a mine* (esp. in a military sense).

cupidē [old case-form of **cupidus**], adv., *eagerly, zealously, earnestly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidŏ- + tas], F., *desire, eagerness, greed:* **cupiditate adductus,** *through over zeal.*

cupidus, -a, -um, [noun st. akin to **cupio** + dus], adj., *eager, desirous, longing* (*for*), *fond of, ambitious* (*for*), *with a passion* (*for*).

cupiō, -pere, -pīvī, -pītus, [partly root verb, partly from †cupi- (cf. **cupidus**)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., *be eager* (*for*), *be anxious, desire,* (stronger than **volo**). — With dat., *wish well to, be zealous for.* — Phrase: **cupientibus signum dat,** *gives the signal to his impatient soldiers.*

cūr (quōr), [perh. for **qua re**], adv., *why* (rel. and interr.).

cūra, -ae, [akin to **caveo,** *beware*], F., *care, anxiety, attention:* **curae alicui esse,** *be one's care, object of one's attention.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**cura**], 1. v. a. and n., *take care, provide for.* — With gerundive, *cause* (to be done), *have* (done).

currus, -ūs, [CUR (?) + us, cf. **curro,** *run*], M., *a chariot* (= **essedum**).

cursus, -sūs, [CUR (?) + tus, cf. **curro,** *run*], M., *a running, running, speed, a run* (in concrete sense), *a course* (space or direction run): **cursum adaequare** (*keep up with*); **cursu incitato** or **magno,** *at full speed;* **eodem cursu,** *with the same impetus, without stopping;* **in hoc medio cursu,** *midway of this passage,* from Britain to Ireland.

custōdia, -ae, [custod- (*guard*) + ia], F., *custody, guard* (state of being guarded). — Plur. (concretely), *guards, keepers.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**custod-**, *guard*, as if **custodi-**], 4. v. a., *keep under guard, guard.*

custōs, -tōdis, [unc. st. + **dis** (cf. **merces**, **-ēdis**, **palus**, **-ūdis**)], C., *a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy.*

D

D, [half of CIↃ = M], 500.

D., for **Decimus**.

Dācus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *Dacian* (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Gallicia, Wallachia, etc.). — Plur., *the Dacians.*

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **damno**.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**damnŏ-**, *loss*], 1. v. a., (*fine*), *find guilty, condemn.*

damnum, -ī, [?, DA (*give*) + **menus** (cf. **alumnus**)], N., (*fine*), *loss.*

Dānuvius (**-bius**), -ī, [?], M., *the Danube*, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of **do**.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in **idem**, **dum**)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., *down from, off from, from, away from.* Hence, **qua de causa**, *for which reason;* **de populo mereor** (*deserve well* or *ill of*, properly *win from*); **de consilio** (*by*, cf. **ex**). — Esp. in partitive sense, *out of, of:* **pauci de nostris**. — Also (cf. Eng. *of*), *about, of* (about), *in regard to, concerning, for:* **de regno desperare**; **nihil de bello timere**, *have no fear of war;* **de potentatu contendere**; **de iniuriis satisfacere**. — In expressions of time, *just after, about:* **de tertia vigilia**. — Often with verbs of sense which may take acc.: **sentio de**, *learn, discover.* — Phrases: **de improviso**, *of a sudden, unexpectedly.* — In comp., *down, off, away, through* (cf. **debeo**, **decerto**).

dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitus, [**de-habeo**], 2. v. a., (*have off of one's possessions*), *owe, be bound, ought, must, cannot help:* **iudicari debere** (*might well be*, etc.). — Pass., *be due, be owing.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**de-cedo**], 3. v. n., (*make way off*, cf. **cedo**), *retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun.* — Esp. (from life), *die.*

decem, [?], indecl. num. adj., *ten.*

dēceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **decipio**.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [**de-cerno**], 3. v. a. and n., (*decide off*, so as to clear away), *decide, determine, decree, order* (as a result of determination).

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-certo**, *fight*], 1. v. a. and n., *contend* (so as to close the contest, cf. "*fight it out*"), *decide the issue, try the issue* (of war), *carry on war, fight* (a general engagement): *risk a decisive battle* (with or without **pugna**).

dēcessus, -sūs, [**de-†cessus**, cf. **decedo** and **incessus**], M., *withdrawal, departure:* **aestus** (*ebb, fall*).

Decetia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, on the Loire, *Decise.*

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p., [de-cado], 3. v. n., *fall off* (or down), *fall* (from one's horse).

decimus, -a, -um, [†deci- (as st. of **decem**) + **mus**], adj., *tenth.* — Masc. as noun, a Roman prænomen (see **Brutus**).

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**de-capio**], 3. v. a., (*take off, catch*), *beguile, deceive.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-claro**], 1. v. a., (*clear off*), *make plain, declare* (decide and state).

dēclīvis, -e, [**de-clivis** (or **clivus**, *slope*)], adj., *sloping down, inclined.* — Plur. as noun, *slopes.*

dēclīvitās, -tātis, [**declivi-** + **tas**], F., *slope:* **ad declivitatem,** *downward.*

dēcrētum, -ī, [prop. N. of **decretus**], N., *a decree, a decision.*

dēcrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **decerno.**

decumānus, -a, -um, [**decumŏ-** (reduced) + **anus**], adj., *belonging to the tenth:* **porta** (*the rear gate*, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).

decuriō, -ōnis, [**decuria-** (reduced) + **o**], M., *a commander* (of a *decuria* of cavalry, a small squadron).

dēcurrō, -currere, -currī (cucurrī), -cursūrus, [**de-curro**], 3. v. n., *run down, run away, hurry off.*

decus, -oris, [unc. root (cf. **decet,** *it becomes*) + **us**], N., *honor, glory.*

dēdecus, -oris, [**de-decus**], N., *disgrace, dishonor.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um, [**deditŏ-** (reduced) + **cius**], adj., *surrendered.* — Plur. as noun, *prisoners* (taken by surrender), *subjects, persons surrendered.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, [**de-datio,** cf. **dedo**], F., *surrender:* **in deditionem accipere,** *receive one's surrender;* **in deditionem venire,** *to surrender.*

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dedo.**

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**de-do**], 3. v. a., *give over, surrender, give up, devote.* — In pass. or with reflex., *surrender one's self, submit.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**de-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead down* or *off, lead away, withdraw, draw off* (**praesidia**), *take away* (of men), *bring away, lead* (from one place to another), *bring* (into a situation). — Fig., *induce, bring, lead.* — Esp. of ships, *launch* (draw down); of women, *marry* (used of the man, cf. **nubo**); of things, *bring, draw, turn.* So, *raise* (a man to fortune). — Also, **rem in periculum** (*cause a perilous situation*); **re in controversiam deducta** (*coming to*, etc.); **deduci milites** (*march out*, led by their commander).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deduco.**

dēfatīgātiō (-fet-), -ōnis, [**de-fatigatio**], F., *exhaustion.*

dēfatīgātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of **defatigo.**

dēfatīgō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-fatigo**], 1. v. a., *wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, [**de-factio,** cf. **deficio,** *fail*], F., *falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [**de-fendo,** *strike*], 3. v. a., *ward off, defend one's self against.* — Also, with changed relation, *defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [**de-†fensio**, cf. **defendo**], F., *a defence.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, [**de-†fensor**, cf. **defendo**], M., *a defender.* — Also, *a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.* — Phrase: **speciem defensorum**, *a show of defence.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**de-fero**], irr. v. a., *carry down, carry away, bring, land* (of ships). — Pass., *be borne down* or *on, drift* (of ships), *turn aside:* **delati in scrobes** (*falling*). — Fig., *confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, report, lay before.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of **defetiscor.**

dēfetīscor, -fetīscī, -fessus, [**de-fatiscor**, *gape*], 3. v. dep., *crack open.* — Fig., *become exhausted.* — **dēfessus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *exhausted:* dēfessus, *an exhausted man.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**de-facio**, *make*], 3. v. a. and n., *fail, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon* (with **ab**): **animo** (*despond*).

dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**de-figo**, *fasten*], 3. v. a., *fix* (in or down), *plant, set, fasten, drive down.*

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**de-finio**, *end*], 4. v. a., *set limits to, fix, appoint.*

dēfīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of **defigo.**

dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, [**de-fluo**], 3. v. n., *flow down, flow apart, divide* (of a river).

dēfore, see **desum.**

dēformis, -e, [**de-forma** (*shape*), weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., *uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad-looking.*

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p., [**de-fugio**], 3. v. a. and n., *fly from, avoid, fly, flee.*

dēiciō (**dēiic-**), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**de-iacio**], 3. v. a., *cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill* (pass., *fall*), *overthrow, throw on shore* (of ships), *deprive, reduce:* **ea spe deiecti**, *disappointed in this hope.*

dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deicio.**

dēiectus, -tūs, [**de-iactus**, cf. **iacio**, *throw*], M., *a declivity, a slope.*

deinceps, [**dein-** (cf. **deinde**) + **ceps**, cf. CAP in **capio**], adv., *in succession.*

deinde (**dein**) [**de-inde**, *thence*], adv., *then, next.*

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **defero.**

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-†lecto**, cf. **delicio**], 1. v. a., *delight.* — Pass., *take delight, delight.*

dēlēctus (**dī-**), -tūs, [**de-lectus**, cf. **deligo**, *select*], M., *a levy, a conscription.*

dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deligo.**

dēleō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētus, [**de-†leo** (akin to **lino**)], 2. v. a., (*smear out*), *blot out, wipe out* (of a disgrace). — Fig., *annihilate, destroy.*

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deleo.**

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-†libero**, perh. akin to **libra**, *balance*], 1. v. a. and n., *discuss, consult, deliberate:* **re deliberata**, *after discussing the matter.*

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**†de-librŏ-**, *bark* (adj. **de-liber**)], 1. v. a., *peel, strip* (of bark).

dēlictum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **delinquo**], N., *thing left undone, failure, offence.*

dēligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deligo** (-āre).

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [**de-lego**], 3. v. a., *choose out, select.* — **dēlēctus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *chosen, picked.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-ligo,** *bind*], 1. v. a., *tie down, moor, tie.*

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no p. p., [**de-latesco,** cf. **lateo,** *hide*], 3. v. n., *hide away, hide, skulk, lurk.*

dēmentia, -ae, [**dement- + ia**], F., *madness, folly.*

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of **demeto.**

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, [**de-meto,** *reap*], 3. v. a., *reap, cut down.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**de-migro,** *depart*], 1. v. n., *move away* (change residence), *move one's effects, emigrate.*

dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [**de-minuo,** cf. **minus**], 3. v. a. and n., *diminish, curtail, lessen, detract:* **de voluptate quicquam** (*make any diminution of*): **quid de legibus** (*disregard in any manner*); **de sua benevolentia** (*lessen his good-will*).

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deminuo.**

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**de-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go down* (cf. **mitto**), *let down, stick down* (at the bottom of a ditch). — In pass. or with reflex., *let one's self down, descend, set one's self down.* — Fig., *despond* (**se animo**), *be discouraged.* — **dēmissus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *low-hanging, bowed* (of the head).

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, [**de-emo,** *take*], 3. v. a., *take down, take off, remove, take away.*

dēmōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **demonstro.**

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**demonstro,** *show*], 1. v. a., *point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known.*

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, [**de-moror**], 1. v. dep., *delay, retard.*

dēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **demo.**

dēmum [acc. of †**dēmus** (superl. of **de**), *nethermost, last*], adv., *at last, at length* (not before).

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-nego**], 1. v. a. and n., *deny, refuse, say not.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, [for **decnī, decem** reduced + **nus**], distrib. num. adj. plur., *ten each, ten* (on each side), *ten* (in sets of ten).

dēnique [†**denŏ-** (**de + nus,** cf. **demum**) **que**], adv., *at last:* **multo denique die,** *not till late,* etc. — Of order, *finally, in a word, in short.* — Of preference, *at any rate* (if no better, etc.).

dēnsus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *thick, crowded, dense.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-nuntio**], 1. v. a., *announce* (with notion of threat), *threaten, declare, warn, order.*

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [**de-pello**], 3. v. a., *drive off, drive* (away), *dislodge, avert.*

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**de-perdo**], 3. v. a., *lose, be deprived of:* **tantum opinionis** (*forfeit*).

dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, -peritūrus, [**de-pereo**], irr. v. n., *be lost.*

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**de-pono**], 3. v. a., *lay down*, *lay aside*, *deposit.* — Fig., *lose*, *abandon* (hope), *blot out* (memory), *resign.*

dēpopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **depopulor.**

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, [**de-populor**], 1. v. dep., *ravage*, *lay waste;* p. p., pass., *laid waste.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-porto**], 1. v. a., *carry off*, *carry away*, *remove.*

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p., [**de-posco**], 3. v. a., *demand earnestly*, *demand*, *call for*, *claim.*

dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **depono.**

dēprecātor, -ōris, [**de-precator**, cf. **deprecor**], M., *a mediator* (to beg off something for somebody): **eo deprecatore**, *by his mediation.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, [de-precor], 1. v. dep., *pray to avert something*, *pray* (with accessory notion of relief), *beg*, *beg off*, *pray for pardon*, *pray to be spared*, *resort to prayers*, *ask for quarter*, *beseech.*

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, hēnsus, [**de-prehendo,** *grasp*], 3. v. a., *capture*, *catch*, *seize*, *take possession of.* — As in Eng., *catch* (*come upon*), *surprise.*

dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deprehendo.**

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-pugno**], *fight decisively*, *fight it out.*

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **depello.**

dērēctē (**dī-**) [old case-form of **derectus**], adv., *straight:* **ad perpendiculum** (*perpendicularly*).

dērēctus (**dī-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **derigo.**

dērigō (**dī-**), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**de-rego**], 3. v. a., *straighten out*, *direct:* **aciem** (*form*); **opera** (*set in order*, *arrange*). — **dērēctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *straight*, *straight up and down*, *perpendicular.*

dērīvātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **derivo.**

dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. immediately fr. **de-rivus** (*brook*), prob. through adj. st.], 1. v. a., *draw off* (water), *divert.*

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-rogo**, in its political sense], 1. v. a., *take away*, *withdraw.*

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus, [**de-scando**], 3. v. n., *climb down*, *descend.* — Fig., *resort to*, *have recourse to*, *adopt* (with **ad**).

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, [**de-seco**], 1. v. a., *cut off.*

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [**de-sero**, *join*], 3. v. a., *disunite.* — Esp., *abandon*, *forsake*, *give up*, *leave in the lurch.* — **dēsertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *deserted*, *solitary.*

dēsertor, -ōris, [**de-†sertor**, cf. **desero**], M., *a deserter.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **desero.**

dēsīderātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **desidero.**

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, cf. **considero**], 1. v. a., *feel the want of*, *desire*, *miss*, *need*, *desire* (*want to see*), *lose* (of soldiers). — Pass., *be missing* (*lost*): **perpauci desiderati quin cuncti**, etc. (*all with very few exceptions*).

dēsidia, -ae, [**desid-** (st. of **deses, de-** SED as st.)], F., *idleness, sloth.*

dēsīgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **designo.**

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-signo**], 1. v. a., *mark out, indicate, mean.*

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus, [**de-salio**], 4. v. n., *leap down, leap* (down), *jump overboard, dismount.*

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, [**de-sisto**], 3. v. n., *stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon:* **fuga** (*cease flying*).

dēspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **despicio.**

dēspectus, -tūs, [**de-†spectus,** cf. **despicio**], M., *a view down, view* (from a height): **oppidum haberet despectūs** (*sheer precipices*).

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, [**de-†speratio,** cf. **despero**], F., *despair, desperation.*

dēspērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **despero.**

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-spero,** cf. **spes,** *hope*], 1. v. n. (but see below), *cease to hope, despair.* — **dēspērātus,** -a, -um, as pass., *despaired of.* — Also as adj., (*hopeless* ?, perh. orig. *despaired of*), hence *desperate.*

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [**de-specio**], 3. v. a. and n., *look down, look down upon.* — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), *look down upon, despise.*

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-spolio**], 1. v. a., *strip off.* — With change of relation, *strip* (also fig., as in Eng.).

dēstinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **destino.**

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. **dēstinā-,** *a prop* (fr. **de-**STA-**nus**)], 1. v. a., *fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly.* Hence, fig., *fix upon, appoint, choose, destine.*

dēstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [**de-stătuo**], 3. v. a., *set apart* (from one's self), *abandon, desert.*

dēstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **destituo.**

dēstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **destringo.**

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [**de-stringo**], 3. v. a., *strip off.* — Also (cf. **despolio**), *strip, draw* (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [**de-sum**], irr. v. n., (*be away*), *be wanting, be lacking, fail.* — Esp., *fail to do one's duty by,* etc. — Often, *lack* (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), *be without, not have.*

dēsuper [**de super**], adv., *from above.*

dēterior, -ius, [compar. of **†deter** (**de + terus,** cf. **interior**)], adj., (*farther down*), *inferior, worse:* **deteriora vectigalia facere** (*impair*).

dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [**de-terreo**], 2. v. a., *frighten off, deter, prevent* (esp. by threats, but also generally).

dētestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **detestor.**

dētestor, -ārī, -ātus, [**de-testor**], 1. v. a., (*call the gods to witness to prevent something*), *entreat* (from a thing). — Also, *curse.*

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus,

[de-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold off, detain, delay, stop.*

dētrāctō (-trecto), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**de-tracto**], 1. v. a., (*hold off from one's self*), *avoid, shun.*

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **detraho.**

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**de-traho**], 3. v. a., *drag off, snatch* (away). — With less violence, *take away, take off, withdraw* (with no violence at all).

dētrectō, see **detracto.**

dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, [**detrimentŏ-** (reduced) + **osus**], adj., *detrimental, hurtful.*

dētrīmentum, -ī, [**de-†trimentum** (**tri-** in **tero,** *rub,* + **mentum**), cf. **detero**], N., (*a rubbing off*), *loss, injury.* — Esp., *defeat, disaster.*

dēturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deturbo.**

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**deturbo,** *disturb*], 1. v. a., *drive off* (in confusion).

deūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [**deuro**], 3. v. a., *burn off, burn up.*

deus, -ī, [akin to **divus, Iovis, dies**], M., *a god.*

deūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deuro.**

dēvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [**de-veho**], 3. v. a., *carry away, bring* (to a place), *bring along.*

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**de-venio**], 4. v. n., *come away, land* (come down from the sea), *come* (from one place to another).

dēvexus, -a, -um, [prop. a p. p. of **deveho**], adj., *sloping.* — Neut. plur. as noun, *slopes, hillsides.*

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **devinco.**

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [**de-vinco**], 3. v. a., *conquer* (so as to prostrate), *subdue* (entirely).

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**devoco**], 1. v. a., *call down* (or *away*). — Esp., fig., *invite, bring:* **fortunas in dubium** (*risk*).

dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **devoveo.**

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, [**de-voveo**], 2. v. a., *vow* (away). — Less exactly, *devote.* — **dēvōtus,** -a, -um, p. p. as noun, *a devoted follower* (sworn to die with his companion).

dexter, -era, -erum, (-tra, -trum), [unc. st. (perh. akin to **digitus**?) + **terus**], adj., *right* (in the right hand). — **dextra,** F., (sc. **manus**), *the right hand* (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci.

diciō (less correctly **dit-**), -ōnis, [st. akin to **dico + o,** cf. **legio**], F., (*command,* cf. Eng. "*say*"), *dominion, sway.*

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**†dicŏ-** (cf. **causi-dicus**)], 1. v. a., *adjudge, assign* (in some legal manner). — Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), *assign, make over:* **se in clientelam** (*bind one's self, attach one's self*); **se in servitutem** (*surrender*).

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, [DIC, in **dīco** and **dicus**], 3. v. a. and n., (*point out?*), *say, speak, name.* — Esp., with authority, *name, appoint, fix:* **ius** (*administer,* cf. **dīco**); **sententiam** (*give*). — Special uses: **dicunt,** *they*

say; **causam dicere,** *plead one's cause,* hence *be tried, be brought to trial.* — See also **dictum.**

dictiō, -ōnis, [dic (as root of **dico**) + tio], F., *a speaking, a pleading* (cf. **dico**) : **causae** (*pleading one's cause, trial*).

dictum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **dico**], N., *a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command:* **dicto audiens esse alicui** (*be obedient, obey*).

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**dis-duco**], 3. v. a., *draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide.*

diēs, -ēī, [prob. for **dives,** DVU + AS], M. (rarely F. in some uses), *a day* (in all Eng. senses). — Also, *time:* **in dies,** *from day to day,* with idea of increase or diminution: **diem ex die ducere,** *put off a thing day after day;* **ad diem,** *on the day;* **dies longior,** *a later time.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., *bear apart, spread.* — Also, *postpone, defer, differ.*

difficilis, -e, [dis-facilis, *easy*], adj., *not easy, difficult:* **iter** (*hard to pass over*).

difficultās, -tātis, [**difficili-** (weakened) + **tās**], F., *difficulty:* **magna difficultate adficiebatur,** *was much troubled;* **rei frumentariae** (*difficulty of supplying grain*).

difficulter [difficili- (weakened) + ter], adv., *with difficulty;* compar., *with greater difficulty.*

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [**dis-fido**], 3. v. n., *distrust, not have confidence.*

diffīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **diffido.**

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [**dis-fundo**], 3. v. a., *spread out.*

digitus, -ī, [?], M., *a finger:* **pollex** (*the thumb*). — As in Eng., *a finger's breadth, a finger* (as a measure).

dīgnitās, -tātis, [**dignŏ-** + **tas**], F., *worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, position* (superior); **tribuere** (*have respect for*).

dīgnus, -a, -um, [?, perh. root of **dico** + **nus**], adj., *worthy.*

dīiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dis-iudico,** *judge*], 1. v. a. and n., *decide* (between two).

dīlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **diligo.**

dīligenter [diligent- + ter], adv., *carefully, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains:* **conservavit** (*took pains to save*); **parum diligenter,** *too carelessly.*

dīligentia, -ae, [diligent- + ia], F., *care, pains, painstaking, diligence:* **remittere** (*cease to take pains, take less care*).

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [**dis-lego**], 3. v. a., (*choose out*), *love, be fond of.* — See also **diligens.**

dīmēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dimetior.**

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus, [**dis-metior**], 4. v. dep., *measure* (in parts), *measure out* (esp. of camp). — **dīmēnsus,** -a, -um, *measured.*

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, [**dimico**], F., *fight, contest.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**dis-mico**], 1. v. n., (*brandish swords to decide a contest?*), *fight* (a decisive battle), *risk an engagement.*

dīmidius, -a, -um, [**dis-medius**],

adj., (*divided in the middle*), *half.* — Neut. as noun, *the half.*

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**dis-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon:* **oppugnationem** (*raise*); **victoriam** (*let go,* on purpose). — Also, *send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, disband, dismiss.*

dīrēctus, -a, -um, see **derectus.**

dīreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **diripio.**

dīrigō, see **derigo.**

dirimō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**dis-emo,** *take*], 3. v. a., *take apart, break up* (a conference).

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [**dis-rapio**], 3. v. a., *seize* (in different directions), *plunder, pillage, ravage.*

dis-, dī- (dir- dif-), [akin to **duo**?], insep. prep. (adv.), in comp., *apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-.* — Cf. **discedo, discerno, dirimo, diffundo.**

Dīs, Dītis, [akin to **dives,** *rich,* as the earth is the source of riches], M., *Pluto* (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**dis-cedo,** *go*], 3. v. n., *withdraw, depart, retire, leave* (with **ab**), *go away:* **locus unde discesserant,** *the place which they had left;* **ab officio** (*fail in one's duty*); **spes hostibus** (*forsake, fail*); **ab signis** (*leave the ranks*); **ab armis** (*lay down one's arms*).

disceptātor, -tōris, [**disceptā-** (st. of **discepto,** *decide*) + **tor**], M., *a judge, an arbiter, umpire.*

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [**dis-cerno,** *separate*], 3. v. a., *separate, distinguish.*

discessus, -sūs, [**dis-†cessus,** cf. **discedo**], M., *a departure, a withdrawal.*

disciplīna, -ae, [**discipulŏ-** (reduced) + **ina,** cf. **rapina**], F., (*pupillage?*), *discipline, instruction, a system* (of doctrine, etc.), *a course of instruction.*

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**dis-claudo**], 3. v. a., *shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.*

discō, discere, didicī, discitūrus, [for **†dicsco** (DIC + **sco**)], 3. v. a. and n., *learn:* **discendi causa,** *for instruction.*

discrīmen, -inis, [**dis-crimen,** cf. **discerno**], N., *a separation, a decision.* Hence, *a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.*

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of **discutio.**

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [**dis-quatio,** *shake*], 3. v. a., *strike* (or *shake*) *apart, beat away. drive away, clear away, dislodge, shatter.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**dis-iacio**], 3. v. a., *hurl apart, break up* (a phalanx), *disperse, tear off* (yards). — **disiectus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *scattered, broken, in disorder:* **pabulatio** (*in widely scattered places*).

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **disicio.**

dispār, -paris, [**dis-par**], adj., *unequal, inferior, ill-matched, different.*

disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dis-**

paro], I. v. a., *scatter*, *separate*, (cf. **disiungo**).

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus, [**dis-spargo,** *scatter*], 3. v. a., *scatter*, *disperse*.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dispergo.**

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**dis-pono**], 3. v. a., *place about* (in various places), *station* (variously), *array* (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dispono.**

disputātiō, -ōnis, [**dis-putatio,** cf. **disputo**], F., *discussion*, *dispute*.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**disputo,** *reckon*], I. v. n. and a., *discuss*, *investigate*.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [**dis-†sensio** (cf. **dissentio**)], F., *difference of opinion*, *disagreement*, *dissension*.

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, [**dis-sentio,** *feel*], 4. v. n., *differ in opinion* (cf. **sentio**), *be at variance*, *disagree* (**ab,** *with*).

disserō, -ere, [**dis-sero**], 3. v. a., *plant here and there*, *place at intervals*.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dissimulo,** *make like*], I. v. a. and n., (*pretend something is not*), *conceal* (what is), *dissemble*.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dissipo.**

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dis-†supo,** *throw*], I. v. a., *scatter*, *disperse*: **dissipati,** *straggling troops*.

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, [**dis-suadeo**], 2. v. a., *advise to the contrary*, *oppose* (in argument), *dissuade*.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**dis-teneo**], 2. v. a., *keep apart*, *hold asunder*, *keep from uniting*, *cut off* (in military sense), *isolate*.

distō, -stāre, [**dis-sto**], I. v. n., *stand apart*, *be distant*: **quantum iunctura distabat** (*as far as the distance between*, etc.); **quantum summa labra distabant** (*the width* [*of the ditch*] *at the top*).

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**dis-traho**], 3. v. a., *drag asunder*, *separate*. Hence, *distract*.

distribuō, -buere, -buī, -būtus, [**dis-tribuo,** *assign*], 3. v. a., *assign* (to several), *distribute*, *divide*.

dītissimus, -a, -um, superl. of **dives.**

diū [prob. acc. of st. akin to **dies**], adv., *for a time*, *a long time*, *for some time*, *long*: **tam diu,** *so long*; **quam diu,** *how long*, *as long*, *as long as*; **diutius,** *any longer*; **diutissime,** *for the longest time*, *longest*.

diurnus, -a, -um, [**†dius,** akin to **diu** and **dies,** + **nus**], adj., *of the day*, *daily* (as opposed to nightly): **nocturnis diurnisque itineribus** (*by night and day*).

diūtinus, -a, -um, [**diu** + **tinus**], adj., (*long in time*), *long continued*.

diūturnitās, -tātis, [**diuturno-** + **tas**], F., *length of time*, *long continuance*, *length* (in time).

diūturnus, -a, -um, [**diu** + **turnus,** cf. **hesternus**], adj., *long continued*, *long* (in time).

dīversus, p. p. of **diverto.**

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [**dis-verto**], 3. v. a. and n., *turn aside* (or *apart*), *separate*.—**dīver-**

sus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *separate, distant, diverse, different.*

dīves, -itis, [?], adj., *rich.*

Dīviciăcus, -ī, [Celtic], M.: 1. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix. — 2. A leader of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Helvetii.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, [**dis-** †vido, VIDH (?), cf. **vidua,** *widow*], 3. v. a., *divide, separate.* — **dīvīsus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *divided:* **Gallia divisa est.** — Also, *spread out.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, [**divŏ-** (as if divi) + **nus**], adj., *of the gods, divine:* **res divinae,** *matters of religion, religion.*

1. **dō,** dare, dedī, datus, [DA, *give*, cf. 2. **do**], 1. v. a., *give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant:* **responsum** (*answer, reply*); **sibi minus dubitationis dari,** *that he had less hesitation;* **filiam in matrimonium** (*marry*); **se vento** (*run before the wind*); **mānus** (*submit, yield,* from holding out the hands to be bound); **hostes in fugam** (*put to flight*); **operam** (*take pains, exert one's self, see to it that,* etc.); **negotium uti** (*employ one to,* etc., *engage one to,* etc.); **suspicionem** (*afford, make a show,* but also *have an appearance*); **arbitros** (*assign referees,* a judicial function).

2. **do** [DHA, *place*], confounded with 1. **do,** but appearing in comp., *place, put,* as **abdō, condō.**

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, [unc. formation akin to **dico** and **disco**], 2. v. a., *teach, show, inform, represent, state* (in the course of the narrative).

documentum, -ī, [**docu-**(?) (as st. of **doceo**) + **mentum**], N., *a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, [perh. **dolŏ-** (st. of **dolus,** *craft*)], 2. v. n., *feel pain, suffer.* — Esp. mentally, *be pained, grieve.*

dolor, -ōris, [**dol-** (as root of **doleo**) + **or**], M., *pain* (physical or mental), *distress, indignation, chagrin, vexation:* **magno dolore ferre,** *be very indignant, feel much chagrin;* **magno esse dolori,** *to be a great annoyance* or *sorrow;* almost concrete, *a grievance.*

dolus, -ī, [perh. akin to **doleo,** originally *stroke?*], M., *an artifice, deceit, tricks, a stratagem.*

domesticus, -a, -um, [**domŏ-** (as if **domes-**, cf. **modestus**) + **ticus**], adj., (*of the house*), *of one's home, one's own, at home:* **bellum** (*domestic, internal, intestine*).

domicilium, -ī, [perh. **domŏ-** + †**cilium** (fr. root of **colo**)], N., *an abode, a house, a dwelling-place, a house* (as a permanent home).

dominor, -ārī, -ātus, [**dominŏ-**], 1. v. dep., *rule, be master.*

dominus, -ī, [†**domŏ-** (*ruling*) + **nus**], M., *a master, an owner.*

Domitius, -ī, [**domitŏ-** (reduced) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus,* consul in B.C. 54.

domus, -ī (-ūs), [DOM (*build?*) + **us** (**-os** and -us)], F., *a house, a home:* **domī,** *at home;* **domum,** *home,*

to one's home; **domo**, *from home;* **domo exire**, *go away, emigrate.*

dōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dono**.

Donnotaurus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Gallic name. — Esp., *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a chief of the Helvetii, son of C. Valerius Caburus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [donŏ-], 1. v. a., *present, give* (as a gift). — Also, *honor with a gift, present* (one with a thing); **civitate aliquem donare**, *give one the rights of citizenship.*

dōnum, -ī, [DA (*give*) + **nus**], N., *a gift.*

dorsum (**-us**), -ī, [?], N. (and M.), *the back.* — Less exactly, *a summit* (of a long ridge).

dōs, dōtis, [DA (*give*) + **tis** (reduced)], F., (*a gift*). — Esp., *a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion* (given at marriage).

druides, -um, [Celtic], M., *the Druids*, the priests of the Gallic religion.

Dubis, -is, [Celtic], M., *the Doubs*, a river of Gaul, flowing from the Jura into the Saône.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubitā- (st. of **dubito**) + **tio**], F., *doubt, hesitation:* **alicui minus dubitationis dari**, *to feel less doubt* or *hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [†dubitŏ- (partic. of lost verb **dubo** ?, cf. **dubius**)], 1. v. n., *doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful.* — Also (absolutely, or with inf., rarely with **quin**), *hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.*

dubius, -a, -um, [**duo** + **bius**, cf. **superbus** and **dubito**], adj., *doubtful:* **est dubium**, *there is doubt, it is doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, [**duŏ-centi** (plur. of **centum**)], adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [DUC (in **dux**)], 3. v. a., *lead, draw, bring* (of living things): **primum pilum** (*be first centurion*). — Esp. of a general, *lead, march.* — With or without **in matrimonium**, *marry* (of the man). — Less exactly, *run* (a line, a ditch), *draw, make.* — Fig., *prolong, drag out.* — As mercantile word, and so fig., *reckon, consider.*

ductus, -tūs, [DUC + **tus**], M., *lead, command.*

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. **tum**], conj., *at that time.* — Also, *while, so long as.* Hence, *till, until.*

Dumnorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, [dual, of st. †**dvŏ-**, cf. **bis**], num. adj., *two.*

duodecim [**duo-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, [**duo-decimus**], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duodēnī, -ae, -a, [**duo deni**], num. adj., *twelve* (in a set).

duodēvīgintī [**duo de viginti**, *twenty*], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, -plicis, [**duo-†plex**, cf. **plico**, *fold*], adj., *two-fold, double:* **acies** (*in two divisions*, arranged for successive attacks in the same direction, or for the same tactical purpose).

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**duplic-**], 1. v. a., *double, increase two-fold.*

dūritia, -ae, [**durŏ- + tia**], F., *hardness, hardship.*

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**durŏ-**], 1. v. a., *harden, toughen, make hardy.*

Dūrocortorum, -ī, [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Remi, now *Rheims*.

dūrus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *hard.* — Fig., *hard, severe, difficult:* **si quid erat durius** (*any severe contest*) : **si nil esset durius,** *if no accident happened.*

Dūrus, -ī, [**durus**], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Quintus Laberius Durus,* a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis, [DUC (*lead*) as st.], C., *a leader, a guide, a commander.*

E

ē, shortened form of **ex** (esp. in composition), which see.

eā [instr. or abl. of **is**], adv., *this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter.*

Eburōnes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.

Eburovīces, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci living in the region of modern *Perche*.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p., [**ex-disco**], 3. v. a., *learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **edo.**

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**ex-do**], 3. v. a., *put forth, give forth :* **exempla cruciatusque** (*make an example by inflicting severe torture*). — **ēditus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *elevated, raised, high.*

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus, [**ex-doceo,** *teach*], 2. v. a., *show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct.*

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ex-duco**]. 3. v. a., *lead out, lead forth, draw* (a sword), *bring out* (baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **educo.**

effarciō (-ferc-), -farcīre, -farsī, -fertus, [**ex-farcio**], 4. v. a., *stuff out, fill in* (solid).

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-†femino,** or perh. **†effeminŏ-** (or -i), in either case from **femina**], 1. v. a., *make into a woman.* — Less exactly, (*make like a woman*), *enervate, weaken:* **animos** (*enfeeble, debauch*).

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, [**ex-fero**], irr. v. a., *carry out, bring out, carry away.* — Less exactly and fig., *spread abroad, make known, publish abroad, puff up, elate* (cf. Eng. "carried away"). — Also (cf. **edo**), *raise up.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**ex-facio**], 3. v. a., *make out, make, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out* (furnish) : **ut praeberent** (*make them afford*) ; **ut sint laboris** (*make capable of*) ; **ut posset** (*make possible*) ; **classem** (*get together, construct*).

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus,

[ex-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig out*, *gouge out*.

effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of **effodio**.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., *escape*, *flee* (absolutely), *fly from*.

egēns, pres. p. of **egeo**.

egeō, egēre, eguī, no p. p., [†egŏ- (cf. **indigus**, *in want*)], 2. v. n., *want*, *need*, *be in want*. — **egēns**, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *needy*, *destitute*.

egestās, -tātis, [unc. st. (perh. egent-) + tas], F., *poverty*, *destitution*.

ego, meī, [cf. Eng. *I*], pron., *I* (*me*, etc.). — Plur., **nōs**, *we*, *us*, etc.

egomet, **nōsmet**, etc., pron. emph., with encl. **-met**, *I*, *we*.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ex-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *march out*, *go out*, *move beyond*: **finis** (*pass beyond*); **navi** (*land*, *disembark*); **unde erant egressi**, *the place they had left*; **ex oppido** (*evacuate*).

ēgregiē [old case-form of **egregius**], adv., *remarkably*, *finely*, *extremely well*.

ēgregius, -a, -um, [e **grege** (*out of the herd*) + ius], adj., *out of the common*, *remarkable*, *superior*, *excellent*, *uncommon*, *special*.

ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **egredior**.

ēgressus, -sūs, [e-gressus, cf. **ingressus** and **egredior**], M., *a landing*.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ex-iacio], 3. v. a., *cast out*, *drive out*, *cast up* (cf. **edo**). — With reflex., *rush out*, *rush*.

ēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **eicio**.

ēiusmodī [eius modi], as adj. phrase, *of this kind*, *of such a kind*, *such*, *of such a nature*, *of this nature*.

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus, [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., *slip out*, *escape*.

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **elabor**.

ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **effero**.

Elaver, -veris, [Celtic], N., a tributary of the Loire, now *Allier*.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **eligo**.

elephantus, -ī, [Gr. acc. ἐλέφαντα, declined], M., *an elephant*.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people dependent on the Arverni.

ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitus, [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., *entice out*, *draw out*.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [ex-lego], 3. v. a., *pick out*, *select*. — **ēlēctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *picked* (troops).

Elusātēs, -ium, [Iberian], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ex-migro], 1. v. n., *remove* (permanently), *emigrate*. — With **domo** (in same sense).

ēmineō, -nēre, -nuī, no p. p., [ex-†mineo, *project*], 2. v. n., *stand out*, *project*.

ēminus [ex manu, *hand*, cf. **comminus**], adv., *at a distance*, *at long range*.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go*, *drop*, *send out*, *throw*, *hurl*, *discharge*. — Pass., or with reflex., *rush out*.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, [EM ?, orig. *take*], 3. v. a., (*take*, only in compounds). — Esp., *buy* (cf. Eng. *sell*, orig. *give*), *purchase*.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [**ex-nascor**], 3. v. dep., *spring out, grow out.*

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **enascor.**

enim [prob. **e** (in **en, ecce**) + **nam**], (always postpositive) conj., *really.* — Esp. as explanatory, *for, but, now, for in fact:* **neque enim,** *for of course . . . not, for you see . . . not.*

ēnūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **enuntio.**

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-nuntio,** *announce*], 1. v. a., *make known, report, disclose, reveal:* **hostibus enuntiari,** (*that*) *the enemy were informed of.*

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus, [root I], irr. v. n., *go, pass, march, advance, proceed.* — Pass. inf. **iri** used with verbs to form the fut. pass. inf.

eō [old dat. of **is**], adv., *thither, there* (in sense of *thither*). — Often translated by more def. expressions in Eng., *to the place* (where, etc.), *on them* (*it, him,* etc.): **usque eo ut,** *to that degree that, so far that.*

eō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of degree of difference; see is.

eōdem [old dat. of **idem,** cf. **eo,** *thither*], adv., *to the same place, in the same place* (cf. **eo**), *there also:* **eodem conduxit** (*to the same place* [as himself]); **eodem pertinere,** *look in the same direction, tend the same way;* **eodem illo pertinere . . . ut,** *favored the same idea . . . that, belonged to the same design . . . that.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um, [**ephippiā-** (as if st. of verb, cf. **auratus**) + **tus,** see **ephippium**], adj., *saddled, caparisoned:* **equites** (*riding on saddles,* as a less manly form of horsemanship).

ephippium, -ī, [Gr. ἐφίππιον (ἐπί, *upon;* ἵππῳ, *a horse*)], N., *a horsecloth, caparison, housing.*

epistula (epistola), -ae, [Gr.], F., *a letter, a note, a message* (in writing), *a despatch.*

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M.: 1. A nobleman of the Hædui. — 2. Another, VII, 67.

epulum, -ī, plur., -ae, -ārum, [?], N. (sing.), F. (plur.), *a feast, a banquet.*

eques, -itis, [**equŏ-** + **tis** (reduced)], M., *a horseman, a rider.* — Plur., *cavalry.* — Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), *a knight* (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). — So also, *a knight* (of Gaul, of a corresponding class).

equester, -tris, -tre, [**equit-** + **tris**], adj., *of knights, of cavalry.*

equitātus, -tūs, [**equitā-** (as st. of **equito,** *ride*) + **tus**], M., *cavalry, horse* (troops serving on horseback).

equus, -ī, [AK (*swift*) + **vus**], M., *a horse.*

Eratosthenēs, -is, [Gr.], M., a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born at Cyrene B.C. 276. He was famous for his investigations in geography and astronomy.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **erigo.**

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **eripio.**

ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as **ergo**], prep. with acc., *towards* (of feeling and conduct): **fides erga aliquem.**

ergō (-ŏ rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. **erga**], adv., *therefore, then.*

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**ex-rego,** *make straight*], 3. v. a., *set up straight, raise up.* — With reflex., *get up.* — **ērēctus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, high and straight.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [**ex-rapio**], 3. v. a., *snatch away, wrest* (a thing from), *deprive* (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), *take from, rescue:* **se eripere ne,** *save one's self from* doing a thing.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], 1. v. n., *wander, go astray, err, be mistaken.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**ex-rumpo**], 3. v. a. and n., *burst out, sally out, make a sally.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [**ex-ruptio,** cf. **erumpo**], F., *a breaking out, a sally, a sortie.*

esseda, -ae (-um, -ī), [Celtic], F. (and N.), *a war chariot* (of the Gauls).

essedārius, -ī, [**essedŏ-** (-a) (reduced) + **arius**], M., *a charioteer* (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., *and:* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam [**et iam**], conj., *also, even, even now, yet:* **quin etiam,** *nay more.*

etsī [**et si**], conj., *even if, although, though.*

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, [**ex-vado,** *go*], 3. v. n., *escape.*

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī (-vulsī), -vulsus, [**ex-vello**], 3. v. a., *pull out, pluck out.*

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**ex-venio**], 4. v. n., *come out, turn out, happen.*

ēventus, -tūs, [**ex-†ventus,** cf. **conventus** and **evenio**], M., *result, issue, fate, success.*

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **evoco.**

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-voco**], 1. v. a., *call out, call forth, summon, challenge* (**ad pugnam**), *carry away* (**cupiditas longius**), *invite* (**omnes ad se spe praedae**). — **ēvocātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, *veteran* (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), *veterans* (almost equal *volunteers*).

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**ex-volo**], 1. v. n., *fly out, rush out.*

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *out of* (cf. **ab,** *away from*), *out.* — Less exactly, *from* (lit. and fig.), *of* (made of): **facilia ex difficillimis redegerat,** *had made easy instead of most difficult,* as they were. Hence, *after.* — Also, *on account of, in accordance with, by means of.* — — Also, *above* (raised from). — Also (cf. **ab**), *in, on:* **una ex parte,** *on one side;* **ex itinere,** *on the march,* starting from it; **ex vinculis,** *in chains,* doing something from them; so, **ex equis,** *on horseback;* **ex eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate,** *from that nation,* belonging there; **ex fuga,** *in their flight.* — Other phrases: **ex commutatione dolere,** *suffer from the change;* **diem ex die,** *day after day;* **magna ex parte,**

in a great degree, for the most part; **quaerere ex,** *ask of, ask,* cf. **ab; ex eo plus doloris capere** (*on this account,* etc.); **ex cratibus** (*of, made of*); **unus e filiis** (*one of,* etc.); **ex communi consensu,** *by common consent;* **ex percontatione,** *by inquiry,* from one which was made; **ex Hispania** (*a man from*); **ex eo die quintus** (*from, after*); **ex usu,** *for the advantage,* cf. "of use"; **ex planitie editus** (*above, raised out of*); **e regione,** *opposite;* **ex litteris** (*in accordance with,* from facts stated in, etc.); **ex tertia parte aestimare** (*as a third,* cf. **heres ex asse**), **ex contrario,** *on the contrary.* — In comp., *out, completely* (cf. "*out and out*"), *off, up, after, from, un-.*

exāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exigo.**

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-agito,** freq. of **ago,** *drive*], 1. v. a., *pursue, drive, harass, persecute.*

exāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **examino.**

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-amin-** (st. of **examen,** *tongue of the balance*)], 1. v. a., *weigh.*

exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exanimo.**

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-animŏ-**], 1. v. a., *deprive of breath* (*life*), *kill.* — **exanimātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *out of breath, exhausted.*

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, no p. p., [**ex-ardesco,** cf. **ardeo,** *burn*], 3. v. n., *blaze up.* — Fig., *become enraged, become excited.*

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**ex-audio**], 4. v. a., *hear* (from a distance), *hear distinctly.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**ex-cedo**], 3. v. n., *go out, leave* (with abl.), *withdraw, retire.* — Absolutely, *leave the fight.*

excello, -ere, -ui, -sus, [**ex-†cello**], 3. v. a. and n., *raise, rise, surpass, excel.* — **excelsus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, elevated.*

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excello.**

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-capto,** cf. **excipio**], 1. v. a., *catch up, take hold of.*

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excipio.**

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ex-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut out, cut off, break down* (gates).

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**ex-capio**], 3. v. a., *take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch* (of animals). Hence, *follow, come after, come next:* **vada** (*stand,* of vessels); **vim fluminis** (*break*); **alios alii** (*succeed*); **hunc alii** (*follow, take up the cry* in shouting).

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excito.**

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-cito,** cf. **excieo,** *call up*], 1. v. a., *call out, rouse, stimulate* (*induce*). — Also, *raise* (towers), *kindle* (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**ex-claudo**], 3. v. a., *shut out, cut off* (from doing a thing), *prevent.*

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excludo.**

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-cogito**], 1. v. a., *think out, devise.*

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excrucio.**

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-crucio,** cf. **crux,** *cross*], 1. v. a., *torture, torment.*

ergō (-ŏ rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. **erga**], adv., *therefore, then.*

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**ex-rego,** *make straight*], 3. v. a., *set up straight, raise up.* — With reflex., *get up.* — **ērēctus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, high and straight.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [**ex-rapio**], 3. v. a., *snatch away, wrest* (a thing from), *deprive* (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), *take from, rescue:* **se eripere ne,** *save one's self from* doing a thing.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], 1. v. n., *wander, go astray, err, be mistaken.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**ex-rumpo**], 3. v. a. and n., *burst out, sally out, make a sally.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [**ex-ruptio,** cf. **erumpo**], F., *a breaking out, a sally, a sortie.*

esseda, -ae (-um, -ī), [Celtic], F. (and N.), *a war chariot* (of the Gauls).

essedārius, -ī, [**essedŏ-** (-a) (reduced) + **arius**], M., *a charioteer* (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., *and:* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam [**et iam**], conj., *also, even, even now, yet:* **quin etiam,** *nay more.*

etsī [**et si**], conj., *even if, although, though.*

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, [**ex-vado,** *go*], 3. v. n., *escape.*

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī (-vulsī), -vulsus, [**ex-vello**], 3. v. a., *pull out, pluck out.*

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**ex-venio**], 4. v. n., *come out, turn out, happen.*

ēventus, -tūs, [**ex-†ventus,** cf. **conventus** and **evenio**], M., *result, issue, fate, success.*

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **evoco.**

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-voco**], 1. v. a., *call out, call forth, summon, challenge* (**ad pugnam**), *carry away* (**cupiditas longius**), *invite* (**omnes ad se spe praedae**). — **ēvocātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, *veteran* (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), *veterans* (almost equal *volunteers*).

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**ex-volo**], 1. v. n., *fly out, rush out.*

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *out of* (cf. **ab,** *away from*), *out.* — Less exactly, *from* (lit. and fig.), *of* (made of): **facilia ex difficillimis redegerat,** *had made easy instead of most difficult,* as they were. Hence, *after.* — Also, *on account of, in accordance with, by means of.* — — Also, *above* (raised from). — Also (cf. **ab**), *in, on:* **una ex parte,** *on one side;* **ex itinere,** *on the march,* starting from it; **ex vinculis,** *in chains,* doing something from them; so, **ex equis,** *on horseback;* **ex eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate,** *from that nation,* belonging there; **ex fuga,** *in their flight.* — Other phrases: **ex commutatione dolere,** *suffer from the change;* **diem ex die,** *day after day;* **magna ex parte,**

in a great degree, for the most part; **quaerere ex,** *ask of, ask,* cf. **ab; ex eo plus doloris capere** (*on this account,* etc.); **ex cratibus** (*of, made of*); **unus e filiis** (*one of,* etc.); **ex communi consensu,** *by common consent;* **ex percontatione,** *by inquiry,* from one which was made; **ex Hispania** (*a man from*); **ex eo die quintus** (*from, after*); **ex usu,** *for the advantage,* cf. "of use"; **ex planitie editus** (*above, raised out of*); **e regione,** *opposite;* **ex litteris** (*in accordance with,* from facts stated in, etc.); **ex tertia parte aestimare** (*as a third,* cf. **heres ex asse**), **ex contrario,** *on the contrary.* — In comp., *out, completely* (cf. "*out and out*"), *off, up, after, from, un-.*

exāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exigo.**

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-agito,** freq. of **ago,** *drive*], 1. v. a., *pursue, drive, harass, persecute.*

exāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **examino.**

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-amin-** (st. of **examen,** *tongue of the balance*)], 1. v. a., *weigh.*

exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exanimo.**

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-animŏ-**], 1. v. a., *deprive of breath* (*life*), *kill.* — **exanimātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *out of breath, exhausted.*

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, no p. p., [**ex-ardesco,** cf. **ardeo,** *burn*], 3. v. n., *blaze up.* — Fig., *become enraged, become excited.*

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**ex-audio**], 4. v. a., *hear* (from a distance), *hear distinctly.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**ex-cedo**], 3. v. n., *go out, leave* (with abl.), *withdraw, retire.* — Absolutely, *leave the fight.*

excello, -ere, -ui, -sus, [**ex-†cello**], 3. v. a. and n., *raise, rise, surpass, excel.* — **excelsus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, elevated.*

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excello.**

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-capto,** cf. **excipio**], 1. v. a., *catch up, take hold of.*

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excipio.**

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ex-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut out, cut off, break down* (gates).

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**ex-capio**], 3. v. a., *take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch* (of animals). Hence, *follow, come after, come next:* **vada** (*stand,* of vessels); **vim fluminis** (*break*); **alios alii** (*succeed*); **hunc alii** (*follow, take up the cry* in shouting).

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excito.**

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-cito,** cf. **excieo,** *call up*], 1. v. a., *call out, rouse, stimulate* (*induce*). — Also, *raise* (towers), *kindle* (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**ex-claudo**], 3. v. a., *shut out, cut off* (from doing a thing), *prevent.*

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excludo.**

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-cogito**], 1. v. a., *think out, devise.*

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excrucio.**

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-crucio,** cf. **crux,** *cross*], 1. v. a., *torture, torment.*

excubitor, -tōris, [as if **ex-†cubitor**, cf. **excubo**], M., *a sentinel* (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, [**ex-cubo**], 1. v. n., *lie outside.* — Esp. of camp, *stand guard, keep a night-watch, watch.*

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**excalco**], 1. v. a., *tread down, trample down.*

excurrō, -currere, -currī, (-cucurrī), -cursūrus, [**ex-curro**], 3. v. n., *run out, make a sally.* — See **excursio**.

excursiō, -ōnis, [**ex-†cursio**, cf. **excurro**], F., *a sally, a sortie.*

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [**ex-†causatio**, cf. **excuso**], F., *an excuse, an apology.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-†causo**, cf. **causa**, *reason*], 1. v. a., *give as an excuse.* — Also (with change of relation), *excuse, exculpate.*

exemplum, -ī, [**ex-†templum**, EM (in **emo**, *take*) + **lus** with parasitic **p**], N., (*something taken out*), *a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example.*

exeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, [**ex-eo**], irr. v. n., *go forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove.*

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [**ex-arceo**, *drive off*], 2. v. a., *train, practise, exercise.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [**exercitā-** (st. of **exercito**) + **tio**], F., *practice, exercise.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exercito**.

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**exercitŏ-**, cf. **exerceo**], 1. v. a., *train, practise.* — **exercitātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *trained.* — Superl., *very well trained.*

exercitus, -tūs, [as if **ex-arcitus**, cf. **exerceo**], M., (*a training*). — Concretely, (*a body trained* or *in training*), *an army* (large or small, acting independently), *a force.*

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustus, [**ex-haurio**], 4. v. a., *drain off.* — Less exactly, *carry off* (earth).

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**ex-ago**], 3. v. a., (*lead out*), *pass, spend, finish, complete:* **exacta hiems**, *the end of winter;* **aestas exacta erat** (*was ended*).

exiguē [old case-form of **exiguus**], adv., *scantily, meagrely:* **exigue habere frumentum** (*have a scanty supply of*, etc.).

exiguitās, -tātis, [**exiguŏ-** + **tas**], F., *scantiness, meagreness:* **temporis** (*short time, want of time*); **pellium** (*small size*); **castrorum** (*narrowness, small size*).

exiguus, -a, -um, [**ex-†aguus** (AG + **uus**), cf. **exigo**], adj., (*exact?*), *narrow, scanty, small, meagre.*

eximius, -a, -um, [**ex-†emius**, EM + **ius**, cf. **eximo**, *take out*], adj., (*taken out*), *exceptional, remarkable, very high* (**opinio**).

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, [**ex-aestimatio**, cf. **existimo**], F., *estimate, opinion.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-aestimo**, *reckon*], 1. v. a. and n., *estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine.*

exitus, -tūs, [**ex-itus**, cf. **exeo**], M., (*a going out*), *a passage* (out, concretely). Hence, *an end, the last part:* **quem habere exitum** (*what is the result of*, etc.). — Fig., *a result, a turn* (of fortune), *an issue.*

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [prob. †**expedi-** (st. of adj. **ex-pes**, *foot-free*)], 4. v. a. and n., *disentangle*, *disencumber*, *set free* (cf. **impedio**). — Less exactly and fig., *set in order*, *get ready*, *arrange*, *station* (of troops). — **expedītus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *unincumbered*, *easy* (iter), *not difficult*, *quick*, *active*, *light-armed* (of troops), *in light marching order* (of troops without baggage), *mobile* (of troops), *ready*.

expedītiō, -ōnis, [as if **ex-†pedi-** + **tio**, cf. **expedio**], F., (*light-armed service ?*), *a getting ready*, *a despatching*. Hence, *an expedition*: **misit in expeditionem** (*detached*).

expedītus, p. p. of **expedio**.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [**ex-pello**], 3. v. a., *drive out*. — Fig., *dispel*.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, [**ex-†perior**, pass. of **pario**, *get*], 4. v. dep., (*get for one's self ?*), *experience*, *try*: **fortunam** (*risk*, *try*, *bear*, *endure*).

expertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **experior**.

expiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **expio**.

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-pio**], 1. v. a., (*purify*), *expiate*. — Transferred to the signs of divine wrath, *expiate*: **incommodum** (*wipe out*, i.e. *make good*, *retrieve*).

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [**ex-pleo**], 2. v. a., *fill out*, *fill up*, *make up* (filling the required measure).

explōrātor, -tōris, [as if **ex-†plorator**, cf. **exploro**], M., *a scout*, *a pioneer* (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. **speculator**, *a spy*).

explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exploro**.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-ploro**, prob. *search* by calling or crying], 1. v. a., *investigate*, *explore*, *search*, *examine*, *reconnoitre*. — **explōrātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *assured*, *certain*: **explorata victoria**, *being assured of victory*: **habere omnia explorata**, *know certainly*.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**ex-pono**], 3. v. a., *place out*, *set out*: **exercitum** (*disembark*, also *draw up*, *array*). — Fig., *set forth* (in speech), *state*.

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-porto**], 1. v. a., *carry out*, *carry away*, *export*.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p., [**ex-posco**], 3. v. a., *demand* (with eagerness).

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [**ex-premo**], 3. v. a., *press out*, *force out*: **vocem** (*elicit*, *get out of one*, *extort*). — Also (cf. **edo**), *raise up*: **turris agger** (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, [**ex-pugnātio**, cf. **expugno**], F., *a storming* (of a city), *taking* (of a city by storm).

expūgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **expugno**.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-pugno**, *fight*], 1. v. a., *take* (by storm), *capture* (by storming a city or boarding a ship): **stipendiariis expugnatis**, *the cities of their tributaries sacked*.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **expello**.

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsī-

tus, [ex-quaero, *seek*], 3. v. a., *search out*, *inquire*, *ask for*.

exquīsītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exquiro**.

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [**ex-sequor**], 3. v. dep., *follow out*, *follow up*: **ius** (*enforce*).

exserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [**ex-sero**], 3. v. a., (*disentangle*), *thrust out*, *uncover*.

exsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exsero**.

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus(?), [**ex-sisto**], 3. v. n., *stand out*, *rise up*, *come out*: malacia (*ensue*); motus (*break out*); cornu (*grow out*, *project*).

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-specto**], 1. v. a. and n., *look out for*, *wait for*, *wait*, *wait to see* (si, *whether*, etc.), *expect*, *anticipate*.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ex-spolio**], 1. v. a., *strip off*. — Also, *strip of* (cf. **despolio**). — Fig., *deprive*, *rob* (*of*, abl.).

exstīnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exstinguo**.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, [**ex-stinguo**], 3. v. a., (*punch out*, as a fire in the woods ?), *extinguish* (lit. and fig.), *destroy*, *put an end to*.

exstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus(?), [**ex-sto**], 1. v. n., *stand out*: **ex aqua** (*be above*).

exstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exstruo**.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [ex-struo], 3. v. a., *heap up*, *build up*, *pile up*.

exsul, -ulis, [**ex-** SAL (of **salio**), as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. **consul**], c., *an exile*.

exter, -tera, -terum, [**ex + terus** (reduced)], adj., *outer*, *outside*. — **extrēmus**, -a, -um, superl., *farthest*, *extreme*, *last*: **extremi**, as noun, *the rear*; **in extremis lingulis** (*at the extremity of*, etc., and often in this sense); **ad extremum**, *till the last*, *at last*; **ad extremum producta casum** (*to the last extremity*); **ab extrema parte**, *at the very end*; **in extrema spe**, *almost in despair*; **in extremis suis rebus**, *in the last extremity*; **extrema fames**, *the last extremity of hunger*.

exterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [**ex-terreo**], 2. v. a., *frighten away*, *frighten greatly*, *terrify*.

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exterreo**.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, no p. p., [**ex-timesco**], 3. v. a. and n., *fear greatly*, *fear* (*much*), *dread*.

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortus, [**ex-torqueo**, *twist*], 2. v. a., *wrench from*, *wrest from*, *force from*.

extortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extorqueo**.

extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of **exter**, cf. **supra**], adv. and prep. with acc., *outside*, *out of*.

extrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extraho**.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**ex-traho**], 3. v. a., *drag out*: **multum aestatis** (*drag out*, *waste*).

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, [**ex-trudo**], 3. v. a., *thrust out*, *push out*, *shut out* (by dikes).

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [**ex-** unc. verb, cf. **induo**], 3. v. a., *strip off*: **armis exutis**, *deprived of arms*. —

Also (cf. **despolio**), *strip*, *deprive*, *despoil:* **Romanos impedimentis.**

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [**ex-uro**], 3. v. a., *burn up*.

exūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exuo.**

F

faber, -brī, [FA (in **facio**) + **ber** (for **brus**)], (M. of **faber,** *skilful*), *a mechanic*, *an engineer* (in an army).

Fabius, -ī, [? **faba-** (*bean*) + **ius,** cf. **Cicero**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus* (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone. — 2. *Gaius Fabius*, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 3. *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion.

facilis, -e, [†**facŏ-** (cf. **beneficus**) + **lis**], adj., *easy* (to do, cf. **habilis**), *convenient*, *without difficulty*, *easy* (generally). — **facile,** N. as adv., *easily*, *conveniently*, *without difficulty*.

facinus, -oris, [†**facin-** (as if root of †**facino**, longer form of **facio**) + **us**], N., *a deed* (of any kind). — Esp. (as in English), *a deed* (of crime), *a misdeed*, *a crime*, *guilt* (referring to some particular act), *criminal conduct*. See **admitto.**

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, [FAC + **io**], 3. v. a. and n., *make*, *do*, *act*. — Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: **coniurationem** (*form*); **sementes** (*do planting*); **iter** (*march*, *travel*, *proceed*); **vim** (*use violence*, *force a passage*, *offer resistance*); **rates** (*build*); **testudinem** (*form*); **ea** (*perform*); **pacem** (as in Eng.); **finem orandi** (*put an end to*, *stop*, etc., *cease*, etc.); **phalangem** (*form*); **fidem** (*give assurance*, also *gain belief*, *gain credence*); **gratum** (*do a favor*); **senatus consultum** (*make*, *pass*); **verba** (*speak*, *act as spokesman*); **potestatem** (*give an opportunity*, *permit*, *allow*); **satisfacere** (*do enough*, *satisfy*). — Esp. with clause of result, *cause* (to), *do* (omitting in Eng. the connective *that*, and expressing the thing done in the indicative). — So in pass., *be done*, *be caused*, *happen*, *result*, *ensue*, *occur*, *turn out*, *be:* **non sine causa fit,** *it is not without reason;* **fit ut,** *the result is that;* **fieri posse,** *be possible;* **quid fit,** *what is going on;* **fit gratulatio,** *one is congratulated.* — Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), *make*, *render:* **vectigalia deteriora** (*make less*, *diminish*). — Esp.: **certiorem facere,** *inform*. — So with pred. gen.: **nihil reliqui,** *leave nothing undone*, *leave no further possibility;* **sui commodi naves** (*make for his convenience*). — **factum,** -ī, N. of p. p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, *act*, *thing done*, etc.: **id factum graviter tulit,** *took this action much to heart;* **recte factum,** *good conduct*, (but notice the adverb); **si quid opus facto,** *if anything was necessary to be done.* — **fīō, fierī,** as pass. in all senses.

factiō, -ōnis, [prob. †**facti** + **o,** but treated as FAC + **tio,** cf. **co-**

hortatio], F., *a business, an employment.* — Also, *a party, a faction.*

factum, -i, see **facio.**

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of **facio.**

facultās, -tātis, [facul (for facili cf. **simul**) + **tas**], F., *ease, facility.* — So, *chance, power, opportunity.* **quantum facultatis dari potuit,** *so far as opportunity was offered;* **sui conligendi** (*chance to,* etc.). Hence, concretely, *means, resources, supply:* **navium; facultates ad largiendum.**

fāgus, -i, [prob. BHAG, *eat,* + AS (**-us**), from the fruit], F., *a beech, beech* (of the timber).

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, [? SPHAL, *trip up*], 3. v. a. and n., *deceive:* **spes aliquem** (*disappoint*); **fallendo,** *by deceit.* — **falsus,** -a, -um, p. p., *deceived.* — Also (transferred to things), *false, unfounded.*

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fallo.**

falx, falcis, [?], F., *a sickle, a pruning-hook.* — Also, *a hook* (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fāma, -ae, [FA (in **for,** *speak*) + MA], F., *speech, common talk, reputation.* — Concretely, *a rumor, a story.*

famēs, -is, [?], F., *hunger, starvation:* **famem tolerare,** *keep from starving, appease hunger.*

familia, -ae, [famulŏ-, *servant* (reduced), + **ia**], F., *a collection of attendants, a household.* — Applied to Gaul, *a clan, retainers.*

familiāris, -e, [prob. **familiā-** + **ris,** but treated as **famili-** + **aris** (cf. **animalis**)], adj., *of the household:* **res** (*estate, property*). — Esp. as noun, *a friend.*

familiāritās, -tātis, [**familiari-** + **tas**], F., *intimacy* (*with,* genitive).

fās [FA (in **for,** *speak*) + **as**], indecl. N., *right* (in conscience, or by divine law): **non est fas** (*permitted, allowed*).

fastīgātē [old case-form of **fastigatus**], adv., *sloping.*

fastīgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fastigo.**

fastīgium, -ī, [†**fastigŏ-** (unc. form akin to **fastus,** *scorn,* cf. **castigo**) + **ium,** cf. **fastigo**], N., *elevation, slope, descent* (of a slope).

fastīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**fastigŏ-** (cf. **fastigium**)], I. v. a., *bring to a point.* — Esp. **fastīgātus,** -a, -um, p.p. as adj., *inclined, sloping:* **leniter** (*with an easy slope*).

fātum, -ī, [N. of **fatus,** p. p. of **for**], N., (*what is spoken,* cf. **fas**), *fate, lot, destiny.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, [?], 2. v. n., *favor, be favorable to.*

fax, facis, [?], F., *a torch, a firebrand, fire* (lighted missiles).

fēlīcitās, -tātis, [**felic-** (as if **felici-**) + **tas**], F., *good fortune, good luck, lucky star:* **summa** (*perfect success*).

fēlīciter [**felic-** (as if **felici-**) + **ter**], adv., *happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully.*

fēmina, -ae, [FE, *nurse,* + **mina,** cf. **alumna**], F., *a woman, a female.*

femur, -oris (-inis), [?], N., *the thigh.*

fera, see **ferus.**

ferāx, -ācis, [reduced noun-st. (akin to **fero**) + **ax,** as if †**ferā** + **cis** (reduced)], adj., *fertile.*

ferē [?, old case-form of st. †**ferŏ-** (akin to **fero**)], adv., *almost, about.* — Also, *almost always, generally, usually, for the most part.* — With negatives, *hardly.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (for tlātus), [BHAR, *bear,* and TOL (TLA) in **tollo**], irr. a. and n., *bear, carry, endure, tolerate, stand, withstand, carry off, win.* — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., *commit, offer,* etc. — With reflex. or in pass., *rush, pass, proceed, roll* (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, *suffer, bear, take it, feel:* **acerbius ferre inopiam** (*suffer severely from*); **magno cum dolore ferre,** *be much pained* or *indignant at;* **moleste (graviter) ferre,** *be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at.* — Special uses: **responsa** (*carry away, receive*); **auxilium** (*carry aid, assist*); **arma** (*bear arms, fight*); **condicionem** (*propose*); **signa** (bear on the standards, *march*); **ventus ferebat** (carried the ships, *blew*); **consuetudo fert** (*is*); **opinio fert** (*goes*); **ut natura montis ferebat,** *according to the outline of the mountain.*

ferrāmentum, -ī, [as if **ferrā-** (st. of verb from **ferrum**) + **mentum**], N., *a tool* (of iron).

ferrāria, -ae, [F. of **ferrarius,** cf. **ferrum**], F., *an iron mine.*

ferreus, -a, -um, [**ferrŏ-** + **eus**], adj., *of iron, iron* (made of iron).

ferrum, -ī, [?], N., *iron, steel, sword.*

fertilis, -e, [†**ferti-** + **lis,** (as if FER + **tilis**)], adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

fertilitās, -tātis, [**fertili-** + **tas**], F., *fertility, productiveness.*

ferus, -a, -um, [FER (*rush*) + **us,** cf. *deer*], adj., *wild, ferocious.* — Fem. as noun, *wild beast, game.*

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†**ferve-** (case-form akin to **ferveo**) + **facio**], 3. v. a., *heat, heat red-hot* (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fervefacio.**

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī (fervī), no p. p., [noun-st. akin to **febris**], 2. v. n., *be hot, be red-hot.*

fībula, -ae, [FIG (in **figo,** *fasten*) + **bula**], F., *a clasp, a buckle.*

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fingo.**

fidēlis, -e, [**fidē-** (st. of **fides**) + **lis**], adj., *faithful.*

fidēs, -eī, [FID (*bind*) + **es**], F., *a promise, a pledge:* **laedere** (*break faith*); **fidem facere,** *give assurance;* **fidem praestare,** *keep faith, perform one's duty.* — Also, *good faith, fidelity.* — Transferred, *confidence, faith* (in); **fidem facere,** *gain credence.* — Esp. of promised protection, *protection, dependence, alliance:* **quorum in fide erāt civitas** (*to whom . . . was subject, under whose protection*); **Caesaris fidem sequi** (*come under, surrender one's self to*); **in fidem se permittere (venire),** *place themselves under protection of,* etc.

fīdūcia, -ae, [†**fiduc-** (†**fidu-,** *faithful,* + **cus,** reduced) + **ia**], F., *confidence, reliance.*

figūra, -ae, [†**figu-** (FIG, in **fingo,** + **us**) + **ra,** F. of **rus**], F., *shape, form.*

fīlia, -ae, [F. of **filius**], F., *a daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, [?], M., *a son.*

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, [FIG, cf. **figura**]. 3. v. a., *mould;* **voltum** (*compose*). — Fig., *invent, contrive.* — **fictus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. pl., *fictions:* **ficta respondeant**, *make up answers;* **sibi** (*conjure up*).

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, (-iī), -ītus, [**fini-**], 4. v. a., *set bounds to, limit, bound, measure* (ending a division).

fīnis, -is, [?], M., *a limit, an end:* **finem facere**, *put an end to, cease;* **quem ad finem**, *as far as.* — Plur., *boundaries, limits, territories, country.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, [**fini-** + **timus**], adj., *on the borders, neighboring, adjacent, neighbors* (of). — Plur. as noun, *neighbors.* — Also, **finitumus**.

fīō [FU in **fui**], as pass. of **facio**, which see.

fīrmiter [**firmŏ-** + **ter**], adv., *firmly, stoutly, steadily.*

fīrmitūdō, -inis, [**firmŏ-** + **tudo**], F., *solidity, strength* (of resistance).

fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**firmŏ-**], I. v. a., *make strong, strengthen, fortify.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, [DHAR, *hold,* + **mus**], adj., *strong* (for resistance), *firm, steady:* **minime firma**, *weakest.*

fistūca, -ae, [?], F., *a pile-driver.*

Flaccus, see **Valerius**.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [as if †**flagitŏ-**, p. p. of †**flago**, akin to **flagro**, *blaze*], I. v. a., *ask* (in heat?), *demand earnestly:* **Haeduos frumentum**, *grain of the Hæduans.*

flamma, -ae, [FLAG (*blaze*) + **ma**], F., *flame, fire.*

flectō, flectere, flēxī, flexus, [?], 3. v. a., *bend, turn.*

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., *weep:* **flentes**, *in tears.*

flētus, -tūs, [**fle-** (st. of **fleo** as root) + **tus**], M., *weeping, lamentation:* **magno fletu**, *with many tears.*

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, [?], I. v. n. and a., *blow.*

flōrēns, -entis, [pres. p. of **floreo**, *bloom*], as adj., *blooming.* — Fig., *flourishing, prosperous, influential* (**iuvenis**): **florentissimis rebus**, *in most prosperous circumstances.*

flōs, flōris, [?], M., *a flower.* — Fig., *the flower* (of troops).

fluctus, -tūs, [FLU (G) (in **fluo**, cf. **fluxi**) + **tus**], M., *a wave.*

flūmen, -inis, [FLU (in **fluo**) + **men**], N., *a river.*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus, (fluxūrus, fluctūrus, fluitūrus), [FLU], 3. v. n., *flow.*

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [?], 3. v. a., *dig.*

foedus, -eris, [FID (in **fides**, cf. **fīdus**) + **us**], N., *a treaty, a league, a compact.*

fore, for **futurum esse**; see **sum**.

forem, for **essem**; see **sum**.

forīs [abl. plur. of †**fora**], as adv., *out of doors.* — Less exactly, *outside* (of anything, as beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae, [DHAR (in **firmus**) + **ma**], F., *shape, form.*

fors, fortis, [FER (in **fero**) + **tis** (reduced)], F., *chance.* — **forte**, abl. as adv., *by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.*

forte, see **fors.**

fortis, -e, [akin to **firmus**], adj., *strong, brave, courageous:* **vir fortis,** *a man of courage.*

fortiter [**forti-** + **ter**], adv., *bravely, stoutly, undauntedly:* **fortius factum,** *any deed of prowess.*

fortitūdō, -inis, [**forti-** + **tudo**], F., *bravery, prowess.*

fortuītō [abl. of †**fortuītus,** p. p. of verb in **-uo,** cf. **fortuna**], adv., *by chance, accidentally, fortuitously.*

fortūna, -ae, [†**fortu-** (FER + **tus,** cf. **fortuito**) + **na,** F. of **-nus**], F., *fortune, chance, fate, lot* (one's *fortune*), *chances* (**belli**), *success* (good or bad). — Plur., *fortunes, resources, chances* (*means*) *of success.* — Esp., *good fortune, success:* **fortunam temptare,** *try one's chances.*

fortūnātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **fortuno**], as adj., *fortunate, prosperous.*

forum, -ī, [akin to †**fora**], N., (*an open place*), *a market-place.*

fossa, -ae, [F. of **fossus,** p. p. of **fodio,** *dig*], F., *a ditch, a trench.*

fovea, -ae, [?, perh. akin to **foveo,** as a pit for storage], F., *a pitfall.*

frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **frango.**

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, [FRAG], 3. v. a., *break* (as a solid body). — Esp. of ships, *wreck.* — Fig., *break down, crush.*

frāter, -tris, [prob. FER + **ter,** cf. **pater**], M., *a brother.*

frāternus, -a, -um, [**frater** + **nus**], adj., *of a brother, fraternal:* **nomen** (*the name of brothers*).

fraus, fraudis, [?, akin to **frustra**], F., *loss.* Hence, *treachery, deceit.*

fremitus, -tūs, [**fremi-** (st. of **fremo,** *roar*) + **tus**], M., *a murmur, a confused noise, a roar.*

frequēns, -entis, [orig. pres. p. akin to **farcio,** *stuff*], adj., *crowded, numerous, in great numbers.*

frētus, -a, -um, [root akin to **firmus** + **tus**], adj., *relying on, confident in* (on account of).

frīgidus, -a, -um, [†**frigŏ-** (whence **frigeo,** *be cold*) + **dus**], adj., *cold.*

frīgus, -oris, [FRIG (in **frigeo,** etc.) + **us**], N., *cold.* — Plur., *cold* (cold "snaps," frosts).

frōns, frontis, [?, akin to *brow*], F., *brow, face:* **a media fronte,** *from the middle of the forehead.* — Less exactly, *front, brow:* **a fronte,** *in front.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, [**fructu-** + **osus**], adj., *fruitful.*

frūctus, -tūs, [FRU(G) + **tus**], M., *enjoyment.* Hence, (*what one enjoys*), *fruit, crops, income, profit, interest* (from money): **victoriae** (*advantages of victory*).

frūmentārius, -a, -um, [**frumentŏ-** (reduced) + **arius**], adj., *of grain:* **loca** (*fruitful in grain*); **res** (*grain supply, provisions*); **inopia** (*scarcity of grain*).

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, [**frumentā-** (st. of **frumentor**) + **tio**], F., *foraging, gathering grain, harvesting, foraging expedition.*

frūmentor, -tārī, -tātus, [**frumentŏ-**], 1. v. dep., *forage, gather grain, get supplies.*

frūmentum, -ī, [FRU (in **fruor**) + **mentum**], N., *grain* (cf. **fructus**). — Plur., *standing grain, crops.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus, [FRU, cf. **fructus**], 3. v. dep., *enjoy.*

frūstrā [abl. or instr. of st. akin to **fraus**, *loss*], adv., *to no purpose, without effect.*

[**frūx**], frūgis, [FRU(G) in **fruor** as st.], F., *fruit.* — Plur., *crops.*

Fūfius (-sius), -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Cita**.

fuga, -ae, [FUG + **a**], F., *flight:* **fit fuga**, *a rout ensues;* **fugae mandare se**, *take to flight;* **in fugam dare**, *put to flight;* **fugam petere**, *seek safety by flight, escape;* **ex fuga evaserat**, *had escaped from the flying crowd.*

fugātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fugo**.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, [FUG (in **fuga**)], 3. v. a. and n., *fly, fly from, run away.* — Fig., *shun, avoid.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um, [**fugi-** (st. of **fugio**?) + **tivus**], adj., *runaway.* — Plur. as noun, *runaway slaves.*

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**fuga-**], 1. v. a., *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**fumŏ-**], 1. v. n., *smoke.*

fūmus, -ī, [FU (DHU) + **mus**, akin to *dust*], M., *smoke.* — Plur., *smoke* (in several columns).

funda, -ae, [akin to **fundo**], F., *a sling.*

funditor, -tōris, [**funda** (as if verb-st.) + **tor**], M., *a slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, [FUD], 3. v. a., *pour.* — Less exactly, *scatter.* — Esp. of battle, *put to rout, rout.*

fūnebris, -e, [cf. **funus**], adj., *of a funeral.* — N. plur. as noun, *funeral rites.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, [?], 3. v. dep., *perform, discharge* (abl.).

fūnis, -is, [?], M., *a rope.*

fūnus, -eris, [unc. root + **us**], N., (*murder*?), *death, a funeral.*

furor, -ōris, [FUR (cf. **furo**, *rage*) + **or**], M., *madness, frenzy, fury.*

fūrtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of lost verb akin to **fur**, *thief*], N., *theft, a theft.*

fūsilis, -e, [**fuso-** (p. p. of **fundo**) + **lis**, cf. **flexilis**], adj., (*capable of being poured*), *molten* (of metals), *vitrified, red-hot.*

futūrus, see **sum**.

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gabīnius, -ī, [**Gabinŏ-** (cf. **Gabii**) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Aulus Gabinius*, consul with Lucius Piso in B.C. 58.

gaesum, -ī, [Celtic], N., *a javelin.*

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -ī, [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae, [Celtic, meaning *fat*], M., a Gallic and Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. A king of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae, [?, akin to **galerus**, *leather cap*], F., *a helmet* (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -ae, [F. of adj. in **-ius**, **Gallo-** + **ius**], F., *Gaul*, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [**Gallŏ-** + **cus**], adj., *of the Gauls, Gallic.*

gallīna, -ae, [**gallo-** (*cock*) + **ina**], F., *a hen.*

Gallus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of Gaul, Gallic.* — As noun, *a Gaul, the Gauls.* — Also, as a Roman family name. See **Trebius.**

Garumna, -ae, [Celtic], C., a river of S. W. Gaul, now the *Garonne.*

Garumnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees, on the head waters of the Garonne.

Gatēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic people of Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, [†**gavidŏ-**, cf. **avidus**], 2. v. n., *be delighted, rejoice.*

gāvīsus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of **gaudeo.**

Geidumnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Belgian tribe, dependants of the Nervii.

Genāva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Allobroges, at the outlet of Lake Leman, now *Geneva.*

gener, -erī, [?], M., *a son-in-law.*

generātim [as if acc. of †**generatis** (**generā-** + **tis**)], adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, [GEN, *beget,* + **tis** (reduced)], F., *a family, a tribe, a clan, a people.*

genus, -eris, [GEN, *beget,* + **us**], N., *a generation, a race, a family* (*stock*), *a nation, a tribe.* — Less exactly, *a kind, a sort, a class.* — Also, abstractly, *kind, character, nature, method* (**pugnae**): **genus hominum,** *the character of the inhabitants.*

Gergovia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae, [F. of adj. in **-ius**, cf. **Gallia**], F., *Germany,* the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, -a, -um, [**Germanŏ-** + **cus**], adj., *of the Germans, German, Germanic.*

Germānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *German* (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, *the Germans.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, [GES, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., *carry* (indicating a more lively action than **fero**), *carry on, manage, wage* (war), *hold* (a magistracy), *do* (any business). — Pass., *be done, go on* (of operations): **rem bene (male)** (*operate successfully* or otherwise, *carry on operations, succeed well* or *ill*); **negoti bene gerendi,** *of successful action;* **his rebus gestis,** *after these operations;* **res gestae,** *exploits, operations, a campaign.*

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of **gero.**

gladius, -ī, [?], M., *a sword.*

glāns, glandis, [?], F., *a nut, an acorn.* — Also, *a ball* (for shooting).

glēba (glae-), -ae, [?], F., *a clod* (of earth), *a lump.*

glōria, -ae, [akin to **inclutus,** *renowned*], F., *fame, glory.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, [**gloriā-**], 1. v. dep., *glory in, boast of* (abl.).

Gnaeus (Cnēius, Cn.), -ī, [akin to **gnavus,** *active*], M., a Roman prænomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, uncle of **Vercingetorix.**

Gorgobina, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the territory of the Hædui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Gr.], adj., *of the Greeks, Greek.* — As noun, *a Greek, the Greeks.* Cf. **Germanus** for relation of noun and adj.

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a people of the Alps, near Mt. Cenis.

grandis, -e, [?], adj., *large, of great size.*

grātia, -ae, [**gratŏ-** (reduced) + **ia**], F., "gratefulness" (in both Eng. senses of *grateful*), *gratitude* (that one has from others or towards others), *good-will, favor.* Hence, *influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship.* — Esp.: **gratias agere**, *express gratitude, render thanks, thank;* **gratias habere**, *feel gratitude, be grateful;* **gratias [gratiam] referre**, *make a grateful return, pay off an obligation, requite;* **gratiam inire**, *secure the gratitude of any one, conciliate.* — With gen., *for the sake of, on account of, for, to* (for the purpose of): **sui purgandi gratia**, *to excuse one's self.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [**gratulā-** + **tio**, cf. **frumentatio**], F., *a congratulation* (of others or one's self), *rejoicing:* **fit gratulatio**, *there is great rejoicing.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, [†**gratulŏ-** (**gratŏ** + **lus**)], I. v. dep., *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of lost verb], adj., *pleasing, grateful:* **gratum facere**, *do a favor.*

gravis, -e, [for †**garvis**, †**garus**], adj., *heavy.* — Fig., *serious, severe, hard:* **gravioris aetatis**, *of more advanced years;* **si gravius quid acciderit**, *if anything serious should occur;* **caerimonia** (*solemn, binding*); **ne quid gravius statueret**, *that he would not pass any very severe judgment.*

gravitās, -tātis, [**gravi-** + **tas**], F., *weight.* — Fig., *importance, power.*

graviter [**gravi-** + **ter**], adv., *heavily, with great weight, with force.* — Fig., *severely, seriously:* **graviter ferre**, *take to heart, suffer from;* **premere** (*press hard*); **multo gravius exarsit** (*more violently*).

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**gravi-** (as if **gravā-**)], I. v. a., *make heavy* (cf. **levo**). — Pass. as dep., (*make heavy for one's self*), *be reluctant, be unwilling, object.*

Grudiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgian people, dependants of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -tōris, [**gubernā-**, *steer*, + **tor**], M., *a pilot, a helmsman.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**gustŏ-** (st. akin to **gustus**, Eng. *choose*)], I. v. a., *taste, eat.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., *have, hold, keep, occupy, possess:* **sedes**; **equitatum circum se**; **aditum** (*have in itself*, and so *offer*); **castra** (*occupy*); **se habere**, *be;* **quantum in se habet** (*as*

there is in, etc.); **secum habere** or **apud se**, *have with him*, also *detain;* **census** and the like (*hold, conduct*); **contentiones** (*carry on*); **orationem** (*deliver*). — Esp. with p. p. as a sort of continued perfect (whence the perf. of modern languages), *have, hold, keep:* **redempta habere**, *buy up and hold;* **civitates obstrictas** (*keep under obligation*); **equitatum coactum** (*get and keep*). — Also, *treat:* **pro amico.** Hence, *consider* (cf. *hold*): **pro explorato** (*consider certain*). — Esp.: **rationem habere**, *keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of:* **satis habere**, *be satisfied, be content;* **habere quemadmodum oppida defenderent** (*have any means of*, etc.).

Haeduus (Aed-), -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Hædui*, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, *a Hæduan, the Hædui.*

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [freq. of **haereo**, *stick*, cf. **dictito**], I. v. n., *get caught, stick, struggle* (*caught* in a marsh).

hāmus, -ī, [?], M., *a hook.*

harpagō, -ōnis, [Gr. ἁρπάγη (Latinized) + **o**], M., *a hook* (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), *a grappling-iron.*

Harūdes, -um, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland, remaining from the great expedition of the Cimbri.

haud [?], adv., *not* (negativing single words), *not at all.*

Helvēticus, -a, -um, [**Helvetiŏ-** (reduced) + **cus**], adj., *Helvetian* (see **Helvetius**).

Helvētius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Helvetii* (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. **Germanus** for the form. — Plur. as noun, *the Helvetii.*

Helviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um, [Teutonic], adj. (only with **silva**), *Hercynian* (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -tātis, [**hered-**, *heir* (as if **heredi-**), + **tas**], F., *inheritance, an inheritance.*

Hibernia, -ae, [?], F., *Ireland.*

hībernus, -a, -um, [**hiem-** + **ernus**, cf. **nocturnus**], adj., *of winter, winter* (as adj.). — Neut. pl. (sc. **castra**), *winter quarters, a winter encampment.*

hīc [†**hi-** (loc. of **hi-c**) **ce**], adv., *here in this place, there* (of a place just mentioned).

hīc, haec, hōc, hūius, [**hi-** (pron. st.) + **ce**, cf. **ecce, cetera**], dem. pron., (pointing to something near the speaker in *place, time*, or *interest*), *this, these, he, they, this man* (*woman* or *thing*). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than **is**): **hic pagus unus**, *this one canton;* **ex his qui arma ferre possent** (*of these* [before enumerated], *those who*, etc.). — Less commonly, of what follows: **his mandatis** (*the following, as follows, these*). — Esp.: **haec memoria**, *the present generation:* **tempus** (*the*

present) ; **his paucis diebus,** *within a few days.* — **hoc,** neut. abl., used adverbially, *in this respect, on this account, by so much.* — Often where a more definite word is used in Eng.: **his ita respondit** (*to this embassy*). — Often **hic . . . ille,** *the one . . . the other, this* (near by) . . . *the other* (farther off), *this last* (nearer on the page) . . . *the other, the latter . . . the former.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**hiem-** (as if **hiema-**)], I. v. n., *winter, pass the winter.*

hiems (**-mps**), -emis, [?], F., *winter.*

hinc [†**him** (loc. of †**hi**) + **ce**], adv., *from here, hence.*

Hispānia, -ae, [**Hispanŏ-** + **ia** (F. of **-ius**)], F. (of adj., cf. **Gallia**), *Spain.*

Hispānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *Spanish.*

homō, -inis, [prob. **humŏ-** (*the earth*) + **o**], C., *a human being* (cf. **vir,** *a man,* as a male), *a man* (including women).

honestus, -a, -um, [**honos-** (orig. st. of **honor**) + **tus**], adj., *esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.*

honor (**-ōs**), -ōris, [unc. root + **or**], M., *honor, respect:* **honoris causā,** *out of respect.* — Also, *honorable position.*

honōrificus, -a, -um, [**honor** (as if **honori**) -†**ficus** (cf. **beneficus**)], adj., *honorable,* (*giving honor*).

hōra, -ae, [Gr.], F., *an hour* (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, no p. p., [HORR, (orig. HORS, *bristle*) + **us,** prob. used orig. of the sensation called "goose pimples," where the hair seems to stand on end], 2. v. n. and a., *bristle* (see above). Hence, *shudder at, dread.*

horribilis, -e, [**horrŏ-** (as if st. of **horreo**) + **bilis**], adj., *to be shuddered at, frightful, dreadful.*

horridus, -a, -um, [†**horrŏ-** (cf. **horreo**) + **dus**], adj., *bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful.*

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **hortor.**

hortor, -tārī, -tātus, [for **horitor,** freq. of old †**horior,** *urge*]; I. v. dep., *encourage, urge on, urge, address.* — Less exactly, of things, *urge, move, prompt.*

hospes, -itis, [prob. GHAS-PATIS, orig. *host* (*lord of eating*)], M., *a host.* — Also, *a guest, a stranger.* Hence, *a guest-friend* (in the peculiar relation of **hospitium,** which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), *a friend* (of the kind above mentioned): **familiaris et hospes,** *a personal and family friend.*

hospitium, -ī, [**hospit-** + **ium**], N., *the relation of host* (or *guest*). Hence (cf. **hospes**), *friendship:* **hospitium atque amicitia,** *alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship;* **hospitio Ariovisti utebatur,** *was in friendly relations with Ariovistus.*

hostis, -is, [GHAS (cf. **hospes**) +

tis], C., (orig. *guest*), *a stranger, an enemy* (of the state), *the enemy* (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

hūc [**ho-** (dat. of **hi-**, see **hīc**) + **ce**], adv., *hither, here* (in sense of *hither*), *to this* (*place*, etc., cf. **eo**): **huc accedebant,** *to these* [*ships* before mentioned], *were added* (see **accedo**); **accedebat huc,** *to this was added the fact that*, etc.

hūiusmodī, see **hic** and **modus.**

hūmānitās, -tātis, [**humanŏ-** + **tas**], F., *humanity* (as opp. to brutishness), *civilization, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, [st. akin to **homo,** *man*, + **nus**], adj., *civilized, cultivated, refined.*

humilis, -e, [**humŏ-** (*ground*) + **lis**], adj., *low, shallow* (cf. **altus,** *deep*). — Fig., *low, humble, poor:* **Ubios humiliores redegerunt** (*humbled, rendered less important*).

humilitās, -tātis, [**humili-** + **tas**], F., *lowness, shallowness.* — Fig., *humble position, insignificance.*

I

I., for **unus,** etc., *one.*

iaceō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus, [?, cf. **iaculum**], 2. v. n., *lie, lie dead:* **iacentes,** *the slain.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, [?, cf. **iaceo**], 3. v. a., *throw, hurl, cast:* **aggerem** (*throw up*); **ancoras** (*cast, drop*).

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**iactŏ-**], 1. v. a., (freq. of **iacio**), *toss, toss about, bandy about* (of talk), *discuss.*

iactūra, -ae, [**iactu-** + **ra** (F. of **rus**)], F., *a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice* (of men in war), *an offer* (of reward).

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **iacio.**

iaculum, -ī, [†**iacŏ-** (akin to **iacio,** *throw*)], N., *a javelin.*

iam [acc. of pron. st.], adv., *now* (of progressive time, cf. **nunc,** emphatic and instantaneous), *by this time, at last, already, at length;* **iam non,** *no longer;* **iam ante,** *some time before, even before;* **iam utebatur,** *was getting to use;* **iam reverti** (*was at last*, etc.; *was beginning to*, etc.); **nihil iam,** *no longer;* also with no idea of time, *even, in fact.*

ibi [old case-form of **is** (cf. **tibi**)], adv., *there* (in a place before mentioned).

Iccius, -ī, [?], M., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -tūs, [IC (in **ico,** *strike*) + **tus**], M., *a stroke:* **ictus scorpionis** (*a shot of*, etc.).

Īd., for **Idus.**

idcircō [**id** (N. acc. of **is**) **-circo** (case-form of same st. as **circa, circum**)], adv., *for that reason, for this reason, therefore.*

īdem, eadem, idem, [**is dem,** cf. **dum**], dem. adj. pron., *the same.* — Often as noun, *the same thing* (*things*), *the same:* **eadem quaerit,** *makes the same inquiries;* **idem castellum,** *this very fort.*

identidem [cf. **idem** and **tandem**], adv., *repeatedly, again and again.*

idōneus, -a, -um, [?, akin to

idem ?], adj., *fit, suitable, adapted:* **homo** (*capable*); **tempestas** (*favorable*).

Īdūs, -uum, [?, perh. akin to **aestus**], F. plur., *the Ides* (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

īgnis, -is, [?, same word as Sk. **agnis,** *the god of fire*], M., *fire:* **igni necari,** *to be burned to death.* — Plur., *camp-fires.*

īgnōbilis, -e, [in- (g) nobilis], adj., *not famous, obscure.*

īgnōminia, -ae, [†ignomin- (in-(g)nomen, *name*) + ia], F., *want of fame, disgrace.* — Almost concretely, *disgraceful defeat.*

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ignarŏ-, *ignorant*], I. v. a., *fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of.* — Pass., *be unobserved:* **non ignorans,** *not unaware of.*

īgnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus, [in- (unc. which meaning) (g)nosco, *know*], 3. v. n. and a., *overlook, pardon.*

īgnōtus, -a, -um, [in- (g)notus], adj., *unknown, strange.*

ille, -a, -ud, [old **ollus,** fr. pron. root + lus (?)], dem. pron., *that* (of something remote, cf. **hic**). — Often as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), *he, she, it, they:* **hic . . . ille,** *this . . . that, the other, the latter . . . the former.*

illīc [loc. of **ille** + ce, cf. **hic**], adv., *there* (more remote, opposed to **hic,** near by), *in that place* (*nation, country,* etc.): **illic . . . quo,** *in the place to which,* (but with more emphasis than **ibi . . . quo**).

illō [dat. of **ille,** cf. **eo**], adv., *thither, there* (in sense of *thither*), *that way.*

Illyricum, -ī, [?, N. of adj.], N., *Illyria* (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Cæsar's province along with the two Gauls).

imbēcillitās, -tātis, [imbecillŏ- (*weak*), + tas], F., *weakness, feebleness:* **animi** (*feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity*).

imber, imbris, [?], M., *a rainstorm, a rain.*

imitor, -tārī, -tātus, [†imitŏ-, p. p. of †timo (cf. **imago**)], I. v. dep., *imitate, copy.*

immānis, -e, [in-†manus, *good*?], adj., ("uncanny"?), *monstrous, huge, enormous.*

immineō, -minēre, no perf., no p. p., [in-mineo], 2. v. n., *overhang, project.* — Fig., *threaten.*

immissus, p. p. of **immitto.**

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [in-mitto], 3. v. a., *let in, let down* (into), *insert, throw* (upon), *send against.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†immola- (in-mola, *meal*)], I. v. a., (*sprinkle with the sacred meal*), *sacrifice.*

immortālis, -e, [in-mortalis], adj., *immortal.*

immūnis, -e, [in-†munis, cf. **communis** and **munia**], adj., *free from tribute.*

immūnitās, -tātis, [**immuni-** + **tas**], F., *freedom from public burdens.*

imparātus, -a, -um, [**in-paratus**], adj., *unprepared, not ready.*

impedīmentum, -ī, [**impedī-** + **mentum**], N., *a hindrance:* **esse impedimento**, *to hinder.* — Esp. in plur., *baggage, a baggage train* (including the beasts of burden), *pack-horses.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [†**imped-** (**in-pes**, *foot*, as if **impedi-**)], 4. v. a., *entangle, hamper, interfere with.* — Fig., *hinder, embarrass, impede:* **in iure** (*hinder in exercise of*). — **impedītus**, -a, -um, p. p., *hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult* (**navigatio**), *impassable* (**loca**): **esse victoribus nihil impeditum** (*there is no obstacle in the way of*, etc.); **prospectus** (*interrupted*).

impedītus, p. p. of **impedio**.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [**in-pello**], 3. v. a., *drive on.* — Fig., *instigate, incite, impel.*

impendeō, -ēre, [**in-pendeo**, *hang*], 2. v. n., *overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **impendo**, *expend*], adj., *expensive, very high* (of price).

imperātor, -tōris, [**imperā-** + **tor**], M., *commander* (in chief), *general.*

imperātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **impero**], N., *an order, a command:* **ad imperatum**, *at one's command.*

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impero**.

imperfectus, -a, -um, [**in-perfectus**], adj., *unfinished:* **re imperfecta**, *without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful.*

imperītus, -a, -um, [**in-peritus**, *skilled*], adj., *unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in.*

imperium, -ī, [†**imperŏ-** (whence **impero**, cf. **pario**, *get*) + **ium**], N., *command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power* (military), *rule, sway* (both sing. and plur.). — Concrete, *an order, a command.* — Esp.: **novis imperiis studere** (*new forms of government*); **nullo certo imperio** (*command of any particular person*); **imperi aut potestatis**, *military or civil authority.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**imperŏ-** (**in-**†**parus**, cf. **pario**, *get*)], 1. v. a. and n., *demand* (*make requisition for*, prob. orig. meaning), *require* (in same sense). Hence, *order* (in military sense), *rule, command, give orders:* **illo imperante**, *under his command.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-patro**, *bring to pass*], 1. v. a., *accomplish* (anything by a request), *succeed in* (obtaining), *obtain* (a request): **impetro a**, *prevail upon, persuade;* **ab iis impetrari ut**, *they be persuaded to;* **ea re impetrata**, *this being granted;* **si non impetraret**, *if his request was not complied with;* **impetro ut**, etc., *obtain a request to, be allowed to*, etc., *succeed in having;* **impetrari posse**, *could be granted.*

impetus, -tūs, [**in-**†**petus** (cf. **peto**, *aim at*)], M., *a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury:* **facere** (*inroad, charge, invasion*); **is impetus**, *such fury*, etc.; **impetus gladiorum exceperunt**, *re-*

ceived the charge of the enemy with drawn swords.

impius, -a, -um, [**in-pius**], adj., *impious* (offending divine law).

implicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **implico.**

implico, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-itus), [**in-plico**, *fold*], 1. v. a., *entangle, interweave, entwine.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-ploro**, *cry out*], 1. v. a., *implore, beseech.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**in-pono**], 3. v. a., *place upon, mount* (men on horses), *place, impose* (fig.).

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **importo.**

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-porto**, *carry*], 1. v. a., *import.*

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impono.**

imprīmīs [**in primis**], adv., *among the first, especially, particularly* (*more than anything else*).

improbus, -a, -um, [**in-probus**, *good*], adj., *bad, wicked, unprincipled.*

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, [**in-provisus**], adj., *unforeseen:* **improviso** (**de improviso**), *on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares.*

imprūdēns, -entis, [**in-prudens**, *foreseeing*], adj., *not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one's guard, unguarded, not being aware.*

imprūdentia, -ae, [**imprudent- + ia**], F., *ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought.*

impūbēs, -eris (-is), [**in-pubes**], adj., *beardless, immature.* Hence, *chaste, unmarried.*

impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-pugno**, *fight*], 1. v. a. and n., *attack, invade, charge, fight* (in an offensive warfare).

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impello.**

impulsus, -sūs, [**in-pulsus**, cf. **impello**, *drive on*], M., *impulse.* — Fig., *instigation.*

impūne [N. of **impunis** (**in-poena**, *punishment*, weakened and decl. as adj.)], adv., *with impunity.*

impūnitās, -tātis, [**impuni- + tas**], F., *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

īmus, -a, -um, superl. of **inferus.**

1. **in-** [cf. Eng. *un-*], neg. particle, only in composition.

2. **in** [?, cf. Eng. *on;* cf. also **inde**], prep. *a.* With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. **ad**, with terminus at or near), *into, upon, within, to, against, among:* **in volgus elatum est** (*spread abroad among*). — Of time, *for, to, till.* — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, *towards, against, upon:* **in eos exempla edere** (*visit upon*); **in se voluntas** (*good will towards*). — Often where Eng. has a different conception, *in, on:* **abdere in silvas**, *hide in the woods;* **in civitatis conlocasse** (*had married in*, etc.); **in utram partem fluat** (*in which direction*, etc.); **in conspectum venire** (*in sight*). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, *in, according to, with, to:* **mirum in modum** (cf. **quem ad modum**); **in eam sententiam**, *to this purport;* **in speciem**, *with the appearance;* **in**

altitudinem, *in height,* cf. *to the height of.* — Esp.: **in Caesarem incidit,** *happened to meet Cæsar;* **in perpetuum,** *for ever;* **in Morinos** (*into the country of,* etc.); **in catenas conicere,** *throw into prison;* **in fugam conicere,** *put to flight.*

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), *in, on, among, within:* **in tanta propinquitate** (*under circumstances of, in a case of*); **in tanto imperio P. R.,** *when the R. people had such dominion.* — Often, *in the case of, in respect to:* **in eo,** *in his case, in regard to him.* — Esp.: **in Meldis** (*in the country of*); **in ancoris,** *at anchor;* **in eo manere,** *abide by,* etc.; **in praesentia,** *for the present;* **in potestate,** *under the power;* **in opere esse,** *to be engaged in the work;* **in illo vestigio temporis positum** (*depending on,* etc.); **in eo constare** (*depend upon,* etc.). — In comp. as adv., *in, upon, towards,* and the like.

inānis, -e, [?], adj., *empty.* — Fig., *empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.*

incautē [old case-form of **incautus**], adv., *incautiously, carelessly.*

incautus, -a, -um, [**in-cautus,** p. p. of **caveo**], adj., *incautious, off one's guard.*

incendium, -ī, [**in-†candium,** cf. **incendo**], N., *a burning, a fire:* **incendia aedificiorum,** *the burning of buildings,* each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [**in-†cando,** cf. **candeo,** *glow*], 3. v. a., *set fire to, burn.* — Fig., *rouse, excite, fire.*

incēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incendo.**

inceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incipio.**

incertus, -a, -um, [**in-certus**], adj., *uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy,* (**rumores**): **itinera** (*obscure, blind*); **ordinibus** (*in disorder*).

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [**in-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall upon.* — Less exactly and fig., *fall in with, meet, occur, happen.*

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**in-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut into, half cut down* (trees).

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**in-capio,** *take*], 3. v. a. and n., *begin, undertake.*

incīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incīdo.**

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incito.**

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-cito**], 1. v. a., *set in motion* (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), *urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse.* — **incitātus,** -a, -um, p. p., *excited to anger, angered, spurred on:* **incitato equo,** *at full gallop;* **incitato cursu,** *at full speed.* — Esp.: **se aestus incitare** (*rush in*).

incōgnitus, -a, -um, [**in-cognitus**], adj., *unknown.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, no p. p., [**in-colo**], 3. v. a. and n., *inhabit, live, dwell:* **incolendi causa,** *for a permanent abode.*

incolumis, -e, [?], adj., *unharmed, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured.*

incommodē [old case-form of **incommodus**), adv., *inconveniently, unfortunately, badly, ill.*

incommodus, -a, -um, [**in-commodus**], adj., *inconvenient, unfortunate.*

— Esp., **incommodum**, N. as noun, *disadvantage*, *misfortune*, euphemism for *defeat*, *loss*, *disaster*, *harm*.

incrēdibilis, -e, [**in-credibilis**], adj., *incredible*, *marvellous*, *extraordinary*.

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**increpitŏ-** (cf. **increpo**)], 1. v. a., *upbraid*, *taunt*, *revile*.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, [**in-cumbo**], 3. v. n., *lie upon*. — Esp., fig., *bend to*, *exert one's self*: **animo et opibus in** (*bend one's mind and energies to*).

incursiō, -ōnis, [**in-†cursio**, cf. **incurro**, *rush upon*], F., *an inroad*, *an attack*, *an invasion*, *a raid*.

incursus, -sūs, [**in-cursus**, cf. **incurro**, *rush upon*], M., *an inroad*, *an attack*.

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-†causo**, cf. **causa**, *cause*], 1. v. a., *upbraid*, *rebuke*, *chide*.

inde [**†im** (loc. of **is**, cf. **interim**, **hinc**) **-de** (form akin to **-dem**, **dum**, cf. **indu**, old form of **in**)], adv., *from there*, *thence*, *from the place* (which, etc.), *after that*, *then*.

indicium, -ī, [**indic-** + **ium**], N., *information*: **per indicium**, *through an informer*.

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [**in-dico**, *say*], 3. v. a., *order*, *proclaim*, *appoint*.

1. **indictus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **indico**.

2. **indictus**, -a, -um, [1. **in-dictus**], adj., *unpleaded* (**causa**, cf. **dico**), *untried*, *unheard*.

indīgnē [old case-form of **indignus**], adv., *unworthily*, *shamefully* (unworthily of one's self or of the circumstances).

indīgnitās, -tātis, [**indigno-** + **tas**], F., *unworthiness*, *disgrace* (cf. **indigne**), *outrage*, *an indignity*.

indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus, [**indignŏ-**], 1. v. dep., *be indignant* (deem unworthy of one's self).

indīgnus, -a, -um, [**in-dignus**], adj., *unworthy*.

indīligēns, -entis, [**in-diligens**], adj., *negligent*, *careless*, *heedless*.

indīligenter [**in-diligenter**, cf. **indiligens**], adv., *carelessly*, *negligently*.

indīligentia, -ae, [**indiligent-** + **ia**], F., *carelessness*, *want of care*, *want of energy* (application).

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**in-duco**], 3. v. a., *draw on*. Hence, *cover*: **scuta pellibus**. — Also, *lead on*. Hence, *induce*, *instigate*, *impel*.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **induco**.

indulgentia, -ae, [**indulgent-** (pres. p. of **indulgeo**) + **ia**], F., *indulgence*, *favor*, *clemency*.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultus, [?, perh. st. compounded of **in-dulcis**, *pleasant towards*], 2. v. n., *favor*, *treat with indulgence*.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, [?, cf. **exuo**], 3. v. a., *put on*. Hence, fig. with reflex., *pierce*, *impale* (one's self): **se vallis**; **se stimulis** (*be pierced by*).

industriē [old case-form of **industrius**, *active*], adv., *actively*, *promptly*, *with energy*.

indūtiae (**indūc-**), -ārum, [?], F. plur., *a truce*, *an armistice*.

Indūtiomārus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, [**in-eo**], irr. v. a., *enter upon, go into.* — Fig., *adopt, make, begin, gain, secure.* — Esp.: **inita aestate,** *at the beginning of summer;* **inire rationem,** *take an account;* **inire consilium,** *form a plan;* **inire numerum,** *enumerate.*

inermis, -e (-us, etc.), [**in-arma**], adj., *unarmed, defenceless.*

iners, -ertis, [**in-ars,** *skill*], adj., *shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly.*

īnfāmia, -ae, [**infami-** (*disreputable*) + **ia**], F., *dishonor, disgrace:* **latrocinia nullam habent infamiam** (*bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable*); **infamia et indignitas,** *shame and disgrace.*

īnfāns, -antis, [**in-fans,** pres. p. of **for,** *speak*], C., *a child, an infant, an infant child.*

īnfectus, -a, -um, [1. **in-factus**], adj., *not done.* — Esp.: **re infecta,** *without success,* cf. **imperfectus**; **re infecta discedere** (*without accomplishing one's purpose*).

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**in-fero**], irr. v. a., *bring in, import, put upon:* **in equum** (*mount one on horseback*); **bellum** (*make,* of offensive war); **signa** (*make a charge, advance*); **vulnera** (*inflict*). — Fig., *cause, inflict, commit:* **periculum** (*create, cause*); **spem** (*inspire*); **causam** (*adduce, assign, allege*).

īnferus, -a, -um, [unc. st. + **rus** (cf. **superus**)], adj., *low:* **inferior pars,** *the lower end;* **ab inferiore parte,** *down below,* of a river. — Superl., **īnfimus** (**īmus**), *lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom:* **infimus collis,** *the foot of the hill,* **ad infimum,** *at the bottom.* — Neut. as noun, *the bottom.*

īnfēstus, -a, -um, [**in-festus,** fr. **fendo,** *strike*], adj., *hostile, in hostile array:* **infestis signis,** *arrayed for fight, in a charge, in order of attack.*

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [?, **in-facio**], 3. v. a., (*work into?*), *dye, stain.*

īnfidēlis, -e, [**in-fidelis**], adj., *unfaithful, wavering in faith.*

īnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [2. **in-figo**], 3. v. a., *fasten in, fix in, fix on.*

īnfimus, see **inferus.**

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, [**in-finitus**], adj., *unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite.*

īnfirmitās, -tātis, [**infirmŏ-** + **tas**], F., *feebleness, unsteadiness, inconstancy, fickleness.*

īnfirmus, -a, -um, [**in-firmus,** *strong*], adj., *weak, feeble:* **animus** (*feeble courage, want of courage*); **arbores** (*unsound, weakened*); **infirmior,** *less powerful;* **naves** (*unseaworthy*).

īnfīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of **infigo.**

īnflectō, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexus, [**in-flecto**], 3. v. a., *bend down.* — Pass., or with reflex., *become bent.*

īnflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of **inflecto.**

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, [**in-fluo**], 3. v. n., *flow into, empty into.*

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [**in-fodio**], 3. v. a., *dig in, bury.*

īnfrā [instr. (?) of **inferus**], adv. and prep. with acc., *below, farther down, less than.*

ingēns, -entis, [**in-gens,** *not be-*

longing to the kind (?)], adj., *huge, enormous, very large.*

ingrātus, -a, -um, [**in-gratus**], adj., *unpleasing.*

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus, [**in-gradior**, *step*], 3. v. dep., *march into, enter, march in.*

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**in-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw into, throw upon.* — Less exactly, *place in, put on, embark.* — Fig., *inspire.*

iniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **inicio**.

inimīcitia, -ae, [**inimicŏ- + tia**], F., *enmity, hostility.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, [**in-amicus**], adj., *unfriendly, hostile.* — As noun, *an enemy* (personal, or not in war, cf. **hostis**, *an enemy of the state*, or *an enemy at war*), *a rival, an opponent.*

inīquitās, -tātis, [**iniquŏ- + tas**], F., *inequality, irregularity, unevenness.* — Fig., *unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness.*

inīquus, -a, -um, [**in-aequus**], adj., *uneven.* — Fig., *unjust* (of persons and things), *unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous.* — Compar., **iniquior locus**, *less favorable position.*

initium, -ī, [**in-†itium** (**itŏ- + ium**), cf. **ineo**], N., *a beginning, the first of:* **initium capere, facere**, *begin, start;* **transeundi** (*the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to*, etc.); **initium fit ab**, *the start is first made at* (also lit.); **fugae factum** (*the first tendency to fly was shown*); **retinendi** (*the first detention*); **silvarum** (*the edge*); **Remorum** (*boundary*); **artificiorum initia** (*the first principles, the first knowledge of*, etc.).

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [**in-iungo**], 3. v. a., *attach to.* — Fig., *impose upon* (**his . . . servitutem**).

iniūria, -ae, [**in-ius** (*right*) + **ia**, cf. **iniurius**], F., *injustice, outrage, wrong, violence* (as opposed to right), *abuse.*

iniūssū [**in-iussu**, abl. of **iuscus**], adv., *without orders.*

inlātus (**ill-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **infero**.

inligātus (**ill-**), -a, -um, p. p. of **inligō** (**ill-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-ligo**, *bind*], 1. v. n., *bind on, attach, fasten to.*

inlustris (**ill-**), -e, [**in-lustrŏ-** (or kindred st.), cf. **lustro**, *light*], adj., *distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous:* **inlustriore loco natus**, *of any prominence.*

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [**in-nascor**], 3. v. dep., *grow in, spring up in.* — Fig., *be inspired, be excited.* — **innātus**, p. p. as adj., *natural, innate.*

innātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **innascor**.

innītor, -nītī, -nīsus (-nīxus), [**in-nitor**], 3. v. dep., *lean upon, support one's self on.* — **innīxus**, p. p. in present sense, *leaning on.*

innīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of **innitor**.

innocēns, -entis, [**in-nocens**, p. of **noceo**, *injure*], adj., *harmless, guiltless, innocent.*

innocentia, -ae, [**innocent- + ia**], F., *blamelessness, integrity.*

inopia, -ae, [**inop-** (*needy*) + **ia**], F., *scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.*

inopīnāns, -antis, [**in-opinans**], adj., *unsuspecting, not suspecting.*

inquam, [?], def. v. n., *say.*

inrīdeō (irr-), -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, [**in-rideo,** *laugh*], 2. v. n., *ridicule, laugh at.*

inrīdiculē (irr-), [old case-form of **inridiculus**], adv., *without humor.*

inrumpō (irr-), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**in-rumpo**], 3. v. n. and a., *break in, break into, storm.*

inruptiō (irr-), -ōnis, [**in-** †**ruptio,** cf. **eruptio** and **inrumpo**], F., *a breaking in, an attack* (on a fortified place), *raid, incursion.*

īnsciēns, -entis, [**in-sciens**], adj., *not knowing, unaware:* **insciente Caesare,** *without C.'s knowledge.*

īnscientia, -ae, [**in-scient-** + **ia**], F., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.*

īnscius, -a, -um, [**in-** †**scius,** cf. **conscius** and **scio**], adj., *not knowing, unaware, ignorant.*

īnsecūtus, -a, -um, p p. of **insequor.**

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [**in-sequor**], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue.*

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [**in-sero,** *join*], 3. v. a., *insert, stick in.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, [†**insid-** (cf. **insideo,** *sit in*) + **ia**], F. plur., *an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, treachery:* **per insidias,** *with deception, treacherously.*

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus, [**insidiā-**], I. v. dep., *lie in wait, make treacherous attacks.*

īnsīgnis, -e, [**in-signŏ-,** *mark,* decl. as adj.], adj., *marked, memorable, signal.* — **insigne,** N. as noun, *signal, sign, decoration* (of soldiers).

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus, [**in-salio**], 4. v. a., *leap upon.*

īnsimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **insimulo.**

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-simulo,** *make like*], I. v. a., *charge, accuse.*

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**insinuo**], I. v. a. and n., *wind in.* — With reflex., *work one's way into, slip in.*

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**in-sisto**], 3. v. a. and n., *stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing.* — Fig., *adopt* (**rationem pugnae**), *devote one's self* (**in bellum**).

īnsolenter [**insolent-** (cf. **soleo,** *be wont*) + **ter**], adv., (*in an unusual manner*), *insultingly, insolently.*

īnspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in-specto**], I. v. a. and n., *look upon, look on:* **inspectantibus nobis,** *before our eyes.*

īnstābilis, -e, [**in-stabilis,** cf. **sto**], adj., *unsteady.* — Fig., *changeable, uncertain.*

īnstar [**instā** + **ris** (?, reduced)], N. indecl., (*an image*), *in the likeness of* (with gen.), *like, in the manner of.*

īnstīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**in-stigŏ-** (STIG (*goad*) + **us**)], I. v. a., *goad, stimulate, drive on, urge on.*

īnstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [**in-statuo**], 3. v. a., *set up, set in order, array:* **opus** (*finish*). — Also, *provide, procure, get ready.* — Also, *set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt* (a plan, etc.), *begin, set on foot.* — So, *teach, train, habituate.*

īnstitūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **instituo**], N., *a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.*

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [**in-sto**, *stand*], 1. v. n., *be at hand, press on.* — Fig., *threaten, impend, menace:* **tempus instantis belli**, *time of active, immediate war.*

īnstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **instruo.**

īnstrūmentum, -ī, [**instru-** (cf. **instruo**) + **mentum**], N., *furniture, equipment, tools and stores* (of soldiers).

instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [**in-struo**, *build*], 3. v. a., *build, fit up, fit out, array, draw up* (of troops).

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, [p. p. of †**insuefacio**], p. p., *trained.*

īnsuētus, -a, -um, [**in-suetus**], adj., *unaccustomed, unused.*

īnsula, -ae, [akin to **in-salio**?], F., ('tussocks' in a swamp) *an island.*

īnsuper [**in-super**, *above*], adv., *on the top, above, at the top.*

integer, -gra, -grum, [**in-**†**teger** (TAG, in **tango**, *touch*, + **rus**)], adj., *untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh;* as noun, *fresh troops.* — Esp., *not entered upon* (of business); **re integra**, *before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.*

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [**in-tego**], 3. v. a., *cover over, face* (**turris coriis**).

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [**inter-lego**], 3. v. a., (*pick out* [*distinguish*] *between*), *learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.*

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [**in-tendo**], 3. v. a., *stretch, strain.* — Esp. of the mind or eyes, *be intent, be absorbed:* **oculis intentis**, *with eyes intent;* **animis intentis in ea re**, *with their minds absorbed in this.*

intentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intendo.**

inter [**in** + **ter**, cf. **alter**], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., *between, among:* **arbitros inter civitatis dat** (*to decide between*); **inter aciem**, *in the line.* — Of time, *within, for.* — Often in a reciprocal sense: **inter se**, *with, to, from*, etc., *each other, one another;* **cohortati inter se**, *encouraging each other, one another;* **obsides inter eos dandos curavit**, *caused them to exchange hostages.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**inter-cedo**], 3. v. n., *come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass* (of time): **ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere**, *exist between them and the Hædui.*

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intercipio.**

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**inter-capio**, *take*], 3. v. a., *intercept, cut off.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**inter-claudo**, *shut*], 3. v. a., *cut off, shut off, block* (roads): **fugam** (*stop, cut off*).

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [**inter-dico**], 3. v. a., (*intervene by an order*), *forbid, prohibit:* **Gallia Romanis interdici** (*exclude the Romans*, etc., *by order*); **aqua atque igni** (*expel*, by forbidding fire and water, the regular form of exile); **interdicere ne**, *forbid to, order not to.*

interdiū [**inter-diu** (acc. or abl.?

akin to **dies**)], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

interdum [inter **dum** (orig. acc.)], adv., *for a time, sometimes.*

intereā [**inter ea** (prob. abl.)], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itūrus, [**inter-eo** (*go into pieces?*, cf. **interficio**)], irr. v. n., *perish, die, be killed.*

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **interficio.**

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**inter-facio**], 3. v. a., (*cut to pieces*, cf. **intereo**), *kill, put to death.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**inter-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw in* (between). — Pass., *lie between, intervene:* **spatio interiecto**, *intervening*, i.e. *leaving a short interval*; **portubus interiectis** (*lying at intervals*); **sagittariis** (*thrown in at intervals*).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intericio.**

interim [loc. of †**interus**, cf. **inter, interior**], adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, -us, [comp. of †**interus** (**in-terus**, cf. **alter**)], adj., *inner, interior.* — Masc. as noun: **interiores**, *men in the interior, men in the town.*

interitus, -tūs, [**inter-itus**, cf. **intereo**], *destruction, death.*

intermissus, see **intermitto.**

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**inter-mitto**], 3. v. a. and n., (*let go between*), *leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease:* **neque diem neque noctem** (*not cease day or night*); **spatiis intermissis**, *leaving intervals;* **brevi tempore intermisso**, *waiting a short time;* **spatio intermisso**, *after a time;* **triduo intermisso** (*leaving an interval of*, etc.); **nocte intermissa**, *a night intervening;* **flumen intermittit** (*discontinue, leave a vacant place*); **subeuntes non intermiserunt** (*did not cease*, etc.); **intermissa profectione** (*delaying*); **vento intermisso** (*ceasing, failing*); **nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis**, *ceasing their toil in the night time;* **tempus ab opere**, *at any time cease the work;* **diem quin**, etc. (*let a day pass without*, etc.); **intermissae trabes** (*separated*); **intermissis magistratibus**, *passed over for a year;* **pars oppidi intermissa a flumine** (*left unprotected*); **planities intermissa collibus** (*broken by, lying between*).

interneciō, -ōnis, [**inter-†necio**, same root as **neco**, *kill*], F., *extermination, annihilation* (**exercitus**).

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**inter-†pello**, cf. **appello**, -āre], 1. v. a., *interrupt, interfere with.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**inter-pono**], 3. v. a., *put in between* (lit. and fig.), *interpose, allege* (an excuse to break off something): **nulla suspicione belli interposita**, *no suspicion of war appearing to hinder;* **fidem reliquis interponere** (*give a promise not to* do something); **decretum** (*put in, introduce*, into the affairs of the Gauls); **nulla dubitatione interposita**, *with no hesitation to prevent*, etc.

interpres, -pretis, [**inter-†pres** (akin to **pretium**?)], C., *a mediator, an interpreter.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus, [**inter-pret-**], 1. v. dep., *interpret, explain.*

interrogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **interrogo**.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**inter-rogo**], 1. v. a., (*ask at intervals*), *question*, *interrogate*, *ask*.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**inter-rumpo**], 3. v. a., *break off* (between two points), *break down* (bridges), *destroy*.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [**inter-scindo**], 3. v. a., *cut off* (between two points), *break down*, *tear down*.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [**inter-sum**], irr. v. n., *be between*, *be among*, *be in*, *be engaged in*: **non amplius intersit**, *there is an interval of not more than*, etc.; **proelio, divinis rebus** (*be engaged in*, *take part in*). — Esp., impers., *it is of importance*, *it interests*, *it concerns*; with neg., *it makes no difference*.

intervāllum, -ī, [**inter-vallus**, distance between stakes in a rampart], N., *distance* (between two things), *distance apart*, *interval*.

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**inter-venio**], 4. v. n., *come between*, *come up* (at a particular juncture), *arrive*.

interventus, -tūs, [**inter-†ventus**, cf. **eventus** and **intervenio**], M., *a coming* (to interrupt something), *intervention*.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [**in-texo**], 3. v. a., *weave in*, *weave together*.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intexo**.

intoleranter [**intolerant-** (*not enduring*) + **ter**], adv., (*with no patience or restraint over one's self*), *fiercely*, *violently*.

intrā [instr. (?) of **†interus**, cf. **inter** and **extra**], adv. and prep. with acc., *into*, *within*, *inside*.

intrītus, -a, -um, [**in-tritus** (p. p. of **tero**, *wear*)], adj., *unworn*. — Fig., *unexhausted*, *unwearied*.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**†interŏ-**], 1. v. a., *enter*, *go in*.

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**intro-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead in*, *bring in*, *march in* (troops).

introeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, [**intro-eo**], irr. v. a. and n., *enter*, *come in*.

introitus, -tūs, [**intro-itus**, cf. **introeo**], M., *an entrance*, *an approach* (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intromitto**.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**intro-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go in*, *send in*. — With reflex. or in pass., *rush in*: **intromissus**, *rushing in*.

intrōrsus [**intro-vorsus** (petrified nom., p. p. of **verto**, *turn*)], adv., *into the interior*, *inside*, *within*.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptūrus, [**intro-rumpo**], 3. v. n., *break in*, *burst in*.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus (-tūtus), [**in-tueor**], 2. v. dep., *gaze upon*, *gaze at*, *cast one's eyes upon*.

intulī, see **infero**.

intus [**in** + **tus**], adv., *within*.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, [**in-usitatus**], adj., *unwonted*, *unaccustomed*: **inusitatior**, *less familiar*.

inūtilis, -e, [**in-utilis**], adj., *of no use*, *unserviceable*. — In a pregnant sense, *unfavorable*.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [in-venio], 4. v. a., *find*, (come upon, cf. **reperio**, *find by search*), *learn*.

inventor, -tōris, [**in**- †**ventor**, cf. **invenio**], M., *a discoverer*, *an inventor*.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **invenio**.

inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, -rātūrus, [**in-veterasco**], 3. v. n., *grow old in*, *become established in*.

invictus, -a, -um, [**in-victus**], adj., *unconquered*. — Also, *unconquerable*, *invincible*.

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, [**invideo**, *see*], 2. v. n. and a., (*look askance at*), *envy*, *be jealous of*, *grudge*.

invidia, -ae, [**invidŏ**- (*envious*) + **ia**], F., *envy*, *odium*.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [**in-violatus**], adj., *inviolate*. — Also (cf. **invictus**), *inviolable*, *sacred*.

invīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **invideo**.

invītātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **invito**.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a., *invite*, *request*, *attract*.

invītus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *unwilling*. — Often rendered as adv., *against one's will*.

ipse, -a, -um, [**is-potis** (?)], intens. pron., *self*, *himself*, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. **sui**, reflex., referring to the subject), *he*, etc. (emph.), *he himself*, etc.: **hoc ipso tempore**, *at this very time*; **ipse per se**, *in and of itself*; **inter se** (regular reciprocal), *each other*, *with each other*, *by each other*, etc.

īrācundia, -ae, [**iracundŏ**- + **ia**], F., *wrath* (as a permanent quality, cf. **ira**, a temporary feeling), *irascibility*, *anger*, *passion*, *animosity*.

īrācundus, -a, -um, [**ira** + **cundus**], adj., *of a violent temper*, *passionate*, *irascible*.

is, ea, id, [pron. I], dem. pron., *this* (less emph. than **hic**), *that* (unemph.), *these*, *those*, etc., *the*, *a*, *he*, *she*, *it*: **quae pars ea**, etc., *the part which*, etc.; **eo deceptus quod**, etc. (*by the fact that*, etc.); **et id**, *and that too*; **ea quae**, *the things which*, *what*; **Rhodanus influit et is transitur** (*and this river*, etc.); **cum ea ita sint**, *since this is so*; **is locus quo**, *a place where*; **neque eam plenissimam**, *and that not a very full one*; **manere in eo quod**, etc., *abide by what*. — Abl. N., **eo**, *the* (old Eng. instrumental), *so much*, *on that account*, *therefore*: **eo magis**, *all the more*; **eo gravius**, *so much the more severely*.

iste, -a, -ud, [is-te (cf. **tum**, **tantus**, etc.)], dem. pron., *that*, *that of yours*.

ita [I + **ta** (instr. (?) of TA)], adv., *so*, *in such a way*, *in this way*, *thus*, *to such an extent*, *as follows*: **ut . . . ita**, *as . . . so*, *though . . . yet*, *both . . . and*; **ita . . . ut**, *in proportion as*, *as*; **non ita**, *not so very*, *not very*.

Ītalia, -ae, [†**Italŏ**- (reduced) + **ia** (F. of **ius**)], F., *Italy*.

itaque [ita que], adv., *and so*, *accordingly*, *therefore*.

item [I-tem (acc. ?, cf. **idem**)], adv., *in like manner*, *so also*, *in the same way* (before mentioned).

iter, itineris, [st. fr. I (*go*) + unc. term.], N., *a road*, *a march*, *a way*, *a route*, *a course*, *a journey*: **in**

itinere, *on the road;* **in eo itinere,** *on the way;* **iter facere,** *march, travel;* **iter dare,** *allow to pass;* **itinere prohibere,** *forbid to pass, keep from passing;* **magnis itineribus,** *by forced marches;* **tutum iter,** *a safe passage.*

iterum [I + **terus,** cf. **alter**], adv., *a second time, again:* **semel atque iterum,** *again and again.*

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with **portus**), the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne.

iuba, -ae, [?], F., *the mane.*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus, [prob. **ius-habeo,** cf. **praebeo**], 2. v. a., *order, command, bid.*

iūdicium, -ī, [**iudic-** (in **iudex,** *judge*) + **ium**], N., *a judgment,* (judicial), *a trial, an opinion* (expressed officially); *an opinion* (generally), *advice:* **optimum iudicium facere,** *express* (by some act) *a very high opinion;* **iudicio,** *by design;* often translated by *court.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**iudic-** (in **iudex,** *judge*)], I. v. a., *formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider:* **nihil gravius de civitate** (*think nothing harsh about,* etc.).

iugum, -ī, [IUG (in **iungo**) + **um**], N., *a yoke;* **sub iugum mittere** (an insult inflicted on a conquered army). Hence, *a ridge, a crest* (of a row of hills).

iūmentum, -ī, [IUG- (?) + **mentum**], N., *a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse.*

iūnctūra, -ae, [**iunctu-** + **ra** (F. of **-rus**)], F., *a joining, a joint:* **quantum distabat iunctura,** *as far as the distance apart,* of two things joined.

iūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **iungo.**

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, [IUG], 3. v. a., *join, unite, attach together.* — In pass. or with reflex., *unite with, attach one's self to.*

iūnior, comp. of **iuvenis.**

Iūnius, -ī, [?, prob. **iuveni-** + **ius,** but cf. **Iuno**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Decimus Iunius Brutus,* see **Brutus.** — Also, *Quintus Iunius,* a Spaniard in Cæsar's service.

Iuppiter, Iovis, [**Iovis-pater**], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, [Celtic], M., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running N. E. from the Rhone to the Rhine, separating the Sequani and the Helvetii.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**iur-** (st. of **ius**)], I. v. n., *swear, take an oath.*

iūs, iūris, [YU (akin to IUG) + **us**], N., *justice, right, rights* (collectively), *rights over* (anything), *claims.*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, [see the two words], N., *an oath.*

iūssū [abl. of †**iussus**], used as adv., *by order, by command.*

iūstitia, -ae, [**iusto-** + **tia**], F., *justice* (just behavior), *sense of justice, fair dealing.*

iūstus, -a, -um, [**ius** + **tus**], adj., *just, lawful.* — Also, *complete, perfect, regular:* **populi Romani iustissimum esse imperium,** *that the Romans were best entitled to dominion.*

iuvenis, -e, [?], adj., *young.* — As noun, *a young man* (not over 45), *a youth:* **iuniores**, *the younger soldiers.*

iuventūs, -tūtis, [**iuven-** (orig. st. of **iuvenis**) + **tus**], F., *youth.* — Concretely, *the youth, the young men.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, [?], 1. v. a., *help, aid, assist.*

iūxtā [instr. (?) of †**iuxtus**, sup. of †**iugis** (IUG + **is**)], adv. and prep. with acc., *next, near, near by.*

K

Kal., for **Kalendae** and its cases.

Kalendae (**Cal-**), -ārum, [F. plur. of †**calendus**, p. of verb akin to **calo**, *call*], F. plur., *the Calends* (the first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were *announced* to the assembled people).

L

L., for **Lucius.**

L (ↆ), [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation], a sign for **quīnquāgintā.**

Laberius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See **Durus.**

Labiēnus, -ī, [?, perh. **labia** (*lips*) + **enus**], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Titus Atius Labienus*, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the civil war on the side of Pompey.

labor, -ōris, [RABH (*seize*) + **or** (for **-os**)], M., *toil, exertion* (in its disagreeable aspect), *labor* (as painful), *trouble, hardship.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus, [unc., cf. **lăbō**, *totter*], 3. v. dep., *slip, slide, fall.* — Fig., *commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**labor-**], 1. v. n., *toil, exert one's self:* **id contendere et laborare ne**, *strive and be anxious not to have*, etc.; **animo laborare**, *contrive, revolve in one's mind anxiously.* — Also, *suffer labor, be hard pressed, labor.*

labrum, -ī, [LAB (in **lambo**, *lick*, cf. **labia**, *lips*) + **rum**], N., *the lip.* — Less exactly, *the edge* (of a horn, of a ditch), *the rim* (of a cup).

lāc, lactis, [?], N., *milk.*

lacessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus, [st. akin to **lacio** (*entice*) + unc. term], 3. v. n., *irritate, provoke.* — Esp., *attack, harass, assail, skirmish with:* **iniuriā Haeduos** (*wantonly harass*).

lacrima, -ae, [†**dakru-** + **ma**], F., *a tear.*

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**lacrima-**], 1. v. a. and n., *weep, shed tears.*

lacus, -ūs, [?], M., *a reservoir, a lake.*

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, [unc.], 3. v. a., *wound, injure.* — Fig., esp., *break* (one's word, etc.), *violate.*

laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of **laedo.**

laetitia, -ae, [**laetŏ-** + **tia**], F., *joy, gladness* (cf. **laetus**).

laetus, -a, -um, [unc. root (perh. akin to *glad*) + **tus**], adj., *joyful* (of the inner feeling), *rejoicing, glad*.

languidē [old case-form of **languidus**], adv., *with little energy, feebly*.

languidus, -a, -um, [cf. **langueo**, *be weary*], adj., *spiritless, listless, languid:* **languidior**, *with less spirit*.

languor, -ōris, [LANG (in **langueo**, *be weary*) + **or**], M., *want of spirit, listlessness, weariness*.

lapis, -idis, [?], M., *a stone* (to throw, etc.). — Collectively, *stone, stones*.

lāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **labor**.

laqueus, -ī, [LAC (in **lacio**, *entice*) + **eus**], M., *a slip-noose*.

largior, -īrī, -ītus, [**largŏ-**, *abundant*], 4. v. dep., *give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with*. — Also, *give bribes, give presents*.

largiter [**largŏ-** (*abundant*) + **ter**], adv., *lavishly:* **largiter posse**, *possess abundant influence*.

largītiō, -ōnis, [**largī-** (st. of **largior**) + **tio**], F., *lavish giving, bribery*.

lassitūdō, -dinis, [**lassŏ-** (*weary*) + **tudo**, cf. **fortitudo**], F., *weariness, exhaustion*.

lātē [old case-form of **latus**], adv., *widely:* **latius**, *too far;* **longe lateque**, *far and wide*.

latebra, -ae, [**latē-** (in **lateo**) + **bra**], F., *a hiding-place*.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., *lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed*.

lātitūdō, -dinis, [**latŏ-** + **tudo**] F., *breadth, width*.

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii.

latrō, -ōnis, [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek + **o**], M., *a mercenary* (?), *a robber*.

latrōcinium, -ī, [**latron-** + **cinium**, cf. **ratiocinor**], N., *freebooting, robbery, highway robbery*.

lātus, -a, -um, [prob. for †**platus**, cf. Eng. *flat*], adj., *broad, wide, extensive*.

latus, lateris, [prob. **latŏ-**], N., *the side* (of the body). — Also, generally, *a side, a flank, an end* (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um, [for **tlatus**, TLA (cf. **tollo**, **tuli**) + **tus**], p. p. of **fero**.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**laud-**], 1. v. a., *praise, commend*.

laus, laudis, [?], F., *praise, credit, glory, merit* (thing deserving praise).

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), [?], 1. v. a., *wash*. — In pass. used reflexively, *bathe*.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**laxŏ-**, *loose*], 1. v. a., *loosen, open out, extend*.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, [**legā-** (*despatch*) + **tio**], F., (*a sending* or *commission*), *an embassy, an embassy* (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -ī, [prop. p. p. of **lēgo**, *commission, despatch*], M., *an ambassador, envoy*. — Also, *a lieutenant, a legatus*. To a Roman commander were assigned (**legare**) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or en-

gaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the **legati**, and with the quæstor composed a kind of staff.

legiō, -ōnis, [LEG (*select*) + **io**], F., (*a levy*); hence, *a legion* (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [**legion-** + **arius**], adj., *of a legion*, *of the line*, *legionary* (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

Lemannus, -ī, [?], M., (with **lacus** either expressed or implied), *the Lake of Geneva*, *Lake Leman*.

Lemovīces, -um, [Celtic], M. pl.: 1. A Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in *Limoges*.

lēnis, -e, [?], adj., *gentle*, *smooth*.

lēnitās, -tātis, [**leni-** + **tas**], F., *gentleness*, *gentle current* (of a river).

lēniter [**leni-** + **ter**], adv., *gently*: **lenius**, *with less vigor*.

Lepontiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

lepus, -oris, [?], M., *a hare*.

Leucī (**Levacī**), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.

Levacī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Belgian Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

levis, -e, [for †**leghvis**, LAGH (*jump*) + **us** (with inserted **i**, cf. **brevis**), Eng. *light*], adj., *light*, *slight*, *unimportant*, *of no weight*: **auditio** (*mere hearsay without foundation*). — Also (cf. **gravis**), *inconstant*, *fickle*, *wanting in character*: **quid esset levius** (*less dignified*).

levitās, -tātis, [**levi-** + **tas**], F., *lightness*. — Also (cf. **levis**), *inconstancy*, *fickleness*.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**levi-** (as if **levŏ-**)], 1. v. a., *lighten*. Hence, *free from a burden*, *relieve*.

lēx, lēgis, [LEG (in **lego**, *select*)], F., *a statute*, *a law*.

Lexoviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

libenter [**libent-** (*willing*) + **ter**], adv., *willingly*, *with pleasure*. — With a verb, *be glad to*, etc.

līber, -bera, -berum, [†**libŏ-** (whence **libet**, *it pleases*) + **rus** (reduced)], adj., *free* (of persons and things), *unrestricted*, *undisturbed*, *unincumbered*.

līberālitās, -tātis, [**liberali-** + **tas**], F., *generosity*, *liberality*.

līberāliter [**liberali-** + **ter**], adv., *generously*, *kindly* (**respondit**): **oratione prosecutus** (*addressing in generous language*).

līberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **libero**.

līberē [old case-form of **liber**], adv., *freely*, *boldly*, *without restraint*: **liberius**, *with too little restraint*.

līberī, -ōrum, [prob. M. plur. of **liber**, *the free members of the household*], M. plur., *children*.

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**liberŏ-**], 1. v. a., *free*, *set free*, *relieve* (from some bond); **liberare se**, *secure one's freedom*.

lībertās, -tātis, [**liberŏ-** (reduced) + **tas**], F., *liberty*, *freedom*, *independence*.

lībrīlis, -e, [**libra-** (*pound*) + **ilis**], adj., *of a pound weight:* **fundae** (*heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders*).

licentia, -ae, [**licent-** (cf. **licet**) + **ia**], F., *lawlessness, want of discipline.*

liceor, licērī, licitus, [prob. pass. of **licet**], 2. v. dep., *bid* (at an auction).

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), [†**licŏ-**, cf. **delicus, reliquus**], 2. v. n., *be allowed:* **id sibi**, etc. (*that they be allowed*); **per te licet**, *you allow, you do not hinder;* **licet conspicari**, *one can see;* **quibus esse licet**, *who may be, who have a chance to be;* **petere ut liceat**, *to ask permission.*

Liger, -eris, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hædui and the Bituriges, the *Loire.*

līgnātiō, -ōnis, [**lignā-** (cf. **lignum**, *wood*) + **tio**], F., *getting wood.*

līgnātor, -tōris, [**lignā-** (cf. **lignum**, *wood*) + **tor**], M., *wood-forager, wood-cutter.*

līlium, -ī, [?], N., *a lily.* The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of *chevaux-de-frise.*

līnea, -ae, [**linŏ-** (*flax*) + **ea** (F. of **-eus**)], F., *a line.*

Lingones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mts.

lingua, -ae, [?], F., *tongue.* Hence, *language.*

lingula, -ae, [**lingua-** + **la** (F. of **-lus**)], F., *a little tongue, a tongue of land.*

linter (**lunt-**), -tris, [?], F. (?), *a trough, a skiff, a boat.*

līnum, -ī, [prob. borr. fr. Gr.], N., *flax.*

līs, lītis, [for †**stlis**, cf. **locus** and Eng. *strife*], F., *a suit at law.* — Also, *the amount in dispute, damages.*

Liscus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan, brother of Diviciacus.

Litavīcus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan chief.

littera (**līt-**), -ae, [?, akin to **lino**, *smear*], F., *a letter* (of the alphabet). — Plur., *letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter* (an epistle), *records.*

lītus, -oris, [?], N., *a shore, a beach.*

locus, -ī, [for †**stlocus** (*place*) STLA + **cus**], M. (sing.), N. (generally pl.), *a place, a spot, a position, a region* (esp. in plur.), *a point, the ground* (in military language), *space, extent* (of space), *room.* — Fig., *position, rank, a point, place* (*light, position, character*), *an opportunity, a chance:* **obsidum loco**, *as hostages.*

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **loquor.**

longē [old case-form of **longus**], adv., *far, too far, absent, far away, distant:* **non longius mille** (*not more than*); **longe afuturum**, *would be far from helping;* **longius prodire** (*any distance*); **longius aberat**, *was rather far away;* **longe nobilissimus** (*far, altogether*).

longinquus, -a, -um, [case-form of **longus** (perh. loc.) + **cus**], adj., *long* (of time and space), *distant, long-continued.*

longitūdō, -dinis, [**longŏ-** + **tudo**], F., *length.*

longurius, -ī, [**longŏ-** + **urius**], M., *a long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *long* (of space and time); **in longiorem**

diem, *to a more distant day;* **navis longa,** *a ship of war, a war galley,* (opposed to the broader **naves onerariae**); **longum est exspectare,** *it is too long to wait, it would take too long to,* etc.

loquor, loquī, locūtus, [?], 3. v. dep., *speak, talk, converse.*

lōrīca, -ae, [lorŏ- (*strap*) + ica], F., *a coat of mail* (orig. of leather thongs). — Also, *a breastwork, a rampart* (on a wall).

Lūcānius, -ī, [Lucanŏ- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Lucanius,* a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Lūcius, -ī, [luc- (in **lux**) + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

Lucterius, -ī, [?, perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., *Lucterius Cadurcus,* a commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a British prince.

lūna, -ae, [LUC (in **luceo,** *shine*) + na], F., *the moon.* Also personified, **Luna,** *the Moon.*

Lutetia, -ae, [?], F., a city of the Parisii, on the island of modern Paris.

lūx, lūcis, [LUC, *shine,* as st.], F., *light, daylight:* **prima luce, orta luce,** or luce, *at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae, [†luxurŏ- (luxu- (*excess*) + rus) + ia], F., *luxury, riotous living.*

M

M., for **Marcus.**

M [corruption of CIƆ (orig. Φ) through influence of **mille**], 1000.

māceria, -ae, [†mācerŏ- (whence **macerō,** *soften*) + ia], F., (*mortar?*), *a wall.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis, [machinā- + tio], F., *contrivance* (mechanical). — Concretely, *a contrivance, an engine, a derrick.*

maestus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **maereo,** MIS (in **miser,** *wretched*) + tus], adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected.*

Magetobriga, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. Position uncertain.

magis [MAG (in **magnus**) + ius (N. comparative)], adv., *more, rather:* **eo magis,** *so much the more, all the more.* See also **maxime.**

magistrātus, -tūs, [magistrā- (as if st. of †**magistro,** cf. **magister,** *master*) + tus], M., *a magistracy* (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, *a magistrate* (cf. "the powers that be").

māgnificus, -a, -um, [magnŏ-ficus (FAC (in **facio**) + us)], adj., *splendid, grand, magnificent.*

māgnitūdō, -dinis, [magnŏ- + tudo], F., *greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force* (**venti**), *severity* (**supplici**): **silvarum** (*immense woods*); **corporum** (*size, stature*).

māgnopere, see **opus.**

māgnus, -a, -um, [MAG (*increase*) + nus, cf. **magis**], adj., *great* (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), *large, extensive, important, serious* (**motus**), *heavy* (**portoria**), *high* (**aestus**), *loud* (**vox**): **magni habere,** *to*

value highly, make much account of; **magni interest,** *it is of great importance.* — **māior,** compar. in usual sense. — Also, **māior** (with or without **natu**), *elder, older.* — In plur. as noun, *elders, ancestors.* — **maximus,** superl., *largest, very large, greatest, very great,* etc.: **maximis itineribus,** *by forced marches.* See also **Maximus.**

māiestās, -tātis, [**maios-** (orig. st. of **maior**) + **tas**], F., (*superiority*), *majesty, dignity.*

māior, see **magnus.**

malacia, -ae, [borr. fr. Greek], F., (*soft weather*), *a calm.*

male [old case-form of **malus**], adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully.* — **peius,** compar. — **pessime,** superl.

maleficium, -ī, [maleficŏ- (*mischievous*) + ium], N., *harm, mischief.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, no p. p., [mage- (for **magis**) volo], irr. v. a. and n., *wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather.*

malus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *bad* (in all senses), *ill.* — **pēior,** compar. — **pessimus,** superl.

mālus, -ī, [Gr.], M., (*apple-tree*), *mast, beam* (upright).

mandātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **mando**], N., *a trust* (given to one), *instructions* (given), *a message* (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, †**mandŏ-** (**manu-do**)], 1. v. a., *put into one's hands, entrust, instruct* (*give instructions to*), *commit:* **se fugae** (*take to*); **quibus mandatum est,** *who had been instructed.*

Mandubiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe north of the Hædui.

Mandubracius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

māne [old case-form of †**manis** (?, **ma** + **nis,** cf. **Matuta,** *goddess of dawn*)], adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, **mānsūrus,** 2. v. n., *stay, remain, stay at home* (absolutely, opp. to **proficiscor**). — Fig., *continue, stand by* (**in eo quod**).

manipulāris, -is, [**manipulŏ-** + **aris,** prop. adj.], M., *comrade* (of the same maniple or company).

manipulus, -ī, [**manu-** †**pulus** (PLE + **us**)], M., (*a handful,* esp. of hay, used as an ensign), *a maniple* (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Manlius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Manlius,* as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†**mansuē-** (cf. **mansuesco,** *grow tame,* and **calefacio**) -**facio**], 3. v. a., *tame.* — Pass., **mānsuēfīō,** *be tamed.*

mānsuētūdō, -dinis, [†**mansue-** (cf. **mansuefacio**) + **tūdo**], F., *tameness, gentle disposition, kindness.*

manus, -ūs, [?], F., *the hand:* **in manibus nostris,** *just at hand, within reach;* **manu defendere** (*by arms*); **dat manus,** *hold out the hands to be bound, acknowledge one's self conquered, give in.* — Also (cf. **manipulus**), *a company, a band, a troop.*

Marcomannī, -ōrum, [Teutonic, akin to *march* and *man,* "the men of the marches"?], M. plur., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus.

Mārcus, -ī, [*the hammer*, akin to **marceo**, *be soft*, and **morior**, *die*], M., a Roman prænomen.

mare, -is, [?], N., *the sea*: **mare oceanum**, *the ocean*; **nostrum** (i.e. the Mediterranean).

maritimus, -a, -um, [mari- + timus, cf. **finitimus**], adj., *of the sea*, *sea-*, *maritime*, *naval*, *on the sea*: **aestus** (*in the sea*); **ora** (*the sea-shore*). — Also, **maritumus**.

Marius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius Marius*, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

Mārs, Mārtis, [?, perh. MAR (in **morior**, *die*) + **tis**, *the slayer*, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., *Mars*, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with the Greek Ἄρης and worshipped as the god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic *Hesus*. — See **aequus**.

mās, maris, [?], adj., *male*. — Noun, *a male*.

matara, -ae, [Celtic], F., *a javelin* (of a peculiar kind, used by the Gauls).

māter, -tris, [?, prob. MA (*create*) + ter], F., *a mother*, *a matron*.

māter familiās (old gen. of **familia**), F., *a matron*.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ēī), [?, prob. **mater** + **ia** (F. of **-ius**)], F., *wood* (cut, for material), *timber*, (cf. **lignum**, *wood for fuel*).

māterior, -ārī, -ātus, [**materia-**], 1. v. dep., *get timber*, *bring wood*.

Matiscō, -ōnis, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, now *Macon*.

mātrimōnium, -ī, [mater- (as if matri) + monium], N. (*motherhood*), *marriage*, *matrimony*: **in matrimonium ducere**, *marry*.

Matrona, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, the *Marne*.

mātūrē [old case-form of **maturus**], adv., *early*, *speedily*.

mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūruī, no p. p., [maturē- (cf. **matureo**) + **sco**], 3. v. n., *get ripe*, *ripen*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [maturō-], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten*, *make haste*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, [†matu- (MA, (in **mane**) + **tus**) + **rus**], adj., *early*. — Also (by unc. conn. of ideas), *ripe*, *mature*.

maximē [old case-form of **maximus**], adv., *in the greatest degree*, *most*, *very*, *in the highest degree*, *especially*: **ea maxime ratione**, *in that way more than any other*; **maxime confidebat**, *had the greatest confidence*.

Maximus [sup. of **magnus**, as noun], M., a Roman family name.

medeor, -ērī, no p. p., [†medŏ- (whence **medicus**, **remedium**), root unc., cf. **meditor**], 2. v. dep., *attend* (as a physician), *heal*. — Fig., *remedy*, *relieve*.

mediocris, -cre, [mediŏ- + cris], adj., *middling*, *moderate*: **spatium** (*a little*, *no great*); **non mediocris**, *no little*, *no small degree of*.

mediocriter [**mediocri- + ter**], adv., *moderately:* **non mediocriter**, *in no small degree.*

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, (-um), [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [**mediŏ-terra** (*land*) + **aneus**], adj., *inland.*

medius, -a, -um, [MED (cf. Eng. *mid*) + **ius**], adj., *the middle of* (as noun in Eng.), *mid-:* **in colle medio** (*half way up*); **locus medius utriusque** (*half way between*); **de media nocte**, *about midnight.*

Meldī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of **bonus**.

Melodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a city of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, now *Melun;* see **Metiosedum**.

membrum, -ī, [prob. formed with suffix **-rum** (N. of **-rus**)], N., *a limb, a part of the body.*

meminī, -isse, [perf. of MAN, in **mens**, etc.], def. verb a., *remember.*

memoria, -ae, [**memor + ia**], F., (*mindfulness*), *memory, recollection, power of memory:* **memoria tenere**, *remember;* **memoriam prodere**, *hand down the memory* (of something just mentioned); **memoriam deponere**, *cease to remember;* **memoria proditum**, *handed down by tradition;* **supra hanc memoriam**, *beyond the memory of this generation;* **dignum memoria**, *worthy of remembrance;* **nostrā memoriā**, *within our memory, in our own time.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendācium, -ī, [**mendac-** (*false*) + **ium**], N., *falsehood, a falsehood.*

mēns, mentis, [MAN + **tis** (reduced)], F., (*a thought?*), *the intellect* (as opposed to the moral powers, cf. **animus**), *the mind, a state of mind:* **mentes animosque**, *minds and hearts;* **oculis mentibusque**, *with eyes and thoughts.*

mēnsis, -is, [unc. form fr. MA, *measure* (cf. *moon, month*)], M., *a month.*

mēnsūra, -ae, [†**mensu-** (MA, *measure*, as if **man**, + **tu**) + **ra** (F. of **-rus**)], F., *measure:* **ex aqua mensurae**, *measures by the water-clock;* **itinerum** (*accurate length*).

mentiō, -ōnis, [as if MAN (in **memini**) + **tio** (prob. †**menti + o**)], F., *mention.*

mercātor, -tōris, [†**mercā-** (cf. **mercor**, *trade*) + **tor**], M., *a trader* (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercātūra, -ae, [†**mercatu- + ra** (F. of **rus**)], F., *traffic, trade, commercial enterprise.*

mercēs, -ēdis, [**mercē-** (cf. **merx**, *merchandise*) + **dus** (reduced)], F., *hire, pay, wages.*

Mercurius, -ī, [unc. form, akin to **merces**, etc.], M., *Mercury*, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.

mereor, -ērī, -itus, (also **mereo**, active), 2. v. dep., *win, deserve, gain.* — Also (from earning pay), *serve:* **mereri de**, *serve the interests of.*

merīdiānus, -a, -um, [**meridiē-** + **anus**], adj., *of midday:* **tempus** (*noon*).

merīdiēs, -ēī, [prob. **medio-** (reduced) **-dies**], M., *midday, noon.* — Also, *the south.*

meritum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **mereo**], N., *desert, service.* — **meritō** (abl. as adv.), *deservedly:* **minus merito**, *without the fault;* **magis . . . quam merito eorum**, *more than by any act of theirs;* **merito eius a se fieri**, *that he deserved that he should do it.*

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **mereo.**

Messāla, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul, B.C. 61, with Marcus Piso.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, [†**meti-** (MA + **tis** ?)], 4. v. dep., *measure, measure out, deal out* (rations), *distribute.*

Metiosēdum, -ī, [Celtic], N., earlier name of **Melodunum.**

Mētius, -ī, [?], M., a Gaul in relations of hospitality (see **hospes**) with Ariovistus.

metō, metere, messuī, messus, [?], 3. v. a., *cut, reap, gather.*

metus, -tūs, [unc. root + **tus**], M., *fear.* — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: **metu territare**, *terrify.* — Esp.: **hoc metu**, *fear of this.*

meus, -a, -um, [MA (in **me**) + **ius**], poss. adj. pron., *my, mine.*

mihi, see **ego.**

mīles, -itis, [unc. st. akin to **mille** as root + **tis** (reduced)], C., *a soldier, a common soldier* (as opposed to officers), *a legionary soldier* (*heavy infantry*, as opposed to other arms of the service). — Collectively, *the soldiers, the soldiery.*

mīlitāris, -e, [**milit-** + **aris**], adj., *of the soldiers, military:* **signa** (*battle-standards*). See **res.**

mīlitia, -ae, [**milit-** + **ia**], F., *military service, service* (in the army).

mīlle, indecl. **mīlia**, -ium, [akin to **miles**], adj. in sing., noun in plur., *a thousand:* **mille passuum**, *a thousand paces, a mile.*

Minerva, -ae, [unc. form akin to **memini**, etc.], F., *Minerva*, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek *Athene.*

minimē [old case-form of **minimus**], adv., *in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.*

minimus, -a, -um, [lost st. (whence **minuo**) + **imus** (cf. **infimus**), superl. of **parvus**], adj., *smallest, least.* — Neut. as noun and adv., *the least, least, very little.*

minor, -us, [lost st. (cf. **minimus**) + **ior** (compar. ending)], adj., compar. of **parvus**, *smaller, less:* **dimidio minor**, *half as large.* — Neut. as noun and adv., *less, not much, not very, not so much, not so:* **quo minus**, *in order that . . . not;* **si minus**, *if not;* **minus valebat** (*not so strong, less*, etc.); **minus uti** (*not so well*); **minus magnus fluctus** (*less violent, smaller*).

Minucius (**Minut-**), -ī, [perh. akin

to **minus**], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Basilus** and **Rufus**.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [†minu- (cf. **minus**)], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, weaken, diminish:* **aestus** (*ebb*); **vim** (*break the force,* etc.); **controversias** (*settle*); **desidiam** (*cure, correct*); **ostentationem** (*humble*).

mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **miror**.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, [mirŏ-], 1. v. dep., *wonder, wonder at, be surprised.* — **mīrātus**, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *surprised.*

mīrus, -a, -um, [?, SMI (cf. *smile*) + rus], adj., *surprising, marvellous, wonderful:* **mirum in modum,** *in a surprising manner.*

miser, -era, -erum, [MIS (cf. **maereo**) + rus], adj., *wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.*

misericordia, -ae, [misericord- (*merciful*) + ia], F., *mercy, pity, clemency.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus, [†miserŏ-], 1. v. dep., *bewail, complain of.*

missus, -a, -um, p. p. of **mitto**.

missus, -sūs, [MIT (?, root of **mitto**) + tus], M., *a sending:* **missu Caesaris,** *despatched by Cæsar, under orders of Cæsar.*

mītissimē [old case-form of **mitissimus**], adv., superl. of **mite** (N. of **mitis**), *very gently, very mildly, in very gentle terms.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [?], 3. v. a., *let go* (cf. **omitto**), *send, despatch, discharge, shoot:* **sub iugum mittere,** *send under the yoke.* See **iugum**.

mōbilis, -e, [prob. movi- (as if st. of **moveo**, or a kindred st.) + bilis], adj., *easily moved, movable, mobile fickle, hasty.*

mōbilitās, -tātis, [mobili- + tas], F., *mobility, activity* (of troops), *inconstancy, fickleness.*

mōbiliter [mobili- + ter (prob. terum, reduced)], adv., *easily* (of motion), *readily.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, [†moder- (akin to **modus**, cf. **genus, genero**)], 1. v. dep., *control, regulate, restrain.*

modestia, -ae, [modestŏ- + ia], F., *moderation, self-control, subordination* (of soldiers).

modŏ [abl. of **modus**], adv., (*with measure ?*), *only, merely, just, even, just now, lately:* **paulum modo** (*just a very*); **non . . . modo,** *not only;* **aspectum modo,** *the mere sight.*

modus, -ī, [MOD (cf. **moderor**) + us], M., *measure, quantity.* Hence, *manner, fashion, style, method:* **ad hunc modum,** *after this fashion;* **nullo modō,** *in no way.* See **eiusmodi**.

moenia, -ium, [MI (*distribute ?*) + nis (cf. **communis**) (orig. shares of work done by citizens ?)], N. plur., *fortifications, walls of a city.*

mōlēs, -is, [?, cf. **molestus**], F., *a mass.* — Esp., *a dike, a dam.*

molestē [old case-form of **molestus**, *troublesome*], adv., *heavily, severely:* **moleste ferre,** *take hardly, be vexed at.*

mōlīmentum, -ī, [molī- (st. of **molior**, *strive*) + mentum], N., *trouble, difficulty, exertion.*

molitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **molo**.

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [molli-], 4. v. a., *soften.* — Fig., *make easy:* **clivum.**

mollis, -e, [?], adj., *soft, tender.* — Fig., *weak, feeble, not hard, not firm:* **animus ad resistendum; litus** (*gently sloping*).

mollitiēs, -ēī (also, -a, -ae), [**molli-** + **ties** (cf. **-tia**)], F., *softness.* — Fig., *weakness:* **animi** (*feebleness of purpose, weakness of character*).

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, [?], 3. v. a., *grind.* See **cibarius.**

mōmentum, -ī, [**movi-** (as st. of **moveo,** *move*) + **mentum**], N., *means of motion, cause of motion.* — Fig., *weight, importance, influence:* **habere** (*be of importance*).

Mona, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [causative of MAN (in **memini**) or denominative fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., *remind, warn, advise, urge.*

mōns, montis, [MAN (in **mineo,** *project*) + **tis** (reduced)], M., *a mountain, height.*

mora, -ae, [prob. root of **memor,** *mindful,* + **a**], F., *delay, grounds of delay.*

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **moror.**

morbus, -ī, [MAR (in **morior,** *die*) + **bus**], M., *sickness, illness.*

Morinī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ on the coast of Picardy.

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus (moritūrus), [MAR (cf. **mors**)], 3. v. dep., *die.*

Moritasgus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Senones.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, [**mora-**], 1. v. dep., *retard, hinder, check* (the advance of), *delay, wait, stay.*

mors, mortis, [MAR (cf. **morior**) + **tis**], F., *death:* **sibi mortem consciscere,** *commit suicide.*

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of **morior.**

mōs, mōris, [?], M., *a custom, a usage, a way* (of acting). — Plur., *customs, habits, character* (as consisting of habits, cf. **ingenium** and **indoles,** of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the *Meuse,* or *Maas.*

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **moveo.**

mōtus, -tūs, [**movi-** (as st. of **moveo**) + **tus**], M., *a movement, a disturbance, an uprising:* **expeditior** (*movement* of ships); **celer atque instabilis** (*changes,* of the passage of events in maritime warfare); **siderum** (*revolutions*).

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [?], 2. v. a., *set in motion, move, stir:* **castra** (*move* from a place to another; also, absolutely, *break camp*).

mulier, -eris, [?], F., *a woman.*

mūliō, -ōnis, [**mulŏ-** + **o**], M., *a muleteer, a driver.*

multitūdō, -dinis, [**multŏ-** + **tudo**], F., *a great number, great numbers, number* (generally). — Esp., *the multitude, the common people.*

multō, see **multus.**

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**multa-,** *fine*], 1. v. a., *punish* (by fine), *deprive* (one of a thing as a punishment).

multum, see **multus.**

multus, -a, -um, [?, poss. root of **mille, miles,** + **tus**], adj., *much,*

many: **multo die,** *late in the day;* **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night.* — **multum,** neut. as noun and adv., *much.* — Also, plur., **multa,** *many things, much, a great deal.* — Abl., **multo,** *much, far:* **multo facilius.** — As compar., **plūs,** plūris, N. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., *more, much, very:* as noun, *several, many.* — As superl., **plūrimus,** -a, -um, *most, very many, very much:* **quam plurimi,** *as many as possible;* **quam plurimos possunt,** *the most they can;* **plurimum posse,** *have most power, be very strong* or *influential;* **plurimum valere,** *have very great weight.*

mūlus, -ī, [?, perh. akin to **molo,** *grind*], M. (*the mill-beast*), *a mule.*

Mūnātius, -ī, [prob. akin to **munus**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Munatius Plancus,* a legatus in Cæsar's army.

mundus, -ī, [?], M. (orig. adj., *well ordered,* a translation of Gr. κόσμος), *the universe, the world.*

mūnīmentum, -ī, [**munī- + mentum**], N., *a fortification.* — Plur., *a defence.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, [**muni-** (st. of **moenia**)], 4. v. a. and n., *fortify.* — Less exactly, *protect, defend, furnish* (by way of protection), *make* (by embankment), *construct:* **castra; iter.** — **munitissima castra** (*very strongly fortified*).

mūnītiō, -ōnis, [**munī- + tio**], F., *fortification* (abstractly). — Concretely, *a fortification, works, fortifications, defences:* **munitio operis,** *building works of defence;* **munitionis causa,** *to build works,* etc.

mūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **munio.**

mūnus, -eris, [**min** (as if root of **moenia**) + **us,** orig. *share* (cf. **moenia**)], N., *a duty, a service, a task:* **munus militiae,** *military service.* — Also, (*a contribution*), *a tribute, a gift, a present.*

mūrālis, -e, [**murŏ- + alis**], adj., *of a wall, wall-:* **pila** (heavy javelins for service in siege operations).

mūrus, -ī, [?], M., *a wall* (in itself considered, cf. **moenia,** *defences*).

mūsculus, -ī, [**mus + culus,** dimin.], M., (*little mouse*), *a shed* (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

mutilus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *mutilated:* **cornibus** (*with short broken horns,* of the elk).

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nanciscor.**

nam [old case-form, cf. **tam, quam**], conj., *for.*

Namměius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Helvetian sent as ambassador to Cæsar.

Namnetes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around *Nantes.*

namque [nam-que], conj., *for* (a little more emphatic than **nam**).

nancīscor, -cīscī, nactus (nanctus), [NAC], 3. v. dep., *find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain.*

nanctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nanciscor.**

Nantuātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now *Narbonne*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, [GNA, cf. **gigno**], 3. v. dep., *be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised* (of beasts), *be found* (**plumbum**). — **nātus**, p. p., *sprung, born.*

Nasua, -ae, [?, Germanic], M., a leader of the Suevi.

nātālis, -e, [natu- (reduced) + **alis**], adj., *of birth:* **dies natalis**, *a birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, [GNA (cf. **nascor**) + tio, perh. through intermediate st.], F., (*a birth*), *a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.*

nātīvus, -a, -um, [natu- (reduced) + **ivus**], adj., *native, natural.*

nātūra, -ae, [natu- + **ra** (F. of -**rus**)], F., (*birth*), *nature, character* (of living creature), *character, nature* (of inanimate things); **ea rerum natura**, *such the state of the case;* **secundum naturam fluminis**, *down stream;* **natura triquetra** (*in form*); **natura cogebat**, *must necessarily;* **de rerum natura** (*physical science*); **eadem feminae marisque** (*form, organization*); **naturam vincere** (*human nature*); **natura loci**, *nature of the ground.*

nātus, -a -um, p. p. of **nascor**.

nātus, -tūs, [GNA (cf. **nascor**) + **tus**], M., *birth:* **maiores natu**, *elders.*

nauta, -ae, [borrowed from Gr. **ναύτης**], M., *a sailor, a boatman.*

nauticus, -a, -um, [**nauta- + cus**], adj., *of a sailor* (or *sailors*), *naval.*

nāvālis, -e, [navi- (reduced) + **alis**], adj., *of ships, naval:* **navalis pugna**, *sea-fight.*

nāvicula, -ae, [**navi- + cula**], F., *a boat, a small vessel, a skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [**navigā- + tio**], F., *a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, a trip* (by sea).

nāvigium, -ī, [†**navigŏ-** (?, **navi** + †**agus**) + **ium**], N., *a vessel* (general), "*a craft,*" *a boat.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**navigŏ-** (see **navigium**)], I. v. n., *sail.*

nāvis, -is, [(S)NU, *float* (increased), with added **i**], F., *a ship, a vessel, a boat:* **oneraria** (*a transport*); **longa** (*a war galley*); **navi egredi**, *land.*

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [(g)**navŏ-**, *busy*], I. v. a., *do one's best:* **operam** (*do one's best*).

nē [NA, unc. case-form], conj., *lest, that . . . not, not to* (do anything), *from* (doing anything), *so that . . . not, for fear that.* — After verbs of fearing, *that.* — Also adv., **ne . . . quidem**, *not . . . even, not . . . either;* **ne Vorenus quidem**, *nor Vorenus either; Vorenus, too, did not,* etc.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as **nē**, orig. = **nonne**], conj., *not?* (as a question, cf. **nonne**), *whether, did* (as question in Eng.), *do,* etc. — See also **necne, nec.**

nec, see **neque**.

necessārius, -a, -um, [†**necessŏ-** (reduced) + **arius**], adj., (*closely bound?*), *necessary:* **tempus** (*critical*); **causa** (*pressing, unavoidable*):

res (*absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable*). — Also, as noun, *a connection* (a person bound by any tie), *a kinsman, a close friend.* — Abl. as adv., **necessariō**, *of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.*

necesse [?, **ne-cessŏ-**, cf. **cedo**], indecl. adj., *necessary.* — With **est**, *one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably.*

necessitās, -tātis, [†**necessŏ-** + **tas**], F., *necessity, constraint, compulsion:* **temporis** (*exigency*); **suarum necessitatum causa** (*interests*).

necessitūdō, -dinis, [†**necessŏ-** + **tudo**], F., *close connection* (cf. **necessarius**), *intimacy, close relations.*

necne [**nec ne**], conj., *or not* (in double questions).

necō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-tus), [**nec** (st. of **nex**, *death*)], I. v. a., *put to death, kill, murder* (in cold blood).

nēcubi [**ne cubi** (?, for **quobi**, see **ubi**)], conj., *that nowhere, lest anywhere, that not . . . anywhere.*

nefārius, -a, -um, [**nefas** + **ius**], adj., *wicked, infamous, abominable.*

nefās, [**ne-fas**], N. indecl., *a crime* (against divine law) : **nefas est**, *it is not allowable.*

neglegō (**necl-**), -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [**nec** (= **ne**) **-lego**], 3. v. a., *not regard, disregard, neglect:* **iniurias** (*leave unavenged, leave unpunished*); **hac parte neglecta** (*leave unnoticed*); **metu mortis neglecto** (*careless of,* etc.).

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, poss. **ne-aio**], I. v. a. and n., *say no, say . . . not, refuse.*

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus, [**negotiŏ-**], I. v. dep., *do business* (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negōtium, -ī, [**nec-otium**, *ease*], N., *business, occupation, an undertaking.* — Less definitely, *a matter, a thing.* — Also, *difficulty, trouble:* **in ipso negotio**, *at the moment of action;* **negotium conficere**, *make a thorough business of* a thing, *finish* a thing up; **quid negoti**, *what business?* cf. Eng. "what business have you here?"; **dare negotium alicui**, *employ one, give in charge to.*

Nemetes, -um, [Teutonic], M. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, †nēminis, [**ne-homo**, *man*], C., *no one, nobody:* **non nemo**, *many a one.*

nēquāquam [**ne-quaquam**, *anyway* (cf. **eā**, **quā**)], adv., *in no way, by no means.*

neque (**nec**) [**ne-que**], adv., *and not, and yet . . . not, nor:* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*

nēquī(d)quam (**nēquic-**), [**ne . . qui(d)quam**, *anything*], adv., *to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.*

Nervicus, -a, -um, [**Nerviŏ-** (reduced) + **cus**], adj., *of the Nervii, Nervian.*

Nervius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *Nervian.* — M. plur., *the Nervii*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, [prob. for †**nevrus**], M., *a sinew.* — Fig., in plur., *strength, vigor.*

neu, see **neve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum, [**ne-uter**, *which* (of two)], adj. pron., *neither.* — Plur., *neither party, neither side.*

nēve (**neu**) [**ne-ve**], conj., *or not, and not, nor.*

nex, necis, [?], F., *death, violent death, execution.*

nihil, see **nihilum.**

nihilum, -ī (**nihil**), [**ne-hilum,** *trifle, whit?*], N. (also indecl.), *nothing:* **nihil reliqui,** *nothing left;* **nihil respondere,** *make no answer.*— **nihilō,** abl. as adv., *none, no.* — **nihil,** acc. as adv., *not at all:* **non nihil,** *somewhat.*

nimius, -a, -um, [**nimi-** (?, st. of **nimis,** *too much*) + **ius**], adj., *too much, too great.*

nisi [**ne-si**], conj., (*not . . . if*), *unless, except, except in case:* **nisi cum,** *until;* **nisi rogatus,** *without being asked.*

nīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nitor.**

Nitiobriges (**-broges**), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nītor, nīsus (nīxus), nītī, [prob. **genu,** *knee*], 3. v. dep., (*strain* with the knee against something), *struggle, strive, exert one's self:* **niti insidiis** (*rely upon*).

nix, nivis, [?], F., *snow.*

nōbilis, -e, [as if (**g**)**no** (root of **nosco,** *know*) + **bilis**], adj., *famous, noble, well-born* (cf. "notable"). — Plur. as noun, *the nobles.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, [**nobili-** + **tas**], F., *nobility.* — Concretely, *the nobility, the nobles.*

nocēns, see **noceo.**

noceō, nocēre, -uī, no p. p., [akin to **nex,** *death*], 2. v. n., *do harm to, injure, harm, harass.* — **nocēns,** -**entis,** p. as adj., *hurtful, guilty* (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of †**noctus** (**noc-** + **tus**)], as adv., *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, [**noc-** + **turnus,** cf. **diuturnus**], adj., *of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night:* **tempus** (*night-time*).

nōdus, -ī, [?], M., *a knot, a joint:* **nodi et articuli,** *protuberant joints.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, [**ne-volo**], irr. v. a. and n., *not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have:* **noli, nolite,** *do not* (with infin.).

nōmen, -minis, [(G)NO (root of **nosco,** *know*) + **men**], N., *a name* (what one is known by), *name* (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, *an account:* **nomine dotis** (*on account of, as*); **suo nomine,** *on his own account;* **nomine obsidum,** *under pretence of hostages.*

nōminātim [acc. of real or supposed †**nominatis** (**nominā-** + **tis**)], adv., *by name* (individually).

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nomin-**], 1. v. a., *name, mention, call by name.*

nōn [**ne-oenum** (**unum**)], adv., *not:* **non est dubium,** *there is no doubt;* **non mediocriter,** *in no small degree.*

nōnāgintā, indecl., num., *ninety.*

nōndum (see **dum**), *not yet.*

nōnnūllus (see **nullus**), *some.*

nōnnumquam (see **numquam**), *sometimes.*

nōnus, -a, -um, [†**novi-** (?) + **nus** (**mus**)], num. adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, [Teutonic], F., a city of the Norici, in modern Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, [st. akin to **Noreia** + **cus**], adj., *of the Norici, Norican.*

nōs, nōsmet, see **ego, egomet.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, [(G)NA, *know*], 3. v. a., *learn, become acquainted with.* — In perf. tenses, *know.* — **nōtus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *known, familiar, well-known:* **notis vadis** (*being acquainted with*, etc.).

noster, -tra, -trum, [prob. **nos** (nom. plur.) + **ter**], poss. adj. pron., *our, ours.* — In plur., *our men* (the Romans), *our forces.*

nōtitia, -ae, [**notŏ-** + **tia**], F., *acquaintance with, knowledge.*

nōtus, p. p. of **nosco.**

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], N.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire. — 2. A town of the Hædui. — 3. A town of the Suessiones.

novitās, -tātis, [**novŏ-** + **tas**], F., *novelty, strangeness, strange character:* **rei** (*novelty, unexpected occurrence*).

novus, -a, -um, [?, cf. Eng. *new*], adj., *new, novel, fresh:* **res novae,** *a change of government, revolution.* — **novissimus,** -a, -um, superl., *latest, last:* **agmen** (*the rear*).

nox, noctis, [akin to **noceo,** *harm*], F., *night:* **prima nocte,** *in the early part of the night;* **multa nocte,** *late at night.*

noxia, -ae, [NOC (in **noceo,** *harm*) + unc. term.], F., *crime, guilt.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, [akin to **nubes,** *cloud*], 3. v. n., *veil one's self* (of the bride), *marry* (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nudo.**

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nudŏ-**], 1. v. a., *lay bare, expose, strip.* — Less exactly, *clear* (**murum defensoribus**).

nūdus, -a, -um, [?, root (akin to *naked*) + **dus**], adj., *naked, bare, unprotected, exposed.*

nūllus, -a, -um, [**ne-ullus**], adj., *not any, no.* — As noun, *no one.* — **nōn nūllus,** *some.* — Plur. as noun, *some, some persons.*

num [pron. NA, cf. **tum**], adv., interrog. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, *does, is,* etc., *it is not, is it?* and the like: **num posse** (in indirect discourse, *could he,* etc.).

nūmen, -inis, [NU (in **nuo,** *nod*) + **men**], N., (*a nod*), *will, power.* Hence, *divinity.*

numerus, -ī, [†**numo-** (cf. **nummus, Numa**) + **rus**], M., *a number, number:* **in hostium numero habuit** (*in the place of,* etc., euphemism for *slaughtered*); **totidem numero,** *the same number;* **impedimentorum** (*quantity,* i.e. number of pack-horses); **ad numerum,** *to the required number;* **aliquo numero,** *of some account.*

Numida, -ae, [?], M., *a Numidian* (employed in the Roman army as cavalry, cf. *Zouave, Turco*).

nummus, -ī, [akin to **numerus**], M., *a coin:* **pro nummo,** *for coin.*

numquam (**nun-**) [**ne-umquam**], adv., *never.*

nunc [**num-ce,** cf. **hic**], adv., *now* (emphatic, as an instantaneous *now,* cf. **iam,** unemphatic and continuous): **etiam nunc,** *even then* (of the past considered as present).

nūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nuntio.**

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nuntiŏ-**],

1. v. a., *send news, report, make known:* **nuntiatum est ei . . . ne** (*he was ordered not to*, etc.).

nūntius, -ī, [†novent- (p. of †noveo, *be new*) + ius], M., (*new-comer*), *a messenger*. Hence, *news:* **nuntium mittere** (*send word*); **per eorum nuntios** (*agents*).

nūper [for novi-per, cf. **parum per**], adv., *lately, recently, not long ago*.

nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., *nowhere, in no case* (almost equal *never*).

nūtus, -tūs, [NU + tus], M., *a nod, a sign:* **ad nutum**, *at one's beck, at one's command;* **nutu**, *by signs*.

O

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with acc. (*near*), *against*. Hence, *on account of, for:* **ob eam rem**, *for this reason, on this account*.—In comp., *towards, to, against, over*.

obaerātus, -a, -um, [ob-†aeratus, as if p. p. of †aero, cf. **aes**, *money*], adj., *bound in debt* (to some one).—As noun, *a debtor, a servant for debt*.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ob-duco], 3. v. a., *lead towards, lead against:* **fossam** (*throw out*, in a military sense, *carry along*).

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [ob-eo], irr. v. a., *go to, go about, attend to*.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ob-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw against, throw in the way, present, throw up* (against the enemy, etc.), *set up, expose*.—**obiectus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying opposite, lying in the way*.

obitus, -tūs, [ob-itus, cf. **obeo**], M., *a going to*.—Esp., *a going to death* (cf. **obire mortem**), *destruction, annihilation*.

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obicio**.

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **offero**.

oblīquē [old case-form of **obliquus**], adv., *obliquely, slanting*.

oblīquus, -a, -um, [ob-†liquus, cf. **li(c)mus**, *aslant*], adj., *slanting*.

oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus, [ob-†livio, cf. **liveo**], 3. v. dep., (*grow dark against* ?), *forget*.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [manufactured from **ob sacrum** (*near* or *by some sacred object*)], 1. v. a., *entreat, adjure, implore*.

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequent- (*yielding*) + ia], F., *compliance, deference:* **nimia obsequentia**, *too ready compliance*.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **observo**.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob-servo], 1. v. a., (*be on the watch towards* ?), *guard, maintain, keep:* **iudicium** (*follow, comply with*); **dies natalis** (*keep, celebrate*).

obses, -idis, [ob-†ses, cf. **praeses** and **obsideo**], C., (*a person under guard*), *a hostage*.

obsessiō, -ōnis, [ob-†sessio, cf. **obsideo**], F., *a blockade, a siege, a state of siege* (cf. **oppugnatio**, of actual siege operations).

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obsideo.**

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [**ob-sedeo**], 2. v. a., (*sit down against*), *blockade, beset, guard.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, [**obsidiŏ-** (reduced) + **o**], F., *a siege* (cf. **obsessio**), *a blockade:* **obsidione liberare** (*from besetting enemies*). — Also, *the art of siege.*

obsīgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obsigno.**

obsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ob-signo**], 1. v. a., *seal up, seal.*

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**ob-sisto**], 3. v. n., *withstand, resist.*

obstinātē [old case-form of **obstinatus**, fr. **obstino**, *persist*], adv., *persistently.*

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obstringo.**

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [**ob-stringo**], 3. v. a., *bind* (lit. and fig.): **habere obstrictas** (*under obligation*).

obstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obstruo.**

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [**ob-struo**, *pile*], 3. v. a., *block up, barricade.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**ob-tempero**], 1. v. n., (*conform to*), *comply with, submit to.*

obtestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obtestor.**

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, [**ob-testor**, cf. **testis**, *witness*], 1. v. dep., *implore* (calling something to witness).

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**ob-teneo**], 2. v. a., *hold* (against something or somebody), *retain, maintain, occupy, possess:* provinciam (*have control of* as prætor); **iustissimam apud eum causam obtinere**, *be entirely free from obligation towards him*, as having a perfect right to benefits conferred.

obtulī, perf. of **offero.**

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob-venio], 4. v. n., *come to, come in one's way, fall to* (by lot).

obviam [**ob-viam**], adv., *in the way of, to meet* (any one): **obviam venire**, *come to meet.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, [**ob-†casio**, cf. **occido**], F., *opportunity:* **occasio brevis**, *a short time;* **rem occasionis**, *a matter of opportunity.*

occāsus, -sūs, [**ob-casus**, cf. **occido**], M., *a falling, a setting* (of the sun): **solis** (*the sunset, the west*).

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [**ob-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall, be slain, set:* **sol occidens**, *the west.*

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ob-caedo**, *cut*], 3. v. a., *kill, massacre:* **occisi**, *the slain.*

occīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occīdo.**

occultātiō, -ōnis, [**occulta-** + **tio**], F., *concealment.*

occultātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occulto.**

occultē [old case-form of **occultus**], adv., *secretly.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**occultŏ-**], 1. v. a., *conceal, hide.*

occultus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **occulo**], as adj., *concealed:* **in occulto**, *in secret;* **ex occulto**, *from an ambush, in ambush;* **in occulto sese continere**, *keep themselves hidden;* **insidiandi ex occulto**, *of attacking from an ambuscade.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, [**occupā-** + **tio**], F., *occupation* (engagement in business), *business affairs* (of business): **occupationes tantularum rerum**, *engagement in such trifling matters*.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occupo**.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**occupŏ-** or †**occup-**, **ob** and st. akin to **capio**], I. v. a., *seize*, *take possession of*, *seize upon*, *occupy* (only in military sense): **regna** (*usurp*); **in opere occupati** (*engaged*, *employed*).

occurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī?), -cursūrus, [**ob-curro**], 3. v. n., *run to meet*, *meet*, *come upon*, *find*, *fall in with*, *meet*. Hence in pregnant sense, *thwart*, *baffle*, *frustrate*: **eo** (*run*, to meet an enemy); **ad animum** (*occur*).

Ōceanus, -ī, [Gr.], M., *the ocean* (with or without **mare**).

Ocelum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul (prob. *Oulx* in Piedmont).

octāvus, -a, -um, [**octo** + **vus**, poss. †**octau** + **us**], num. adj., *eighth*.

octingentī, -ae, -a, [st. akin to **octo** + **centum**], num. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō [?], indecl. num. adj., *eight*.

octōdecim [**octo-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

Octodūrus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a town of the Veragri, now *Martigny*.

octōgintā [**octo** + ?], indecl. num. adj., *eighty*.

octōnī, -ae, -a, [**octo** + **nus**], adj., *eight at a time*, *eight each*, *eight*.

oculus, -ī, [†**ocŏ-** (cf. AK, *see*) + **lus**], M., *the eye*: **sub oculis**, *in sight*, *before the eyes*.

ōdī, ōdisse, [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to **odium**], def. v. a., *hate*, *detest*.

odium, -ī, [VADH (*spurn*) + **ium**], N., *hatred*.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [**ob-fendo**], 3. v. a. and n., *dash against*, *hurt*: **animum** (*hurt the feelings*, *alienate*, *shock*). — Absolutely, *suffer a mishap*.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, [**ob-**†**fensio**, cf. **defensio** and **offendo**], F., *striking against*. — Fig., *offence*: **sine offensione animi**, *without wounding one's feelings*.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, [**ob-fero**], irr. v. a., (*bring to*), *throw in one's way*, *offer*: **se hostibus** (*throw themselves upon*); **se morti** (*expose one's self to*); **quos sibi oblatos** (*placed in his power*); **beneficium** (*confer*, *render*).

officium, -ī, [**ob-**†**facium**, cf. **beneficium**], N., (*doing something to one*), *a service*, *performance of a duty*. — Transf., *a duty*, *allegiance*, *an obligation*: **discedere ab officio**, *fail of one's duty*.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**ob-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go by*: **consilium** (*leave untried*, *neglect*); **omnibus omissis rebus**, *leaving everything else*.

omnīnō [abl. of †**omninus** (**omni-** + **nus**)], adv., *altogether*, *entirely*, *only*, *utterly*, *in all*, *at all*, *any way*, *only just*, *whatever* (with negatives).

omnis, -e, [?], adj., *all, the whole of* (as divisible or divided, cf. **totus** as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., *every* (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. **quisque**, *each*, emphatically); **celerius omni opinione** (*of any one*); **omni tempore**, *on all occasions, always;* **omnes preces**, *every form of prayers;* **omnibus rebus**, *everything, everything else;* **per omnia**, etc. (*through nothing but*, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for *all others.*

onerārius, -a, -um, [**oner-** (as st. of **onus**) + **arius**], adj., *for burdens:* **naves** (*transports*).

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**oner-** (as st. of **onus**)], 1. v. a., *load:* **celeritas onerandi** (of ships), *facility of loading.*

onus, -eris, [unc. root + **us**], N., *a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo.* — Abstr., *weight.* — Esp.: **tanta onera navium**, *ships of such weight.*

opera, -ae, [**oper-** (as st. of **opus**) + **a** (F. of -**us**)], F., *work, pains, attention:* **operam navare**, *do one's best;* **operam dare**, *devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains.* — With **ut**, *try, take care:* **opera uti** (*services, help*, etc.); **quorum opera interfectus** (*through whose means, agency*).

opīniō, -ōnis, [**opinŏ-** (cf. **necopinus**) + **o**], F., *notion, expectation:* **celerius omni opinione**, *quicker than any one would suppose;* **opinio virtutis** (*reputation for*, etc.); **tanta opinio huius belli** (*impression*); **tantam opinionem timoris praebuit** (*gave such an idea, impression*); also, **opinio timoris** (*display*, cause for an impression); **speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebere**, *make a show and give an impression of being combatants;* **nomen atque opinio** (*reputation*); **ut fert illorum opinio**, *as their notion is;* **ad opinionem Galliae**, *for an impression on the Gauls;* **opinione praecipere**, *to anticipate.*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p., [noun-st. from **ob** and st. akin to **porto**, cf. **opportunus**], 2. v. impers., *it behooves, it ought, it is best:* **poenam sequi** (*the punishment was to follow*); **frumentum metiri** (*he ought*, etc.); **alio tempore atque oportuit** (*than it should have been*).

oppidānus, -a, -um, [**oppidŏ-** (reduced) + **anus**], adj., *of a* (*the*) *town.* — Plur. as noun, *the townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, [**ob-†pedum** (*a plain?*)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), *a stronghold, a town* (usually fortified).

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**ob-pono**], 3. v. a., *set against, oppose* (something to something else): **novem oppositis legionibus**, *with nine legions opposed* to the enemy. — **oppositus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *opposed, lying in the way, opposite.*

opportūnē [old case-form of **opportunus**], adv., *opportunely, seasonably.*

opportūnitās, -tātis, [**opportunŏ-** + **tas**], F., *timeliness, fitness* (of time or circumstance), *good luck* (in time or circumstance), *favorable chance,*

convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um, [**ob-portunus**, cf. **portus**, *harbor*, and **Portunus**], adj., (*coming to harbor?*), *opportune*, *advantageous*, *lucky*.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **oppono**.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **opprimo**.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [**ob-premo**], 3. v. a., (*press against*), *overwhelm*, *crush*, *overpower*, *overtake* (*surprise*).

oppūgnātio, -ōnis, [**oppugnā- + tio**], F., *a siege* (of actual operations, cf. **obsidio**, *blockade*), *besieging*, *an attack* (in a formal manner against a defended position):

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ob-pugno**, *fight*], 1. v. a., *attack* (formally, but without blockade), *lay siege to*, *carry on a siege*, *assail* (a defended position).

[**ops**, cf. **Ops**, the goddess], opis, [?], F., *help*, *aid*. — Plur., *resources*, *means*, *strength*, *blessings*. — Also, *help* (from several sources).

optātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **opto**, *wish*], as adj., *desired*, *desirable*, *wished for*, *welcome*.

optimē, superl. of **bene**.

optimus, -a, -um, [**op** (cf. **ops**?) + **timus** (cf. **finitimus**)], superl. of **bonus**.

opus, operis, [OP + **us**], N., *work*, *labor* (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. **labor**, as tiresome). — In military sense, *a work*, *works*, *fortifications:* **natura et opere munitus** (*by nature and art*); **operum atque artificiorum** (*trades*, *handicrafts*). — In abl., **magno (quanto) (tanto) opere**, *very much*, *very*, *greatly*: (*how much*), (*so much*, *so*, *so earnestly*): often as one word, **magnopere, quantopere, tantopere.**

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., *need*, *necessity:* **si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset**, *if he needed anything of Cæsar;* **si quid opus facto**, etc., *if anything needs to be done.*

ōra, -ae, [?], F., *a shore*, *a coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [**orā-** (*speak*) + **tio**], F., *speech*, *words*, *talk*, *address*, *discourse*, *argument.*

ōrātor, -tōris, [**orā-** (*speak*) + **tor**], M., *a speaker*, *an ambassador*, *envoy.*

orbis, -is, [?], M., *a circle* (a circular plane): **orbis terrarum**, *the circle of lands*, *the whole world.* — Less exactly, *a hollow square* (in military language), *a circle.*

Orcynia, -ae, [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see **Hercynius**.

ōrdō, -inis, [akin to **ordior**, *begin a web*], M., *a series*, *a row*, *a tier*, *a rank* (of soldiers), *a grade* (of centurions, as commanding special *ordines* of soldiers, also the *centurions* themselves), *an arrangement*, *an order:* **perturbatis ordinibus**, *the ranks being broken;* **ratio ordoque agminis**, *the plan and arrangement of the march;* **ordines servare**, *to keep their places*, (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, *preserve the arrangement*, not deviating from it).

Orgetorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Helvetii.

orior, orīrī, ortus, [?], 3. (and 4). v. dep., *arise, spring up:* **orta luce,** *at daybreak.* — Fig., *begin, start, spring from, arise, be started, have its source.* — **oriēns,** -entis, p. as adj., *rising:* **sol** (*sunrise, the east*).

ōrnāmentum, -ī, [**ornā-** + **mentum**], N., *an adornment.* — Fig., *an honor* (an addition to one's dignity), *a source of dignity.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **orno.**

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [unc. noun-st.], 1. v. a., *adorn, equip, furnish.* — Fig., *honor.* — **ōrnātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *furnished, well-equipped, honored.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**or-** (as st. of **os,** *mouth*)], 1. v. a. and n., *speak.* — Esp., *pray, entreat.*

ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **orior.**

ortus, -tūs, [OR (in **orior**) + **tus**], M., *a rising:* **solis** (*sunrise, the east*).

ōs, ōris, [?], N., *the mouth, the face:* **ora convertere,** *turn the eyes.*

Osismī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul (in Brittany).

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [**obs-tendo**], 3. v. a., (*stretch towards*), *present, show, point out, make known, state, declare:* **copias** (*discover, unmask*).

ostentātiō, -ōnis, [**ostenta-** + **tio**], F., *a showing, a display:* **ostentationis causa,** *for display;* **ostentationem comminuere,** *humble the pride.*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ostento-**], 1. v. a., *display, exhibit.*

ōtium, -ī, [?], N., *repose, inactivity, quiet* (freedom from disturbance).

ōvum, -ī, [perh. **avi-** + **um**], (*belonging to a bird?*), N., *an egg.*

P

P., for **Publius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, [**pabulā-** + **tio**], F., *a foraging, getting fodder:* **pabulationis causā,** *for forage.*

pābulātor, -tōris, [**pabulā-** + **tor**], M., *a forager.*

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, [**pabulŏ-**], 1. v. dep., *forage, gather fodder.*

pābulum, -ī, [PA (in **pasco,** *feed*) + **bulum**], N., *fodder* (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), *green fodder.*

pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **paco.**

pacīscor, -īscī, pāctus (also **pacīscō,** -ere) [**paci** (as st. of **păco,** *agree*) + **sco**], 3. v. a. and dep., *bargain.* — Esp., **pāctus,** -a, -um, p. p., *agreed upon, settled.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pac-,** in **pax,** *peace*], 1. v. a., *pacify, subdue.* — **pācātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *peaceable, quiet, subject* (as reduced to peace).

pāctum, -ī, [see **pactus**], N., (*a thing agreed*), *an agreement, an arrangement.* Hence, *a method, a way* (of doing anything): **quo pacto,** *in what way, how.*

pāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **paciscor** and **pango.**

Padus, -ī, [Celtic], M., *the Po,* the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).

Paemānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, [†**poenitŏ-** (perh. p. p. of verb akin to **punio**, *punish*)], 2. v. a., impers., *it repents* (one), *one repents, one regrets.*

pāgus, -ī, [PAG (in **pango**) + **us** (with unc. conn. of ideas)], M., *a district, a canton* (cf. **vicus**, a smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. **clam**], adv., *openly, publicly, without concealment.*

palma, -ae, [Gr.], F., *the palm* (of the hand).

palūs, -ūdis, [?], F., *a marsh.*

palūster, -tris, -tre, [**palud-** + **tris**], adj., *marshy, swampy.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, [akin to **pandus**, *bent*], 3. v. a., *spread out* (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): **passis manibus**, *with outstretched hands;* **passis capillis**, *with dishevelled hair.*

pār, paris, [perh. akin to **paro**, **pario** (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., *equal, alike, like:* **intervallum** (*the same*). — Esp., *equal in power, a match for.*

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **paro**.

parcē, [old case-form of **parcus**], adv., *sparingly, frugally.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus (parcitūrus), [akin to **parcus** (PAR + **cus**), *acquisitive*, and so *frugal?*], 3. v. n., *spare.* — Esp., *save alive:* **parcendo**, *by economy, by frugality.*

parēns, -entis, [PAR (in **pario**) + **ens**], C., *a parent.*

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**parent-**], 1. v. n., *make a funereal offering* (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, *avenge* (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, [**parŏ-** (cf. **opiparus**)], 2. v. n., *be prepared, appear, obey, submit to.*

pariō, parere, peperī, partus (paritūrus), [PAR, *procure* (perh. orig. by barter, cf. **par**)] 3. v. a., *procure, acquire, secure.*

Parīsiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. *Rheims*, (Remi), *Trèves* (Treveri).

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**parŏ-**, cf. **opiparus**, and **pareo**], 1. v. a., *procure, provide, prepare, get ready for* (bellum used concretely for the means of war), *arrange.* — **parātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *ready, prepared:* **animo parato** (with mind resolved), *resolute, determined;* **paratus in armis**, *armed for war.*

pars, partis, [PAR + **tis** (reduced), akin to **portio**, and perh. to **par** through idea of barter], F., (*a dividing*), *a portion, a part, a share.* — Often of position or direction merely, *side, direction, region:* **una ex parte**, *on one side;* **in utram partem**, *in which direction;* **ex utraque parte**, *on both sides;* **sinistra pars**, *the left flank;* **pars fluminis** (*bank*); **maior pars**, *the majority.* — Fig.: **qua ex parte**, *in which respect;* **omnibus partibus**, *in all respects;* **in utramque partem**, *in both respects, both ways*, (of a plan); in

utramque partem, *on both sides* (of a discussion). — Esp.: **tres partes,** *three quarters,* (three parts out of four); **ex parte,** *in part;* **ad inferiorem partem fluminis,** *down the river;* **ab inferiore parte fluminis** (*further down,* etc.). — **partim,** acc. as adv., *in part, partly, some . . . others.*

partim, see **pars.**

partior, -īrī, -ītus, [**parti-**], 4. v. dep., *divide:* **partitis temporibus,** *alternately.*

partītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **partior.**

partus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pario.**

parum, [akin to **parvus,** perh. for **parvum**], adv., *not very, not much, not sufficiently:* **parum diligenter,** *too carelessly, without sufficient care.*

parvulus, -a, -um, [**parvŏ-** + **lus**], adj., *small, slight, insignificant:* **ab parvulis,** *from infancy.*

parvus, -a, -um, [perh. for **paurus,** cf. **paucus**], adj., *small, slight, little.*

passim [acc. of **passis** (pad (in **pando,** *spread*) + **tis**)], adv., *in all directions, all about.*

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pando.**

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of **patior.**

passus, -sūs, [PAD (in **pando**) + **tus**], M., (*a spreading of the legs*), *a stride* (of both feet), *a step, a pace* (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): **mille passuum,** a Roman *mile,* five thousand feet.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [noun-st. akin to **pateo** + **facio**], 3. v. a., *lay open, open.*

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **patefacio.**

patefīō, pass. of **patefacio.**

pateō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., *be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open.* — **patēns,** -entis, p. as adj., *open, exposed.*

pater, -tris, [PA (in **pasco**?) + **ter**], M., *a father.* — Plur., *ancestors.*

patienter, [**patient-** + **ter**], adv., *patiently.*

patientia, -ae, [**patient-** + **ia**], F., *patience, endurance, forbearance* (in refraining from fighting).

patior, patī, passus, [?], 3. v. dep., *suffer, endure, allow, permit:* **vim tempestatis** (*endure, stand*).

patrius, -a, -um, [**patr-** + **ius**], adj., *of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers.*

patrōnus, -ī, [fr. **pater,** for form cf. **colonus** + **nus**], M., *a patron, a protector.*

patruus, -ī, [pat (e) r- + **vus**?], M., *an uncle* (on the father's side, cf. **avunculus,** on the mother's).

paucitās, -tātis, [**paucŏ-** + **tas**], F., *small number.*

paucus, -a, -um, [PAU (cf. **paulus** and **parvus**) + **cus**], adj., almost always in plur., *few, some few* (but with implied *only* in a semi-negative sense): **paucis (pauca) respondit** (*in a few words, briefly*).

paulātim [**paulŏ-** (reduced) + **atim,** as if acc. of † **paulatis** († **paulā** + **tis**)], adv., *little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time.*

paulisper [**paulis** (abl. plur. of **paulus**?) **per**], adv., *a little while.*

paulō [abl. of **paulus**, *little*], as adv., *a little, slightly.*

paululum [acc. of **paululus**, dim. of **paulus**], as adv., *a very little.*

paulum [acc. of **paulus** (PAU + **lus**, cf. **paucus**)], as adv., *a little, a short distance, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, [PAC (*fix*), as st.], F. (*a treaty*?), *peace, favor.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], I. v. n., *go wrong, commit a fault.*

pectus, -oris, [perh. **pect** (as root of **pecto**, *comb*) + **us**, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. **pectinatus**], N., *the breast.*

pecūnia, -ae, [† **pecunō-** (**pecu-** (*cattle*) + **nus**, cf. **Vacuna**) + **ia**], F., *money* (originally cattle), *wealth.*

pecus, -oris, [PEC (*tie*?) + **us**], N., *cattle* (especially sheep and goats): **pecore vivere** (*flesh* of cattle). — Pl., *cattle, flocks and herds.*

pedālis, -e, [**ped-** + **alis**], adj., *of a foot* (in thickness), *a foot thick.*

pedes, -itis, [**ped-** (as if **pedi**) + **tis** (reduced)], C., *a footman, a foot-soldier.* — Collectively, *the infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, [**pedit-** + **tris**], adj., *of infantry, of persons on foot:* **itinera** (*journeys on foot, marches, land routes*); **proelium** (*on land*); **copiae** (*the foot, the infantry*).

peditātus, -tūs, [**pedit-** + **atus**, cf. **consulatus**], M., *foot, infantry.*

Pedius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Pedius*, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul. He sided with Augustus, and was afterwards made consul by Augustus's patronage.

pēior, see **malus.**

pēius, see male.

pellis, -is, [?], F., *a hide, a skin* (either on or off the body of an animal): **sub pellibus**, *in tents*, i.e. *in the field.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, [?], 3. v. a., *strike, beat, drive, defeat, repulse, rout.*

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, [?], 3. v. a., *hang, weigh, weigh out.* Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), *pay, pay out.* — Esp. with words of punishment, *pay* (a penalty), *suffer* (punishment, cf. **dare** and **capere**).

penes [prob. acc. of st. in **-os** akin to **penitus**], prep. with acc., *in the power of.*

penitus [st. akin to **penes, penus**, etc., + **itus**, cf. **antiquitus**], adv., *far within, deeply, entirely, utterly:* **penitus ad extremos finis** (*clear to, all the way to*).

1. **per** [unc. case-form], adv. (in composition) and prep. w. acc., *through, along, over, among.* — Fig., *through, by means of* (cf. **ab**, *by*, directly), *by the agency of.* — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: **per anni tempus potuit**, *the time of the year would allow;* **per te licere**, *you do not prevent, you allow;* **per aetatem non poterant** (*on account of*). — Often in adv. expressions: **per fidem**, *in good faith*, in reference to a deception on the other side; **per concilium**, *in council;* **per insidias**, *treacherously;* **per cruciatum**, *with torture;* **per vim**, *forcibly;* **locus ipse per se** (*in and of itself*).

2. **per** [prob. a different case of

same st. as 1. **per**], adv. in comp., *very*, *exceedingly*, *completely*.

perāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perago**.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, [1. **per-ago**], 3. v. a., *conduct through*, *finish*, *accomplish:* **concilium** (*hold to the end*); **conventus** (*finish holding*).

perangustus, -a, -um, [2. **per-angustus**], adj., *very narrow*.

perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **percipio**.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [1. **per-capio**], 3. v. a., *take in* (completely), *learn*, *acquire*, *hear*. — Esp. of harvests, *gather*. Hence, fig., *reap:* **fructus victoriae**.

percontātiō, -ōnis, [**percontā-** (*inquire*) + **tio**], F., *inquiry*, *inquiries* (though sing. in Latin).

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, (-currī), -cursus, [1. **per-curro**], 3. v. n. and a., *run along*.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of **percutio**.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [1. **per-quatio**, *shake*], 3. v. a., *hit*, *strike*, *run through*.

perdisco, -discere, -didicī, no p. p., [1. **per-disco**], 3. v. a., *learn thoroughly*, *get by heart*.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perdo**.

perdo, perdere, perdidī, perditus, [1. **per-do**], 3. v. a., *destroy* (cf. **interficio**), *ruin*. — **perditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *ruined*, *desperate*, *abandoned*.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [1. **per-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead through*, *lead along*, *bring over*, *carry along*, *make* (**fossam**), *march* (**legionem**). — Fig., *prolong*, *win over*, *bring:* **rem ad extremum casum** (*reduce*).

perductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perduco**.

perendinus, -a, -um, [**perendie** (†**peren-die**, cf. **postridie**) + **inus**], adj., (*of the day beyond*, cf. **per**), *of day after to-morrow:* **perendino die**, *day after to-morrow*, *in two days*.

pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, [1. **per-eo**, *go*], irr. v. n., *perish*, *be killed* (in battle).

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [1. **per-equito**, cf. **eques**], 1. v. a. and n., *ride over* (or *around*).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [2. **per-exiguus**], adj., *very small*.

perfacilis, -e, [2. **per-facilis**], adj., *very easy*.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perficio**.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [1. **per-fero**], irr. v. a., *carry through* (or *over*): **opinionem** (*spread among*); **consilium** (*carry over*); **famam** (*bring*). — Also, *bear through* (to the end), *endure*, *suffer*, *submit to*.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [1. **per-facio**, *make*], 3. v. a., *accomplish*, *complete*, *finish*, *make* (complete). — With **ut** (**uti**), *succeed* (in doing or having done), *cause to*.

perfidia, -ae, [**perfidŏ-** + **ia**], F., *perfidy*, *treachery*, *faithlessness*.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, frāctus, [1. **per-frango**], 3. v. a., *break through*.

perfuga, -ae, [1. **per-**†**fuga** (FUG + **a**, cf. **scriba**)], M., *a refugee*, *a fugitive*, *a deserter*.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p., [1. **per-fugio**], 3. v. n., *run away*, *flee* (to a place), *escape to*.

perfugium, -ī, [1. **per-†fugium,** cf. **perfugio**], N., *a place of refuge, refuge.*

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus (?), [1. **per-rego,** *keep straight*], 3. v. n., (*keep one's direction?*), *keep on, continue to advance, advance.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus, [†**periclitō-** (as if p. p. of **periculor,** cf. **periculum**)], 1. v. dep., *try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, [**periculō-** + **osus**], adj., *dangerous.*

perīculum (**-clum**), -ī, [†**peri-** (cf. **experior,** *try*) + **culum**], N., *a trial, an attempt.* Hence, *peril, danger, risk.*

perītus, -a, -um, [†**peri-** (cf. **experior,** *try*) + **tus**], p. p. as adj., (*tried*), *experienced, skilled, skilful.*

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perfero.**

perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perlego.**

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [1. **per-lego**], 3. v. a., *read through, read* (a letter aloud).

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, [1. **per-luo**], 3. v. a., *wash all over.* — Pass. (as reflex.), *bathe.*

permāgnus, -a, -um, [2. **permagnus**], adj., *very great, very large.*

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, mānsūrus, [1. **per-maneo**], 2. v. n., *remain* (to the end), *continue, hold out, persist:* **in eadem libertate** (*continue to live,* etc.).

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtus (-mistus) [2. **per-misceo**], 2. v. a., *mix* (thoroughly), *mingle.*

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **permitto.**

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [1. **per-mitto**], 3. v. a., (*give over*), *grant, allow, give up, entrust:* **fortunas** (*trust*); **summam imperi** (*place in the hands of,* etc.); **suffragiis rem** (*leave the matter to,* etc.).

permixtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **permisceo.**

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **permoveo.**

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [1. **per-moveo**], 2. v. a., *move* (thoroughly), *influence, affect.* — **permōtus,** -a, -um, p. p., *much affected, much influenced, overcome.*

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsus, [1. **per-mulceo**], 2. v. a., *smooth over.* Hence, *soothe, pacify.*

perniciēs, -ēī, [?, akin to **nex,** *death*], F., *destruction, ruin.*

perpaucus, -a, -um, [2. **perpaucus**], adj.— Plur., *very few, but very few, only a very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī, [**perpendi-** (st. of **perpendo,** *hang down*) + **culum**], N., *a plumb line:* **ad perpendiculum,** *perpendicularly.*

perpetior, -petī, -pessus, [1. **per-patior**], 3. v. dep., *suffer, endure.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, [1. **per-†petuus** (PET (*aim*) + **vus**)], adj., (*keeping on through*), *continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent:* **vita** (*whole*); **paludes** (*continuous*); **in perpetuum,** *forever, permanently.* — Abl. as adv., **perpetuō,** *forever, constantly, continually.*

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [1. **per-quaero**], 3. v. a., *search for, inquire about.*

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [1. **per-rumpo**], 3. v. a. and n., *break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage.*

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perrumpo.**

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [1. **per-scribo**], 3. v. a., *write out* (in full).

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [1. **per-sequor**], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue, attack:* **mortem, iniurias** (*avenge*).

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**per-severō-**, *very strict*], 1. v. n., *persist.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, [2. **per-solvo**], 3. v. a., *pay* (fully). — Esp. (cf. **pendo**) of penalties, *pay, suffer* (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perspicio.**

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [1. **per-† specio**], 3. v. a., *see through, see, inspect, examine.* — Also, *see thoroughly.* — Fig., *see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover.*

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [1. **per-sto**], 1. v. n., *stand firm, persist, remain firm, be firm.*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, [1. **per-suadeo**, *advise*], 2. v. a. and n., *induce, persuade:* **hoc volunt persuadere** (*make people believe*). — Pass. (impers.), *be persuaded* (dat. of person), *be satisfied, believe.*

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [1. **per-terreo**], 2. v. a., *terrify, alarm:* **perterritus equitatus** (*put in a panic*); **timore perterritus**, *struck with terror;* **quos perterritos** (*panic-stricken, flying in terror*).

pertinācia, -ae, [**pertinac-** + **ia**], F., *obstinacy, stubbornness.*

pertineo, -tinēre, -tinuī, no p. p., [1. **per-teneo**], 2. v. n., (*hold a course towards*), *tend, extend.* — Fig., *have to do with, tend:* **eodem illo ut**, etc. (*have the same purpose, look in the same direction*); **res ad plures pertinet** (*more are implicated in*, etc.).

pertulī, see **perfero.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, perturbā- + **tio**], F., *disturbance, alarm, panic, demoralization.*

perturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perturbo.**

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [1. **perturbo**, *disturb*], 1. v. a., *disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify.*

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus, [1. **pervagor**], 1. v. dep., *roam about, scatter.*

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [1. **per-venio**], 4. v. n., (*come through to*), *arrive at, get as far as, reach, come.* — Fig., *arrive:* **ad hunc locum** (*come to this point*); **pars** (of property, *come, fall*).

perventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pervenio.**

pēs, pedis, [PAD, *tread*, as st.], M., *the foot.* — Also, as a measure, *a foot.* — Esp.: **pedem referre**, *draw back, give way;* **pedibus proeliari** (*on foot*); **ad pedes desilire** (*to the ground*, from on horseback, etc.); **pedibus aditus**, *approach by land.*

petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, [PAT], 3. v. a. and n., (*fall?, fly?*), *aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to get, go to.* Hence; *ask, request,*

look for, get: **petentibus Haeduis** (*at the request of*, etc.); **fugam** (*take to*).

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe on the Garonne (*Perigord*).

Petrōnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Petrosidius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard-bearer in Cæsar's army.

phalanx, -angis, [Gr. φάλαγξ], F., *a phalanx* (properly an arrangement of troops in a solid mass from eight to twenty-four deep, but applied also to other bodies of troops), *an array*.

Pictones (**Pect-**), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (*Poitou*).

pietās, -tātis, [piŏ-, *dutiful*, + **tas**], F., *filial affection*, *affection* (for the gods or one's country, etc.), *patriotism*.

pīlum, -ī, [?], N., *a pestle*. — Also, *a javelin* (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): **pilum murale**, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

pīlus, -ī, [pilum], M., *a century* (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see **centurio**). — Also, *a centurion* (of a particular rank). — Phrases: **primi pili centurio** (*of the first century* or *rank*); **primum pilum duxerat**, *had commanded in the first century of the first cohort*, *been first centurion*.

pinna, -ae, [= **penna**, *feather* (PET (*fly*) + **na**)], F., *an artificial parapet* (of osier or the like run along the top of a wall).

Pīrūstae, -ārum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is, [?], M., *a fish*. — Collectively, *fish*.

Pīsō, -ōnis, [pisŏ (*pease*) + **o**], M., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. **Cicero**), a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii B.C. 107, and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius*, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar's wife. — 3. *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul with M. Messala in B.C. 61. — 4. *Piso*, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by one of the above named).

pix, picis, [?], F., *pitch*.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [†**placŏ-** (cf. **placo**, and **placidus**)], 2. v. n., *please*. — Esp. in third person, *it pleases* (one), *one likes*, *one determines*, *one decides*.

placidē [old case-form of **placidus**, *quiet*], adv., *quietly*, *calmly*.

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [st. akin to **placeo**], 1. v. a., *pacify*, *appease*.

Plancus, -ī, [perh. akin to **planus**], M. (*Flat-foot*), a Roman family name. — See **Munatius**.

plānē [old case-form of **planus**], adv., *flatly*, *clearly*, *entirely*.

plānitiēs, -ēī, [**planŏ-** + **ties**, cf. **-tia**], F., *a plain*.

plānus, -a, -um, [unc. root + **nus**], adj., *flat*, *level*, *even*: **carinae planiores** (*less deep*, *less rounding*).

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēī), [PLE (in **plenus**) + unc. term. (cf. **turba**)], F., *the populace, the multitude, the common people.*

plēnē [old case-form of **plenus**], adv., *fully, entirely, completely.*

plēnus, -a, -um, [PLE (in **pleo**, *fill*) + **nus**], adj., *full:* **luna**; **legio.**

plērumque, see **plerusque.**

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [PLE (in **pleo**, *fill*) + **rus-que** (cf. **-pletus, plenus**)], adj. only in plur., *most of, very many.* — Acc. sing. as adv., **plērumque**, *generally, usually, for the most part, very often.*

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii.

plumbum, -ī, [?], N., *lead.* — **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrimus, see **multus.**

plūs, [akin to **pleo**, *fill*], see **multus.**

pluteus, -ī, [?], M., *a mantelet, a cover* (movable, for defence).— Also, *a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.*

pōculum, -ī, [root (or st.) PO- (in **potus**, *drink*) + **culum**], N., *a drinking-cup.*

poena, -ae, [perh. †**povi-** (PU) + **na** (cf. **punio**, *punish*)], F., *a penalty.* Hence, *a punishment* (see **persolvo, repeto**).

pollex, -icis, [?], M., *the thumb* (with or without **digitus**).

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, [†**por-** for **pro** (cf. **portendo**) **-liceor**, *bid*], 2. v. dep., *offer, promise* (voluntarily): **liberaliter** (*made liberal offers*).

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [**pollicitā-** + **tio**], F., *an offer, a promise.*

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **polliceor.**

Pompēius, -ī, [†**pompe-** (dialectic form of **quinque**) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile or family name. — Esp.: 1. *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58. — 2. *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius, probably a Gaul enfranchised by one of the Pompeys.

pondus, -eris, [PEND (in **pendo**, *weigh*) + **us**], N., *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [prob. †**por-sino** (cf. **polliceor**)], 3. v. a., *lay down, place, put:* **posita tollere** (*things laid up, consecrated*); **ponere custodes** (*set*); **castra** (*pitch*); **praesidium** (*station*, but see below). — Fig., *place, lay, make, depend on:* **in fuga praesidium**; **spem salutis in virtute** (*find, found, seek*).—**positus**, -a, -um, p. p., *situated, lying, depending on:* **posita est**, *lies;* **positum est in**, etc., *depends on*, etc.

pōns, pontis, [?], M., *a bridge.*

populātiō, -ōnis, [**populā-** + **tio**], F., *a plundering, a raid.*

populor, -ārī, -ātus, [**populŏ-**], 1. v. dep., (*strip*, of people?, cf. Eng., *skin, shell, bark a tree*), *ravage, devastate.*

populus, -ī, [PAL? (in **pleo**, *fill*), reduplicated + **us**], M., (*the full number, the mass*), *a people* (in its collective capacity), *a nation, a tribe* (as opposed to individuals): **populus Romanus** (the official designation of the Roman state).

por-, **port-**, [akin to **pro**], obs. prep., only in comp., *forth.*

porrēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **porrigo.**

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, rēctus, [†**por-** (cf. **polliceor**), **-rego**], 3. v. a., *stretch forth:* **porrecta loca pertinent** (*stretch out in extent*).

porrō [?, akin to †**por** (cf. **porrigo**)], adv., *furthermore, further, then* (in narration).

porta, -ae, [POR (*go through*) + **ta**], F., (*way of traffic?*), *a gate.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**porta-**?], I. v. a., *carry* (perh. orig. by way of traffic), *bring, convey.*

portōrium, -ī, [?, **porta** (reduced) + **orium** (N. of **-orius**), perh. orig. †**portor** + **ius**], N., (*gate-money?* or *carrier's money?*), *a duty* (an impost), *a toll.*

portus, -tūs, [POR (cf. **porta**) + **tus**], M., (*a place of access*), *a harbor, a haven, a port.*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, no p. p., [perh. akin to **prex**, *prayer*], 3 v. a., *demand* (with some idea of claim, stronger than **peto**, weaker than **flagito**), *require, claim.*

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pono**.

possessiō, -ōnis, [†**por-**†**sessio** (cf. **obsessio**)], F., *possession, occupation* —Concretely (as in Eng.), *possessions, lands* (possessed).

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [†**por-sedeo**], 2 v. a., (*settle farther on?*), *occupy* (in a military sense), *possess* (lands, of a people), *hold possession of.*

possum, posse, potuī, [**pote-** (for **potis**) **-sum**], irr. v. n., *be able, can,* etc.: **plurimum posse**, *be most powerful, have very great influence;* **tantum potest**, *has so much weight, power, influence;* **largiter posse**, *have great influence;* **multitudine posse**, *be strong in numbers;* **equitatu nihil posse**, *have no strength in cavalry;* **quicquid possunt**, *whatever power they have;* **quid virtute possent**, *what they could do by valor;* **fieri posse**, *be possible;* **ut spatium intercedere posset** (*might intervene*); **quam maximum potest**, *the greatest possible.*

post [?, prob. abl. of st. akin to **postis** (cf. **ante, antes**, *rows*, and **antae**, *pilasters*)], adv. and prep. with acc., *behind, after:* **post diem tertium**, *three days after;* **post se**, *in their rear;* **post hunc**, *next to him.*

posteā [**post ea**], adv., *afterwards.*

posteāquam [**postea quam**], conjunctive adv., (*later than*), *after* (only with clause).

posterus, -a, -um, [**post-** (or st. akin) + **terus** (orig. compar.)], adj., *the next, later:* **postero die**, *the next day;* **in posterum**, *the next day.* Plur. as noun, *posterity.*—**postrēmus**, -a, -um, superl., *last.*—**postrēmō**, abl., *lastly, finally.*

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**post-pono**], 3. v. a., *place behind, postpone:* **omnibus rebus postpositis**, *disregarding everything else.*

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **postpono.**

postquam, [**post quam**], conjunctive adv., (*later than*), *after.*

postrēmō, see **posterus.**

postrēmus, see **posterus.**

postrīdiē [†posteri- (loc. of **pos-**

terus) -die], adv., *the next day:* **postridie eius diei,** *the next day after that.*

postulātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **postulo**], N., *a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], I. v. a., *claim* (with idea of right, less urgent than **posco**), *ask, request, require:* **tempus anni** (*require, make necessary*).

potēns, -entis, [p. of **possum** as adj.], adj., *powerful:* **homo** (*influential*); **potentiores,** *men of influence.*

potentātus, -tūs, [potent- + **atus**, cf. **consulatus**], M., *the chief power, supremacy.*

potentia, -ae, [**potent-** + **ia**], F., *power* (political influence), *authority* (not official or legal).

potestās, -tātis, [**potent-** + **tas**], F., *power* (official, cf. **potentia,** and civil, not military, cf. **imperium**), *power* (generally), *control, ability, opportunity, chance:* **sui potestatem facere,** *give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them;* **se potestati alicuius permittere** (*surrender,* etc.); **consistendi potestas erat nulli** (*chance, possibility*); **discedendi potestatem facere** (*give permission,* etc.); **facta potestate,** *having obtained permission;* **imperium aut potestas,** *military or civil power;* **deorum vis ac potestas,** *the power and dominion of the gods.*

potior, potīrī, potītus, [poti-, cf. **potis,** *able*], 4 v. dep., *become master of, possess one's self of, get the control of:* **imperio** (*secure*); **castris** (*capture*).

potior, -us, -ōris, (compar. of **potis**], adj., *preferable.* — **potius,** acc. as adv., *rather, preferably.*

potītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **potior.**

prae [unc. case-form of same st. as **pro**], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *before, in comparison with.* — Esp. with words implying hindrance, *for, on account of* (some obstacle). — In comp., *before others, very, before, at the head of.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um, [**prae-acutus** (p. p. of **acuo**)], p. p. as adj., *sharpened to a point, pointed.*

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus, [**prae-habeo**], 2 v. a., (*hold before one*), *offer, present, furnish:* **munimenta** (*furnish,* and so *afford, make*).

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, [**prae-caveo**], 2. v. n., *take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard.*

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [**prae-cedo**], 3. v. a., *go before.* — Fig., *excel, surpass.*

praeceps, -cipitis, [**prae-caput**], adj., *headlong, in haste:* **locus praeceps,** *a steep incline.*

praeceptum, -ī, [p. p. of **praecipio**], N., *an instruction, an order.*

praeceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praecipio.**

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**prae-capio**], 3. v. a., *take beforehand, anticipate.* — Also, *order, give instructions.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**praecipit-**], I. v. a., *throw headlong:* **se** (*plunge headlong*).

praecipuē [old case-form of **praecipuus**], adv., *especially.*

praecipuus, -a, -um, [**prae-†cap-uus** (CAP + **vus**)], adj., (*taking the first place*), *special.*

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**prae-claudo**], 3. v. a., (*close in front of some one or something*), *shut off, barricade.*

praecō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a herald.*

Praecōnīnus, -ī, [**praecon-** + **inus**], M., a Roman family name. — See **Valerius.**

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus, [**prae-curro**], 3. v. n., *run on before, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before:* **equites** (*ride on in advance*); **celeritate** (*get the start of*, etc.).

praeda, -ae, [prob. **prae-†hida** (root of **-hendo**, *seize*, + **a**)], F., *booty, prey, plunder.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**prae-dicō-** (or similar st. from **prae** with DIC)], 1. v. a. and n., *make known* (before one), *proclaim, assert, describe, boast, vaunt one's self.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, [**praeda**], 1. v. dep., *plunder, take booty.*

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**prae-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead* (etc.), *before:* **murum** (*carry out, draw round*).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praeficio.** — As noun, see **praeficio.**

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**prae-fero**], irr. v. a., *place before, esteem above, prefer to* (with **quam**): **se alicui** (*show one's self better than*).

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**prae-facio**], 3. v. a., *put before, place in command of, set over.* — **praefectus**, p. p. as noun, *a captain* (esp. of cavalry), *a commander, an officer.*

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**prae-figo**], 3. v. a., *fix in front, set on the edge* (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praefigo.**

praemetuō, -metuere, no perf., no p. p., [**prae-metuo**], 3. v. a. and n., *fear beforehand, be anxious.*

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**prae-mitto**], 3. v. a., *send forward, send on, send ahead.*

praemium, -ī, [**prae-†emium** (EM, in **emo**, *buy*, + **ium**)], (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., *a reward, a prize, distinction* (as a reward or prize): **magno praemio remunerari** (*a great price*).

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**prae-occupo**], 1. v. a., *take in opposition* or *beforehand:* **timor animos** (*take complete possession of*, to the exclusion of everything else); **vias** (*close against one*), *preoccupy.*

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**prae-opto**], 1. v. a., *wish in preference, choose rather, prefer.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**prae-paro**], 1. v. a., *prepare beforehand.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [**prae-pono**], 3. v. a., *put in command, set over.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**prae-rumpo**], 3. v. a., *break off* (at the end or in front). — **praeruptus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *precipitous.*

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praerumpo.**

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepīre, -saepsī,

-saeptus, [**prae-saepio**], 4. v. a., *hedge in, wall off.*

praesaeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praesaepio.**

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [**prae-scribo**], 3. v. a., (*write down beforehand*), *prescribe, order, direct, give directions.*

praescrīptum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **praescribo**], N., *an order, orders.*

praescrīptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praescribo.**

praesēns, -entis, p. of **praesum.**

praesentia, -ae, [**praesent- + ia**], F., *presence, the present moment:* **in praesentia,** *for the moment, at the moment.*

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, [**prae-sentio**], 4. v. a., *see beforehand, find out in time, find out* (beforehand).

praesertim [as if acc. of †**praesertis** (SER, in **sero** (*join*) + **tis**)], adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, -ī, [**prae-†sidium** (SED + **ium**), cf. **obsidium**], N., (*a sitting down before*), *a guard, a garrison, a force* (detached for occupation or guard): **intra praesidia,** *within the lines.* — Fig., *protection, assistance, support:* **praesidio litterarum** (*with the assistance of,* etc.); **in fuga praesidium ponere,** *seek safety in flight.*

praestō [?, perh. "praesto," *I am here* (as if quoted)], adv., *on hand, ready, waiting for, in attendance upon:* **praesto esse,** *be waiting for, meet.*

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus (**-stitus**), [**prae-sto**], 1. v. a. and n., *stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior:* **praestat,** *it is better.* — Also, causatively (*bring before*), *furnish, display:* **officium** (*discharge, perform*); **stabilitatem** (*afford, possess*); **fidem** (*keep, perform one's duty*).

praesum, -esse, -fuī, [**prae-sum**], irr. v. n., *be in front, be at the head of, be in command:* **magistratui** (*hold*).—**praesēns,** -entis, p., *present, immediate:* **pluribus praesentibus,** *in the presence of many;* **praesens adesse,** *be present in person.*

praeter [compar. of **prae** (cf. **inter**)], adv. and prep. with acc., *along by, past, beyond.* — Fig., *except, beside, contrary to.*

praetereā [**praeter-ea** (abl.) ?], adv., *furthermore, besides:* **si nemo praeterea,** *if no one else.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [**praeter-eo**], irr. v. a. and n., *go by, pass by, pass over.* — **praeteritus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *past.* — Esp. N. plur., **praeterita,** *the past* (cf. "bygones").

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praetereo.**

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**praeter-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go by, let slip, omit, neglect.*

praeterquam [**praeter-quam**], conjunctive adv., *except, besides.*

praetor, -tōris, [**prae-†itor,** (I, *go* + **tor**)], M., (*a leader*), *a commander.* — Esp., *a prætor,* one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers and the others regular commands abroad. Later all during their year of office had judicial powers, but like the

consuls (who were originally called prætors) they had a year abroad as propprætors: **legatus pro praetore** (*lieutenant in command*, acting as a prætor).

praetōrius, -a, -um, [**praetor-** + **ius**], adj., *of a prætor* (in all its senses); **praetoria cohors**, *the body guard*, of a commander (see **praetor**).

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [**prae-uro**], 3. v. a., *burn at the end* (in front); **praeustae sudes** (*burnt at the point*, to harden them).

praeūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praeuro**.

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [**prae-verto**, *turn*], 3. v. a., *anticipate, forestall, attend to first*.

prāvus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *crooked*. — Fig., *wrong, vicious*.

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, [?], 3. v. a., *press*. — Esp., *press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress*: **se ipsi**, *crowd, impede, embarrass each other*.

prendō (**prehendo**), prendere, prendī, prēnsus, [**prae-** † **hendo**], 3. v. a., *seize* (against some one else?), *seize* (generally), *take, grasp*.

pretium, -ī, [?], N., *a price, cost, value*.

† **prex**, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), [?], F., *a prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation*.

prīdiē [loc. of st. of **pro** (**prae**?) -**die**, cf. **postridie**], adv., *the day before*.

prīmipīlus [**primō-pilus**], M., *the first centurion*. See **centurio** and **pilus**.

prīmō [abl. of **primus**], adv., *at first* (opposed to *afterwards*, cf. **primum**).

prīmum [acc. of **primus**], adv., *first* (in order of incidents, opposed to *next*, etc.), *in the first place*: **cum primum**, *as soon as*; **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*.

prīmus, -a, -um, see **prior**.

prīnceps, -ipis, [**primŏ-** (reduced) -† **ceps** (CAP as st.)], adj., (*taking the lead*), *first, chief, foremost*: **principes belli inferendi** (*leaders in*, etc.); **locus** (*chief, highest*); **ea princeps persolvit** (*was the first to*). — Often as noun, *leading man, leader, chief man, chief*: **legationis** (*head*).

prīncipātus, -tūs, [**princip-** + **atus**, cf. **consulatus**], M., *foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead* (in power and influence among states), *leadership*.

prior, -us, -ōris, [compar. of st. of **pro**], adj., *former, before*: **priores**, *those in front*; **non priores inferre** (*not the first to*, etc.). — **prius**, N. as adv., *before* (see also **priusquam**). — **prīmus**, -a, -um, superl., *first*: **agmen** (*front*); **primos civitatis** (*the best men*); **a prima obsidione**, *from the beginning of the siege*: **in primis**, *especially*.— See **primo** and **primum**.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [**prius-tinus**, cf. **diutinus**], adj., (*of former times*), *old, former*: **pristinus dies**, *the day before*.

prius, see **prior**.

priusquam [**prius-quam**], conj. adv., *earlier than, before*. Often separated.

prīvātim [as if acc. of † **priva-**

tis (**privā-** + **tis**)], adv., *privately, as private persons* (opp. to **magistratus**): **de suis privatim rebus** (*their own private affairs*); **plus posse privatim** (*in their own name*, opposed to official action).

prīvātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **privo**, *deprive*], adj., (destitute of official character), *private, personal.*

prō [for **prod**, abl. of st. akin to **prae, prior**, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *in front of, before.* Hence, *in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of:* **nihil pro sano**, *nothing prudent;* **pro explorato**, *ascertained, as certain.* — Also, *in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for.* — In comp., *before, forth, away, for, down* (as falling forward).

probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **probo**.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**probŏ-**], 1. v. a., (*make good, find good*), *approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor* (a plan), *adopt* (a measure).

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [**pro-cedo**], 3. v. n., *go forward, advance, proceed:* **longius** (*go to a distance*).

Procillus, -ī, [**Proculŏ-** + **lus**], M., a Roman family name. — See **Valerius**.

prōclīnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proclino**.

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**proclino**], 1. v. a., (*bend forward*), *throw down:* **res proclinata** (*falling, ruined*).

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [**pro-consul**, on account of the phrase **pro consule**], M., *a proconsul, an ex-consul* (during his term of service abroad).

procul [?, †**procŏ-**, "*off*" (**pro** + **cus**) + **lus** (reduced, cf. **simul**)], adv., *at a distance* (not necessarily great), *at some distance, afar, from afar.*

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, no p. p., [**pro-cumbo**, *lie*], 3. v. n., *fall* (forward), *fall* (generally), *sink down, lie down* (for rest), *become lodged* (of grain). — Less exactly, *incline, slope, lean.*

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**procuro**], 1. v. a., *care for, have charge of, attend to.*

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, (-cucurrī), -cursūrus, [**pro-curro**], 3. v. n., *run forward, charge, rush out.*

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, [**prod** (see **pro**) -**eo**], irr. v. n., *go forth, come forth, come out, go forward:* **longius** (*go to any distance*).

prōdesse, see **prōsum**.

prōditiō, -ōnis, [**pro-†ditio**, cf. **prodo**], F., (*a giving away*), *treason, treachery.*

prōditor, -tōris, [**pro-dator** (cf. **prodo**)], M., *a traitor, a betrayer.*

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prodo**.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**prodo**], 3. v. a., (*give forward*), *give forth, publish, betray* (give away), *transmit, hand down:* **memoriam** (*preserve*, by handing down to posterity); **memoria proditum**, *told in tradition, handed down.*

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**pro-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead forth, lead out, bring out* (**iumenta**), *draw up* (troops). — Fig., *protract, prolong.*

prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **produco**.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, [**proeliŏ-**], 1. v. dep., *fight* (in war).

proelium, -ī, [?], N., *a battle* (a single encounter, great or small), *a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish:* **committere** (*engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight*).

profectiō, -ōnis, [**pro-factio** (cf. **proficiscor**)], F., *a setting out, a departure, retreat* (the special idea coming from the context), *starting, evacuation.*

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proficio**.

prŏfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proficiscor**.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**profero**], irr. v. a., *bring forth, bring out.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūrus, [**pro-facio**], 3. v. n., (*make way forward*), *advance* (cf. **proficiscor**). — Fig., *gain advantage* ("get on"), *gain* (much or little), *accomplish* (something): **satis ad laudem profectum est**, *enough has been done for glory;* **ad pacem parum profici**, *not much was doing towards peace;* **plus multitudine telorum proficere** (*have the advantage in*).

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus, [**pro-†faciscor** (cf. **proficio**)], 3. v. dep., (*make way forward*). — Esp., *start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, come out, sail out:* **quo proficiscimur**, *whither we are going;* **unde erant profecti**, *whence they had come;* **ad proficiscendum pertinere** (*to a journey*, etc.).

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [**pro-fateor**, *confess*], 2. v. dep., *declare publicly:* **se** (*offer one's self, volunteer as, declare one's self*).

prōflīgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **profligo**.

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**†profligŏ-** (**pro-†fligus**, FLIG + **us**)], 1. v. a., (*dash to the ground*). — Esp., *put to rout, rout.*

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, no. p. p., [**pro-fluo**], 3. v. n., *flow forth, rise.*

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [**pro-fugio**], 3. v. n., *flee forth, flee, escape, make one's escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [**pro-(g)natus**], p. p. as adj., *sprung from:* **prognati ex**, *descendants of.*

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [**pro-gradior**, *step, go*], 3. v. dep., *go forward, march forward, march out, come out.* — Also, fig., *proceed, go:* **amentia longius** (*go*).

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **progredior**.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, [**pro-habeo**], 2. v. a., *hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid.* — Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), *protect:* **aliquem ab omni militum iniuria** (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prohibeo**.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**pro-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw forward, throw away, cast* (down, cf. **pro**), *abandon:* **aquilam intra vallum** (*throw over*);

proiectae, *casting themselves;* **se ex navi** (*leap*).

proinde [pro-inde], adv., (*from there forward*), *therefore, hence.*

prōminēns, -entis, p. of **promineo.**

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p., [pro-†mineo (cf. **minor,** *project*)], 2. v. n., *lean forward, lean over.*

prōmiscuē [old case-form of **promiscuus**], adv., *in common.*

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **promitto.**

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go forward*), *let grow* (of the hair): **promisso capillo sunt,** *they wear long hair.*

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **promoveo.**

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., *move forward, advance, push forward.*

prōmptus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **promo,** *bring forth*], as adj., (taken out of the store *ready* for distribution), *ready, quick, active.*

prōmunturium, (**-mon-**), -ī, [akin to **promineo**], N., *a headland.*

prōnē [old case-form of **pronus,** *leaning*], adv., *with a slope.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pronuntio], 1. v. a., (*publish forth*), *make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation.*

prope [?, akin to **pro,** cf. **procul** and **proximus**], adv. and prep. with acc., *near.* — Fig., *almost, nearly.* — Compar., **propius,** *nearer:* **propius tumulum** (as prep.). — Superl., **proximē,** *lately, last.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [pro-pello], 3. v. a., *drive away* (cf. pro), *repulse, rout, dislodge, force back* (changing the point of view).

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [properŏ-, *quick*], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten, be in haste, make haste.*

propinquitās, -tātis, [propinquŏ- + tas], F., *vicinity, a being near, a position near:* **propinquitates fluminum** (*positions near,* etc.). — Esp., *nearness in blood, relationship, a relation* (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um, [st. akin to **prope** (or case-form) + **cus**], adj., *near at hand, near.* — Esp. by blood, *related.* — As noun in plur., *relatives.*

propior, -us, -ōris, [compar. of st. of **prope**], adj., *nearer.* — **proximus,** superl. (of st. †**procŏ-,** cf. **procul**), *nearest, next, neighboring:* **bellum** (*last*). — With force of prep. (cf. **prope**): **proximi Rhenum,** *nearest the Rhine.*

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [pro-pono], 3. v. a., *place before, set before, lay before:* **vexillum** (*hang out*). — Less exactly, *offer, put in the way, present* (difficulty), *make known, state, represent.*

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **propono.**

proprius, -a, -um, [?, akin to **prope?**], adj., *of one's own:* **fines** (*particular*); **hoc proprium virtutis** (*a peculiar property, a mark*).

propter [prope + ter, cf. **aliter, praeter**], adv. and prep. with acc., *near by.* — Also, *on account of* (cf. "all along of").

propterea [**propter-ea** (prob. abl. or instr. of **is**)], adv., *on this account.* — With **quod**, *because, inasmuch as.*

prōpūgnātor, -tōris, [**pro-pugnator** (cf. **propugno**)], M., *a defender.*

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**pro-pugno**], 1. v. n., (*rush forward to fight*, or *fight in front*), *rush out* (fighting), *discharge missiles* (**ex silvis**).

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pro-pulso** (cf. **propello**)], 1. v. a., *repel, keep off, drive off, defend one's self against.*

prōra, -ae, [Gr.], F., *the prow* (of a ship).

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [**pro-ruo**], 3. v. a., *dash down, overthrow, demolish.*

prōrutus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proruo**.

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prosequor**.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [**pro-sequor**], 3. v. dep., *pursue, follow* (on one's way), *escort.* — Fig. (from escorting), *address, take leave of one* (with some kind of attention).

prōspectus, -tūs, [**pro-spectus** (cf. **prospicio**)], M., *outlook, view:* **in prospectu**, *in sight;* **prospectu tenebris adempto**, *the view cut off by the darkness.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus, [**pro-†specio**], 3. v. a., *look forward, look out.* — Fig., *provide for, take care, look out.*

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, [**pro-sterno**], 3. v. a., *dash to the ground, overthrow* (lit. and fig.).

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, [**pro(d)-sum**], irr. v. n., *be for the advantage of, benefit:* **quod alicui prodest**, *by which one profits.*

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [**pro-tego**], 3. v. a., (*cover in front*), *protect, cover.*

prōterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [**pro-terreo**], 2. v. a., *frighten away, drive away in fright.*

prōterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proterreo**.

prōtinus (**-tenus**), [**pro-tenus**, *as far as*], adv., *forward, straight on.* Hence, *straightway, forthwith, at once, instantly* (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proturbo**.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pro-turbo**, *disturb*], 1. v. a., *drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge.*

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proveho**.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [**pro-veho**], 3. v. a., *carry forward.* — In pass., *be carried forth, sail out, set sail:* **leni Africo provectus** (*sail with, be driven by*).

prōveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**pro-venire**], 4. v. n., *come forward.* — Esp. of fruits, *come up, grow.*

prōventus, -tūs, [**pro-†ventus**, cf. **eventus** and **provenio**], M., *an issue* (a coming forth), *success, a result.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, [**pro-video**], 2. v. a., *foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand:* **satis est provisum**, *sufficient provision has been made.*

prōvincia, -ae, [**†provincŏ-** (**vinc-**

as root of **vinco** (*conquer*) + **us**) + **ia**], F., (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), *office* (of a commander or governor), *a province* (in general), *a function.* — Transf., *a province* (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., *The Province* (of Gaul); so with **nostra, ulterior, citerior** (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

prōvinciālis, -e, [**provincia-** + **lis**], adj., *of a province.* — Esp., *of the province* (of Gaul).

provīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **provideo.**

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**pro-volo**], I. v. n., *fly forth.* — Less exactly, *rush forth, rush out, fly out* (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see **prope.**

proximus, see **propior.**

prūdentia, -ae, [**prudent-**, *foreseeing*, + **ia**], F., *foresight, discretion.*

Ptiānii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -eris, [?, prob. same root as **puer**], adj., *adult.* — Plur. as noun, *adults, grown men, young men of age.*

pūblicē [old case-form of **publicus**], adv., *publicly, in the name of the state, as a state, on behalf of the state:* **publice iurare** (*for the people*, making the oath bind them).

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**publicŏ-**], I. v. a., (*make belong to the people*), *confiscate.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, [**populŏ-** + **cus**], adj., *of the people* (as a state), *of the state, public:* **consilium** (*a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent*); **res publica,** *the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business;* **relatis in publicum cornibus** (*publicly displayed*); **mulieres in publicum procurrere** (*abroad into the streets*).

Pūblius, -ī, [prob. **populŏ-** + **ius**, cf. **publicus**], M., a Roman prænomen.

pudet, pudēre, puduit (puditum est), [?], 2. v. impers., (*it shames*), *one is ashamed* (translating the accusative as subject).

pudor, -ōris, [PUD (in **pudet**) + **or**], M., *shame, a sense of shame, a sense of honor.*

puer, -ī, [?], M., *a boy.* — Plur., *children* (of either sex); **a pueris,** *from childhood.*

puerīlis, -e, [**puerŏ-** (reduced) + **ilis**], adj., *of a child:* **aetas** (*of childhood*).

pūgna, -ae, [PUG (in **pugno**) + **na**], F., *a fight* (less formal than **proelium**): **ad pugnam,** *for fighting;* **genus pugnae** (*of fighting*).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pugna-**], I. v. n., *fight, engage.* — Often impers. in pass., **pugnatum est,** etc., *an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued.* — Esp.: **pugnandi potestatem fecit,** *offered battle;* **pugnantes,** *those engaged.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, [?], adj., *beautiful, handsome, fine.* — Fig., *fine, noble, splendid.*

Pullō, -ōnis, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Titus Pullo,* a centurion in Cæsar's army.

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pello**.

pulsus, -ūs, [PEL (in **pello**) + **tus**], M., *a stroke, a beat:* **pulsu remorum praestare** (*the working*, etc.).

pulvis, -eris, [?], M., *dust*.

puppis, -is, [?], F., *the stern*.

pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **purgo**.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**purigŏ**-(**purŏ**-+ †**tagus**, cf. **ago**)], 1. v. a., *clean, clear.* — Fig., *excuse, exonerate, free from suspicion, exculpate.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**putō**- (st. of **putus**, *clean*)], 1. v. a., *clean up, clear up.* — Esp.: **rationes** (*clear up accounts*). Hence alone, *reckon, think, suppose.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, [?], adj., only with **montes**, *the Pyrenees mountains*, between France and Spain.

Q

Q., for **Quīntus**.

quā [abl. or instr. (?) of **qui**], rel. adv., *by which* (way), *where*.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, [**quadraginta** (reduced) + **nus**], distrib. num. adj., *forty each, forty* (*each* often omitted in Eng.).

quadrāgintā [akin to **quattuor**], indecl. num. adj., *forty*.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, [akin to **quattuor**], num. adj., *four hundred*.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, [?, with **r** for original **s**], 3. v. a., *search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask:* **eadem** (*make the same inquiries*).

quaestiō, -ōnis, [**quaes** (as root of **quaero**) + **tio**], F., *an investigation:* **habere de aliquo** (*examine*, as witnesses, usually by torture).

quaestor, -tōris, [**quaes** (as root of **quaero**) + **tor**], M., (*investigator*, or *acquirer*, perh. both). — Esp., *a quæstor* (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army).

quaestus, -tūs, [**quaes** (as root of **quaero**) + **tus**], M., *acquisition*.

quālis, -e, [**quŏ**- (st. of **quis**) + **alis**], inter. adj., *of what sort?* **qualis ascensus** (*what is the nature of?* etc.).

quam [case-form of **quis** and **qui**, cf. **tam, nam**], adv. and conj.: 1. Interrog., *how?* — 2. Rel., *as, than:* **praeferre quam** (*rather than*). — Often with superlatives, *as much as possible:* **quam maximus**, *the greatest possible;* **quam maxime**, *very much.* — See also **postquam, posteaquam, priusquam** (often separated), which are best translated by a single word, omitting the relative part, according to the common English idiom.

quamdiū (often written separately), adv. (see **diu**): 1. Interrog., *how long?* — 2. Rel., *as long, as long as* (with antecedent omitted).

quam ob rem (often found together), adv. phrase: 1. Interrog., *why?* — 2. Rel., *on which account, for which reason.*

quamvīs [**quam vis**], adv., *as you please, however, no matter how.*

quandō [**quam** + unc. case-form akin to **de**], adv., *at any time:* **si quando**, *if ever, whenever.*

quantō, see **quantus**.

quantus, -a, -um, [prob. for **ka-** (root of **qua**) + **vant** + **us**], adj.: 1. Interrog., *how great? how much?* **quantum boni**, *how much good?* **quantae civitates** (*how important?*). — 2. Relative, *as great as*, *as much as*: **tantum . . . quantum**, *so much . . . as*; so **quanta . . . tanta pecunia**.

quantusvīs, -avīs, -umvīs, [**quantus-vis** (from **volo**)], *however great*, *as great as you please*.

quā rē, adv. phrase, *by which thing*, *wherefore*, *therefore*, *on account of which* (circumstance, etc.), *why*. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable; **neque commissum qua re**, *nothing had been done for which*, etc.; **res hortabantur qua re**, etc. (*many reasons for doing so urged*, etc., *to*).

quartus, -a, -um, [**quattuor-** (reduced) + **tus**], num. adj., *fourth*: **quartus decimus**, *fourteenth*.

quasi [**quam** (or **quā**) **-si**], conj., *as if*: **quasi vero**, *as if forsooth* (ironical).

quattuor [?, reduced pl.], indecl. num. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim [**quattuor-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen*.

-que [unc. case-form of **qui**], (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., *and*. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, *and in general*, *and other*.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., *how*, *just as*, *as*.

queror, querī, questus, [?, with **r** for original **s**], 3. v. dep., *complain*, *complain of*, *find fault*, *find fault with*, *bewail*, *lament*.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of **queror**.

quī, quae, quod, cūius, [prob. **quŏ-** + i (demon.)], rel. pron., *who*, *which*, *that*. — Often where a demon. is used in Eng., *this*, *that*. — Often implying an antecedent, *he who*, etc.: **ea quae**, *things which*, *whatever*; **qua de causa**, *for this reason*; **qui patebant** (*though they*, etc.); **qui videant**, *men to see*, *scouts*; **qui**, *and they*; **habere sese quae**, with subjv. (*something to*, etc.); **qui potuissent** (*men who*); **qui postularent**, *to demand*; **haec esse quae**, *this was what*; **qui faceret**, *in that he*, etc.; **paucis diebus quibus** (*after*); **idem quod**, *the same as*. — **quō**, abl. of degree of difference as adv., *the* (more, less, etc.). — See also **quis**, **quod**, 2 **quo**, and 3 **quo**.

quicquam, see **quisquam**.

quīcumque, quae-, quod-, [**qui-cumque** (cf. **quisque**)], indef. rel. pron., *whoever*, *whichever*, *whatever*.

quīdam, quae-, quod- (quid-), [**qui-dam** (case of DA, cf. **nam**, **tam**)], indef. adj. pron., *a* (possibly known, but not identified), *a certain*, *certain*, *a kind of* (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of): **artificio quodam**, *a kind of trick*; **quidam ex militibus** (*one*).

quidem [unc. case-form of **qui** + **dem** (fr. DA, cf. **tandem**, **idem**)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular English equivalent: **ne . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*, *not . . . either*; **vestrae quidem certe**, *yours at least*,

with emphasis; **si quidem,** *if at least, in so far as, since.*

quiēs, -ētis, [**quiē-** (st. of **quiesco,** *keep quiet*) + **tis** (reduced)] F., *rest, sleep, repose.*

quiētus, -a, -um, [**quiē-** (st. of **quiesco,** cf. **quies**) + **tus**], p. p. as adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.*

quīn [**qui** (abl. or instr. of **qui**) + **ne**], conj., interrog., *how not?* and rel., *by which not:* **quin etiam,** *nay even, in fact.* — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, *so but that, but that, that, from* (doing a thing), *to* (do a thing); **non dubito quin,** *I doubt not that;* also, rarely, *I do not hesitate to;* **non aliter sentio quin,** *I have no other idea than that;* **non exspecto quin,** *I do not delay doing,* etc.; **nec abest ab eo quin,** *it is not far from being the case that,* etc.

quīnam (**quis-**), quae-, quod- (quid-), cūius-, [**qui-nam**], interr. pron., *who?* etc. (emph.): **quibusnam manibus** (*with what possible?* etc.).

quīncūnx, -ūncis, [**quinque-uncia,** *ounce*], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, ⁙), *a quincunx:* **in quincuncem dispositis** (*in quincuncial* or *alternate order*).

quīndecim [quinque-decem], indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, [**quinque-centum**], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, [**quinque + nus**], distrib. num. adj., *five at a time, five* (at a time).

quīnquāgintā [**quinque** + unc. **st.**], indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque [?], indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, [**quinque + tus**]. num. adj., *fifth.* — Esp. as a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth-born?).

Quīntus, -ī, see **quintus.**

quis (**quī**), quae (qua), quid (quod), cūius [st. **qui-** and **quŏ-**]: 1. Interrog. adj. pron., *who? which? what?* — 2. Indef., *one, any one, any thing:* **ne quid,** *that nothing;* **ubi quis,** *when any one;* **si quis,** *if any one.*

quisnam, see **quinam.**

quispiam, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [**quis-piam** (**pe-iam,** cf. **quippe, nempe**)], indef. adj. pron., *any, any one, any thing.*

quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cūius-, [**quis-quam**], indef. pron. used substantively (cf. **ullus**), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, *any one, anything.* — As adj., *any.*

quisque, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [**quis-que**], indef. adj. pron. (distrib. universal), *each, each one, every.* — Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: **nobilissimus quisque,** *all the noblest,* one after the other in the order of their nobility; **antiquissimum quodque tempus,** *the most ancient times* in their order; **decimus quisque,** *every tenth, the tenth part of, one in ten.* — With **ut,** and **ita,** a proportion is indicated, *in proportion as . . . so, the more . . . the more.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid (quidquid), cuiuscuius, [**quis,**

doubled], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.*

quīvīs, quae-, quid- (quod-), cuius-, [**qui-vis**], indef. adj. pron., *who you please, any one, any whatever* (affirmative), *any* (whatever).

1. **quō**, see **quī**.

2. **quō** [old dat. of **qui**], adv.: 1. Interrog., *whither?* — 2. Rel., *whither, into which, as far as* (i.e. to what end): **quo intrare** (*which*); **habere quo** (*have any place to go to*, or the like). — 3. Indef., *anywhere.*

3. **quō** [abl. of **qui**], as conj., *in order that* (with comparatives), *that*: **magis eo quam quo** (*than that, than because*). — Esp., **quō minus**, *that not, so that not*: **recusare quominus**, *refuse to.*

quoad [**quo-ad**], conj., (*up to which point*), *as far as, until, as long as.*

quod [N. of **qui**], conj., (*as to which*), *because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, that, as for* (with clause expressing the action): **quod si**, *now if, but if.*

quō minus, see 3 **quo**.

quoniam [**quom** (**cum**) -**iam**], conj., (*when now*), *inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.*

quoque [?], conj., following the word it affects, (*by all means?*), *also, as well.* Cf. **etiam** (usually preceding).

quōque, see **quisque**.

quōque, **quo** with enclitic.

quōqueversus, see **versus**.

quot [akin to **quis**], adj. pron. indecl.: 1. Interrog., *how many?* — 2. Rel., *as many, as many as* (with implied antecedent), *the number which.*

quotannīs [**quot-annis**], adv., (*as many years as there are*), *every year, yearly.*

quotiēns [**quot** + **iens**, cf. **quinquiens**], adv.: 1. Interrog., *how often? how many times?* — 2. Rel., *as often, as often as* (with implied antecedent).

R

rādīx, -īcis, [?], F., *a root.* — Plur., *the roots* (of a tree), *the foot* (of a mountain).

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, [?], 3. v. a., *shave, scrape.*

rāmus, -ī, [?], M., *a branch, a bough, a prong* (of antlers).

rapiditās, -tātis, [**rapidŏ-** + **tas**], F., *swiftness, rapidity.*

rapīna, -ae, [**rapī-** (as if st. of **rapio**, *seize*) + **na** (F. of -**nus**)], F., *plunder.* — Plur., *plundering.*

rārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies* (of soldiers), *a few at a time, few* (as being wide apart).

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **rado**.

ratiō, -ōnis, [†**rati-** (**ra**, in **reor**, + **ti**) + **o**], F., *a reckoning, an account, a roll.* — Also, *calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, science* (or *art*, or *knowledge*, as systematic), *a reason* (as consisting in a calculation), *a manner, a method,*

a consideration: **rationem habere,** *take an account, take account of, have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of,* a mercantile term, cf. *account;* **rei militaris** (*art,* also *nature*); **omnibus rationibus,** *in all ways, in all respects;* **proeli** (*character*); **reposcere** (*demand an account, make one responsible*); **rationem habere ut,** *take care that,* etc.; **rationem habere frumentandi** (*take measures for,* etc.).

ratis, -is, [?], F., *a raft.*

Rauracī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, [abl. of unc. st. perh. akin to **-rus**], insep. prep., *back, again, away, out, un-.* — Esp. implying a giving or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking, see **recipio, refero.**

rebelliō, -ōnis, [**rebelli-** + **o**], F., *a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion.*

Rebilus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — See **Caninius.**

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**re-cedo**], 3. v. n., *make way back, retire, withdraw.*

recēns, -entis, [prob. p. of lost verb †**receo,** *be back,* (cf. **recipero**)], adj., (?, *just coming back?*), *new, fresh, late.*

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsus, [**re-censeo,** *estimate*], 2. v. a., *review, inspect* (of troops).

receptāculum, -ī, [**receptā-** + **culum**], N., *a retreat, a place of refuge.*

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **recipio.**

receptus, -tūs, [**re-captus,** cf. **recipio**], M., *a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge:* **receptui canere,** *to sound a retreat.*

recessus, -sūs, [**re-**†**cessus** (cf. **recedo**)], M., *a retreat:* **recessum dare** (*a chance to retreat*).

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [**re-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall again, fall back, fall upon* (one after some one else).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**re-capio**], 3. v. a., *take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit:* **misericordiam** (*admit of*); **tela recipi,** *be exposed to missiles;* **ad se** (*attack*). — With reflexive, *retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort:* **se ad aliquem** (*rally on*).

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-cito**], 1. v. a., *read* (aloud).

reclīnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reclino.**

reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-clino**], 1. v. a. and n., *lean back, lean over, lean:* **reclinatus,** *leaning.*

rēctē [old case-form of **rectus**], adv., *straight, right, rightly:* **recte factum,** *a good action.*

rēctus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **rego**], adj., (*directed*), *straight:* **recta regione,** *in a straight direction, parallel with.*

recuperō (**-cip-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**reciperō-,** from **recō-** (cf. **recens**) + **parus** (cf. **pario**)], 1. v. a., *get back, recover, regain.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-**†**causo** (cf. **excuso**)], 1. v. a. and n., (*give an excuse for drawing back*), *refuse, reject, repudiate, object to;* abs., *make*

objections: **de stipendio** (*refuse to pay*, etc.); **quin** (*refuse to*); **quominus** (*refuse to*); **periculum** (*refuse to incur*).

rēda (**rhēda**), -ae, [perh. Celtic form akin to **rota**], F., *a wagon* (with four wheels).

redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **redigo**.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reddo**.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**re** (**red**) -**do**], 3. v. a., *give back*, *restore*, *pay* (something due, cf. **re**), *render:* **supplicatio** (*offer*).

redēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **redimo**.

redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, [**re-** (**red-**) -**eo**], irr. v. n., *go back*, *return*, *come down again* (**collis ad planitiem**): **eodem unde redierat** (*come*); **summa** (*be referred*).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**re-** (**red-**) **ago**], 3. v. a., *bring back*, *reduce*, *render*, *bring* (**sub imperium Galliam**), *make* (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**re-** (**red-**) **emo**], 3. v. a., *buy back*, *redeem*, *purchase*, *buy*.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **redintegro**.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-** (**red-**) **integro**], I. v. a., *renew* (again), *restore*, *revive* (**spem**).

reditiō, -ōnis, [**red-**†**itio** (cf. **redeo**)], F., *a return*.

reditus, -tūs, [**re-** (**red-**) †**itus**], M., *a return*.

Redones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**re-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead back*, *bring back*, *draw back*, *draw in*, *extend back*.

refectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reficio**.

referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātus, [**re-fero**], irr. v. a., *bring back*, *return*, *bring* (where something belongs), *report*. — Esp.: **ad senatum** (*lay before* for action); **de re publica** (*consult in regard to*); **gratiam** (*make return*, *show one's gratitude*); **pedem** (*retreat*, *draw back*).

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**re-facio**], irr. v. a., *repair*, *refresh:* **se ex labore** (*rest*); **exercitum** (*allow to recover*).

refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **refringo**.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [**re-frango**], 3. v. a., *break away*, *break in* (**portas**): **vim fluminis** (*break*, opposite to its direction).

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [**re-fugio**], 3. v. n., *run away*, *escape*.

Rēgīnus, -ī, [akin to **rex**], M., a Roman family name. — See **Antistius**.

regiō, -ōnis, [REG + **io**, but cf. **ratio**], F., *a direction*, *a part* (of the country, etc.), *a region*, *a country*, *a district:* **recta regione**, *straight*, *along*, *parallel;* **e regione**, *over against*, *just opposite*.

rēgius, -a, -um, [**reg-** + **ius**], adj., *of a king*, *regal*, *royal*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**regnŏ-**], I. v. n., *rule*, *be in power*, *reign*.

rēgnum, -ī, [REG + **num** (N. of **-nus**)], N., *a kingdom*, *royal power*, *a throne*. — Plur., *the royal power* (of several cases).

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, [akin to **rex**], 3. v. a., *direct, manage, rule, have control of.*

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [re-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.*

rēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reicio**.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, no p. p., [**re-languesco**], 3. v. n., *languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.*

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **refero**.

relēgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **relego**.

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-lēgo**, *depute*], 1. v. a., *remove, separate.*

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **relinquo**.

religiō, -ōnis, [?, **re-legio** (cf. **religo**)], F., (the original meaning unc.), *a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion.* — Plur., *religious matters* (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus, [**re-linquo**], 3. v. a., *leave behind, leave, abandon:* **obsidionem** (*raise*). — Pass., *be left, remain.*

reliquus, -a, -um, [**re-†liquus** (LIQ (*leave*) + **us**)], adj., *left, remaining, the rest, the other, other* (meaning all other), *the others, all other, future* (of time), *remaining:* **nihil est reliqui**, *there is nothing left;* **nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt**, *made the greatest possible speed.*

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, [**re-maneo**], 2. v. n., *remain behind, remain, stay.*

rēmex, -igis, [**remŏ-** with unc. term. (perh. **†agus**)], M., *an oarsman, a rower.*

Rēmī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**remig-**], 1. v. n., *row.*

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**remigro**], 1. v. n., *move back, return.*

reminīscor, -minīscī, [**re-†miniscor** (MAN, in **memini**, + **isco**)], 3. v. dep., *remember.*

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **remitto**.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**re-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go back, send back, throw back.* — Fig., *relax, cease to use, give up:* **remissioribus frigoribus** (*less intense*).

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p., [**remollesco**], 3. v. n., *soften away, soften, become feeble.*

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **removeo**.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [**re-moveo**], 2. v. a., *move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way.* — **remotus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *far away, remote.*

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, [**re-munero**], 1. v. dep., *repay, requite.*

Rēmus, -ī, [?], M., one of the Remi.

rēmus, -ī, [?], M., *an oar.*

rēnō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a skin, a pelt.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-novo**, fr. **novus**, *new*], 1. v. a., *renew.*

renūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **renuntio**.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**renuntio**], 1. v. a., *bring back word, report, proclaim.*

repellō, -pellere, -ppulī, -pulsus, [**re-pello**], 3. v. a., *drive back, repel, repulse:* **ab hac spe repulsi,** *disappointed in this hope.*

repente [?], adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, [**repente + inus**], adj., *sudden, hasty.* — **repentīnō,** abl. as adv., *suddenly.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, [**re- (red-) pario**], 4. v. a., *find out, discover, find* (by inquiry, cf. **invenio**): **reperti sunt multi,** *there were many.*

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reperio.**

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [**re-peto**], 3. v. a., *try to get back, demand back, ask for:* **poenas** (*inflict, exact,* cf. **sumo**).

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [**re-pleo**], 2. v. a., *fill up, supply well.*

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **repleo.**

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-porto**], 1. v. a., *carry back.*

reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p. p., [**re-posco**], 3. v. a., *demand back, demand* (something due).

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-praesento**], 1. v. a., *make present, do at once.*

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [**re-prehendo**], 3. v. a., *drag back, seize hold of, find fault with, blame, censure.*

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reprimo.**

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [**re-premo**], 3. v. a., *check.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**repudiŏ-**], 1. v. a., (*spurn with the feet,* cf. **tripudium**), *spurn, refuse, reject.*

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-pugno,** *fight*], 1. v. n., *resist.* — Fig., *be in opposition.*

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **repello.**

requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, quīsītus, [**re-quaero**], 3. v. a., *search out.* Hence, *request, require, demand, need.*

rēs, reī, [akin to **reor,** *reckon*], F., *property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing* (in the most general sense), *a fact, an occurrence, an event, a case, an action, an act.* — Often to be translated from the context: **ob eam rem,** *for this reason;* **quam ob rem,** *for which reason, wherefore;* **his rebus,** *by these means, for these reasons, on this account;* **ea res,** *this,* (often equivalent to a pronoun); **qua in re,** *in which;* **eius rei,** *of this;* **his rebus cognitis** (*this*); **qua ex re futurum,** *the result of which would be;* **huic rei,** *for this purpose, for this;* **alia re iurare** (*in any other way*); **nihil earum rerum quas,** etc., *nothing of what,* etc.; **sine certa re,** *without certain grounds;* **omnibus rebus,** *in every respect, in all ways;* **his omnibus rebus unum repugnabat** (*considerations, reasons, arguments*); **quibus rebus occurrendum esse** (*dangers*); **rem deferre,** *lay the matter before,* not for consultation, *bring information,* cf. **rem referre;** **rerum omnium casus,** *all accidents;* **rem gerere,** *operate, conduct operations,* in war, *succeed* well or ill; **his rebus gestis,** *after these operations, events;* **male re gesta,** *want of success;* **rerum natura,** *nature,* also, *state of the case;*

imperitus rerum, *ignorant of the world;* **omnium rerum summa** (*of the whole, of all the forces*); **ei rei student** (*this branch*, cavalry); **cuius rei**, *of which*, ships. — Esp., *the affairs* (of a person), *position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances:* **Gallicis rebus favere** (*the interests of Gaul*); **rem esse in angusto** (*affairs, things*); **commutatio rerum**, *change of fortunes.* — Esp.: **res secundae**, or **adversae**, *success, prosperity*, or *adversity, want of success;* **res publica**, *the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics;* **res communis**, *the common interest;* **de re publica**, *in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics;* **res divinae**, *divine worship*, and everything pertaining to it, *religion;* **res familiaris**, *property;* **res militaris**, *warfare, the art of war;* **res frumentaria**, *grain supply, grain;* **res alicui est**, *one has business with, has to do with*, and the like; *one's affair is;* **res est**, *it is a fact, it is so;* **novae res**, *a new form of government, revolution.*

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [**re-scindo**], 3. v. a., *cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.*

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [**re-scisco**, *inquire*], 3. v. a., *find out, learn, discover.*

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [**re-scribo**, *write*], 3. v. a., *transfer* (by writing).

reservātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reservo**.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re-servo**], 1. v. a., *keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.*

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no p. p., [**re-sedeo**], 2. v. n., *sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.*

resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, no p. p., [**re-sido**], 3. v. n., *sink down, become calm, subside.*

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**re-sisto**], 3. v. n., *stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, resist, remain.*

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [**re-†specio**], 3. v. a. and n., *look back, look back at, look behind* one, *see behind* one, *consider.*

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, [**re-spondeo**, *promise*], 2. v. n., *reply, answer.*

respōnsum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **respondeo**], N., *a reply.* — Plur., *a reply* (of several parts).

rēs pūblica, see **res**.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, no p. p., [**re-spuo**], 3. v. a., *spit out.* — Fig., *spurn, reject.*

restīnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **restinguo**.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, [**re-stinguo**, *quench*], 3. v. a., *extinguish.*

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [**re-statuo**], 3. v. a., *set up again, replace, restore, make anew.*

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **restituo**.

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **retineo**.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**re-teneo**], 2. v. a., *hold back, restrain*, (**quin**, *from* doing something), *detain, retain:* **memoriam** (*preserve*); **Gallos** (*arrest*).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus,

[re-traho], 3. v. a., *drag back*, *bring back* (a person).

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, [re-vello, *pull*], 3. v. a., *tear away*, *pull away*.

reversus, -a -um, p. p. of **reverto**.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [re-verto], 3. v. n., *return* (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, *return*, *go back*, *come back*.

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctus, [re-vincio], 4. v. a., *bind back* (to something), *make fast*, *fasten*, *bind*.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **revincio**.

revocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **revoco**.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-voco], 1. v. a., *call back*, *call away*, *call off*, *recall*.

rēx, rēgis, [REG, *rule*, as st.], M., *a king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, [Celtic?], M., *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, -ī, [Celtic?], M., *the Rhone*.

rīpa, -ae, [?], F., *a bank*.

rīvus, -ī, [akin to Gr. ῥέω], M., *a brook*, *a stream* (not so large as **flumen**).

rōbur, -oris, [?], N., *oak*.

rogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **rogo**.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a. and n., *ask*, *request*, *ask for*: **sacramento rogare milites** (*bind by an oath*, *enlist under oath*).

Rōma, -ae, [?], F., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [Roma- + nus], M., *Roman*. — As noun, *a Roman*.

Rōscius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name.— Esp., *Lucius Roscius*, a legatus of Cæsar.

rōstrum, -ī, [ROD- (in **rodo**, *gnaw*) + trum], N., *a beak*. — Esp. of a ship, *the beak*, *the ram* (used as in modern naval fighting).

rota, -ae, [?], F., *a wheel*.

rubus, -ī, [?, perh. **rub-** (in **ruber**) + us], M., (*red?*), *a bramble*.

Rūfus, -ī, [prob. dial. form = **rubus**, *red*], M., a Roman family name. See **Sulpicius**.

rūmor, -ōris, [?], M., *a rumor* (confused report), *report*.

rūpēs, -is, [RUP (cf. **rumpo**) + unc. term.], F., *a cliff*, *a rock* (in position).

rūrsus [for **reversus**], adv., *back again*, *back*, *again*, *in turn*.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutilus, -ī, [prob. akin to **ruber**], M., *red*.— As a Roman family name. — Esp., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, a cavalry officer under Cæsar.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, [unc. st. (cf. **sabulus**, *sand*) + inus], M., (*Sabine*). — As a Roman family name.— See **Titurius**.

Sabis, -is, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now *Sambre*.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, [sacrŏ-dos (DA + tis)], C., (*arranger of sacred rites?*), *a priest*.

sacrāmentum, -ī, [sacrā-, *hallow*, + mentum], N., *an oath*.

sacrificium, -ī, [†sacrificŏ- (sacrŏ-

†**facus**, cf. **beneficus**) + **ium**], N., *a sacrifice.*

saepe [N. of †**saepis** (perh. same as **saepes**)], adv., *often:* **minime saepe**, *most rarely.* — **saepius**, compar., *many times, repeatedly.*

saepenumerō [**saepe**, **numero**], adv., *oftentimes, many times.*

saepēs, -is, [akin to **saepio**, *hedge in*], F., *a hedge.*

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītūrus, [**saevŏ-**, *raging* (as if **saevi-**)], 4. v. n., *be angry, rage, be violent.*

sagitta, -ae, [?], F., *an arrow.*

sagittārius, -ī, [**sagitta-** + **arius**], M., *an archer, a bowman.*

sagulum, -ī, [**sagŏ-** (*cloak*) + **lum**], N., *a cloak* (military).

saltus, -tūs, [?, perh. SAL (in **salio**, *leap*) + **tus**], M., *a wooded height, a glade, a pass* (in the mountains).

salūs, -ūtis, [**salvŏ-**, (?) *safe*, + **tis** (cf. **virtus**)], F., *health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliverance, life* (as saved or lost); **salute desperata**, *despairing of saving one's self;* **salutis suae causa**, *to protect one's self;* **ad salutem contendere** (*a place of safety*).

Samarobrīva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Ambiani, now *Amiens.*

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus, [SAC (in **sacer**)], 4. v. a., *bind* (in some religious manner), *make sacred, solemnly establish* (by law). — **sānctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.*

sānctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sancio**.

sanguis, -inis, [?], M., *blood* (as the vital fluid, generally in the body, cf. **cruor**).

sānitās, -tātis, [**sanŏ-** + **tas**], F., *soundness, sound mind, good sense.*

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sanŏ-**], I. v. a., *make sound, make good, repair.*

Santones, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

Santonī, see **Santones**.

sānus, -a, -um, [SA- (akin to **salvus**) + **nus**], adj., *sound* (in body or mind), *sane, discreet:* **nihil pro sano facere** (*nothing discreet*).

sapiō, -ere, -iī (-īvī), no p. p., [?, SAP], 3. v. a. and n., *taste* (actively or passively). Hence, *be wise, understand* (what to do).

sarcina, -ae, [**sarci-** (as if st. of **sarcio**, or a kindred noun-st.) + **na** (F. of **nus**)], F., *a pack* (sewed up?). — Plur., *baggage* (soldiers' *packs*, cf. **impedimenta**, baggage not carried by soldiers).

sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartus, [?], 4. v. a., *mend, patch.* — Fig., *restore, repair.*

sarmentum, -ī, [perh. SARP, *prune* (but cf. **sarcina**) + **mentum**], N., (either *prunings* or *tied fagots*), only in plur., *fagots, fascines.*

satis [?], adv., *enough, sufficiently.* — Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., *enough, sufficient:* **satis habere**, *consider sufficient, be satisfied;* **neque . . . satis commode** (*not very*, etc.); **satis grandis**, *rather large, tolerably large.* — Often a mild expression for *very* and the like.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, [**satis facio**], 3. v. n., *do enough for, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize.*

satisfactiō, -ōnis, [**satis-factio** (cf. **satisfacio**)], F., *amends, excuses, an apology.*

satus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sero**.

saucius, -a, -um, [?], adj., *wounded.*

saxum, -ī, [?], N., *a rock* (as movable), cf. **rupes**.

scālae, -ārum, (sing. rare), [perh. **scad-** (in **scando**, *climb*) + **la**], F., *a ladder, a scaling ladder.*

Scaldis, -is, [?], M., a river of Gaul, the *Scheldt.*

scapha, -ae, [Gr., orig. a "dug-out"], F., *a skiff, a boat.*

scelerātus, -a, -um, [as if (perh. really) p. p. of **scelero** (*stain with crime?*)], adj., *villainous, accursed.*

scelus, -eris, [?, perh. orig. "*crookedness,*" cf. **pravus** and 'wrong'], N., *crime, wickedness.*

scienter [**scient-** (cf. **scio**) + **ter**], adv., *knowingly, skilfully.*

scientia, -ae, [**scient-** (cf. **scio**) + **ia**], F., *knowledge, acquaintance with* (thing in the genitive), *skill.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, [SCID, *split*], 3. v. a., *tear, tear down.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, [?], 4. v. a., (*separate?*), *distinguish, know.*

scorpiō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts.* Hence, *a shot from an engine* (of that kind).

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, [?], 3. v. a. and n., *write, give an account* (in writing).

scrobis, -is, [prob. akin to **scribo**], M. and F., *a ditch, a pit.*

scūtum, -ī, [?], N., *a shield*, of the Roman legion, made of wood, convex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.

sē- **sēd-** [old abl. of unc. st.], prep., mostly as adv. in comp., *apart, away, aside, off, un-.*

sē, see **sui**.

sēbum, -ī, [?], N., *tallow.*

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, [prob. causative of SEC], 1. v. a., *cut, reap.*

sēcrētō [abl. of **secretus**, p. p. of **secerno**, *separate*], adv., *in private, privately.*

sectiō, -ōnis, [SEC (in **seco**) + **tio**], F., *a cutting.* Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), *a lot of booty, booty.*

sector, -ārī, -ātus, [prob. **sectā** (SEQU + **ta**, cf. **moneta**)], 1. v. dep., *pursue, chase after.*

sectūra, -ae, [prob. **sectu-** (SEC + **tus**) + **ra**, F. of **-rus**], F., *a cutting, a mine, a shaft, a gallery.*

secundum, see **secundus**.

secundus, -a, -um, [part. in **-dus** of **sequor**], adj., *following.* Hence, *second.* — Also (as not opposing), *favorable, successful:* **secundiores res**, *greater prosperity;* **proelium secundum nostris** (*in favor of*); **secundo flumine**, *down the stream;* **secunda acies**, *the second line of battle, the second division.* — Neut. acc. as prep. with acc., *along, in the direction of, in accordance with;* **secundum ea**, *besides that.*

secūris, -is, [SEC + unc. term.], F., *an axe.* — Esp., *the axe of the lictor* (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

sēcus, [SEQU (in **sequor**) + unc. term.], adv., (*inferior*), *otherwise.* —

Compar., **sēcius (sētius),** *less:* **nihilo secius,** *none the less, nevertheless.*

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sequor.**

sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. **re**], conj., *apart* (cf. **seditio,** and **securus),** *but* (stronger than **autem** or **at),** *but yet.*

sēdecim [**sex-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, -is, [SED + **es** (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. **-us**)], F., *a seat.* Hence, *an abode* (both in sing. and plur.), *a settlement:* **locus ac sedes,** *a place of abode.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, [**sed-**†**itio** (I + **tio**)], F., *a secession, a mutiny, an uprising.*

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, [**sedition-** + **osus**], adj., *seditious, factious.*

Sedulius, -ī, [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, [Teut.], M. plur., a tribe of Germans.

seges, -etis, [unc. st. + **tis**], F., *a crop of grain* (growing), *a field* (of grain).

Sēgnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis, [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiācī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

Segusiāvī (-ānī), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

semel [prob. N. of adj., akin to **similis**], adv., *once:* **semel atque iterum,** *more than once, again and again;* **ut semel,** *when once, as soon as.*

sēmentis, -tis, [**semen** (*seed*) + **tis**, cf. **Carmentis, virtus**], F., *a sowing:* **sementis facere,** *sow grain.*

sēmita, -ae, [**se-** (**sed-**) + †**mita** (MI, in **meo,** *go,* cf. **comes**)], F., *a side path, a by path, a path* (over the mountains).

semper [†**semŏ-** (?) (in **semel**) **-per** (cf. **parumper**)], adv., *through all time, all the time, always.*

Semprōnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See **Rutilus.**

senātor, -tōris, [†**senā-** (as if verb-st. akin to **senex,** perh. really so, cf. **senatus**) + **tor**], M., (*an elder*). Hence, *a senator.*

senātus, -tūs, [†**senā-** (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to **senex**)], M., *a senate* (council of old men). — Esp., *the senate* (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senex [**seni-** + **cus** (reduced)]. — Gen., **senis,** [?, cf. *seneschal*], adj. (only M.), *old.* — Esp. as noun, *an old man* (above forty-five).

sēnī, -ae, -a, [**sec(s)** + **ni**], distrib. num. adj., *six each, six* (where *each* is implied in Eng. by the context).

Senones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near *Sens* (their chief town, anciently Agedincum).

sententia, -ae, [†**sentent-** (p. of simpler pres. of **sentio**) + **ia**], F., (*feeling, thinking*). Hence, *a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design.* — Esp., officially, *a judgment, an opinion, a sentence, a vote:* **in ea sententia permanere**

(*of that mind*); **in eam sententiam,** *to this purport.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, [?], 4. v. a., *perceive* (by the senses), *know, see, think* (of an opinion made up), *learn about, learn:* **unum sentiunt ac probant,** *hold the same opinion,* etc.

sentis, -is, [?], M., *a briar.*

sēparātim [as if acc. of †**separatis** (**separā- + tis**)], adv., *separately, privately* (apart from others).

sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **separo.**

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**se- (sed-) paro**], I. v. a., (*get apart?*), *separate.* — Esp. **sēparātus,** -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *separate.*

septem [?], indecl. num. adj., *seven.*

septentriōnēs (septem, triones), -um, M. plur., *the seven plough oxen* (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, *the north.* — Also (by an error), in the sing., **septentrio,** -ōnis, *the north:* **a septentrionibus,** *in the north;* **sub septentrionibus,** *in the north, towards the north*

septimus, -a, -um, [**septem + mus,** cf. **primus**], adj., *the seventh.*

septingentī, -ae, -a, [**septem** (in some form) **-centum** (?)], num. adj., *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā [from **septem,** in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae, [†**sepultu-** (cf. **sepelio,** *bury*) + **ra** (F. of **-rus**)], F., *burial, burying.*

Sēquana, -ae, [Celtic], F., *the Seine.*

Sēquanus, -a, um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Sequani* (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, N. of Macon). — Masc. sing., *one of the Sequani, a Sequanian.* — Masc. plur., *the Sequani.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus, [SEQU], 3. v. dep., *follow, accompany:* **damnatum poena** (*be inflicted upon,* the penalty following the condemnation); **eventus** (*ensue*); **hiems quae secuta est** (*the following*); **fidem** (*hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to,* etc.); **aestūs commutationem** (*take advantage of*).

Ser., for **Servius.**

sermō, -ōnis [SER (in **sero,** *twine*) + **mo** (prob. **-mŏ- + o**)], M., (*series?*). Hence, *conversation* (continuous series of speech), *talk, intercourse, conversation with* (genitive).

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, [SA, redupl.], 3. v. a., *plant, sow.*

sērō [abl. of **serus**], adv., *too late.*

Sertōrius, -ī, [**sertor** (*garland-maker?*) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Q. Sertorius,* a partisan of Marius, who held a command in Spain against the party of Sulla from B.C. 80 to B.C. 72.

servīlis, -e, [**servi-** (as if st. of **servus** or akin, cf. **servio**) + **lis**], adj., *of slaves, of a slave, servile:* **in servilem modum,** *as with slaves,* (i.e. *by torture*); **tumultus** (*the servile war,* the revolt of the slaves under Spartacus in B.C. 73).

serviō, -īre, iī (-īvī), -ītūrus [**servi-** (as if st. of **servus** or akin)], 4. v. n., *be a slave* (to some one or something); **rumoribus** (*be blindly guided by, follow*); **bello** (*devote one's self to*).

servitūs, -tūtis, [†**servitu-** (**servō**

+ tus) + tis, cf. **iuventus, sementis**], F., *slavery, servitude.*

Servius, -ī, [**servŏ- + ius**], M., a Roman prænomen.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**servŏ-**], I. v. a., *watch, guard, keep, preserve:* **praesidia** (*hold, maintain*); **ordines** (*keep*); **fidem** (*keep one's word*).

servus, -ī, [unc. root (SER, *bind?*) + **vus**], M., *a slave.*

sēsē, see **sui**.

sēsquipedālis, -e, [†**sesquiped-** (*a foot and a half*) + **alis**], adj., *of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch* (beams, etc.).

seu, see **sive**.

sevēritās, -tātis, [**severŏ- + tas**], F., *strictness, harshness, severity.*

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**se** (**sed**) -**voco**], I. v. a., *call aside, call out* (aside).

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā [**sex** + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*

sexcentī (**ses-**), -ae, -a, [**sex-centum**], num. adj., *six hundred.*

Sextius, -ī, [**sextŏ- + ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Titus Sextius*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

sī [loc. prob. akin to **se**], conj., (*in this way, in this case, so*, cf. **sic**), *if, in case.* — Esp., *to see if, whether:* **id si fieret**, *should this happen*, etc.

sibi, see **sui**.

Sibusātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees.

sīc [**si-ce**, cf. **hic**], adv., *so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus:* **sic . . . ut**, *so . . . that, so well . . . that;* **sic reperiebat** (*this*). — **sīcutī**, as conj., *just as, just as if.*

siccitās, -tātis, [**siccŏ- + tas**], F., *dryness, drought, dry weather.*—Plur. in same sense, of different occasions.

sīcut (**sīcutī**), see **sic**.

sīdus, -eris, [SED + **us**], N., (*position?*), *a heavenly body.*

sīgnifer, -ferī, [**signo-fer** (FER (bear) + **us**)], M., *a standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, [**significā- + tio**], F., *a making of signs, a signal, an intimation, a warning.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**significŏ-** (**signŏ-ficus**, cf. **facio**)], I. v. n., *make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show:* **hac re significari**, *this is an indication;* **de fuga**; **deditionem** (*make signs of*).

sīgnum, -ī, [unc. root + **num** (N. of -**nus**)], N., (*a device?*), *a sign, a signal.* — Esp., *a standard* (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole). — Phrases: **signa convertere**, *wheel, change front, face about;* **signa inferre**, *advance to attack, charge;* **conversa signa inferre**, *change front and charge;* **infestis signis** (*for an attack, at charge*); **signa ferre**, *move, move on, march;* **signa subsequi**, *keep the line of march;* **signa relinquere**, *leave the ranks;* **se continere ad signa**, *keep the ranks;* **a signis discedere**, *desert, leave the ranks;* **ad signa convenire**, *join the army;* **ad signa consistere**, *rally around the standard;* **signa constituere**, *halt.*

Silānus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Marcus Silanus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

silentium, -ī, [**silent-** + **ium**], N., *stillness, silence.* — **silentiō**, abl., *in silence, silently.*

Silius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Titus Silius*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

silva, -ae, [?], F., *a forest, woods, forests.* — Plur. in same sense.

silvester (-**tris**), -tris, -tre, [**silva-** (as if **silvus-**, cf. **palustris**) + **tris**], adj., *woody, wooded.*

similis, -e, [†**simŏ-** (cf. **simplex, semper**) + **lis**], adj., *like, similar.*

similitūdō, -inis, [**simili-** + **tudo**], F., *likeness, resemblance* (*to*, genitive).

simul [N. of **similis**, cf. **facul**], adv., *at the same time:* **simul atque** (or without **atque**), *as soon as;* **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and.*

simulācrum, -ī, [**simulā-** + **crum**], N., *an image, a likeness.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, [**simulā-** + **tio**], F., *a pretence, a show, deceit.*

simulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **simulo.**

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**simili-** (as if, perh. orig., †**simulŏ**)], 1. v. a., *pretend, make a show of* (something), *feign.*

simultās, -tātis, [**simili-** (cf. **simul**) + **tas**], F., (*likeness?, equality?*), *rivalry.*

sīn [**si-ne**], conj., (*if not*), *but if.*

sincērē [old case-form of **sincerus**], adv., *honestly, truly, frankly.*

sine [?], prep. with abl., *without.*

singillātim (**singul-**), [as if **singulā-** (**singulus**) + **tim** (acc. of **-tis**)], adv., *singly, one by one, individually.*

singulāris, -e, [**singulŏ-** + **aris**], adj., *solitary, single.* Hence, *unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous.*

singulī, -ae, -a, [**sim** (in **similis**) + unc. term.], adj., *one at a time, single, each, one by one, several* (*severally*). — Often to denote distribution, *one to each:* **singuli singulos**, (with verb), *one . . . each;* **singulis legionibus singulos legatos** (*one over each*); **ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere** (*each from his*); **inter singulas legiones** (*between each two, one to each*); **navis singulas Romanis equitibus** (*severally, separately, one to each*); **sevocare singulos** (*individuals, one by one*).

sinister, -tra, -trum, [?], adj., *left:* **sub sinistra (manu)**, *on the left.*

sinistrōrsus [**sinistro-vorsus** (**versus**)], adv., *to the left.*

sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs, [SI (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (*lay down*, cf. **pono**), *leave.* Hence, *permit, allow.*

situs, -tūs, [SI + **tus**], M., (*a laying, a leaving*), *situation, position, site.*

sīve, **seu**, [**si-ve**], conj., *if either, or if:* **sive . . . sive**, *either . . . or, whether . . . or.*

socer, -erī, [?], M., *a father-in-law.*

societās, -tātis, [**sociŏ-** + **tas**], F., *an alliance.*

socius, -ī, [SEQU (*follow*) + **ius**], M., *a companion, an ally, a comrade.*

sōl, sōlis, [?], M., *the sun.* — Also personified, *Sol, the Sun.* — See also under **orior, occido, occasus.**

sōlācium (**sōlāt-**), -ī, [**solacō-** + **ium**], N., *a consolation, a comfort.*

soldurius, -ī, [Teutonic], M., *a retainer, a follower.*

soleō, solēre, solitus, [?], 2. v. n., *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, [**solō-** + **tudo**], F., *loneliness.* Hence, *a wilderness.*

sollertia, -ae, [**sollert-** (**sollō-** + **ars**, *with complete skill*, cf. **sollicito**) + **ia**], F., *skill, ingenuity, shrewdness.*

sollicitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sollicito.**

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sollicitō-** (**sollō-citus**, *entirely roused*)], 1. v. a., *stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach* (with money, etc.), *offer bribes to, tempt.*

sollicitūdō, -inis, [†**sollicitu-** (st. akin to **sollicitus**) + **do**], F., *anxiety, apprehension.*

solum, -ī, [?], N., *the soil, the foundation, the bottom:* **solum agri**, *the bare ground;* **ab infimo solo**, *from the very bottom.*

sōlus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *alone, only.*— **sōlum**, N. as adv., *alone, only.*

solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **solvo.**

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, [prob. **se-luo**, *loose*], 3. v. a., *unbind, loose.* — Esp. with **navis**, *weigh anchor, set sail.* — Also without **navis**, absolutely, *set sail.*

sonitus, -tūs, [**soni-** (as st. of **sono**) + **tus**], M., *a sound, noise.*

sonus, -ī, [SON + **us**], M., *a sound.*

soror, -ōris, [?], F., *a sister:* **soror ex matre**, *a half-sister.*

sors, sortis, [perh. SER (in **sero**) + **tis**, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., *a lot* (for divination), *chance.*

Sōtiātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania.

spatium, -ī, [?], N., *space, extent, a space, a distance.* — Transf., *time, space of time, lapse of time.* — Phrases: **quantum fuit diei spatium**, *as much as there was time for;* **intermisso spatio**, *after an interval;* **spatia omnis temporis**, *the whole course of time.*

speciēs, -iēī, [SPEC + **ies** (akin to **-ia**)], F., (*a sight*, prob. both act. and pass.). — Passively, *a sight, a show, an appearance:* **summa species earum stantium**, *a perfect appearance of standing trees* (lit. *of them standing*); **ad speciem**, *for show.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**spectō-**], 1. v. a. and n., *look at, regard, have regard to, lie towards* (of a country), *face.*

speculātor, -tōris, [**speculā-** + **tor**] M., *a spy, a scout.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um, [**speculator** + **ius**], adj., (*of a scout*), *scouting, reconnoitring* (**navigia**).

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, [**speculō-**, cf. **specula**, *watch-tower*], 1. v. dep., *spy, reconnoitre:* **speculandi causa**, *as a spy.*

spērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **spero.**

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**spes-** (prob. orig. st. of **spēs**) with **r** for **s**], 1. v. a. and n., *hope, hope for, expect.*

spēs, -eī, [?], F., *hope, expectation:* **summam in spem venire**, *have the greatest hope.*

spīritus, -tūs, [**spiri-** (as st. of **spiro**, *breathe*) + **tus**], M., *breath.* — Also, *spirit.* Hence, in pl., *pride arrogance, temper.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**spoliŏ-**, *booty*], I. v. a., *despoil*, *strip*. — Fig., *rob*, *deprive*, *despoil*.

spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), [prob. akin to **spondeo**, *promise*], F., only with poss. or (poetic) gen., *of one's own accord*, *voluntarily*, *on one's own account*. — Rarely, *by one's influence*.

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī (iī), -ītus, [**stabili-**], 4. v. a., *make firm*.

stabilitās, -tātis, [**stabili-** + **tas**], F., *steadiness*, *firmness*.

statim [acc. of †**statis** (**sta-** + **tis**)], adv., (*as one stands*, *on the spot*), *at once*, *forthwith*, *immediately*.

statiō, -ōnis, [apparently STA + tio, prob. †**stati-** + **o**, whence the common **-tio** used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (*a standing*), *a position*, *a post*, *a picket*: **in statione**, *on guard*.

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [**statu-**], 3. v. a., *set up*. Hence, *establish*, *resolve upon*, *determine*, *consider* (make up one's mind), *take measures*. — Euphemistic for, *punish* (**de eo causa cognita**).

statūra, -ae, [**statu-** + **ra**, F. of **-rus**], F., (*a standing*), *stature*, *size*.

status, -tūs, [STA + **tus**], M., (*a standing*), *a position*, *a condition*, *a state*, *a situation*.

stimulus, -ī, [†**stigmŏ-** (STIG + **mus**) + **lus**], M., *a goad*, *a spur*. — As name of a calthrop or instrument of defence, "*spurs*."

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, [**stipendiŏ-** + **arius**], adj., *tributary*, *under tribute*, *subject to tribute*.

stīpendium, -ī, [**stipi-**, *gift*, and st. akin to **pendo** (perh. †**pendus**, cf. **pendulus**) + **ium**], N., *a tribute*.

stīpes, stīpitis, [?], M., *a trunk* (of a tree).

stirps, stirpis, [?], M. and F., *a stock*, *a stem*. — Fig., *a race*: **stirpem hominum interfici**, *men to be killed root and branch*.

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, [STA], I. v. n., *stand*, *be placed*: **decreto** (*stand by*, *abide by*).

strāmentum, -ī, [STRA (form of root of **sterno**) + **mentum**], N., (*something strewn*), *straw*, *thatch*. — Also plur., *saddle-cloths*.

strepitus, -tūs, [**strepi-** (as st. of **strepo**, *roar*) + **tus**], M., *a noise*, *a confused din*.

studeō, studēre, studuī, no p. p., [†**studŏ-** (or †**studa-**), cf. **studium**], 2. v. n., *be eager for*, *be devoted to*, *pay attention to*, *attend to*, *desire* (a thing in the dat.).

studiōsē, [old case-form of **studiosus**], adv., *eagerly*, *zealously*.

studium, -ī, [prob. †**studŏ-** + **ium**, cf. **studeo**], N., *eagerness*, *zeal*, *devotion*, *fondness* (for a thing), *enthusiasm*. Hence, *a pursuit* (to which one is devoted), *an occupation*.

stultitia, -ae, [**stultŏ-** (*foolish*) + **tia**], F., *folly*.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to **super**], adv. (in comp.) and prep.:

a. With abl. (of rest in a place), *under*: **sub oculis**, *before the eyes*. — Also, *just by*: **sub monte** (*at the foot of*); **sub sinistra**, *at the left*; **sub vallo**, *just under the wall*.

b. With acc. (of motion towards

a place), *under*, *close to*. — Of time, *just at*, *just before*: **sub vesperum.**

c. In comp., *under*, *up* (from under), *away* (from beneath), *secretly* (underhand), *in succession*, *a little*, *slightly*.

subāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subigo.**

subdolus, -a, -um, [**sub-dolus**, *artifice*], adj., *cunning*, *wily*.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**sub-duco**], 3. v. a., *draw up*, *lead up*: **navis** (*beach*, *draw up*).

subductiō, -ōnis, [**sub-†ductio**, cf. **subduco**], F., *a drawing up*, *a beaching* (of ships).

subductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subduco.**

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [**sub-eo**], irr. v. a., *go under*, *undergo*, *encounter*, *come up*, *approach*.

subfodiō (**suff-**), -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [**sub-fodio**], 3. v. a., *dig under*, *stab* (underneath).

subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subfodio.**

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**sub-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw under*, *place below*, *place under*, *subject*, *expose to*. — Also, *throw up*. — **subiectus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying near*.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**sub-ago**], 3. v. a., *bring under*, *subject*.

subitō, see **subitus.**

subitus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **subeo**], adj., (*coming up secretly from under*), *sudden*, *suddenly* (as if adv. taken with the verb), *quick*, *hasty*. — **subitō**, abl. as adv., *suddenly*, *of a sudden*.

sublātus, -a, -um, [**sub- (t) latus**], p. p. of **tollo.**

sublevātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sublevo.**

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sub-levo**], 1. v. a., *lighten up*, *lighten*, *raise*, *raise up*, *assist*, *render assistance*. — With reflexive, *rise up*. — **sublevātus**, p. p., *supporting one's self*.

sublica, -ae, [?], F., *a pile*.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus, [**sub-luo**], 3. v. a., *wash underneath*, *wash*: **flumen collis radices.**

subministrō (**sum-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sub-ministro**], 1. v. a., *supply* (as needed), *furnish* (from time to time), *provide*.

submittō (**sum-**), -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**sub-mitto**], 3. v. a., *send up*, *send to one's assistance*, *send as reinforcements*, *send* (as help), *reinforce*.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **submoveo.**

submoveō (**sum-**), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [**sub-moveo**], 2. v. a., *drive off*, *dislodge*.

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [**sub-ruo**], 3. v. a., *dig under*, *undermine*.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [**sub-sequor**], 3. v. dep., *follow up*, *follow on*, *follow*, *succeed to*.

subsidium, -ī, [**sub-†sedium** (SED + ium)], N., (*a sitting in reserve*), *a reserve*, *a reinforcement*, *help*, *relief*, *support*, *assistance*, *resources*, *provisions*: **subsidio mittere**, *send assistance*; **subsidium ferre**, *rescue*; **subsidium comparare**, *make provision*.

subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [**sub-sido**], 3. v. n., *sit down*, *remain behind*.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [**sub-sisto**], 3. v. n., *stop behind, halt, make a stand:* **ancorae** (*hold*).

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [**sub-sum**], irr. v. n., *be under, be near, be close by* (a certain distance off), *be near at hand, approach.*

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**sub-traho**], 3. v. a., *take away* (underneath), *carry away, take away* (generally).

subvectiō, -ōnis, [**sub-vectio**, cf. **subveho**], F., *bringing up, transportation, conveyance.*

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [**sub-veho**], 3. v. a., *bring up.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**sub-venio**], 4. v. n., *come under, come to the support of, come to the assistance of, assist.*

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**sub-cedo**], 3. v. n., *come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next.* — Also, *be successful, prosper.*

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [**sub-†cando** (cf. **candeo**, *glow*)], 3. v. a., *set on fire* (as if beneath).

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succendo.**

successus, -ūs, [**sub-cessus** (cf. **succedo**)], M., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach.*

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**sub-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut under, cut down.*

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succido.**

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, [**sub-cumbo**], 3. v. n., *lie down* (under), *give way, succumb.*

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, [**sub-curro**], 3. v. n., *rush to support, rush to one's rescue, run to help, succor.*

sudis, -is, [?], F., *a stake.*

Suessiōnes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them *Soissons.*

Suēvī (**Suēbī**), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, *Swabians.*

Suēvus, -a, -um, [see **Suevi**], adj., *Swabian.* — As noun, *a Swabian* (man or woman).

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**sub-facio**], 3. v. a., *make in place of, supply the place of.* Hence, *suffice, be sufficient, be adequate.*

suffrāgium, -ī, [akin to **suffringo**, *break up*], N., (*a pastern bone*, or *a potsherd*, either used as a ballot), *a ballot, vote.*

Sugambrī (**Sig-**), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M., a German tribe between the Sieg and the Lippe.

suggestus, -tūs, [**sub-gestus**, cf. **suggerō**], M., (*earth brought up*). *a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform* (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).

suī (prop. gen. N. of **suus**), sibi sē, [SVA], reflex. pron., *himself*, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal, *he*, etc., also *each other.* — Esp.: **inter se**, *from, with, by*, etc., *each other;* **inter sese dant**, *give each other, exchange;* **per se**, *of himself*, etc., (without outside influence or excitement); see **ipse.**

Sulla, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.

Sulpicius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Sulpicius Rufus*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a legatus of Cæsar.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, [AS, cf. *am*, *is*], irr. v. n., *be* (exist). — Also, with weakened force, *be* (as a mere copula). — Phrases: **erant duo itinera** (*there were*); **sibi esse in animo**, *that he had in mind, intended;* **pars quae est ad Hispaniam** (*lies*); **eorum est**, *they have;* **multum sunt in venationibus** (*much engaged*).

summa, -ae, [F. of **summus** as noun], F., (*the top*), *the sum, the total, the main part:* **summa omnium rerum**, *the whole amount;* **belli**, (*the general management, the chief control*); **imperi** (*the chief command*); **imperi bellique administrandi** (*the chief management*, etc.); **rerum consiliorumque** (*chief control*); **summa exercitūs**, *the main body*, etc.; **summam victoriae**, *the whole victory.*

summus, see **superus**.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, [**sub-emo**, *take*], 3. v. a., *take away, take, get, assume:* **supplicium de** (*inflict*, cf. **capere**); **laborem** (*spend*).

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [**sumptu-** + **osus**], adj., *expensive, costly.*

sūmptus, -tūs, [**sub-†emptus**, cf. **sumo**], M., (*a taking out of the stock on hand*), *expense.*

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **supero**.

superbē [old case-form of **superbus**], adv., *haughtily, arrogantly, with arrogance.*

superior, see **superus**.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**superŏ-**], 1. v. a. and n., *overtop.* Hence, *get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive* (**vita**).

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [**super-sedeo**], 2. v. n., *sit above.* Hence, *be above, decline, refrain from.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [**super-sum**], irr. v. n., *be over and above, remain, survive.*

superus, -a, -um, [†**supe-** (st. akin to **sub**, perh. same) + **rus** (cf. **inferus**)], *higher, being above* (of space only). — Compar. (in wider meanings), **superior**, *higher, upper, preceding* (of time), *past, before, superior, victorious.* — Superl., **suprēmus** [**supra-** (?) + **imus** (?)], *highest.* — Also, **summus** [**sup-** + **mus**], *highest, the highest part of, the top of.* — Fig., *greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent:* **ab summo**, *from the top, at the end;* **summis copiis**, *with all the forces, in force, with all one's might.*

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītūrus, [**sub-peto**, *aim at*], 3. v. n., (?, but cf. **sufficio** and **subvenio**), *be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out.*

supplēmentum, -ī, [**supplē-** (as st. of **suppleo**, *fill up*) + **mentum**], N., *a supply* (to fill up), *a reinforcement.*

supplex, -icis, [**sub-†plex** (PLIC

(*fold*), as st., cf. **duplex**)], C., *a suppliant.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, [**supplicā-** + **tio**], F., *a supplication.* — Esp., *a thanksgiving* (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

suppliciter [**supplici-** (as st. of **supplex**) + **ter**], adv., *in the guise of suppliants, as suppliants.*

supplicium, -ī, [**supplic-** (st. of **supplex**) + **ium**], N., *a supplication, a sacrifice.* — Also, esp., *a punishment* (usually of death).

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sub-porto**], 1. v. a., *bring up, convey, supply, furnish.*

suprā [instr. (?) of **superus**], adv. and prep. with acc., *above, before.*

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **suscipio.**

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**sub(s)-capio**], 3. v. a., *take up, take upon one's self* (**sibi**), *assume, undertake, engage in, undergo.*

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **suspicio.**

suspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **suspicor.**

suspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [**sub-specio**], 3. v. a. and n., *look up, look up at, look askance at.* Hence, *suspect:* **suspecta nobis**, *an object of suspicion to us.*

suspīciō (**-spītiō**), -ōnis, [**sub-†specio**, cf. **suspicio**], F., *suspicion, an imputation* (**timoris**), *an indication:* **dabat . . . fugae** (*endeavor to excite a suspicion*); **neque abest suspicio**, *and there is a suspicion abroad, not without suspicion.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, [**†suspic-** (cf. **suspicio**)], 1. v. dep., *suspect:* p. p. as adj., *under suspicion.*

sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sustento.**

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sub(s)-tento** (cf. **sustineo**)], 1. v. a. and n., *sustain, hold out:* **bella** (*hold out against*); **aegre is dies sustentatur**, *with difficulty they hold out for that day;* **pecore famem** (*keep from starvation by means of*, etc.).

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, **sub(s)-teneo**], 2. v. a. and n., *hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop, rein in* (horses); **sustinere se**, *stand up.*

sustulī, see **tollo.**

suus, -a, -um, [SVA + **ius**, cf. **se**], adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to subject), *his, hers, its, theirs*, etc. — Sometimes emphatic, *his own*, etc., **sua clementia**, *his characteristic clemency.* — Often without noun, **suī**, *their* (*his*) *men, countrymen, their friends;* **sua**, *their* (*his*) *possessions, their property:* **se suaque omnia**, *themselves and all they had.*

T

T., for **Titus.**

tabernāculum, -ī, [**taberna-** + **culum**], N., (*a hut of boards*), *a tent.*

tabula, -ae, [**†tabō-** (TA (*stretch*) + **bus**?) + **la**], F., *a board.* Hence, *a record* (written on a board covered with wax), *a document, a list.*

tabulātus, -a, -um, [**tabulā-** (as

if st. of †tabulo) + tus], adj., *made with boards.* — **tabulātum,** N., *a flooring, a story.*

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, [†tacŏ- (TAC + us)], 2. v. a. and n., *be silent, be silent about, keep secret, conceal, say nothing about.* — **tacitus,** p. p. as adj., *silent, in silence.*

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **taceo.**

tālea, -ae, [perh. akin to **tālus,** *ankle-bone*], F., *a rod, a bar.*

tālis, -e, [TA (akin to *that*) + **alis**], adj. pron., *such, so great.*

tam [unc. case of TA (cf. **quam, nam**)], adv., *so* (as indicated in the context), *so much.*

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locat.?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or implied), *yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least.*

Tamesis, -is, [Celtic], M., *the Thames.*

tametsī, [**tamen** (or **tam**?) **-etsi**], adv., (*still although,* anticipating the thought to which **tamen** properly belongs), *although, though.*

tandem [**tam-dem,** cf. **idem**], adv., (*just so, even so?*), *at last.* — In questions, to add emphasis, *pray, tell me,* or trans. only by emphasis.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, [TAG], 3. v. a., *touch, border on.*

tantopere, see **opus.**

tantulus, -a, -um, [**tantŏ- + lus**], adj., *so small, so little, so trifling.*

tantum, see **tantus.**

tantummodo [**tantum modo**], adv., (*so much only*), *only, merely, only just.*

tantundem (**tantum-dem,** cf. **idem**], adv., *just so far.*

tantus, -a, -um, [prob. TA + **vant** (adj. term.) + **us**], adj., *so much, so great, such* (of magnitude) : **tanti est,** *is of so much weight;* **tanta exiguitas temporis,** *so little time.* — Esp., *so much* (and no more), *only so much:* **tantum progredi** (*so far as*). — **tantum,** N. as adv., *only, merely.*

Tarbellī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **tardō.**

tardē [old case-form of **tardus**], adv., *slowly, tardily, with delay.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**tardŏ-**], 1. v. a., *retard, check, hinder:* **Romanos ad insequendum** (*hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of,* etc.).

tardus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity.*

Tarusātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Carnutes.

taurus, -ī, [perh. STAV + **rus,** akin to *steer*], M., *a bull.*

Taximagulus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a prince of Britain.

taxus, -ī, [?], F., *a yew-tree.* — Also, *yew* (the berries used as poison).

Tectosages, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a branch of the **Volcae,** which see.

tēctum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **tego**], N., *a roof, a house.*

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **tego.**

tegimentum (**tegu-**), -ī, [**tegi-** (st. of **tego**) + **mentum**], N., *a covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, [TEG], 3. v. a., *cover, thatch, hide, conceal.*

tēlum, -ī, [?], N., *a weapon* (of offence), *a missile, a javelin, a spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um, [†temerŏ- + **arius**], adj., *reckless, rash, hasty.*

temerē [old case-form of †temerus], adv., *blindly, without reason, without cause.* Hence, *recklessly, hastily.*

temeritās, -tātis, [†temerŏ- (*hasty*) + **tas**], F., *blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper.*

tēmō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a pole* (of a wagon, etc.).

temperantia, -ae, [temperant- + ia], F., *self-control, prudence.*

temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [temper- (st. of **tempus**)], I. v. a., (*divide*), *mix properly.* Hence, *control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from* (quin). — Esp., **temperātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *temperate, mild.*

tempestās, -tātis, [tempes- (st. of **tempus**) + **tas**], F., *a season, weather.* — Esp., *bad weather, a storm, a tempest.*

temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tentŏ-, p. p. of **teneo**, *hold*], I. v. a., *handle.* Hence, *try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt:* iter (*try to force*).

tempus, -oris, [TEM (*cut*, with root determinative or accidental p) + **us**], N., (*a cutting*). — Esp., *a division of time, a time, time* (in general), *a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis:* **tam necessario tempore**, *at so critical a moment;* **omni tempore**, *at all times, always;* **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future;* **uno tempore**, *at once;* **tempore exclusus**, *cut off by the want of time.*

Tencterī (-therī), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a branch of the **Usipetes**, which see.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsus (tentus), [TEN + **do** (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a., *stretch, stretch out.* — Esp., *stretch a tent, encamp.*

tenebrae, -ārum, [?, perh. akin to **temere**], F. plur., *darkness.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (?), [†tenŏ- (TEN + **us**)], 2. v. a., *hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy:* circuitus milia (*occupy, extend*). — Also, *restrain, detain:* **tenere obsidibus** (*bind*); **se tenere**, *remain;* **memoriā tenere**, *remember.*

tener, -era, -erum, [TEN + **rus**], adj., (*stretched, thin*), *delicate, tender, young.*

tenuis, -e, [TEN + **us**, with accidental **i**, cf. **gravis**], adj., *thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor.*

tenuitās, -tātis, [tenui- + **tas**], F., *thinness, weakness, poverty.*

tenuiter [tenui- + **ter**], adv., *thinly, slightly.*

ter [prob. mutilated case of **tres**], num. adv., *three times, thrice.*

teres, -etis, [tere- (as st. of **tero**) + **tis**], adj., (*rubbed*), *smooth and round, tapering.*

tergum, -ī, [?], N., *the back:* **terga vertere**, *turn and fly;* **a tergo**, *in the rear.*

ternī, -ae, -a, [tri- + **nus**], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three at once.*

terra, -ae, [TERS (?) + **a**, cf. **torreo**, *dry up*], F., (*the dry land*), *the earth, the land.* — Also, *a land, a*

region. — Also, *the ground.* — Plur., *the world.*

Terrasidius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., *Titus Terrasidius,* a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra- (as if terrē-) + nus], adj., *of earth.*

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, [†terrŏ- (?)], 2. v. a., *frighten, alarm, frighten off, deter.*

territō, -āre, no perf. or p. p., [territŏ-], 1. v. a., *frighten:* **metu** (*alarm with fears, keep alarmed*).

terror, -ōris, [TERR + or], M., *fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.*

tertius, -a, -um, [prob. tri- + tius], num. adj., *third* (in order); **pars** (*one-third*).

testāmentum, -ī, [testā- (*witness*) + mentum], N., *a will.*

testimōnium, -ī, [testi- + monium], N., *proof, evidence.*

testis, -is, [?], C., *a witness.*

testūdō, -inis, [†testu- (akin to **testa,** *tile*) + do], F., *a tortoise.* — Esp., *a covered column* (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another). — Also, *a shelter* (a small roof over attacking soldiers).

Teutomatus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

Teutones, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), [Teutonic], M. plur., a great German people in Jutland who overran Gaul in B.C. 113 along with the Cimbri. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquæ Sextiæ (*Aix*).

tīgnum, -ī, [?], N., *a log, a timber, a pile.*

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Tigurini.* — M. pl., *the Tigurini,* a canton or division of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., [†timŏ- (cf. **timidus**)], 2. v. a. and n., *be afraid, fear.* — With dat., *be anxious for, be anxious about:* **nihil** (*have nothing to fear*); **timentes,** as noun, *the timid, the fearful.*

timidē [old case-form of **timidus**], adv., *with timidity:* **non timide,** *fearlessly.*

timidus, -a, -um, [†timŏ- (cf. **timeo**) + dus], adj., *cowardly, frightened, timid.*

timor, -ōris, [tim- (cf. **timeo**) + or], M., *alarm, fear, dread.*

Titūrius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†toler- (TOL + us)], 1. v. a. and n., (*raise up*), *bear, endure, hold out, support:* **famem** (*keep from starvation*).

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, [TOL], 3. v. a., *raise, carry, carry off.* Hence, *remove, take away, destroy:* **conloquium** (*break off*). — Esp., **sublātus,** -a, -um, p. p., *elated.*

Tolōsa, -ae, [Celtic], F., *Toulouse,* a city of the Volcæ Tectosages.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, [Tolosa- + tis], M. plur., *the people of Toulouse.*

tormentum, -ī, [TORQU + mentum], N., (*means of twisting*), *torture.* — Also, *an engine* (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, *a shot from an engine, a missile.*

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus,

[torrŏ- (cf. **torrus**, *firebrand*)], 2. v. a., *scorch*, *burn*.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., *so many*.

totidem [toti- (cf. **tot**) + **dem**], indecl. adj., *just as many*, *as many*, *the same number*.

tōtus, -a, -um, [TA + **tus**], adj., *the whole*, *the whole of*, *all*, *entire*. — Often translated by an adverb, *entirely*, *throughout*.

trabs (**trabēs**), trabis, [?], F., *a beam*, *a timber*.

trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **traho**.

trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **trado**.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**trans-do**], 3. v. a., *hand over*, *give up*, *give over*, *deliver up*, *surrender*, *commend*, *recommend*. — Also, *pass along*, *hand down*, *teach*, *communicate*.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**trans-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead over* (with two accusatives), *lead across*, *bring over*, *lead through*, *transport*, *draw over*, *win over*, *transfer*, *lead* (along).

trāgula, -ae, [?], F., *a javelin* (perh. with a barb, like a boat-hook) used by the Gauls.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [TRAH (for †TRAGH)], 3. v. a., *drag*, *drag along*, *drag in*, *draw in*.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**trans-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw across*, *throw over*. — Also, *strike through*, *transfix*, *pierce*.

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **traicio**.

trāiectus, -tūs, [**trans-iactus**, cf. **traicio**], M., (*a throwing across*), *a passage*, *a route*.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**trans-no**], 1. v. a. and n., *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -tātis, [**tranquillŏ- + tas**], F., *stillness*, *calm*.

trāns [?, akin to **terebra**, *auger*], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., *across*, *over*. Hence, *on the other side of*. — In comp., *over*, *across*, *through*.

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, [**trans-Alpes + inus**], adj., *Transalpine* (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus, [**trans-scando**], 3. v. n., *climb across*, *board* (ships).

trānsdūcō, see **traduco**.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [**trans-eo**], irr. v. a. and n., *go across*, *cross*, *pass over*, *go over*, *pass through*, *pass*, *migrate*, *pass by*.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [**trans-fero**], irr. v. a., *carry over*, *transfer*, *change the place of*: **ad se bellum** (*direct against*, transferring from somewhere else).

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**trans-figo**], 3. v. a., *pierce through*.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [**trans-fodio**], 3. v. a., *dig through*. — Also, *pierce through*, *wound* (by stabbing).

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [**trans-gradior**], 3. v. dep., *step across*, *step over*, *cross*.

trānsgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **transgredior**.

trānsitus, -tūs, [**trans-itus**, cf. **transeo**], M., *a crossing*: **difficili transitu**, *of difficult passage*, *difficult to cross*.

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **transfero**.

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, [**trans-mare** (*sea*) + **inus**], adj., *foreign*.

trānsmissus, -ūs, [**trans-missus**, cf. **transmitto**], M., *a crossing, a distance across:* **pari spatio transmissūs**, *with a passage of the same length.*

trānsmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **transmitto**.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [**trans-mitto**], 3. v. a., *send over.*

trānsportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **transporto**.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**trans-porto**], 1. v. a., *bring over* (with two accusatives), *transport, carry over:* **milites navibus transportari** (*were crossing, being taken over*).

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, [**trans-Rhenum + anus**], adj., *living across the Rhine.* — Plur. as noun, *the people across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, -ī, [**trans** (**trant-**?) + **trum**], N., *a thwart, cross-beam.*

trānsversus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **transverto**], as adj., *across, athwart, oblique, transverse:* **fossa** (*a cross-ditch*).

Trebius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See **Gallus**.

Trebōnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius Trebonius:* 1, a Roman knight; 2, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

trecentī, -ae, -a, [**tri-centum**], num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim [**tres-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *thirteen.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**trepidŏ-**], 1. v. n., *bustle about, hurry:* **totis trepidatur castris**, *there is a bustle throughout the camp.*

trēs, tria, gen. **trium**, [st. **tri-**], num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī (-virī), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle. Sing., **Trevir**.

Triboces, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, -ī, [**tribu-+ nus**], M., (*a chief of a tribe*). With or without **plebis**, *a tribune* (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With **militum** or **militaris**, *a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.*

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [**tribu-**], 3. v. a., (*distribute by tribes*), *distribute.* Hence, *grant, render, assign, attribute:* **tantum dignitatis** (*pay such respect*); **magnopere virtuti** (*attribute it so very much to valor*); **rei publicae** (*grant out of regard to*); **plus libertati** (*have more regard for*).

tribūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **tribuo**], N., *a tribute.*

trīduum, -ī, [**tri-** + st. akin to **dies**, cf. **biduum**], N., *three days' time, three days.*

triennium, -ī, [**trienni-** (**tri-annus**) + **ium**], N., *three years.*

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, [**tri-+nus**], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three sets of, three* (of things in sets).

Trinobantes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartītus (**tripert-**), -a, -um

[**tri-partitus**, p. p. of **partio**], adj., *divided in three.* — Esp., **tripartītō**, abl. as adv., *in three divisions.*

triplex, -icis, [**tri-plex** (PLIC as st.)], adj., *threefold:* **acies** (*in three divisions* or *lines*), *triple.*

triquetrus, -a, -um, [**tri-†quatrus** (**quattuor**), cf. "three-square"], adj., *three-cornered, triangular.*

tristis, -e, [unc. root + **tis**], adj., *sad, gloomy, dejected.*

tristitia, -ae, [**tristi-** + **tia**], F., *sadness, a gloomy state* (of mind).

truncus, -ī, [?], M., *a trunk.*

tū, tuī, [TVA], plur. **vōs** [VA], pron. 2d person, *you* (sing.), *you* (plur.).

tuba, -ae, [?], F., *a trumpet* (a straight instrument for infantry).

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus), [?], 2. v. dep., *watch, guard, protect.* See also **tūtus**.

tulī, perf. of **fero**.

Tulingī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe.

Tullius, -ī, [**Tullo-** + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — See **Cicero**.

Tullus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — See **Volcatius**.

tum [prob. acc. of TA], adv., *then* (at a time indicated by the context), *at this time:* **cum . . . tum**, see **cum**; **tum vero** (*then*, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative); **tum maxime**, *just then, but especially.*

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus, [**tumultu-**], 1. v. dep., *make an uproar.* — As impersonal, *there is an uproar.*

tumultuōsē [old case-form of **tumultuosus**], adv., *with disorder, noisily.*

tumultus, -tūs, [**tumulŏ-** (perh. reduced) + **tus**], M., (*a swelling, an uprising?*), *an uproar, confusion, a commotion.* — Esp., *an uprising, a commotion* (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared). — See **servilis**.

tumulus, -ī, [**†tumŏ-** (whence **tumeo**, *swell*) + **lus**], M., (*a swelling?*), *a hill, a mound.*

tunc [**tum-ce**, cf. **hic**], adj., *just then, then, at that time.*

turma, -ae, [TUR (cf. **turba, turbo**) + **ma**], F., (*a throng?*), *a squadron, a troop* (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turones, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards *Tours.*

turpis, -e, [?], adj., *ugly* (in appearance). Hence, *unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable.*

turpiter [**turpi-** + **ter**], adv., *dishonorably:* **turpiter factum**, *an inglorious deed.*

turpitūdō, -inis, [**turpi-** + **tudo**], F., *baseness.* Hence, *disgrace.*

turris, -is, [?], F., *a tower.*

tūtē [old case-form of **tutus**], adv., *safely, with safety.*

tūtus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **tueor**], as adj., *protected, safe, secure:* **victis nihil tutum**, *no safety for the conquered.* — **tūtō**, abl. as adv., *in safety, safely.*

tuus, -a, -um, [TVA + **ius**], adj. pron., *your, yours.*

U

ubi [supposed to be **quō** (dat. of **quŏ-**) + **bi**], adv., *where, in which:* **ibi ubi**, *in the place where.* — Also, of time, *when:* **ubi primum**, *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.

ubīque [**ubi-que**, cf. **quisque**], adv., *everywhere, anywhere.*

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, [?], 3. v. dep., *punish* (an injury, or the doer), *avenge* (an injury), *take vengeance* (absolutely).

ūllus, -a, -um; gen. -īus, [**unŏ-** + **lus**], adj., *a single* (with negatives), *any.* — As noun (less common), *anybody, any one.*

ulterior, -us, -ōris, [comp. of **ulterŏ-**, cf. **ultra**], adj., *farther, more remote:* **ulteriores**, *those farther off.* — Superl., **ultimus**, -a, -um, [**ul-** + **timus**], *farthest:* **ultimi**, *those in the rear.*

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr., of †**ulter**], adv. and prep. with acc., *beyond.*

ultrō [dat. of †**ulter** (**us**)], adv., *to the farther side, beyond:* **ultro citroque**, *this way and that, back and forth.* — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, *voluntarily, without provocation, freely, besides:* **sibi parcere cogi** (*in spite of himself*); **ad se venire** (*without his asking it*).

ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ulciscor**.

ululātus, -tūs, [**ululā-** (*yell*) + **tus**], M., *a yell, a loud cry.*

umerus, -ī, [?], M., *the shoulder.*

umquam (unquam), [supposed to be for **cum-quam** (cf. **quisquam**)], adv. (with neg.), *ever:* **neque . . . umquam**, *and never.*

ūnā, [instr. (or abl.?) of **unus**], adv., *together, along with them*, etc., *at the same time, in the same place, also.*

unde [supposed to be for †**cunde** (**cum**, cf. **umquam**, + **de**, cf. **inde**)], adv., *whence, from which.*

ūndecim [**unus-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, [**unus-decimus**], num. adj., *eleventh.*

undique [**unde-que**, cf. **quique**], adv., *from every side, from all quarters.* — Also (cf. **ab**), *on every side.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, [**unŏ-versus**], adj., *all together, all* (in a mass), *entire.*

ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -īus, [?, old **oenus**], adj., *one, a single, the same, alone* (as adv.): **una celeritate** (*alone*); **unum se esse**, *that he was the only one;* **ad unum**, *to a man.*

urbānus, -a, -um, [**urbi-** (reduced) + **anus**], adj., *of a city.* — Esp., *of the city* (Rome), *in the city.*

urbs, urbis, [?], F., *a city.* — Esp., *the city* (Rome).

urgeō (urgueō), urgēre, ursī, no p. p., [VARG, *press*, cf. **volgus**], 2. v. a., *press, press hard, urge.*

ūrus, -ī, [Teutonic], M., *a wild ox.*

Usipetes, -um, [Teutonic], M. pl., a German tribe who migrated from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **usitor.**

ūsitor, -ārī, -ātus, [†**usitŏ-** (as if p. p. of †**uso**, freq. of **utor**)], I. v. dep., *practise.* — **ūsitātus**, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, *used, practised, customary, much practised.*

ūsque [unc. case of **quŏ** (cf. **usquam**) **-que** (cf. **quisque**)], adv., (*everywhere*), *all the way, even to, to that degree* (with **eo ut**), *all the time, till, even till.*

ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ūtor.**

ūsus, -ūs, [UT (in **utor**) + **tus**], M., *use, practice, experience.* Hence, *advantage, service.* — Esp.: **usus est**, *it is necessary, there is need, is necessary* (with personal subject); also, **ex usu, usui**, *of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage;* **usu venire**, *happen, occur, turn out, come to pass* (on trial, in practice); **usum navium eripi**, *be deprived of all use of the ships;* **quae sunt usui**, *which are serviceable, are needed, are of use.*

ut (**utī**), [supposed to be for **quoti** (**quŏ-** + **ti** ?)], adv. and conj.: ***a.*** Interrog., *how?* — ***b.*** Rel., *as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was.* — Esp. with subjv., *that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that.* — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of speech: **poenam ut**, etc. (*of being*), etc.; **id facere ut**, *do this, namely.* — Esp.: **ut semel**, *when once, as soon as;* **timere ut**, *fear that not;* **ut quisque est . . . ita** (*in proportion as*).

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trīus [**quŏ** (cf. **ubi**) + **terus** (reduced), cf. **alter**], adj.: ***a.*** Interrog., *which* (of two)?: **uter utri**, *which to the other.* — ***b.*** Relative, *whichever* (of two), *the one who* (of two). — Neut., **utrum**, adv., (*which of the two*), *whether.*

uterque, utra-, utrum-; gen. utrīus-, [**uter-que**, cf. **quisque**], adj., *both:* **medium utriusque**, *between the two.* — Plur., of sets: **utraque castra**, *both camps;* **utrique**, *both parties.* — Rarely of single things: **utraeque**, *both women.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtilis, -e, [†**uti-** (st. akin to **utor**) + **lis**], adj., *useful, of use, helpful.*

ūtilitās, -tātis, [**utili-** + **tas**], F., *advantage, benefit, service.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, [?, old **oetor**, akin to **aveo**?], 3. v. dep., *avail one's self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have* (in sense of enjoy or employ), *possess, show* (qualities which one exercises), *occupy* (a town), *navigate* (a sea): **pace** (*remain at peace*). — Esp. with two nouns, *employ as, have as,* and the like: **aliquo adiutore** (*have one's services*). — **usus**, p. p., often merely *with.*

utrimque [unc. case of **uter** (cf. **interim**) + **que** (cf. **quisque**)], adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, see **uter.**

uxor, -ōris, [?], F., *a wife.*

V

V, for quinque, *five.*

Vacalus, -ī, [?], M., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātiō, -ōnis, [**vacā-** + tio], F., *freedom* (from something), *exemption, immunity.*

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [prob. †**vacŏ-** (cf. **vacuus**)], 1. v. n., *be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um, [prob. VAC (*empty*) + **vus**], adj., *free, unoccupied, vacant, destitute of* (**ab** or abl.).

vadum, -ī, [VAD (in **vado,** *go*) + **um**], N., *a ford.* — Plur., *a ford, shoals, shallows:* **vado,** *by fording.*

vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vagor.**

vāgīna, -ae, [?], F., *a sheath.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, [**vagŏ-,** *roving*], 1. v. dep., *roam about, roam, wander.*

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, [?, prob. denominative, cf. **validus,** *strong*], 2. v. n., *be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful.* — Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: **plurimum valere,** *be very strong, have great weight, have great influence;* **minus valet,** *is not very strong;* **quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent,** *whatever strength they have is in infantry;* **tantum valebat,** *had such weight;* **pudor valet,** *self-respect controls.*

Valerius, -ī, [akin to **valeo**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus,* proprætor in Gaul, B.C. 83. — 2. *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* a legatus under some unknown proprætor in Gaul. He was defeated and killed in Aquitania. — 3. *Gaius Valerius Caburus,* a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship prob. from No. 1. — 4. *Gaius Valerius Procillus,* and (5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus,* sons of No. 3, who fought for Cæsar in the war against Vercingetorix.

Valetiācus, -ī, [?], M., a noble of the Hædui.

valētūdō, -inis, [prob. **valent-** + **tudo**], F., *health.* — Also, *ill health.*

vallēs, -is, [?], F., *a valley.*

vāllum, -ī, [N. of **vallus**], N., *a palisade, a rampart* (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), *a wall.*

vāllus, -ī, [?], M., *a stake.*

Vangiones, -um, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms.

varietās, -tātis, [**variŏ-** + **tas**], F., *diversity, variety:* **pellium** (*different colors*).

varius, -a, -um, [prob. akin to **vārus,** *bent*], adj., *various, diverse.*

vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vasto.**

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vastŏ-**], 1. v. a., *lay waste, devastate, ravage.*

vāstus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *waste.* — Also, *immense, vast.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [**vaticinā-** (*foretell*) + **tio**], F., *divination.*

-ve [?], conj. enclit., *or.*

vectīgal, -ālis, [N. of **vectigalis**], N., *an impost, tribute.* — Plur., *revenues* (of a state).

vectīgālis, -e, [†**vectigŏ-** (**vectis**, akin to **veho**, + unc. term., cf. **castigo**) + **alis**], adj., *tributary:* **vectigalis habent**, *make tributary.*

vectōrius, -a, -um, [**vector-** (cf. **veho**, *carry*) + **ius**], adj., *carrying:* **navigia** (*transports*).

vehementer [**vehement-** (*violent*) + **ter**], adv., *violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly.*

vel [prob. imperat. of **volo**, *wish*], conj., *or:* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.* — As adv., *even.*

Velānius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Velanius*, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes mountains.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, [**veloci-** + **tas**], F., *swiftness, fleetness, speed.*

vēlōciter [**veloci-** + **ter**], adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, [st. akin to **volo** (cf. **colonus**) + **cus** (reduced?)], adj., *swift, quick.*

vēlum, -ī, [?, cf. **vexillum**], N., *a curtain, a veil.* — Also, *a sail.*

velut [**vel-ut**], adv., *even as, just as:* **velut si**, *just as if, as if, no less than if.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [**venā-** (*hunt*) + **tio**], F., *hunting, the chase.* — Plur., *hunting, hunting excursions.*

vēnātor, -tōris, [**venā-** (*hunt*) + **tor**], M., *a hunter.*

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**venum do**], 3. v. a., *put to sale, sell.*

Venellī (**Unellī**), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

Venetī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae, [**venetŏ-** + **ia** (F. of **-ius**)], F., *the territory of the Veneti.*

Veneticus, -a, -um, [**Venetŏ-** + **cus**], adj., *of the Veneti.*

venia, -ae, [?], F., *indulgence, favor, pardon:* **petentibus veniam dare**, *grant their request.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, [GAM (for **gvenio**)], 4. v. n., *come, go:* **in spem** (*have hopes*). — See also **usu**.

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [as if **ventitŏ-** (from **vento**, old freq. of **venio**)], 1. v. n., *come often, visit.*

ventus, -ī, [?], M., *the wind:* **vento se dare**, *run before the wind.*

vēr, vēris, [for †**vasar**, VAS, *burn*], N., *spring.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic people of the Alps, on the upper Rhone.

Verbigenus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a canton of the Helvetii.

verbum, -ī, [?, cf. **morbus**], N., *a word:* **pluribus verbis**, *at great length;* **animos verbis confirmavit** (*with encouraging words*); **facit verba**, *speak for*, etc.; **magna contumelia verborum**, *with most insulting words.*

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Arverni. Being

chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vereor, -ērī, -itus, [prob. †**verŏ-** (akin to *wary*)], 2. v. dep., *fear, be afraid, dread.* — **veritus,** p. p. in pres. sense, *fearing.*

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., *incline, slope, look towards* (of an exposure), *lie towards.*

vergobretus, -ī, [Celtic], M., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Arverni.

vērīsimilis, -e, [**veri similis**], adj., (*like the truth*), *probable, likely.*

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vereor.**

vērō [abl. of **vērus**], adv., *in truth, in fact, certainly.* — With weakened force, *but, on the other hand, however.* — Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in a narrative.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**versŏ-**], 1. v. a., *turn* (this way and that), *deal with* (some one or some thing). — Esp. in pass. as dep., *turn one's self, engage in, be, fight* (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of **verto.**

versus (**versum**), [orig. p. p. of **verto**], adv. and prep. with acc., *towards, in the direction of:* **quoque versus** (or as one word), *in every direction, all about.*

versus, -ūs, [VERT + **tus**], M., *a turning.* — Esp., *a verse* (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), *a line.*

Verticō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Nervii.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, [VERT], 3. v. a., *turn:* **terga** (*turn and flee*).

Verudoctius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Helvetii.

vērus, -a, -um, [?, VER (in **vereor**) + **us**], adj., (?, *seen, visible*), *true.* — Neut. as noun, *the truth:* **repperit esse vera,** *found the truth to be.* — Also, *just, right.* — See also **vero.**

verūtum, -ī, [**veru** (*a spit*) + **tum**], N., *a spear* (of a light kind), *a dart.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., the chief town of the Sequani, now *Besançon.*

vesper, -erī, [?], M., *the evening.*

vester, -tra, -trum, [**ves-** + **ter** (**us**)], poss. adj. pron., *your, yours.*

vestīgium, -ī, [†**vestigŏ-** (cf. **vestigo**) + **ium**], N., *the footstep, the footprint, a track.* — Esp.: **e vestigio,** *forthwith* (from one's tracks?); **eodem vestigio,** *in the same spot;* **in illo vestigio temporis,** *at that instant of time.*

vestiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, [**vesti-**], 4. v. a., *clothe, cover.* — Pass., *clothe one's self with* (with thing in abl.), *wear.*

vestis, -is, [VES (*cover*) + **tis**], F., *clothing, garments.*

vestītus, -tūs, [**vestī-** + **tus**], M., *clothing, garments.*

veterānus, -a, -um, [**veterā-** (as if st. of **vetero**) + **nus**], adj., *veteran* (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, [st. akin to **vetus**], 1. v. a., *forbid.*

vetus, -eris, [?], adj., *old, former, of long standing:* **milites** (*old soldiers, veterans*).

vexātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vexo**.

vēxillum, -ī, [?, apparently a dim. of **velum**], N., *a flag:* **sub vexillo**, *in a detachment*, without any **signa**, which were carried only in the regular corps.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**vexŏ-** (as if p. p. of **veho**)], 1. v. a., (*carry this way and that*), *harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun* (a country), *ravage* (lands).

via, -ae, [for **veha**? (**veh-** + **a**)], F., *a road, a way, a route, a march:* **tridui viam**, *three days' journey*.

viātor, -tōris, [†**viā-** (as st. of †**vio**) + **tor**], M., *a traveller*.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, [akin to **viginti**], distrib. num. adj., *twenty* (apiece).

vīcēsimus, -a, -um [akin to **viginti**], num. adj., *twentieth*.

vīciēs (**-ēns**), [akin to **viginti**], num. adv., *twenty times:* **vicies centum milia passuum**, *two thousand miles*.

vīcīnitās, -tātis, [**vicinŏ-** (*neighboring*) + **tas**], F., *neighborhood, vicinity*. — Plur., *neighbors*.

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), *change, turn:* **in vicem**, *in turn*.

victima, -ae, [akin to **vinco**, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., *a victim, a sacrifice*.

victor, -tōris, [VIC (in **vinco**) + **tor**], M., *a victor*. — Often as adj., *victorious, triumphant*.

victōria, -ae, [**victor-** + **ia**], F., *victory, success* (in war).

victus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vinco**.

vīctus, -tūs, [VIG (?), (cf. **vixi**) + **tus**], M., *living, life*. — Also, *means of living, food:* **domus victusque**, *intercourse, life in common*.

vīcus, -ī, [VIC (*enter*) + **us**], M., (*a dwelling*), *a village* (a collection of dwellings).

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, [VID, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., *see, observe, examine* (reconnoitre), *take care* (see that). — In pass., *be seen, appear, seem, seem best*.

Vienna, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now *Vienne*.

vigilia, -ae, [**vigil-** (*awake*) + **ia**], F., *a watch, watching*. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

vīgintī [**dvi-** (st. of **duo**) + form akin to **centum** (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., *twenty*.

vīmen, -inis, [root (or st.) VI (*twine*) + **men**], N., *a twig* (flexible, for weaving), *osier*.

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, [perh. akin to **vinco**], 4. v. a., *bind, fetter*.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, [VIC], 3. v. a. and n., *conquer, defeat, prevail:* **naturam** (*outdo*).

vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vincio**.

vinculum (**vinclum**), -ī, [†**vincŏ-** (st. akin to **vincio**, perh. primitive of it) + **lum** (N. of **lus**)], N., *a chain:* **ex vinculis**, *in chains*, see **ex**: **in vincula**, *into prison, into confinement*.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -atus, [**vindic-**, *defender*], 1. v. a., *claim, claim one's rights against, defend:* **in aliquem** (*punish*); **Galliam in libertatem**

(*establish the liberty of*, a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

vīnea, -ae, [**vinŏ-** + **ea** (F. of **-eus**)], F., *a vineyard*, *a vine arbor*. Hence, *a shed* (*defence*, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vīnum, -ī, [?], N., *wine*.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], I. v. a., *abuse*, *violate* (a sacred object), *lay waste*: **hospites** (*injure*, a guest being held sacred).

vir, virī, [?], M., *a man*, *a husband*.

vīrēs, see **vis**.

virgō, -inis, [?], F., *a maiden*, *a maid*, *a virgin*.

virgultum, -ī, [†**virgula-** (?) + **tum**, cf. **tumultus**], N., only in pl., *shrubbery*, *a thicket*, *bushes* (cut for military purposes).

Viridomārus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hædui.

Viridovīx, -īcis, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Venelli.

virītim [**vir** + **itim**, as if acc. of verbal in **-tis**], adv., *man by man* (of distribution), *to each individual*.

Viromanduī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

virtūs, -tūtis, [**virŏ-** (reduced) + **tus**], F., *manliness*, *valor*, *prowess*, *courage*. — Also, *merit* (generally), *noble conduct*, *virtue*: **virtute** (with gen.), *thanks to*. — Plur., *virtues*, *merits*, *good qualities*.

vīs, vīs (?), [?], F., *force*, *might*, *violence*. — Esp.: **vi cogere** (*forcibly*); **vim facere**, *use violence*; **vim hostium prohibere** (*violent attack*); **vi fluminis oppressi**, *overcome by the violent current*. — Plur., *strength*, *force*, *powers*, *bodily vigor*.

vīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **video**.

vīta, -ae, [root of **vivo** + **ta**], F., *life*, *the course of life*.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, **vita-**?], I. v. a., (*escape with life*, *live through* ?), *escape*, *avoid*, *dodge*.

vitrum, -ī, [?], N., *woad* (a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue).

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, [VIC (**vigor** ?), cf. **victus**], 3. v. n., *live*: **lacte** (*live on*).

vīvus, -a, -um, [VIGOR (?) + **us**], adj., *alive*, *living*.

vix [poss. VIC (in **vinco**)], adv., *with difficulty*, *hardly*, *scarcely*, *barely*. — Also, of time, *hardly* (. . . *when*).

Vocātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

Vocciō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of Noricum.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**voc-** (st. of **vox**)], I. v. a., *call by name*, *call*, *summon*, *invite*.

Vocontiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.

Volcae, -ārum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. — See **Tectosages** and **Arecomici**.

Volcānus (Vul-), -ī, [?], M., *Vulcan* (the god of fire and metals).

Volcātius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius Volcatius Tullus*, a young man in Cæsar's suite.

volgus (vul-), -ī, [VOLG (*press*) + **us**], N., *the crowd*, *the common people*, *the mass*: **in volgus efferri**,

be spread abroad; **militum** (*the common soldiers, the army*). — **volgō,** abl. as adv., *commonly, generally, everywhere.*

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **volnero.**

volnerō (**vul-**), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**volner-**], I. v. a., *wound, hurt.*

volnus (**vul-**), -eris, [prob. akin to **vello,** *pluck*], N., *a wound.*

volō, velle, voluī, [VOL], irr. v. a. and n., *wish, be willing, want:* **velle aliquem aliquid,** *want one for anything, want anything of one;* **quid sibi vellent,** *what they wanted,* or *meant,* or *intended to do, what business they had.*

voltus (**vul-**), -tūs, [VOL + **tus**], M., (*wish, expression of countenance*), *look, countenance, face:* **voltūs fingere,** *compose one's countenance, conceal one's feelings;* **alicuius voltum ferre,** *dare to look in one's face.*

voluntārius, -a, -um, [**volent-** (p. of **volo**) + **arius**], adj., *voluntary.* — As noun, *a volunteer.*

voluntās, -tātis, [**volent-** (p. of **volo**) + **tas**], F., *willingness, good-will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination:* **voluntates alienare** (*good-will*).

voluptās, -tātis, [**volup-** (akin to **volo**) + **tas**], F., *pleasure, delight.*

Volusēnus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus,* a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Lucius Vorenus,* a centurion of Cæsar's army.

vōs, see **tu.**

Vosegus, -ī, [Celtic], M., *the Vosges Mountains,* running northerly from the Jura along the Rhine.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, [?], 2. v. a., *vow, make a vow.*

vōx, vōcis, [VOC as st.], F., *a voice, a word, an expression, a shout.* — Collectively, *cries, words, talk.* — Plur., *talk, reports:* **nulla vox audita** (*not a word*); **militum vocibus carpi** (*taunts*); **concursu ac vocibus cogi** (*outcries*).

X

X, for **decem,** *ten.*

XX, for **vīgintī,** *twenty.*

item [illegible]

in fr[illegible]